



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Brit. 485 x^d
(41), 1

Scriptores

E

<36636783120017

<36636783120017

Bayer. Staatsbibliothek

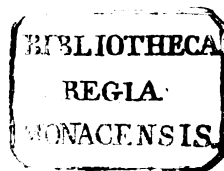
RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.



THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS
OF
GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND
DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY,
UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS,

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an *Editio Princeps*; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished ; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

*Rolls House,
December 1857.*

**POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.**

Amphylina monke of cheste compile
his presente worke and cronicle

The firste pocolon becomethe herei to ma story of many cronicles

For the noble myghte of artes to whom hit was
a pleasure in this life sente to fyre thei Audiens and
labours abode the knowledge of thynges and vnto
moralle thei as to be enbarnsed and equalde by merite
artes prompt as makinge a compton of a thyng profitable
w a sweteneste mellifluous whiche haue desirede to men face
denge thro the benefite of styngure the excellent gyses of men
precedence For in the conpte bysternalle the roole of

Wm. BART. M. S. HARV. 12501

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN
MONACHI CESTRENSIS;

TOGETHER WITH THE

ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS OF JOHN TREVISA
AND OF AN UNKNOWN WRITER OF
THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

EDITED

BY

CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., F.L.S., ETC.,

SENIOR FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

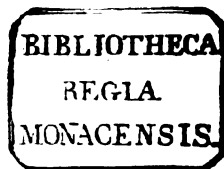
VOL. I.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

L O N D O N :

LONGMAN, GREEN, LONGMAN, ROBERTS, AND GREEN.

1865.



Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
INTRODUCTION - - - - -	ix
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS - - - - -	lxxiii
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, LIBER PRIMUS -	2

INTRODUCTION.

INTRODUCTION.

SCARCELY anything of the personal history of Ranulph Higden has come down to us ; and indeed the scanty notices which we now possess, relating both to him and to his Chronicle, serve rather to perplex than to instruct us. A single sentence may tell all that we can say about him with certainty. He was a Benedictine monk of St. Werburg's abbey in Chester, who died at an advanced age in the latter half of the fourteenth century, having compiled a *Polychronicon*, or *Universal History*, reaching to his own time ; being likewise the author of some other works, which are in part extant.

Biographical notice of Higden. Materials scanty and unsatisfactory.

The name of Higden is variously written, and appears under the following forms : Higdenus, Higden, Hygden ; also, Hikeden, Hykedoun, Higenus, Higgeden ; and, besides these variations, we have likewise, as it would appear, Higgenet (by a transition from Higgeden) and Heggenet.¹ His Christian name is usually written Ranulphus, in English Ranulf, or Ralph ; but also Radulphus, and in English Randall, Rondoll, or Rondle.² He is very frequently designated Ranulphus

His name variously written.

¹ That is to say, if Randall Higgenet, the monk of Chester, author of the miracle plays, be the same person ; of which, as Warton says, not without reason, " there is the greatest probability." *Hist. of Engl. Poetry* (vol. ii. p. 179, note. Lond. 1778). Their dwelling place, vocation, and age agree ; their names differ but slightly. See

also *Catalogue of Harl. MSS.*, n. 2013. Dr. Guest (*English Rhythms*, vol. ii. p. 415) observes that Hignet is still a common name at Chester.

² Leland, *Collect.*, t. 2, p. 368 (ed. 1770) ; Tanner, *Bibl.*, p. 403 ; Oudin, *De Script. Eccl.*, t. 3, p. 1029. We have, however, Higden's own authority for the form *Ranulphus*. In a Cambridge MS.,

Cestrensis, or Cestrensis only. The reader may well be satiated with these synonyms, and yet the most important variation is to be mentioned, if variation it be. It should rather be styled an erroneous designation. The Roger of Chester, mentioned by Bale and many others as a writer distinct from Ranulph Higden, seems, upon the whole, to be most probably identical with him; and his *Polycraticon* appears to be nothing else but a shorter form of the *Polychronicon* of our author, or, as some MSS. call it, his *Polycraticon*. But of this more hereafter.

Details of
his history
inexact
or doubtful.

We are unable to point out either the exact place or date of his birth. His native place was somewhere in the west of England, according to Bale, and he must have been born in the latter part, probably during the last twenty years of the 13th century. He appears to have taken monastic vows in or about the year 1299. He attached himself to the Benedictine order, and became an inmate of the rich and powerful abbey of St. Werburgh in Chester.¹ From this time to the date

our E., a foot note on the prologue obscurely lets us into a deep mystery: *Gramata* (sic) *dant prima capitalia nomen agentis*. The same line is also mentioned by Oudin from Selden. The initial letters of the chapters of the first book form the following words:—

“Presentem cronicam compilavit
frater Ranulphus Cestrensis.”

Ranulphus is obtained from c. 34, sqq., thus:—

“R[efert] A[ffirmatum] N[otat]
V[ulgatum] L[ibri] P[ost]
H[æc] V[t] S[unt].”

It seems that this whimsical mode of writing a title page was adopted by other writers also. See Oudin, *u. s.*; also Pits, *de Ill. Angl. Script.*, p. 516.

¹ “Ranulphus Hygden, in occidentali Anglorum patria oriundus, ad Werburgæ fanum in Cestrien-

sis urbis cœnobio, perpetuis se “Benedictinorum sanctionibus con-
secravit.” Bale, *Cent. vi. n. 12*.
“Usque huc (A.D. 1348) scripsit
“Dominus Ranulphus Hygedon,
“monachus monasterii Sanctæ Wer-
“bergæ Cestrensis.” MS. Laud, 619, in fine.

In the year 1093 Hugh Lupus, earl of Chester, established a convent of Benedictine monks, from Bec in Normandy, upon the foundation of St. Werburgh, having expelled the secular canons.

Her shrine, now the bishop's throne in the cathedral, is a beautiful specimen of workmanship of the early part of the 14th century. It must, as it would appear, have been built while Higden was an inmate of the abbey. Lewis, *Topogr. Dict.*, s. v.; Dugdale, *Monast.* vol. ii. p. 71 (ed. 18 46).

of his death, he being then "in a good old age,"¹ we have, I believe, no details of his personal history, except that we are told (but on very doubtful authority) that "one Don Rondle Heggenet" thrice visited Rome in order to obtain leave of the pope that the miracle plays, of which he was the author, should be acted "in the English tongue" at Chester. They were eventually acted in the mayoralty of Sir John Arnway (A.D. 1327, 1328). From A.D. 1309, during a period of seventy years, which was termed the Babylonian captivity, the pope resided at Avignon, and that without interruption, so far as we are aware. A grave suspicion, therefore, attaches to the whole story, which rests upon a note written in a Harl. MS. in 1628. Moreover it is not absolutely certain that Higgenet and Higden are the same person.² Our author certainly appears to have left his monastery on occasions, and to have visited various parts of England, including Derbyshire, Shropshire, and Lancashire, with which he is said to be familiar.³ I can only add that his death probably occurred in the month of March 1363, and that he was buried in the abbey at Chester.⁴

¹ Usque hic (i.e. 1352) scripsit "Ranulphus Hikedoun, monachus Cestrensis, istorum Chronicorum compiler, qui obiit in senectute bona." Note at the end of MS. E. A later hand has added, "Anno Domini 1363."

² See Warton, *u. s.*

³ "Aperte ausim affirmare Ranulphum in eruendis mysteriis antiquitatis Britannicæ δὲ διὰ τῶν illo (Polydoro Vergilio) superiorem fuisse; si spectes provincias in quibus versatus fuit, nempe Salapiam, Devaniam, Luniam, Doroventaniam." Leland,

De Script. Brit., p. 339. He often quotes Higden in this work.

⁴ "Senex tandem obiit, annos habens in monachatu 64, circa Gregorii festum (March 12), anno ab incarnato Messia 1363, Cestrie in cœnobio sepultus." Bale, *Cent.*, vi. n. 12. "Tandem in senectute bona postquam vixerat in religione lxiv. annos, circa festum S. Gregorii, anno gratiæ 1363, in Domino obdormivit." (MS. *Laud.*, 619, *u. s.*) So also note at end of MS. E. (See above.) Hearne (Preface to Camden's *Annales*, p. 117) quotes from a Christ Church MS. this note

His works; Higden is principally¹ known to posterity as the author of the *Polychronicon*,² which was one of the most popular histories during the 14th and 15th cen-

'manu vetusta : ' "Corpus hujus
"Ranulphi conditum est in monas-
"terio D. Wereburgæ in australi
"parte templi juxta chorum prope
"ostium quod ducit in cimiterium.
"Arcus illi muro concavatus est.
"Inscriptum fuit in muro : Non
"hic sub muro, sed subter marmore
"duro." Pits, u. s., who is followed
by bishop Nicholson (*Engl. Hist.*
Libr., 65), places his death in 1377.

¹ Some other works of his are extant in MS. : viz., *Speculum curatorum* (composed in 1340), Ball. Coll. Oxon. Cod. 69, and Cambr. Univ. Libr. Mnl., 1. 20 ; and *Ars componendi sermones*, Bibl. Bodl. Cod. 2752. The former of these is mentioned by Bale, who had seen it, as appears by his quoting the opening words. He had also seen his *Pædagogicon grammatices*, and his *Distinctiones Theologicae*. The former of these was in Sion College, and the latter is in the Lambeth Library. See Tanner, p. 403, and Cave's *Hist. Lit.* Besides these, Bale mentions the following : *Abbreviationes Chronicorum*, which is probably the same as a very damaged work now in the British Museum (Cotton. MSS. Tib. E. viii. fol. 210), thus entitled ; "*Cronica bona et compendiosa de Regibus Angliæ tantum, a Noe post diluvium usque in hunc diem*" (it ends A.D. 1300) "*conscripta a Ranulpho Higdeno Cestriensi monacho, qui vixit anno gratiæ 1358.*" Another copy is in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, numbered 21, ending at 1367. See Nasmith's *Catalogue*, p. 10. A letter from Dr.

Moberly apprises me of the existence of a third copy in the Winchester College library, ending at 1377. Bale then enumerates : *Expositio super Job* ; *In Cantica Canticorum* ; *Sermones per annum* ; *Determinationes sub compendio* ; *In litteram Calendarii* ; adding, as usual, *aliaque plura fecit*. The *Mappa Mundi*, which he names as a distinct work, is nothing but the first book of the *Polychronicon*. Bale likewise mentions *Ex Guilhelmo Stephanide* ; but it appears that this "ad ea pertinet" quæ in *Polychronico* scripsit de "Thoma Becket, archiepiscopo Cantuariensi," Fabricius, *Bibl. Med. et Inf. Latin.* The like remark is probably to be made of the *Ex Stephano Langton* mentioned by Tanner.

² Higden gives as the reason for adopting this title, "quia præsens chronica multorum temporum continet gesta." Oudinus is therefore mistaken in saying, "Operi suo Polychronici nomen indidit, recte quidem, et cum modestia, quia nimirum uti collectaneum quoddam ex multis aliis chronicis excerptum ; quod aliorum quidem est quoad res contentas, Ranulphi autem quoad ordinem, atque enarrationes rerum ultimæ ætatis." (*De Script. Eccl.*, t. 3, p. 1027.) He soon afterwards refers to G. J. Vossius, Sandius, the *Acta Erud. Lips.* for 1694 (read 1692), and V. Placcius, for more information about Higden. I have examined them all, but they contain nothing which is not otherwise well known.

turies, and which continued to be much in use during the following century also. He tells us in the prologue to the first book that he composed it at the earnest request of his companions, *i.e.*, the Benedictines of St. Werburg, and designed to include therein the more important facts of general history from the Creation to his own time in chronological order, noting also the dates of their occurrence according to more than one computation of years. In the early part of the history the birth of Abraham is taken as the origin, and the year of the judge, or other historical personage, is also added in the margin. From Abraham to David he reckons 942 years. The establishment of David's kingdom becomes another origin, and Abraham disappears; and from this date to the Babylonian captivity he reckons 496 years, adding also the year of the Jewish king then reigning in the margin; but for the latter part the year of the foundation of Rome, after which date the secondary king disappears in the later editions of the chronicle.¹ From the Babylonian captivity to Christ, the years from the captivity and from the foundation are recorded. From the Christian era downwards to the age of Charlemagne, the years of that era and of the emperor of Rome are noticed; and from that time forwards the years of the Christian era and of the king or emperor whose acts are related.

The Polychronicon is divided into seven books, this division being suggested by the account of the cosmogony in Genesis. The first book is rather geographical than historical, being, as the author calls it, a map

of its composition.
His chronological system.

Plan of the work.
Contents of the seven books.

¹ Higden threatens occasionally to "purple his margins" with a triple series. This would be a fit place for doing so, and accordingly we find three columns of dates in the shorter forms of the chronicle, as in MS. D. In the following

period the year of Alexander's or Ptolemy's reign is not unfrequently added to the years of the Captivity and of Rome. But in other MSS., as A. and E., we never have more than two series of years tabulated in the margin

of the world. It comprises a brief description of the countries of the known world, and a more particular account of Great Britain. The second book is a History of the World from the Creation to the destruction of the Jewish temple by Nebuchadnezzar. The third book carries on the history to the birth of Christ. The fourth proceeds thenceforward to the arrival of the Saxons in England. The fifth goes on with the history up to the invasion of the Danes, or, as Higden calls them, Dacians. The sixth book concludes with the Norman conquest. The remaining book proceeds as far as Higden's own time, that is to say, as far as the reign of Edward III.¹ The author pleasantly conceives that by thus dividing the vast current of history into seven streams, he laid open a path by which his readers may "go over dryshod."

¹ Thus far all is easy; but when we come to consider the exact year, we are immediately involved in grave difficulties. The MSS. end at very different years, and the notes in different MSS. give different accounts of the years at which Higden himself concluded his work. A full discussion of this perplexed matter must be left for our last volume. In the mean time, so far as I can judge at present, Higden's own work, after he had put his last strokes to it, terminated in the end of the year 1342. There are notes in several MSS. to that effect. See Tanner, &c. But there is also a considerable number of MSS. which end in the year 1327. These are either all or for the most part, I believe, more brief than the later ones; and I should conceive that we may place Higden's first edition in that year. The number of MSS. (not being imperfect) ending before 1327 is very small, and I have not

myself examined any such; but from Mr. S. A. Moore's notes it appears that there is one in Magd. Coll. Oxon. which ends in 1321, and another in the Advocate's Library at Edinburgh ending in 1326. These may have been written before a general issue of the book took place. The excellent Cambridge MS., our E., says that Higden concluded his chronicle at 1352, (in which, however, the events between 1342 and 1352 occupy less than a page,) and Caxton places the last year written by Higden in 1357. This will be the latest date that is well possible, if Higden died in 1363 at a very advanced age, to which latter year indeed J. Joscelyn, archbishop Parker's secretary, says that he continued his work (*Cat. Hist.*, p. 292, Hearne). Trevisa leaps from 1348 to 1354, and ends 1360. But on these matters I hope to say something more definite on a future opportunity.

Our author mentions at great length, in his second chapter, the authorities from which his history is derived. But before discussing them it may be as well to consider a charge which has been brought against him by Wanley, Nicholson, and others.¹ The first-named author describing the Harleian MS. n. 655, writes thus in his catalogue:—

“ Polycratice temporum, seu Polychronica Rogeri, monachi Cestrensis, quam foedissime defloravit plagiariorum insignissimus, Ranulfus Higden commonachus suus.”² And again, describing n. 1707 of the same collection, he tells us that Ranulph Higden was not the original author of the *Polychronicon*, but an arrant plagiarist (plagiarium maxime insignem).³

Bishop Nicholson repeats the charge, adding reasons which will be best understood and appreciated by citing portions of his accounts of Roger Cestrensis and of Ranulphus Higden, given in his *English Historical Library*.

“ Roger Cestrensis, who was a Benedictine monk of St. Werburg, in Chester . . . wrote a large account of the affairs of this nation. This work he entitled *Polycratice Temporum*, and began it with the coming in of the Romans: he continued it at first no lower than 1314, but added afterwards a supplement of fifteen years more. In the Harleian library there are several MS. copies of this work,⁴ one whereof is frequently marked

¹ Fuller (*Worthies of Chester*) had already asserted: “He vamped ‘the history of Roger aforesaid.’” After Wanley’s time the charge has been often repeated; Bale had indeed given occasion for it.

² Harl. Cat., vol. 1, p. 398. Lond. 1808. This was first published in 1762, long after the author’s death in 1726.

³ Id. vol. 2, p. 180.

⁴ I have examined (somewhat cursorily) all the MSS. of Roger of Chester in the British Museum; viz., Harl. MSS. n. 1707, 1728–9, 1751; Cotton, Julius E. viii. In none of them (so far as I observed) was the name of Roger written by the original scribe. The same remark is to be made of the MS. in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; see below. The Rev. W. Stubbs, M.A., librarian to the Lord Arch-

by Bale's own hand. By comparing these with those of R. Higden in the same noble repository, it is manifest that Ralph stole his pretended work from Roger, disguising it only with his own superscription. For (1) one of the copies of the *Polycraticon* is plainly the numerical book described by Pitts,¹ under the name of Higden. (2) Another of them has *Ran. Cestr.* in a modern hand on its title, instead (as Mr. Wanley probably conjectures) of *Rog. Cestr.* rased out. (3) The forgery is most evident, from comparing a passage relating to the two Caerleons, to one whereof (Chester) the true historian takes notice of his being particularly related ;² which Ralph literally transcribes, adding, *Sicut per capitales hujus primi libri apices clarius patet.* Which is ascertaining the whole chronicle to

bishop of Canterbury, at my request, kindly examined a Lambeth MS. of Roger of Chester, and writes as follows : " The ascription of the Lambeth MS. 112 to Roger of Chester is " not in a contemporary hand. It is " written in the margin, I am pretty " sure in Archbishop Sancroft's " hand, and the title is written on " the label outside in the same " hand: ' Rogeri de Cestriâ Historia " Polychronica.'

" The title of the book I do not " find. It begins, ' Prologus primus " in Historiam Policronicam.

" ' Post præclaros artium.

" ' Præfatio II. At quoniam " præsens Cronica.

" ' Præfatio III. Cupientibus " igitur.'

" It ends in ' ecclesia libertatem ' " (i.e. in 1327). and ' Explicit " ' Historia Policronica.'

" The dates in the later books are " in two columns." We have some " curious phenomena here. The longer

form of the Chronicle is ascribed to Roger, and the title of his book is *Polychronicon*. To myself, as well as to Archdeacon Hardwick, the work seems to be the same as the *Polychronicon* of Higden.

¹ Reference to Pitts might have been spared, as he had never seen the book. " Historiam Ranulphi " multum quæsitam, nunquam inventam, et mihi non visam fætor." (De Illust. Angl. Scriptoribus, p. 516.) This is most extraordinary.

² In MSS. Harl. 1707 and 1751, and in the MS. C.C.C., Cant. n. 259, the clause runs thus : " Est et alia " Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis, " ubi et præsens chronica fuit elaborata, urbs quidem in confinio Angliæ." But in Harl. MS. 1728, we have only this notice : " Est et alia " Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis, " Caerleon sive Caerlegion, urbs " quidem in confinio Angliæ."

himself, according to the villainous contrivance, which we shall mention anon."¹

And again under Higden:—

"If you spell the first letters of the several chapters that begin it, you read: *Præsentem chronicam compilavit Frater Ranulphus monachus Cestrensis*. 'Tis observable, that the plagiarist picks out such capitals, and enlarges them, as are for his wicked purpose, and omits the rest; which is another notorious proof of his knavish forgery."² Now if we compare the accounts of Roger of Chester and of Ranulphus Higden, as given by Bale,³ from whom others do little else but copy, we are immediately struck with their remarkable similarity. Both Benedictine monks of St. Werburg of Chester, both concluding their Universal Chronicle in the time of Edward III., both urged to write it by their fellow-monks, both adding to their original chro-

¹ p. 64. Second ed., Lond. 1714. The first edition was published in 1696. See also Hearne, *Præf. ad Camd. Annal.*, p. 119.

² *Id.* p. 65.

³ "Rogerus de Cestria, Benedictinorum sectæ monachus, et in eadem urbe ad Werburgæ fanum, historiographus illustris, bonarum litterarum campos . . . merito multumque colebat. . . . Hic a suis commilitonibus monachis, præcipue ab ejus loci episcopo patrono suo rogatus, Anglorum historiam a Britannorum, immo ab ipsius mundi origine, usque ad annum Domini 1314, et demum ad annum Christi 1339, Latine docte et elegantè scripsit. In qua, præter authores a Ranulpho Hygdeno numeratos, Nennium, Elvodugi discipulum, et Gildam adducit, Ranulphumque ipsum plusquam 22 annis præcessit, ab Hugone Virleyo in *Historiarum Figuris*

"plerisque in locis citatus. Compositum ergo Rogerus Chronicon, egregium certe, quod vocabatur *Polycratica Temporum*, libris septem. Incipit, '*Intrabo in agros priscorum subsequens*.'"

"*Additiones 15 annorum*, libro uno. Incipit, '*Septimo anno Regis Edwardi Secundi*.' Et alia quædam. Polycraticorum vero primus post Præfationem liber incipit: '*Julius Cæsar divinis humanisque rebus*,' etc. Claruit hic Cestrius anno a Christi nativitate 1339, quo ultimum opus finit, sub Edwardo Tertio, et Cestrius sepelitur." Bale (*Cent. v. n. xlviii. ed. 1569*). Hugo Virley flourished A.D. 1344. He is the only writer before Bale, who mentions Roger of Chester, so far as I know. The *Figuræ Historiarum*, called by Bale "nobile opus," have not been printed. I do not perceive that they even exist.

nicle, both buried at Chester. Indeed there is nothing in Roger's history which differs from Higden's, except so far as concerns (1), their names; (2), the titles of their works; (3), their dates.

(1) With regard to the name, it is very probably by a mere error that Roger is written instead of Ranulphus; in many MSS. of the *Polychronicon* the name of the author is not given at all; and the book is often cited by others simply as the *Polychronicon*, or as *Cestrensis* only; the latter designation seeming to be inconsistent with the notion that *two* monks of Chester wrote Chronicles differing slightly from each other. There was a Roger Frend, afterwards abbot of Chester, in Higden's time, and if he was one of those who urged Higden to compose the chronicle, and assisted him in the compilation, it is not impossible that his name might be attached to the work by some scribes, who were only partially acquainted with the facts of the case.¹ Moreover, as appears from Wanley's probable conjecture, the name of Ranulphus has in one instance at least been substituted for the name of Roger, as though the error had been detected and corrected.

(2) No argument can be founded on the difference of the titles of their works. The *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury is designated in one of our MSS. (B.), and cited in one of the versions, as the *Polychronicon*; and in another MS. used in this edition (C.), we have actually have, "Idcirco eam historiam *Polycratricam*, " a pluralitate temporum quam continet censui hunc cupandam." Indeed, *Polycratrica temporum* could not be used as a title of an Universal History, by any

¹ See Dugdale's *Monast.*, vol. ii. p. 373. He was the eleventh abbot, and held office from A.D. 1240 to 1249. It may appear even more probable that the chronicle was often entitled

only *Cestrensis Polychronicon*, or *R. Cestrensis*, and that *Rogeri* was added by conjecture as the interpretation of the symbol R. which occurs throughout the book.

one who knew the meaning of the word, but in the general ignorance of Greek, the scribes, to whom the *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury was a familiar name, frequently confounded the two words. The work of Higden, moreover, is sometimes called *Polycraticon*: thus our MS. C. has in the colophon: "Expliciunt chronica venerabilis Ranulphi, monachi Cestrensis, in septem libellos distinctæ, dictæque *Historia Polycratonica*." In the sixteenth century Higden's work was known under both titles.¹ It is not altogether impossible that Higden himself may have made the blunder, and corrected it in his later editions; for it is in the earlier MSS., so far as we know, that this error is mostly to be found.

(3) Very little stress can be laid on the slight difference of their dates. "Ranulphum ipsum plus quam xxii. annis præcessit," says Bale; but, by his own account, Roger afterwards continued the chronicle from 1314 to 1339. Now, as many of Higden's earlier copies cease at 1327, and at various years afterwards, it can scarcely be said that there is any difference of time between his and Roger's chronicles.²

The contents of the two chronicles may be said to be identical.³ Higden's work itself appears in a longer

¹ "Vulgo vocatur Polichronicon sive Polycraticon," note on second fly-leaf of our MS. A.

² Bale indeed says, "In qua (historia), præter authores a Ranulpho Hygdeno numeratos, Nennium Elvodugi discipulum et Gildam adducit." This is an error; in this edition the latter of these authors is enumerated among the sources of the history, and he is also quoted in c. xxxviii. With regard to Nennius, he is mentioned in our MSS. C. D. (See p. 24, note 2), as one of the historians used by Higden, but not in the other MSS. or in the versions.

This is one indication among others that the *Polycraticon* of Roger, is nothing else but a form of the *Polychronicon*.

³ Bale mentions that it commences, "Intrabo in agros priscorum:" see this edition, p. 12. Archdeacon Hardwick had printed this note on the word *Intrabo*: "Here begins the so-called 'Polycraticon' of 'Roger of Chester.'" In a copy of Macray's *Manual of British Historians*, p. 36 (Pick. 1845), where Roger of Chester is noticed, he has written: "I have collated 'part of this' (i.e. Harl. MS. 1707,

and in a shorter form; and Roger's *Polycraticon* is only a slightly more abbreviated state of the shorter form.

Upon the whole there seems to be no ground for the charge of plagiarism brought against Higden; and from henceforth dismissing Roger of Chester and his *Polycraticon*, as being things of buckram,¹ we proceed to consider the sources whence the *Polychronicon* was derived.

Authorities
cited by
Higden.

The author recounts at large in his second chapter the names of the writers who are alleged in his *Chronicle*. They are about forty in number,² and it is needless to transcribe them here.³ It will be of more

which Wanley declares to be almost identical with a MS. in which Bale himself has written *Polycratica temporum Rogeri Cestrensis*, and some other late hand has also written *Rogeri Cestrensis Polychronicon*; see Cat. Harl. MSS., vol. 1, p. 180, ed. 1808) "with MS. Nero, D. viii., assigned to Higden, "and find the two works almost "identical. One writer adopts the "title *Polychronicon*, and the other "*Polycraticon*, but for precisely the "same reason. The Harleian is the "better text; the latter MS. (the "Harleian) goes down to 1327, and "there ends with an index." It commences not with "Intrabo," but with "In historico namque con- "textu;" above which a later hand has written, "Post præclaros," &c. By the kindness of the Rev. E. H. Perowne, B.D., I have examined the MS. (numbered 259) of Roger of Chester, in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. Bale's account of him is transcribed on a fly-leaf, but his name does not occur in the MS. itself. It begins (certainly not abruptly) "Intrabo," and

ends A.D. 1338, "statim postea "concuesserunt."

¹ Neither Leland in his *Comment. de Script. Britann.*, nor Henry Wharton, nor R. Gery, who write accounts of Higden, in the Appendix to Cave's *Historia Litteraria*, give Roger a place, or even mention him at all.

² Many authors are quoted in the first volume, which are not included in Higden's catalogue. Thus he refers to the life of John the Almoner, and copies it pretty closely (p. 240); also to Ptolemy the geographer (p. 44); and to Cicero (p. 82); to say nothing of passing allusions to the classics, as to Horace (p. 12), Virgil (pp. 208, 266), Ovid (p. 238), and Juvenal (p. 412); or to the Fathers, as Gregory Nazianzen (p. 8), or Gregory the Great (p. 12). Conversely a large number of the authors named are not quoted at all in this volume.

³ The reader is requested to examine not only the lists, but also the various readings. The MSS. C. and D. give, in addition to the

utility to point out briefly, as the volumes of this edition make their appearance, to whom Higden is principally indebted for his accounts of the history and geography therein severally contained.¹ I proceed, therefore, to indicate the contents of the first book, (which may be seen more fully in the Summary which follows this Introduction,) in connection with the fountains (which are sometimes none of the purest) from which Higden has drawn.

The bombastic and not very intelligible² prologue concluded (c. i.),³ the plan of the work expounded

Contents of
Higden's
first book.

list in our text, the names of Herodotus, Quintilian, and Aulus Gellius. Who this Herodotus (or as Higden writes him Erodotos) is I do not know. He is quoted or alluded to at pp. 172, 290, 296, 386. He names Pompey the Great, also the Picts, and seems to be some Western mediæval chronicler.

¹ In the present volume he quotes Isidore, naming him, about fifty times, and very frequently uses him without naming him at all; he quotes Pliny and Justin about a dozen times each. These last are the only classical authors of whom he makes considerable use, unless Solinus be so designated, who is referred to about half a dozen times. Of the rest, Hugutio, Petrus Comestor, Paulus Diaconus, William of Malmesbury, Bede, and especially Giraldus Cambrensis, are Higden's principal authorities, besides the anonymous *Geographia*, which he never names. His allusions to Augustine and Jerome are rather numerous, but mostly unimportant.

² It is possible that conjecture, or a collation of other MSS., might help the text a little; but I suspect not a great deal. On reflection, I think that *quo adviverent* (p. 2),

though evidently the reading of the MSS. (A., E.), should be changed into *quoad viverent*. Dr. Moberly has very kindly collated for this edition the prologue and also the second chapter (giving names of the authorities) as they stand in the Winchester MS. (see below); but the various readings are few and unimportant. For *quo adviverent* (p. 2) the Winchester MS., *quo advenirent*; for *tulerunt* (p. 6), *contulerunt* (which is better); for *nempc* (p. 6), *namque*; for *reperies* (p. 16), *invenies*; for *Ormesta* (p. 22), *Ornestia*; for *memorabilibus* (p. 22), *memoria*; for *episcopus. Historia* (p. 24), *episcopus de historia*. The other variations are not worth mentioning, being in some cases mere blunders. I have also subsequently collated Gale's excellent MS. (G.) for the same parts, but have not found a single various reading worth recording here.

³ The reader who compares this Introduction with Higden's text, is requested to refer to the chapters by means of the Summary of Contents, as a few of the chapters of the Latin (not English) text are mis-numbered. See *Corrigenda*.

His
physical
geography.

(c. iii., iv.), and the authorities rehearsed (c. ii.), the author proceeds with the first book, which is, as we have already said, a map of the world, or series of descriptions of the principal countries of the ancient and more modern nations. He begins by describing the magnitude of the globe, whose diameter he determines to be 6,491 miles;¹ then the three great parts of the world, and the relations of their magnitudes to one another. After that he proceeds to describe the Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean, c. viii., ix. His principal authorities for these accounts are Isidore of Seville, of whom he makes very extensive use in the first book, and Pliny, to whom he is also largely indebted. Besides these Higden also quotes Giraldus Cambrensis, Bede, Solinus, Paulus Diaconus, and the author of a cosmography, whom he calls Priscianus, but who commonly passes, whether rightly or wrongly, under the name of Æthicus.²

¹ The true mean diameter is 7,912 miles.

² See pp. 22, 40, 42, 50. I now see that Higden only followed the *Geographia Universalis*, of which more below, in which he is called *Prescianus*. The quotation at p. 40 appears thus in Æthicus: "Itaque Julius Cæsar bissextilis rationis inventor, divinis humanisque rebus singulariter instructus, cum consulatus sui fasces erigeret, ex senatus consulto censuit omnem orbem jam Romani nominis admetiri per prudentissimos viros, et omni philosophiæ munere decoratos. . . . Ac sic omnis orbis terræ intra annos xxxii. a dimensoribus peragratus est, et de omni ejus continentia perlatus est ad senatum," p. 26. Ed. Gronov. (ad calc. Pomp. Melæ, Lugd. Bat, 1696.) The readings of C. D., it will be observed here and in other places, agree more

nearly with the original text of the author referred to than the later and larger forms of the chronicle do. The quotation at p. 50 appears thus: "Plurimi qui res divinas (*humanas*, Higden) evidentius agnovērunt duas tantum partes accipientes suadent, id est, Asiam et Europam tantummodo; Africam vero censent Europæ finibus deputandam. * * * Quia et spatio latitudinis caret, et cœli male (*leg. malo*) subjacet climati, laborans aeribus suis, venenis fucisque repleta immanium et incognitarum humani generi innumerabilem bestiarum." Id. pp. 25 and 51. (ubi plura.) These citations will in some degree show the manner in which Higden manipulates his authorities, as well as the difference of treatment in the earlier and later editions. There are several other places in which Higden may perhaps have

Our author, having at length concluded his general Higden's account of earth and sea, which we may call his account of the great physical geography, proceeds to describe the separate divisions of the provinces of Asia, Africa, and Europe. Not to dwell earth. Asia on his speculations on Paradise (c. x.), derived in part and its from Isidore of Seville, Petrus Comestor, and John provinces. Damascene,¹ we pass on to his description of Asia,

used Æthicus, though without acknowledgment *e.g.*, in his description of Tile (Thule), of which Æthicus says (p. 61): "Insula Tilæ, quæ per infinitum a cæteris patet longius secreta, in medio oceani sita, *viz paucis nota*." Compare Higden, c. 31, who refers to Solinus *De Mirabilibus*; Solinus however (*Polyhist.*, c. 22), does not employ the phrase, nor does his original source, Pliny. I now perceive, however, that Orosius (lib. i. c. 2) has almost copied Æthicus; and as Higden certainly knew that author, nothing can be said positively.

For more about Æthicus, who is most probably the same person as Julius Honorius, see Ritschl, in *Rhein. Mus.*, 1842, pp. 481-523. Æthicus is by no means the only author quoted in Higden, which has occasioned me trouble, and I may be permitted to make one or two remarks respecting his citations and allusions in general. When the MSS. agree in the reference to an author, I have not in general thought it worth while to verify it; when otherwise, I have commonly tried to discover (frequently without success) which of the references was the true one. It has sometimes fallen out that an examination of the original authority shows that the true reference is something different to what any of the MSS.

contain. (See pp. 84, 196, &c.). It is much to be feared that some other citations may likewise be erroneous; but in cases where the MSS. agree, the fault ought to be charged upon Higden, not on his editor. To rectify every erroneous reference in a work which is in a great measure made up of quotations from other writers, variously altered and modified, would be an endless task; and indeed would very ill repay the labour in the case of such an author as Higden. However, where the case seemed to require it, I have made some search into the original authority for the statement; but shall be thankful to any one who may discover and inform me respecting errors or omissions on Higden's part or my own.

¹ The text of our edition differs much from the MSS. C. D., so much indeed that a collation is impossible. I now perceive, from a comparison of the *Eulogium Historiarum* (vol. ii. pp. 11-14) that this early text was very much derived from an unpublished work, entitled *Geographia Universalis*, which has been a good deal used by Higden for his description of northern Europe, though he never refers to the book. A copy of the text in D., and of the text of the *Geographia*, is subjoined in an appendix.

which commences with India (c. xi.). His account, which is for the most part fabulous, and relates to monstrous dragons, to the battles of pigmies and cranes, to men of strange conformations, ages, habits, and qualities, and to prophetic trees, which warned Alexander the Great not to enter Babylon,¹ is taken from Isidore, Pliny, Cicero, and Petrus Comestor. He preserves, however, some grains of truth, and describes with tolerable correctness the institutions of caste, the burning of widows, and the natural products. Parthia follows next in order, and the account of its kings and people is derived principally from Justin, some portions being also said to be taken from Isidore and Giraldus. Except that he erroneously designates Phrahates the Fourth, (who is known as Arsaces the Fifteenth,) by the name of "Mithridates, son of Mithridates," his account is conformable to the classical accounts which have come down to us.²

An account of Assyria and the adjoining regions follows (c. xiii.); it has the name of Isidore prefixed to several of the paragraphs, and he is also the authority for some clauses which have no name at their head.³ The account of Babylon is mostly taken from Orosius. Some slight use is also made of Justin,

¹ Compare Jul. Valer. *Res Gest. Alex.*, lib. iii. c. 40, 41. (Ed. Mai.); Pseudo-Alex. *ad Aristot. de Mirab. Ind.* (Sig. Q. ii., ed. Neap. 1555); Vinc. Bel. *Spec. Hist.*, lib. iv. c. 57; Mart. Pol. *Chron.* lib. ii. c. 4., for an account of these wonderful trees.

² Higden refers to Giraldus, dist. 17. for the statement. I do not understand the reference, neither does it appear likely that Giraldus (whose name is written at length in our MS. E.) is his authority at all. Although there is great confusion

about Oriental names in the classical writers, it does not appear (so far as I know) that any of them have called Arsaces xv. by the name of Mithridates. His father's name, moreover, was not Mithridates, but Orodes. See Lindsay's *Hist. and Coinage of the Parthians*, pp. 38-50, Cork, 1852.

³ Thus the description of the boundaries of Syria (p. 100) is taken from Isidore, lib. xiv. c. 3. § 16. Compare also § 15 with Higden's notice of Arabia.

Petrus Comestor, and Josephus. Judea and Jerusalem, as might be anticipated, are more fully described (c. xiv.). His principal authority is still Isidore, but reference is also made to several other writers, as Josephus, Augustine, Jerome, William of Malmesbury, Giraldus, Petrus Comestor. There is little in the account itself on which it is necessary to dwell. The most curious point about it is a change for the better which occurs in the text of MS. E., the latest and purest form, so far as I know, in which the Chronicle has appeared. In the earlier forms of the text, Mount Sion is placed at the north of Jerusalem, in the later at the south.¹ In the following chapter (c. xv.) the description of the Holy Land is concluded, embracing Idumea, Samaria, Galilee, Cedar, and Phenicia. In addition to Isidore, Higden quotes from Hugutio and Pseudo-Methodius. In the notice of Egypt (c. xvi.), Higden refers to Petrus Comestor, Bede, Jerome, and Isidore; from the last-named author he has derived some statements without acknowledgment. In common with various ancient writers, to whom he makes only a vague allusion, he considers that the Nile has its

¹ The reference is to William of Malmesbury "*De Regibus*;" the versions add falsely *libro primo*. The passage runs thus: "Fons intra nullus, sed cisternis ad hoc præparatis colliguntur latices, siti civium profuturi; quod ipsius urbis situs, supercilio ab aquilone montis Sion incipiens, ita sit molli clivo dispositus, ut pluvia ibi decidens nequam lutum faciat, sed instar fluviorum vel cisternis excipiat, vel per portas defluens torrentem Cedron augeat." *Gest. Reg. Angl.*, lib. iv. § 367 (vol. ii. pp. 561, 562. Engl. Hist. Soc.). The text of E. expresses the sense of Malmesbury: "Urbis ipsius situs ab austro (aqui-

"lone, A. B.) montem Syon habens, molli clivo versus boream (austum, A. B.) descendens sic dispositus ut pluvia stillans nequam lacum (lutum, B. and Malm.) faciat, sed instar rivulorum in cisternis excipiat, vel saltem per portas effluens torrentem Cedron adaugeat," p. 108. Here again it is instructive to observe the variations of expression between the text of the original author and the text of Higden. In the earliest form of Higden's text, which some would call Roger's *Polycraticon*, the whole passage based on William of Malmesbury is omitted.

sources in Ethiopia, not far from Mount Atlas.¹ It will be observed that Egypt in his cosmography forms a part of Asia.

Higden next proceeds to describe Scythia at some length (c. xvii.), following Justin almost entirely; the same chapter contains also brief notices of Bactria, the Caucasus, Hyrcania, Albania, Gothia, Armenia, and Mount Ararat. For his descriptions of these countries he quotes no authorities, except Albertus Magnus for some details about Mount Atlas, but his principal source of information is, as usual, Isidore.² His Gothia seems to include parts of Scandinavia and of Russia, both European and Asiatic.

In the following chapter (c. xviii.) he concludes his account of Asia, mentioning in a very brief manner Cappadocia, (which he distinguishes from Asia Minor,) and the following provinces of Asia Minor: Bithynia, Galatia, Phrygia, Lydia, Pamphylia, and Cilicia. He has made much use of the New Testament in his notices of these, and also of Isidore,³ whom, however,

¹ This is the view of Julius Honorius, p. 19 (ed. Gronov. ad calc. Pomp. Melæ), of Æthicus (u. s. p. 50); also of Solinus (c. xxvii. and c. xxxii.), and of his original author Pliny (lib. v. c. 10, where see Harduin's note, who refers to Marcianus Capella, Ammianus Marcellinus, and Xiphilinus; also lib. viii. c. 32, where he speaks more positively). Since this note was written, I have seen Mr. Vaux's paper, *On the Knowledge of the Ancients on the Sources of the Nile*. Trans. Roy. Soc. Lit., vol. viii. (new series) pp. 35-66, which contains much curious information on a subject which has just acquired a new interest.

² Compare Isid. Hisp., lib. xiv. c. 8, § 2 (for the Caucasus); c. 3,

§ 33 (for Hyrcania); c. 3, § 34 (for Albania); lib. ix. c. 2, § 89 (for Gothia, where, however, Higden substitutes *Gothos* for *Getas* in his text); lib. xiv. c. 3, § 35 (for Armenia). In Higden's account, however, are some things not contained in Isidore. Thus his short notice of Bactria seems not to be taken from him, but it is so unimportant that it is hardly worth while to inquire more particularly. Neither is it the same as that in the *Geographia Universalis* and the *Eulogium*.

³ Compare Isid. Hisp., lib. xiv. c. 3, § 37 (for Cappadocia, who also places it to the east of Asia Minor); § 38 (for Asia Minor); § 39 (for Bithynia); § 40 (for Ga-

he does not professedly quote. The chapter concludes with a more extended account of Amazonia (which he makes partly in Europe and partly in Asia), which is principally taken from Justin, and partly (with some expressions of dissent) from Isidore.¹ He also quotes from the apocryphal "Historia Alexandri" the letters of Thalestris, queen of the Amazons, to Alexander the Great, and that monarch's gracious reply.² These are the original sources of the account of Amazonia, and which it is important to indicate; but there is no doubt that Higden has taken his notice of this, as well as of some other countries, almost entire from the *Geographia Universalis*, of which more hereafter, in which the same authorities as he quotes are quoted also, and in the same order, or nearly so, with some verbal alterations.³

The nineteenth and twentieth chapters contain an account of Africa, from which Egypt is excluded. Still following Isidore, he discusses the etymology of the name, and runs rapidly over the provinces of Ethiopia, Libya, Tripolis, Gætulia, and Mauretania, dwelling somewhat more particularly on the foundation of Carthage and its date, maintaining, against Virgil and Dares Phrygius, that Eneas could not have seen

Africa and
its provinces.

latia); § 41 (for Phrygia; making, however, Phrygia the daughter of Æeopus, not of Europa); § 43 (for Lydia, which Higden has copied almost bodily); § 44 (for Pamphylia, which Isidore also identifies with Isauria, though he does not create a "Seleucus Antiochus" as the founder of Seleucia); §§ 45 and 46 (for Cilicia and Lycia; the identification, however, of Lycia with Lycaonia is an error with which Isidore is not chargeable). Some of the deviations from Isidore are to be found in the *Geographia*.

¹ Just., lib. ii. c. 4; Isid. Hisp., lib. ix. c. 2, § 64.

² "Ejusmodi Historiæ Alexandri " in bibl. Leidensi aliisque servantur " MSS." Harl. in Fabr. *Bibl. Græc.*, vol. iii. p. 34 (Hamb. 1783). Cardinal Mai has since published two such works, one of which is ascribed to Julius Valerius, but they do not contain these letters. Martinus Polonus, however (*Chron.* lib. ii. c. 4.), gives the same letters in substance, but writes *Callistrata* for *Thalestris*.

³ See Haydon's *Introd. to Eulog. Hist.*, vol. ii. xxxii. (note).

Dido. He maintains the view of Justin, that Carthage was founded 72 years before Rome, and confirms it by the authority of Papias.¹ In the course of his remarks on these regions he acknowledges his obligations to Josephus, Gregory the Great, Marianus, Augustine, and Hugutio. His account of the marvels and monstrous people of Africa seems to be mostly taken from Solinus² (or from Pliny, whom he epitomizes), though no authority is cited for the statements made.

Europe and
its pro-
vinces.

Higden now proceeds (cap. xxi.) to describe Europe, which occupies the remainder of the book. He begins with an account of northern Europe, which is in good part derived from Isidore³ and the *Geographia*,⁴ and passes lightly over the provinces of Scythia, Alania, Mœsia, Sclavia or Slavonia, and Pannonia. In his account of the last, he makes mention of the

¹ This Papias is the author of the *Elementarium*; in which the passage occurs under *Carthago*; and I should suppose that he is the same that Grabe mentions, "cujus (Papiæ, sc.) *Syngrammata* allegantur" in *Chronica Demonstratione* Alla-til, libro de Simeonum scriptis "suffixa, p. 22." Routh, *Rel. Sacr.*, tom. i. p. 43 (ed. alt.) I learn from Dr. Lightfoot that the famous passage about our Lord's brethren, referred to Papias, the apostolic father, by Routh and others, occurs in the *Elementarium* of this medieval Papias, who, no doubt, takes it from Jerome.

² Compare Solinus, capp. 30-31, with p. 158 of Higden.

³ See Isid. Hisp., lib. xiv. c. 4, § 1-5 (for Europe generally, and for Scythia, Alania, and Mœsia); lib. xiii. c. 21, § 24 (for Tanais). He says scarcely anything about

Pannonia (lib. xiv. c. 4, § 5), and about Sclavia nothing at all. The accounts of Scythia, Alania, and Mœsia, in the *Geographia*, do not closely resemble those in Higden.

⁴ For Pannonia and Sclavia see *Eulog. Hist.*, lib. iv. c. 66 and 67, and Mr. Haydon's preface, vol. ii. p. xxxviii., and the notes, where the deviations from the *Geographia* are given. The account of the latter is generally fuller and more accurate than Higden, and there seems to be no doubt that the *Geographia* is the parent of much in the *Polychronicon*, and not *vice versa*. I should be glad to discover the *Herodotus*, from whom these two works and the *Eulogium* so often borrow. It might, perhaps, be worth while to print the *Geographia*, as so much use has been made of it by other writers.

Huns, professing to derive his information from an author whom he calls Herodotus, but in truth taking his notice, citations inclusive, from the *Geographia*.

The twenty-second chapter is taken up with a description of Greece and its provinces. The classical authorities referred to are Justin, Varro, and Ovid, from whom are derived notices of the early history of Athens, the contest of Neptune with Minerva, the Delphian oracle, Deucalion's flood, and an allusion to Tempe; also an account of the colonization of Tarentum by the Spartans after the siege of Messene, which latter city he strangely places in Apulia, confusing it apparently with the Sicilian Messana. In the description of the provinces he principally follows Isidore,¹ and gives some details about Constantinople from William of Malmesbury. He refers also for smaller matters to Giraldus Cambrensis and Petrus Comestor.

Higden's account of Italy (c. xxiii.) is for the most part taken from Isidore, one citation being also made from Pliny. The conclusion of the chapter relates the origin and progress of the Lombards, and is derived wholly from Paulus Diaconus.

From Italy generally, Higden proceeds to a description of Rome in particular, which is made up of a strange assemblage of absurdities. A large part of these are derived from a small tract, whose author is generally considered to be unknown, though styled by Higden Magister Gregorius.² Its title is *Mirabilia Urbis Romæ*, and so popular did it become, that it

¹ See lib. xiv. c. 4, § 7-16. But some touches are due to the *Geographia*, e.g., the barbarous word *Helladia*. See Haydon, *u. s.*, p. xxxix., and the *Eulogium*, lib. iv. capp. 73-77.

² I transcribed the following extracts from a copy in the British Museum, supposed to be printed

about 1473. It consists of six leaves. In the description of the palace of Peace we read: "Ubi posuit Romulus suam statuam dicens: 'Hæc statua non cadet, donec virgo pariat.' Et statim cum B. Virgo peperit, statua corruit." (fol. 1, b). Compare Higden, p. 214. The section *De agulea* (sic) *S. Petri*, con-

went through more than 30 editions in the fifteenth century, apart from the translations into German and into Italian which were printed in the same period.¹ Other marvels are transcribed from the *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury. The reader, who has any taste for the investigation of such matters, may consult the recent work of Dr. Gregorovius, *Geschichte der Stadt Rom im Mittelalter* (of which the first volume appeared at Stuttgart in 1859), in which the medieval

cludes with six rhyming lines, of which the last three are :

“ Regia structura, quanta non extat
in aula.

“ Si lapis est unus, [dic] qua fuit
arte levatus :

“ Et si sunt plures, dic ubi con-
geries.” (Fol. 2, b.)

Compare Higden, p. 226, where the lines are read differently. Again :
“ Infra capitolium fuit palatium pro
“ magna parte aureum et lapidibus
“ pretiosis ornatum, quod dicebatur
“ valere tertiam partem mundi, in
“ quo tot statuæ imaginum erant,
“ quot erant mundi provinciæ, et
“ habebat quælibet imago tintinna-
“ bulum in collo per artem mathe-
“ maticam dispositum, ut quando ali-
“ qua regio Romano populo rebellis
“ efficeretur, statim [imago] illius
“ provinciæ vertebat dorsum imagini
“ urbis Romanæ, quæ major erat
“ super alias imagines tanquam do-
“ mina ; et sic tintinnabulum quod
“ habebat ad collum statim resona-
“ bat. Tunc vates, qui capitolii
“ quoque erant custodes, referebant
“ illud senatui.” (fol. 3 b). Com-
pare Higden, pp. 216, 218. Again :
“ Tempore imperatoris Tiberii ve-
“ nerunt Romam duo philosophi
“ juvenes, scilicet Praxitelis (sic)
“ et Phidias,” &c., as in Higden,

p. 226, q. v., but more briefly. (fol. 4.) The author likewise gives an account of the Colosseum and the Pantheon, which may be compared with those in Higden. It appears from Mr. Dyer's elaborate article *Roma*, in Smith's Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geography, that this treatise “ was the first attempt at a regular “ description of ancient Rome.” He mentions that it has been edited with notes by Nibby (*Ephemeride Letterarie*, Rome, 1820). See also Montfaucon, *Diar. Ital.*, c. 20.

¹ See Hain's *Repertorium*, vol. iii. pp. 414–421 (n. 11,174–11,220). Harding, in his *Confutation of the Apology of Jewel* (fol. 166, b., Antwerp, 1565), ascribes the *Mirabilia* to Martinus Polonus. “ The “ like fables and fond lyes he (Mar- “ tine of Pole) stuffed an other “ booke withall, which he wrote, “ entitled *Mirabilium urbis Romæ*.” Many of the worst absurdities of the *Mirabilia* are related in his Chronicle, e.g. the story of Praxiteles and Phidias, *Chron.* lib. i. c. 7, where we further learn that the temple of crystal and gold (see Higden, p. 214) was the Colosseum ! Whether however he is the author of the treatise is uncertain.

legends are recounted with a patience and diligence rarely to be found except in a German. Willingly passing over these, I have only further to observe that Higden makes considerable use of *Martinus Polonus* in his account of the construction of the city,¹ and has also drawn upon Virgil, Livy, Solinus, William of Malmesbury,² and some very late verses, whose author does not appear, for various particulars embraced in his account.

In the following chapter (xxv.) Higden gives some account of certain institutions of the Romans, which is mostly taken from the *Etymologies* of Hugutio, which seem not to have been printed.³ He has also used in a much smaller degree Ovid, Valerius Maximus, Isidore, and John of Salisbury, and in one instance, unfortunately, the *Legenda Aurea*. Upon the whole, this chapter is a much more historical and trustworthy compilation than that which went before it.

Leaving the old world, Higden now approaches the countries of modern Europe, and, beginning with Germany, makes his way westward to Britain, with which his "Map of the World" concludes. His somewhat meagre notice of Germany (c. xxvi.) is due in part to Isidore, also to Paulus Diaconus (from whom he takes the beautiful legend of the Seven Sleepers), to Bede, and to Pliny. Numerous particulars of his account in this and in many of the following chapters are derived from a source to which he has not referred, but which exists in manuscript under the title of *Geographia Uni-*

¹ See *Mart. Pol. Chron.*, lib. i. capp. 4-7; lib. iv. cap. *Domitianus*, &c.

² The verses, however, of Hildebert appear thus in William's, fourth book (§ 351, p. 537, Hardy):

"Par tibi Roma nihil, cum sis prope tota ruina ;

"Quam magni fueris integra, fracta doces."

³ I have consulted a MS. of this work in the Cambridge University Library, and found that Higden had correctly quoted it in all the cases where it seemed worth while to verify his references.

versalis. The author is unknown, but it is quite clear that Higden, as well as the author of the *Eulogium Historiarum*, is under considerable obligations to him.¹ The time at which he lived does not appear to have been investigated; the manuscript itself is of the 14th century, and probably the author himself is little, if at all, older.²

The opening sentence of his account of France (c. xxvii.) is taken without acknowledgment from Isidore.³

¹ Mr. Haydon, to whose valuable introduction to the *Eulogium Historiarum* (published in this series) I am much indebted, points out the chapters in that work which are taken from the Polychronicon and from the *Geographia*, and mentions the deviations *very minutely*. The reader who compares those chapters in the *Eulogium* borrowed from the *Geographia* with the chapters in Higden which treat of the same countries, will see at once that many of his statements, *for which he gives no authority*, are taken from this book. Thus, to take a crucial instance, the *Geographia* (fol. 4 b.) says of the Auroch: "Et hoc animal 'lingua Boemica *Loz* nuncupatur" (*Intr. to Eulog.* vol. ii. p. xl. (note.) This is altered in the *Eulogium* into, "In lingua nostra nomen igno-
tur" (vol. ii. p. 72), but in Higden, p. 256, we have the identical statement: "Quod lingua Boemica 'Leoz (*Loz*, A) vocatur." This clause excepted, most of of his account is tacitly taken from Pliny (lib. viii. c. 16). It was with no small satisfaction that I discovered, with Mr. Haydon's help, the source of not a few passages, or parts of passages, which I had in vain endeavoured to find elsewhere. I now

perceive also that some of Higden's authorities have been taken by him from the *Geographia*. All the quotations from Herodotus (so called) are, I believe, derived from this work. The *Geographia* also repeatedly quotes Isidore, but although Higden uses the same quotations, he is so familiar with him that he cannot be said to be beholden to any other writer for them. I have now examined the MS. of the *Geographia* in the British Museum (Arundel MSS. n. 123) since this Introduction was in type, and have traced Higden's statements to their origin in some cases, where the notes on the *Eulogium* did not conduct me to them.

² He quotes Petrus Comestor, who lived at the end of the 12th century, and an Alexander, who is doubtless Neckham, who lived a little later. See Appendix. The same quotations are reproduced in Higden, but in this introduction the authors, from whom the citations are professedly made, are called *his* authorities, even though they may have been taken at second hand.

³ Higden's mistake in reading *lumectentur* for *innectuntur* in Virgil is his own. Lactantius, the fountain head of the account, has

The more important parts of this chapter, relating to the succession of the early French kings, are taken from William of Malmesbury; other parts are derived from Ovid, Augustine, Hugutio, and Giraldus; also from those untrustworthy authorities, Turpin, and Geoffrey of Monmouth.¹ Higden likewise professes to quote from Herodotus, and from the second book of Eutropius, but the reference is false in each case, and some other authors are intended.² This chapter is mostly occupied with an account of the various tribes and dynasties of France from the times of Julius Cæsar downwards, and with a general outline of its geography. In that which follows (c. xxviii.) he enters on a description of the limits and positions of the provinces in particular, which seems to be for the most part taken from the *Geographia*;³ but reference is made on certain points to Giraldus, Isidore, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Pliny, and also to Herodotus, but falsely as always. His observations respecting the woollen cloth

committed the error about the Sibyl. See Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2. § 104, vol. iii. p. 414 (ed. Arev.) and the notes. I had overlooked this in writing the note at p. 266.

¹ Warton (*Hist. Eng. Poetry*, vol. i. *diss.* 1) has many remarks on these writers. He thinks that the fabulous history ascribed to Turpin is not older than the 12th century. Pope Calixtus II. in 1122, it seems, pronounced the history to be genuine!

² Herodotus is quoted as giving an account of the Picts, p. 294. The second book of Eutropius is quoted for an account of the Gauls, in which it might very naturally have occurred; but there is no such passage either in that book or in the whole of his history, so far as I

know. It occurs, however, in Mart. Pol. *Chron.*, lib. ii. c. 6, who says, "Galli vero, ut Orosius ait, sunt animo feroces, corpora fortiora aliis hominibus habentes. Sed hoc comprobatum est, quod sicut in primo impetu virtus eorum fortior est aliis hominibus, ita postea virtus eorum minor est ferme quam mulierum." Possibly he has in his eye Oros. lib. v. c. 16 (compare also lib. vi. c. 12), with whom Higden's words agree more nearly than his own. With the expression of Orosius (p. 329 Hav.), "Post ubi incalescente sole fluxa Gallorum corpora in modum nivium distabuerunt," compare Higden, p. 268.

³ For Flanders, compare *Geographia*, fol. 8 (almost copied); for Picardy, *Geogr.* fol. 17 (very similar);

of Brabant¹ and Flanders (which he includes under France) as compared with the scarlet cloth of Lincoln are not without interest, and are probably derived from his own knowledge and observation.

His notice of Spain (c. xxix.) is but slight, and is principally taken from Justin and Isidore. The concluding remark about the Spanish possessions of the Saracens, as they then existed, is found only in the later form of the chronicle, and may be original.² In the thirtieth chapter the islands of the Mediterranean are described. For a great part of the account Higden is indebted to Isidore, not only for those sentences to which his name is prefixed, but likewise for much besides.³ His account of Sicily is partly taken from Bede and Giraldus, as well as from Isidore. He also mentions St. Gregory's notion that souls are tormented in the flames of Etna. The only other author quoted in this unimportant chapter is Orosius.

for Normandy, *Geogr.* fol. 14 (which Higden abbreviates); for Poitou, *Geogr.* fol. 16, b.; for Aquitaine, the *Geogr.* fol. 3 (which gives, as the sources of the information, Isidore, Pliny, and Orosius); for Gascony, the *Geogr.* fol. 22, which however has not the latter part of Higden's description; and for Burgundy, the *Geogr.* fol. 4, b., which is pretty closely copied. The descriptions of Brittany (p. 290), and Anjou (p. 294), do not coincide with those in the *Geographia*, fol. 4 and fol. 3.

¹ The account of Brabant is not from the *Geographia*, where it is made a part of Germany (fol. 4).

² It does not occur in the account of Hispania, given in the *Geographia* (fol. 11).

³ See Isidore, lib. xiv. c. 6, § 7 (for Gades); § 39, 40 (for Sardinia); § 41 (for Corsica); § 19, 20

(for the Cyclades); § 21 (for Delos); § 22 (for Rhodes); § 31 (for Samos); § 14 (for Cyprus, in part); § 15, 16 (for Crete); § 32 (for Sicily); lib. xiii. c. 18, § 3, 4, 5 (for Scylla and Charybdis); lib. xiv. c. 6, § 36 (for the Æolian Islands); lib. xvi. c. 2 (for the salt of Agrigentum). The short notice of Aradus has nothing but what is contained in Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2, § 24, and Ezek., xxvii. 8, 11. Higden, however, took it with little alteration from the *Aradia sive Aradium* of the *Geographia* (fol. 1, b.), which refers to the *Glossa* on Ezekiel. Even when *Ranulphus* is prefixed to a sentence the matter is taken from Isidore, who writes, lib. xiv. c. 6, § 36, thus: "Eadem "insulæ et Vulcaniæ vocantur "quod et ipsæ, sicut Ætna, "ardeant." See Higden, p. 318.

The islands of the Atlantic (including the Baltic) follow upon these (c. xxxi.) The description of the Canaries, or Fortunate Islands, is taken from Pliny and Isidore. His account of Denmark, which he and other medieval writers call Dacia,¹ is likewise in part taken from Isidore, though without acknowledgment. Higden however has misapplied his authority, for Isidore undoubtedly intended by Dacia the Roman province on the Danube usually so called.²

For his notices of some other parts of Northern Europe, Wyntlandia, Islandia, and Norguegia, he gives no authority, but there is no doubt that he has again made considerable use of the *Geographia Universalis*. By the first of these, which he describes as an island lying to the west of Dacia, he seems to intend the northern part of Jutland, which is indeed not very far from being an island.³ His account of Iceland and Norway deals principally with their natural productions. The great imperfection of his geographical

¹ See, for example, Henry of Huntingdon, and his copyist, B. Cotton (edited in this series), *passim*; also the Index to Petrie's *Mon. Hist. Brit. &c.* "When the Danes," says Dr. Latham, "took their place" in history, they had not long been "known under that name, before they were attributed to Attila, and Scandinavia became a part of Hundom. Why? Because the *Daci* were more or less Hun; and because, as early as the time of Procopius, we find them called *Dani*, the *Dani* (in after times) being called *Daci*." Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.*, vol. i. p. 1094. s. v. *Hunni*. To make confusion worse confounded Denmark is called *Danubia* in the Abingdon Chronicle (vol. i. p. 46).

² "*Daci autem Getarum soboles*

"*fuerunt, et dictos putant Dacos, quasi Dagos, quia de Gothorum stirpe creati sunt.*" *Isid.*, lib. ix. c. 2, § 90, who copies Justin's words: "*Daci quoque soboles Getarum sunt*," lib. xxxii. c. 3. See Higden, p. 320.

³ In Spruner's *Hist. Atl.*, t. 57, this tract is marked *Wendila*, which seems to be the same word. In the *Eulogium Historiarum*, however (vol. ii. p. 78), *Wynlandia* or *Winlandia* is thus described: "*Winlandia est patria juxta montana Norwegiæ versus Orientem sita, super littus oceani; . . . globum de filo faciunt*," &c. This is taken *verbatim* from the *Geographia* (fol. 22 b.), and is plausibly understood by Mr. Haydon to mean Finland, and I now incline to believe that Higden ought to have

knowledge of these regions at once reveals itself by his description of Norway (in which he doubtless includes Sweden) as an island, surrounded everywhere by the sea.¹ He also conceived Iceland as lying to the north of Norway.² His description of Thule, or, as he miscalls it, Tile, is taken from Pliny, Solinus, and Giraldus; he also derives something, as has been already observed, though without acknowledgment, from Æthicus. He thinks it necessary to distinguish from this another island, near India, called Tylos, mentioned by St. Augustine.³ Thule is still, as Æthicus long ago said, "vix paucis nota;" and it is impossible to say where Higden supposed it to lie.

His description of the British isles.

Our author at length approaches the British isles, and begins by Ireland, which begins by the thirty-second chapter, and ends with the thirty-sixth. In this lengthy account he incorporates almost everything which Solinus had written,⁴ and makes one or two

meant Finland also, but in describing the island as lying to the west of Denmark, he seems to have confused Wendila with the Winlandia whose description he has taken from the *Geographia*. Neither Wyntlandia nor Wynlandia are ordinary forms; Finlandia, Finnia, and Finnonia are the only Latin renderings of Finland mentioned in Lloyd's edition of the *Dict. Hist.* of C. Stephens (Genev. 1693). Neither does Zedler (*Universal Lexicon*, s. v. *Finland*) throw any light upon the matter.

¹ He has, doubtless, misunderstood his authority, the *Geographia*, which says (fol. 14), "Norwegia latissima est Europæ provincia mari fere undique circumcincta;" but Higden omits the *fere* and calls it *insula*, p. 326. Most of his de-

scription is transferred, with alterations, from the *Geographia*.

² Our author was misled by the *Geographia*, which, describing Norway, says: "Ab oriente habet Galliam (!), a septentrione Islandiam (sic), ubi mare perpetuo congelatur; ab occidente et Hibernicum oceanum et Britannicum; a meridie Daciæ (i.e. Denmark) et Gothiæ finibus terminatur." The description of Iceland, however, in Higden is mostly taken from Giraldus Cambrensis. *Top. Hib.* ii. 13.

³ Aug. *De Civ. Dei*, lib. xxi. c. 5, § 1 (and the note of the Benedictine editor); Plin. lib. vi. c. 32, on which Harduin observes that it is the modern *Querimi*.

⁴ C. xxii. He observes: "Illic nullus anguis." This may well

remarks on the authority of Bede and a martyrology.¹ But so nearly the whole of his account is taken from Giraldus Cambrensis,² that it is unnecessary to add much about it in this place. With regard to St. Patrick's purgatory in Lough Derg, of which little is said by Giraldus,³ the following passage from Archbishop Usher will satisfy most readers. "Quæ vero de Patricii feruntur Purgatorio, non modo Ranulphus Cestrensis, Henricus Knighton, et Johannes Brampton, sed etiam Matthæus Parisiensis, Vincentius Bellovacensis, et Antoninus Florentinus ex eo mutuati sunt libello, quem de Oëni cujusdam militis Hibernici in Patricianum purgatorium ingressu, ex Gilleberti Ludensis monachi relatione, in lucem edidit Henricus, Cisterciensis ordinis in Saltereyensi apud Huntingdonienses monasterio cœnobita." *Britt. Eccl. Antiq.*

account for Higden's scepticism about St. Patrick, who regards the common legend as "sufficiently favorable," p. 338.

¹ A Life of St. Brigid, the saint referred to, goes under the name of Cogitosus, in which *Scotia* is used for *Ireland* (See Canis. *Thes. Mon. Eccl.*, vol. i. 416.), and probably the same may be true of her other biographies, which are numerous. (See Hardy, *Descr. Cat. of Materials of British History*, vol. i. p. 720.) Mr. Wright thinks it later than the 6th century, when it is supposed to have been written. (*Hist. of Ireland*, vol. i. p. 29, note.)

² The reader may pick out the pieces of Giraldus, by comparing Higden's sentences in order, thus:—

Cap. xxxii. of Higden is contained in Girald. *Top. Hib.* iii. 7; i. 1; ii. 1; i. 2; i. 4; i. 25, 26, 27; i. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11; i. 22; i. 5 (referring to Bede and Solinus); i. 4;

i. 18; i. 7; i. 18 (also reading *philomenæ* for *philomelæ*); i. 22, 23, 25.

Cap. xxxiii. in the same work, iii. 1, 2, 3, 4 (reading *Sangandius*), 5; iii. 16 (reading *Herymon*); iii. 7, 8; iii. 36, 37, 38; iii. 40; iii. 43 (reading *Sitaracus*), 44, 45, 46.

Cap. xxxiv. (after the reference to Solinus) in iii. 10 (reading *phalings*, which is perhaps better), 11; iii. 19, 20, 21 (confirming Gale's emendation *ars quam Mars*), 22, 23, 24; iii. 26; iii. 35; ii. 19; ii. 1; ii. 43.

Cap. xxxv. in ii. 4, 5, 6, 7; ii. 28; ii. 9; ii. 19; ii. 7; ii. 42, 43; ii. 29. (The conclusion of the chapter, pp. 370–376, is not contained in Giraldus.)

Cap. xxxvi. in ii. 55; iii. 27, 28, 29; iii. 32, 33, 34. (The quotation from Augustine, p. 380, is not in Giraldus.)

³ See his *Top. Hib.* ii. 5.

c. xvii., p. 465 (ed. 1687), where a great deal more information will be found.¹

A short chapter on Scotland follows (c. xxxvii.), for which Bede, Isidore, and Giraldus are quoted, as well as the Herodotus before mentioned. Higden has misunderstood his authorities to some extent,² and upon the whole his account is of very little value, and for the most part legendary.³

At length Higden concludes with a description of his own country, "on account of which his whole work was undertaken." He takes Wales first, and England afterwards. His description of Wales is written in a lame kind of rhyming verse, occupying one long chapter (c. xxxviii.); and the only authority whom he quotes is Gildas, and him only once.

¹ It appears from Mr. Hardy's *Descriptive Catalogue of Materials of British History* (vol. 1. p. 859.), that this choice production has been printed "in almost every language of Europe."

² Thus Isidore is represented as saying: "Hujus Scotiæ (Scotland) incolæ dicuntur Scoti propria lingua;" but that author (lib. ix. c. 2, § 103) appears to me to mean the Irish by Scoti. Elsewhere (lib. xiv. c. 6, § 6) he says: "Scotia, eadem et Hibernia, proxima Britanniciæ insula." Further Higden appears to have no authority from Bede, or from any writer but Giraldus, for saying that Scotland was ever called *Hibernia*. The Scoti of Bede in all the places quoted seem to be Irishmen, and the Hibernia in which they dwell to be Ireland. Higden rightly enough observed that Ireland was called Scotia in St. Brigid's Life; but the converse, that Scotland is called in

old writers *Hibernia*, does not seem to be correct.

³ For the legend of St. Andrew Higden refers to Giraldus, but like several other citations which purport to be from him, I know not where to find it. "Eadem etiam de re," i.e., the translation of St. Andrew's relics from Constantinople, says Usher, "scripsisse Giraldum in Chronica sua, refert Eulogii auctor; ad ea respiciens, quæ ex Giraldo Cambrensi, libro i. Polychronici sui, cap 37, Ranulphus Cestrensis inseruit. Ejusmodi argumenti commentariolum in manibus habeo, ab Andreapolito quodam Culdeo exaratum; . . . illum certe fuisse, ex quo sua descripsit Giraldus, res ipsa indicat." *Britt Eccles. Antiq.*, c. xv. p. 341 (Lond. 1687). Usher then gives the document at length, which agrees substantially (but by no means verbally) with Higden.

The whole of his account however, or very nearly so, is taken from the *Itinerarium Cambriæ* and the *Cambriæ Descriptio* of Giraldus.¹ Under these circumstances we pass over the account without further remark, than that some few touches about the Welsh manners and Welsh productions may be due to Higden's personal knowledge or to the reports which he had heard from others.

The remaining chapters of this book contain an

¹ For Higden's account of the veneration of bells, &c. in Wales, p. 428, compare Girald. *Itin. Camb.*, lib. i. c. 2; of Brecknock and its marvels, p. 412, *Id.* lib. i. c. 2; for the Welsh bowmen, p. 402, *Id.* lib. i. c. 4. (allusion doubtful); for Goldcliff, p. 412, *Id.* lib. i. c. 5; for Barry island, p. 414, *Id.* lib. i. c. 6 (very closely copied); for the three courts (*curiæ*) of Wales, p. 400, *Id.* lib. i. c. 9; for the Pembroke demons, p. 416, *Id.* lib. i. c. 12; for Crucmaur (*Cruc Mawr*, Giraldus) and its wonderful tumulus, p. 416, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 3; for the weapons of North and South Wales, p. 400, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 5; for the Bardesey island, p. 416, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 6; for the marvellous stone in Anglesey, and Count Hugh's experiment upon it, p. 424, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 7; for the rock of the hearers, p. 426, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 7; for the mice and the monks, p. 426, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 7; for the vindictive character of the Welsh and Irish saints, p. 426, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 7; for the two Merlins, pp. 418-422, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 8 (very closely copied); for the mountains of Snowdon and their rich pastures, p. 422, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 9; for their lakes and one-eyed trout and other marvels, p. 422, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 9 (where Giraldus has *trutæ* for *turti*); for the

well at Ruthelan, pp. 422-424, *Id.* lib. ii. c. 9; for the Trojan descent of the Welsh, p. 394, *Id.* *Camb. Descript.* c. 3; for the civil and ecclesiastical divisions of Wales, p. 400, *Id.* c. 4; for the names Cambria and Wallia, p. 396, *Id.* c. 7; for the manners of the Welsh, pp. 400-412, *Id.* c. 8-18 (but Higden has some details about dress, &c., which are not there contained); for the fertility of the country and its products, pp. 396-398, *Id.* c. 6 and 8 (but Higden here again has some things not in Giraldus). The blood in St. Winifrid's well seems to be the only marvel related by Higden, not to be found in these works of Giraldus, for which see Camden's notes on Girald. *Itin. Camb.*, lib. ii. c. 10.

One or two of the absurd stories related by Giraldus are also to be found in Nennius, as those about the wonderful stone of Anglesey, and the tumulus at Crucmaur, near Cardigan. See his *Hist.*, c. 84. and c. 87, and the notes in Petrie's *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, p. 80. Nearly the whole of Higden's metrical account is transferred into the *Eulogium*, but very inaccurately. Mr. Haydon (vol. ii. pref. p. li.) does not seem to have been aware that Giraldus is the authority from whom Higden took almost everything.

account of England, which must be discussed in the following volume.

Credibility
and value
of Higden,
as an his-
torian.

I have thus far briefly gone over the chapters of Higden's first book herein-after contained, with a view to indicate the authorities upon which they profess to depend; at the same time, when I could, I have pointed out his sources of information when he has himself withheld them, as in his chapters on the islands of the Mediterranean, on Northern Europe, and on Wales. Such cases also as I have observed of erroneous citations, those for example of Priscian, Eutropius, and Herodotus, have been pointed out, and in one or two instances corrected. At the same time, I fear that there are more errors of citation than I have myself discovered, and an increased knowledge of Higden has more and more convinced me of his inaccuracy. Not, indeed, that this fault is to be very severely dealt with, when we bear in mind the age in which he lived; but it is not the less a cause of disquiet and perplexity to his editor. We have also to regret that Higden has drawn so much from untrustworthy authorities. For recounting the Trojan origin of the European nations, and the absurdities which had clustered about the history of Alexander the Great, and a variety of fabulous narratives relating to distant lands and ancient times, we ought not to tax Higden severely; more especially as in some cases, for example when repeating the marvels current about Rome, he expresses doubts respecting their truth. At the same time, we cannot but feel disappointment that his account of countries which lay nearer home, as Scotland and Wales, should contain so little that is valuable, and so much that is utterly worthless and absurd. For the rest we need only say, that the value of the history and geography varies much with the authors quoted; whose sense Higden has in general represented with truthfulness and with much elegance

of expression.¹ His knowledge of letters was for his age very considerable; and any one who examines his list of authors would find that it could be no light matter, even in an age of printed books and every appliance for understanding them, to go through them all.² So far as I have at present observed, there is no appearance of any intentional garbling or falsifying his authorities, so as to make them mean something else than what they do mean. When compared with other writers of his time, he is considered by excellent judges to appear very favourably.

The following testimonials to his diligence and integrity deserve to be cited:—

“Litteris divinis et humanis” (says Bale) “tam clarus evasit, ut inter suæ ætatis præcipuos earum cultores connumeraretur. In historiographorum lectione multa diligentia, opera, et cura usus est. . . . Compendio quodam in unum redegit historiæ volumen ea quæ ante sparsim et sine lucido ordine apud multos autores in obscuris delitebant bibliothecis; unicuique suorum authorum honorem integrum servans Tamque egregie suam in eo navabat operam, ut æ peritis scriptoribus, Polydoro potissime, egregius historicus diceretur.”³

Henry Wharton observes, “ut vix aliam quam compilatoris gloriam meruerit, nisi quod libro ultimo

¹ It will be understood from Higden's own remarks (pp. 18–20), that he does not quote the actual words of his authors. His later and longer edition deviates from them much more than the earlier, represented by C. D. This is singular, as the commencement of D. shows that it is an abbreviation of a larger work; and I cannot quite satisfactorily account for the phenomenon.

² At the same time Higden ap-

pears to have taken his quotations not unfrequently at second hand. I cannot altogether acquit him of disingenuousness in suppressing his obligations to the *Geographia Universalis*.

³ Cent. vi. n. 12. This is taken in part from Leland, *De Script. Brit.*, p. 339, who elsewhere (p. 13) writes thus: “Ranulphus Higedenus, Cestrensis, antiquarum rerum, ut illa ferebant sæcula, non imperitus.”

" multa e suo penu inseruerit," and then proceeds to add these terms of high commendation: " Compilatoris tamen munus tam egregie præstitit, ut pauci admოდum e nostratibus historici fide, gravitate, ac judicio cum eo sint conferendi." ¹

Popularity
of Higden's
*Polychro-
nicon*.

There is a value, however, to be attached to Higden's work apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography, which well informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed; for it was to them the standard work on general history. The Latin MSS. of the work are prodigiously numerous, and amount in all, I believe, to a number considerably greater than one hundred.² Moreover it was translated into English in the fourteenth and again in the fifteenth century; the earlier of which translations was printed, with some modern alterations, by the father of English typography, Caxton, in 1482, and again by his scholar Wynkyn de Worde in 1495; and yet once more, in such demand must the book have been, by Peter Treveris in 1527. But of the translations more hereafter. Nor is this all; not only were manuscripts of the original *Polychronicon* multiplied, and the English translation circulated extensively by means of the printing press, but other authors incorporated the labours of Higden into their own works, and sometimes with little other acknowledgment than by adding calumny to larceny. Thus the author of the *Eulogium Historiarum*, whose name is deservedly unknown, not content with pilfering a large part of his history from Higden, and with

¹ Appendix to Cave's Hist. Lit. s. a. 1357.

² Mr. Macray (*Manual of British Historians*, p. 39) says: "There are MSS. in nearly all the libraries in England." He then goes on to mention "some of them." These "some" are upwards of seventy;

and I know from a MS. catalogue drawn up by Mr. Stuart Moore from Mr. Hardy's notes, and kindly communicated to me, of a good many which are not contained therein. This catalogue I hope to publish in the last volume, when I have rendered it as complete as possible.

spoiling not a few things that he touches, must needs go out of his way to call our author *madidus monachus*, and while following the common legend about St. Patrick and the snakes, exclaim in pious horror against Higden (under the name of "*monachus Cestriæ*,") as a *novus chronographus, qui dicta antiquorum vilipendit*.¹

Such was the contemptuous treatment which Higden received at the hands of a contemporary thief. Another writer, who flourished later in the 14th century, Henry of Knighton, canon of Leicester, like the author of the *Eulogium*, incorporates much of Higden into his history; but, unlike that mean writer, handsomely acknowledges his obligations in the following terms: "Igitur opusculum historiæ meæ a conquæstu regni Angliæ cum adminiculo septimi libri Cistrensis (sic in Twysden), *laudiflui chronographi, perlucide scribentis*; cujus seriem de verbo ad verbum cum aliis quæ aspectui meo sparsim se obtulerant inscribere *seriatim propono*."²

¹ See Mr. Haydon's pref. to vol. i. of the *Eulog. Hist.*, pp. xlv.-xlvii. It does not appear that Higden is quoted by name, but only as "a monk of Chester." For the deviations from Higden which this writer makes, either by design, or in carelessness, or in ignorance, the reader may consult Mr. Haydon, who has detailed them with a most laborious minuteness. It is impossible to help wishing that the author had been more worthy of the pains and erudition of his editor. Here and there, however, *aliquid humani* has happened to him, in common with us all; thus the Paulus (*Introd.* to vol. ii. p. xxiii.) of the *Polychronicon* (see p. 64) is not Marco Polo, but Paulus Diaconus. (See *De Gest. Long.*, lib. i. c. 6.) Similarly the Hugo named in the preface to vol. i. p. lv.

note, is not Hugo de S. Victore, but Hugo or Hugutio Pisanus. (*Etymol. cap. Molo.*)

² P. 2311. (*Twysd. Hist. Angl. Script. x.*) The following passage, which quite accords with our notion that Higden put out two editions of his chronicle, may be quoted now, though we hope to recur again to the subject at the close of the work: "Explicit historia Leycestrensis anno gratiæ mcccxxvi. Nunc Cistrensis imponit finem chronicæ suæ; sed postea quædam adjecit ei, videlicet de morte antiqui Edwardi regis, cum quibusdam aliis eventibus in tempore regis Edwardi tertii, prout infra patebit in suo loco per singula." (*Id.* p. 2550.) Knyghton considers that Higden ended his chronicle at this point, "utrinque discessum est"

We learn from Bale, that John Rocheforth, who wrote in the beginning of the 15th century, made a compendium of the *Polychronicon* in one book.¹

Henry Bradshaw, in fine, himself "a native of Chester . . . and at length a Benedictine monk of St. Werburgh's abbey," Higden's own home, composed before the close of the 15th century a *Life of St. Werburgh* in English verse. He thus acknowledges his obligations to Higden :

"Untoo this rude worke myne auctors these;
 "Fyrst the true legends, and the venerable Bede,
 "Mayster Alfrydus, and Wyllyam Malmusbury,
 "Gyrard, *Polychronicon*, and other mo indeed."²

Several writers, also, as Knyghton himself, Malverne, Caxton, and others, undertook the continuation of the *Polychronicon*, both in the 14th and 15th centuries; but of these we say nothing now, reserving our account for the close of Higden's work. The reader, however, will easily perceive how popular the history must have been, to have been so often continued by other hands.

In the course of these remarks we have had occasion to quote several authors who mention Higden; but it would be a long undertaking to collect a catena of allusions to the *Polychronicon* from the writers of the 14th and following centuries. In addition to those to whom we have already referred, we may mention the names of Wycliffe,³ Purvey,⁴ and Thorpe,⁵

(*Id.* p. 2569). These words refer to the events of year 1340, according to the marginal date in our MSS. A. and E.; but Knyghton appears to refer them to 1336 or 1337; at least, we have 1336 occurring in his margin a little before them, and 1338 a little after them.

¹ *Cent.*, vii. n. 41. This may possibly be the same book that is mentioned above, p. xii. note, as a work of Higden.

² Quoted in Warton's *Hist. Engl. Poetry*, vol. ii. p. 178.

³ *Fasciculi Zizaniorum*, p. 256 (Ut narrat Cestrensis in suo *Polychronicon*).

⁴ *Id.* 397 (quod narrat Cestrensis, libro vi.)

⁵ Writings of Brute, Thorpe, Cobham, &c., p. 79 (*Rel. Tract Society*) (as "Cisterciensis" [i.e., Higden, lib. vii. c. 37] "tells"). A MS. memorandum in the *Annales* of William

among the Lollards; also of John Capgrave,¹ Richard of Cirencester,² and Thomas of Elmham,³ among the chroniclers; all of whom wrote before Caxton's edition appeared in 1482. None of these authors, however, so far as I know, mention Higden by name.⁴ To them, I doubt not, others might be added.⁵ After the English translation was printed and reprinted, the book, of course, became more generally known, and it would be useless to collect mere allusions; such passages as throw any light upon the author's life or his works have been already quoted, so far as they have come to my knowledge.⁶

Wyrcester designates him similarly: "Nota etiam Chronica Ranulphi "monachi Cisterciensis." *Wars of the English in France, temp. Henr. VI.*, vol. ii. p. 765, note (in this series). This was, probably, written at the end of the 15th century.

¹ *De Illust. Henr.*, p. 40, &c. (secundum Pollichronicam). Capgrave quotes from the work several times in the same manner, without naming the author, and sometimes incorporates it without naming it at all. See pp. 75, 79, and Mr. Hingeston's notes, and the Index.

² *Spec. Hist.*, lib. ii. c. 51, vol. i. p. 204 (Cestrensis, sicut dicit in sua *Polychronicon*).

³ *Hist. Monast. S. August.*, pp. 185, 186 (Cestrensis in sua *Polychronica*, and similarly elsewhere).

⁴ Those of them who call him *Cestrensis* can have known nothing of two monks of Chester, Roger and Ranulf; and I believe Bale to have been the inventor of the hypothesis that there were two.

⁵ It is likely enough that Lord Cobham and Reginald Pecock tacitly refer to Higden. See *Writings of Brute, Cobham*, &c., p. 126 (as

above); and the *Addenda* to Pecock's *Repressor*.

⁶ The Reformers frequently quote Higden. See the Index to the Parker Society's volumes for references to Calfhill, Pilkington, and Jewel. I have examined all the passages, but there is little to be said of them. Calfhill and Pilkington simply refer to the *Polychronicon* without naming the author. Jewel sometimes quotes thus, "Sir John "Trevisa saith," but also refers to "Ranulf Cestr.," and, what is more deserving of notice, distinguishes him from Roger, though, as I conceive, erroneously. "This story is "recorded by Ranulphus, Rogerus "Cestrensis, and Rogerus Hoveden, "that lived at the same time." (*Works*, vol. iv. p. 697.) I will only add that the *Polychronicon* was referred to, both as a book of authority, and as a well-known book, by the Reformers and their opponents alike. Thus Horne, bishop of Winchester, after quoting the *Polychronicon*, writes: "Polychronicon vult, "quod nullum legatum papæ in "suam terram venire permisit." To which Stapleton replies: "Fal-

MSS. of
Higden
used for
this edi-
tion.

The Latin text, however, was never printed before the present edition, with the exception of the portions relating to British History, which were published by Gale.¹ These seem to have been taken from a single MS., though it is possible that the occasional deviations from it may not always be due to accident or conjecture; it was formerly in his own possession, and is now with his other books in the Library of Trinity College, Cambridge. (O. 5, 12.)

In the present edition it has been used only occasionally, and nearly always for those readings of Gale which seemed to require verification. It is called G. in the notes of this volume. It is a folio on vellum of 149 leaves, paged by a contemporary hand, in double columns, each column containing 51 lines, very neatly written in a hand of the 15th century.

Begins: "*Prologus primus in historiam Polocroni-
cam* (sic.) *Post præclaros,*" &c.

Ends (under A.D. 1352): "*cannabi, lini, et specierum.*"

A table of contents in a later hand is bound up with it.

The following account of the MSS. collated throughout for the present work may suffice. The letters prefixed to each designate them in the notes below the text.

"sum est, quod ex Polychronico
"prætendis desumere, quod papæ
"legati," &c. Elsewhere, on the
same page, he says: "Polychronici
"author refert, quod, &c., quæ
"verba tu omittis;" and bye and
bye goes on to observe, "non opus
"est ad libros eruditos Lanfranci,
"benigne lector, remittere. Rogo
"eos, quibus *Polychronicon aut Fa-
"bianum* inspiciendi facultas datur,
"ut ipsa loca examinent." See
Stapl., *Op.*, tom. ii. pp. 1025, 1028
(ed. Par. 1620). Stapleton's work
is dated, Lovanii, 1561. Of other

writers, John Ross, who wrote at
the beginning of Henry VII.'s
reign a *Historia Regum Angliæ*,
edited by Hearne; Caius, who
styles him "*summæ fidei scripto-
"rem,*" *Animadv.* (p. 371, Hearne),
though he distinguishes him from
Roger; and Usher, in his *Britan-
nicarum Ecclesiarum Antiquitates*,
have made more or less use of Hig-
den as a historical authority.

¹ In his *Hist. Brit. Scriptores*
XV. (vol. i. pp. 179-287, Oxon.
1691.)

A. This beautiful vellum MS., in double columns, of about the beginning of the 15th century, written by a scribe named Arnold, was given to the library of the University of Cambridge (where it is marked li, 2, 24) by archbishop Parker. It wants the first leaf of the contents and two fly-leaves; now containing 163 leaves.

Begins (fol. 13, after table of contents): "Post præclaros."

Ends (fol. 161, lib. viii. A.D. 1381): "Mense Martii ejusdem anni Dominus Thomas Hatfield Episcopus Dunelmensis moritur senex multorum dierum."

At the beginning, on fly-leaves of parchment, are pasted two pieces of parchment, in hands of the 15th century, inscribed *Ranulphus Chestrensis*, and *Ranulphus vel Polichronicon*.

On fol. 4 is written *Cronica que dicuntur Chester*, a remark which seems to indicate that the scribe knew nothing about *two different* Chester Chronicles, one by Roger and another by Ranulf.

After which, in archbishop Parker's hand, "qui scripsit ad annum 1341."

Below this is written, in a hand of the 16th century, on an erasure: "Ranulphus Hygden."

And below this the anagram, *Presentem cronicam*, &c. (wrongly written *chronicam*), about which we have already spoken. Below this again, in the same hand of the 16th century: "Hic titulus texitur ex literis initialibus capitum primi libri, et vulgo vocatur *Polichronicon* sive *Policraticon*." This writer, who is probably archbishop Parker, evidently knew nothing about a *Polycraticon* of Roger distinct from a *Polychronicon* of Ranulf.

At fol. 152 (p. 297 of the red pagination), against the words *ecclesia libertatem* (lib. vii. c. 44, mis-numbered 43, A.D. 1327), the original scribe has written "*explicit historia*,"* but the history is continued in the same hand. In the margin Parker, as it seems, has written, "Nota, quæ sequuntur in codice isto et altero

"diversos habuerunt scriptores; ut in hac proxima
"sententia plane cernitur de morte Edwardi II."*

On fol. 152 b we have, in Parker's ordinary hand,
"In hoc anno," i.e. 1330, "incipit continuatio historiæ
"hujus scripta in cœnobio S. Albani et vocari potest
"Chronica Albanensis, ut in alio libro ejusdem ma-
"nus et formæ." Also at the bottom of the leaf,
at the words "*utriusque discessum est*, A.D. 1340,
in a contemporary hand is written "Hic finit Ches-
"tyr."*

At fol. 153, however, is written at the side, in a scrawl-
ing hand of the end of the fifteenth century, against
the words *sub pena carceris et capitis interdixit* (lib.
vii. c. 44, A.D. 1342), the following note: *Alius liber
scriptus habet in margine "Hucusque Randulphus,"*
below which Parker again has written, *Non hic, sed
superius*, referring to his note on A.D. 1327. In the
upper margin at the same place is written in a different
hand of the sixteenth century, a long note stated to
be taken "ex veteri quodam libro," of which the
following is a part: "Hic revera Ranulphus monachus
"Cestrensis suas cronicas terminavit." He goes on to
"say: "Hic etenim liberalibus artibus eruditus litera-
"turaque insignis quorundam sodalium suorum instan-
"tia pulsatus de famosioribus orbis historiis, scilicet ab
"initio microcosmi usque ad tempora Edwardi regis,
"tertii post conquæstum, opus æternaliter commendabile
"produxit in lucem. Quod opus, quia multorum tem-
"porum chronicas claudit, *Polycraticon* voluit appellari."
He then goes on to mention the continuation by John
Malverne, a monk of Worcester, about which nothing
shall be said at present. The reader is again requested
to observe that *Polycraticon* is the title of the work
attributed to *Ranulphus*. The notes which are fol-
lowed by an asterisk recur (in the same words or nearly
so) in another MS. of Higden, formerly in Parker's
possession, and now numbered 117 in the library of
Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

Described in the Catalogue of the MSS. of the Cambridge University Library, from which this account is partly taken. Some additional information will be found there (vol. iii. p. 396).

B. In the library of Caius College, Cambridge. A very fine MS., and earlier than the preceding. Henry Wharton says of it: "Ex quamplurimis, quos vidi, historiæ istius codicibus manu scriptis longe pulcherrimus est qui in collegio Gonvillii et Caii, cujus ipsemet alumnus fui, asservatur." Tanner also calls it "omnium pulcherrimum." It is a folio, on vellum, of 191 leaves, in two columns, each column of about 45 lines, written in a contracted hand of the latter part of the 14th century, and illuminated.

Begins (fol. 8): "Post præclaros."

Ends (A.D. 1375): "et palam in eorum sermonibus prædicantes."

The MS. has no original title, and no note or notes concerning Higden. It contains an index, above which (fol. 1) a later hand, probably of the 15th century, has written, "Polychronicon Ran. Hygden usque ad annum Domini 1370." The notes on the fly-leaves show that it was written before the end of the 14th century: "Cautio Magri Henrici Hosbern expos. ciste de Derlynton in vigilia nativitatis beate Marie, A.D. mcccc." "Cautio Henrici Osberne expos. ciste Ling in festo Sci Benedicti, et erit pollicronica pro xxvi. s. viii. d." &c. Numbered 82 in the library. See Descriptive Cat. of MSS. in Caius Coll., p. 36.

The above notes are not in the same hand as the MS. itself.

The scribe of MS. B. was evidently often unable to read his original well, for he sometimes leaves a space for a word which he cannot understand, sometimes runs two words into one, and occasionally distorts the orthography of a word in such a manner as to make it unintelligible.

C. In the library of St. Mary Magdalen's College, Oxford. One of the earliest MSS. of Higden in existence.

Folio, on vellum, of 119 leaves, in double columns, each column containing about 56 lines, written in a hand, abounding in contractions, of about the middle of the 14th century.

Begins (fol. 1): "In historico contextu."

Ends (A.D. 1327): "Nam in ejus primordiis recepit
" terra fertilitatem, aer temperiem, mare tranquillita-
" tem, Scotia concordiam, ecclesia libertatem."

After which (all in the same hand):

"Scribitur ecce liber, patrias profer mihi liber,

"Virginis o liber, scriptor tibi sit peto liber.

"Qui legit attendat, ne scriptorem reprehendat;

"Nam defectiva sit copia sæpe nociva.

"Libro conscripto, scriptor pellatur Egypto,

"Solvat ut invicto Regi laudes benedicto."

"*Expliciunt cronica venerabilis Ranulphi, monachi
" Cestrensis, in septem libellos distinctæ, dictæ-
" que Historia Policratica.*"

"Penna, quiesce, modo; finemque laboris ego do.

"Metro complodo liber claudens quasi nodo."

After this follows the table, consisting of 24 columns (complete), likewise in the same hand. Numbered clxxxi. in the library. Described in Coxe's *Catalogue of the MSS. in the Libraries of the Oxford Colleges* (Magd. p. 82.), where some additional information will be found. There is nothing to show to whom the MS. belonged, or by whom it was given to the College, as I am informed by the Rev. J. W. Knight, the librarian.

D. In the library of St. John's College, Cambridge.—A distinctly written MS., on vellum, in double columns, of 232 leaves (excluding blanks), each column containing 49 lines, the initial letters handsomely illuminated, of the 14th century.

Begins (fol. 1): "In historico namque¹ contextu."

Ends (fol. 220, misnumbered 218, A.D. 1327) "Nam
" in ejus primordiis recepit terra fertilitatem, aer tempe-
" riem, mare tranquillitatem, Scotia concordiam, ecclesia
" libertatem. Et hic finis;" below which, in the same
hand, "Qui scripsit librum, Ion. Lutton (sic) est sibi
" nomen."

After which follows the table of contents, to which additions have been made by other hands. On the first leaf are the following marks of ownership: "Joannes
" Dee, 1573, Nov. 13. W. Crashawe, 1609, Novemb.
" 17." The latter may have written also "Polychro-
" nica," the only title that appears in the body of the MS., which has, however, lost one fly-leaf at the beginning and a portion of another at the end, on the reverse of which is written: "Iste liber pertinet ad W. (?)
" Hidam." The book is now bound up with a MS. of Ægidius, and has W. C. (*i.e.*, William Crashawe) stamped on it, and it is probably in his hand that the following remarks are made on a blank paper leaf at the beginning:

"Polychronica, per Ranulphum Higden Cestrensem;
" Johannes Lutton monachus scripsit circa annum
" 1386." Purchased of W. Crashawe (brother of R. Crashawe, the poet), by Thomas Wriothesley, earl of Southampton, and presented with many other books to the library of St. John's College, Cambridge, where it is marked A. 12. It has been described by the Rev. B. M. Cowie in the *Catalogue of MSS. and Scarce Books of the Library of St. John's*.²

These four MS., A., B., C., D., had been selected, with the approbation of the Master of the Rolls, by my

¹ The MS. might be thought to commence imperfectly, but this is not so; several other MSS. begin similarly (*e.g.*, Univ. Coll. Oxon. 177; Mert. 118). Such an open-

ing indicates that the work in this shape is an abbreviation of a larger work.

² P. 4 (*Publ. Camb. Ant. Soc.* for 1842).

lamented friend the Ven. Archdeacon Hardwick, who had examined a great number of MSS., and made notes upon them, as the materials upon which the Latin text¹ in this edition should be formed, special preference being given to MS. A. It appeared, however, desirable to take in an additional MS. for the *longer* form of the chronicle, which is exhibited in a very pure form in the following MS., our E., whose readings, however, are sometimes corrected from the other MSS., A. and B., and occasionally also from C. and D., which exhibit the chronicle in the *shorter* form, and differ but very little from each other.²

E. In the University Library, Cambridge.—A folio, on vellum, of 276 leaves (a fly-leaf at the end having been cut away), each page containing between 30 and 40 lines (or a little more than 40 in the last two books), the initials very elaborately ornamented, well written, in the latter part of the 14th century.

Begins (fol. 11, after the table of contents, entitled *Kalendarium Cronicorum*): “Prologus primus. Incipit “prologus in historiam policronicam Ranulphi. Post “*præclaros*,” etc.

Ends (fol. 275, under A.D. 1352): “circa maritimas “*urbes Angliæ et Hiberniæ*.”

¹ I should perhaps say here, that the marginal summaries are not a part of the Latin text: they vary much in the different MSS. Usually I have taken them from E., but sometimes from other sources, and have occasionally added them myself, and more often omitted them. The headings of the chapters, however, are in all cases taken from MSS.; these also vary, but not in an equal degree.

² So similar are C. and D., that I have often thought it desirable to say “C., not D.,” of particular readings. Where, however, it is

only recorded that D. has a particular reading, it is less certain that C. has it not. The MSS. A., D., E., the standard MS. of Trevisa (called MS.), and Caxton's edition, have been always under my eye in preparing the sheets for the press, the other MSS. have not. With regard to B., when its readings are not recorded, they may be presumed to agree with those of E., with whose text the other Latin MSS. have been collated, and which has been *generally* followed in this edition.

After which this note (in the same hand): "Usque hic scripsit Ranulphus Hykedoun monachus Cestrensis, istorum cronicorum compilator, qui obiit in senectute bona —," where a later hand has added "Anno Do. 1363."

However, at fol. 273 *b*, in the original hand, under A.D. 1327, after "ecclesia libertatem," is written "Explicit historia."

Inside the cover, in a hand of the 17th century, probably Mr. Lorton's, "Ranulphi Hikeden monachi Cestrensis Chronica," at fol. 2, probably in Wheelock's hand, "Ranulfi Cestrensis Polychronicon." At fol. 11, also in a somewhat late hand: "Gramata (sic) dant prima capitalia nomen agentis." On the reverse of fol. 276 (written in a hand of the 15th century): "Iste liber constat J. Broke monacho ecclie Xi Cant." (*i.e.*, Canterbury Cathedral).

Described in the *Catalogue of MSS. in the Cambridge University Library*, where it is marked II. 3. 1. (vol. iii. p. 401). It came into the library shortly before 1600.¹

One other valuable MS. has been consulted for the first three chapters. It was given to Winchester College by William of Wykeham, with a continuation to the end of the reign of Edward III. About the continuation we must defer our remarks, and only now say that, in common with others, this MS. has a note at the end of the year 1342: "Huc usque scripsit Ranulfus." Its readings are mentioned above.

For the version of Trevisa,² which ends with an MSS. of account of the treaty of Bretigny in the year 1360, ^{Trevisa} used in this two MSS. and Caxton's edition have been employed. edition.

¹ Some points in the descriptions of these MSS. belonging to the University have been kindly brought to my notice by H. Bradshaw, Esq., M.A., Fellow of King's College, who has the charge of them.

² The following account of Trevisa, principally derived from Tanner's *Bibliotheca* and Dibdin's enlarged edition of Ames' *Typographical Antiquities*, may not be unacceptable. John Trevisa was a

One of these MSS. is followed very closely, and adopted as the standard, and therefore designated in the notes simply as "MS." It is preserved in the

native of Cornwall, born at Caradok, according to Fuller, sometime in the 14th century, entered the university of Oxford first at Exeter College, then at Queen's College, of which he became fellow. He afterwards became vicar of the parish of Berkeley in Gloucestershire, and chaplain to Thomas, fourth Lord Berkeley of Berkeley, (who died in 1416, of whom we have a large account in Collins' *Peerage* by Brydges, vol. iii. p. 606,) and, in fine, canon of the Collegiate church of Westbury on Severn in Gloucestershire, or, according to Dugdale, *Baronage*, vol. ii. p. 360, of Westbury in Wiltshire. He seems to have resided principally in Gloucestershire (his notes on the *Polychronicon* having especial reference to that part of England), and to have occupied a great part of his time in translating various Latin works into his mother tongue. He had, however, also seen foreign countries, and mentions the hot baths of "Akon in Almayne and Egges in "Savoye," in which he also bathed, "and assayed them." (*Polychron.*, lib. 1, c. 47.) Being no friend to the monks, he finds great favour with Bale. He was living in 1398, when he concluded his translation of Bartholomæus' *De Proprietatibus Rerum*, and most probably as late as 1408, when the translation of Vegetius was concluded; for it would appear that Trevisa is author of that work. According to Tanner, he died in 1412. He is said to have been buried in the chancel of the church

at Berkeley. Some ancient pieces of almost obliterated writing, partly in Norman French, partly in Latin, remaining in the church at Berkeley in 1805, when Mr. Hughes, at Dibdin's request, examined them, are thought to be by Trevisa, or of Trevisa's day; but Mr. Hughes informed Dibdin that "not one certain vestige of him remains here, nor is even his grave in the church known."

The following works by Trevisa are extant:—

A Dialogue on Translation between a lord and a clerk (i.e., his patron and himself). Printed by Caxton with the *Polychronicon*.

This dialogue is composed as an introduction to the *Polychronicon*, which is directly mentioned in the following words: "And so Ranulphus, monke of Chestre, wrote in "Latyn his bookes of Cronykes, "that descryueth the worlde aboute "in lengthe and in breede, and "maketh mencion and mynde of "doynge and dedes of meruaylles "and of wondres, and rekeneth the "yeres to his last dayes fro the first "makyng of heuen and of erthe; "and so therinne is grete and "noble information and loore to "hem that can therein rede and "vnderstande." (Sig. 1, 2, Caxton's edition.)

Also another *Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum*, which Trevisa translated from the Latin of William of Occam, which is published (in the original) by Goldastus, *Mon. S. Rom. Imp.*, vol. i. pp. 13-18, and

library of St. John's College, Cambridge, where it is marked H. 1.

This superb MS. is on vellum, and contains 280 leaves, one at each end being blank. (See facsimile.)

The first 18 leaves contain Occam's *Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum* (occupying nearly nine pages), and

treats "De Potestate Ecclesiastica
"et Sæculari."

Trevisa's translation of a sermon by Fitzralf, archbishop of Armagh, preached in 1357 at Oxford against the mendicant friars, is contained, together with the preceding, in both the MSS. of the *Polychronicon* used for this edition, and in a Harleian MS. (n. 1900).

The last-named MS. contains also his translation of a spurious production, *On the Beginning and End of the World*, ascribed to Methodius, from which Higden in this volume gives extracts. (See Harleian Catalogue.)

Trevisa's translation of Bartholomæus de Glanvilla *De Proprietatibus Rerum* was finished, as he tells us, in 1398. Wynkyn de Worde printed it (about 1494), and it was more than once reprinted in the following century. (See Tanner.)

His translation of the *Polychronicon* was concluded (as he tells us at the end) April 18, 1387, with a continuation by himself, and a dedication to Lord Berkeley (at whose request it was made), of which no more here.

In the Bodleian Library (Digby, 233) is a translation of Vegetius' *De Re Militari*, composed at Lord Berkeley's request, and finished in 1408. This is reasonably presumed to be executed by Trevisa, as well

as a translation of Ægidius Romanus' *De Regimine Principum*, contained in the same volume.

Of his other translations, that of the Bible, *said*, by Caxton, Bale, and others, to have been made by Trevisa, and *possibly still extant at Rome*, is the most important on all accounts. It is not, however, certain, though at the same time by no means improbable, that Trevisa ever translated the Scriptures at all. (See Mr. Hughes' letter as above.) The remark of the lord to the clerk (Sig. 1, 3, b. Caxton): "Also thou wotest where the Apocalips is wryten in the walles and roof of a chappel both in Latyn and in Frensshe," has reference of course to the decorations of Berkeley church mentioned above, but it cannot safely be inferred that Trevisa was connected with them. They may have been earlier than his time.

Besides these works, his *Genealogy of David, King of Scotland*, is quoted from a MS. by Usher. (See Tanner.)

According to Bale, who has omitted some of these works of Trevisa, he also wrote or translated *Gesta Regis Arthuri, Britannia Descriptionem, Hibernia Descriptionem, De Memorabilibus Temporum, e alia plura fecit ac transtulit*.

Sermo Domini Archiepiscopi Armachanani. These works, done into English by Trevisa, (for which see the note,) are followed by a double index to the *Polychronicon*, one in Latin, one in English, without title, or colophon. They occupy 15 leaves. After this follows the *Polychronicon*, also without title or colophon. The name of Higden is not so much as mentioned in the MS. at all.¹ At the beginning is this note: "Ele-
gantissimum hunc codicem manu scriptum bibliothecæ
Collegii S. Johannis Evangelistæ donavit magister
Baile de Newington, in agro Middlesexiæ, A.D.
1674."

This was the only MS. used by Archdeacon Hardwick, (who, with great probability, supposes that it is the MS. formerly belonging to Mr. Forster, a member of St. John's, mentioned in the Harleian catalogue, n. 1900,) but it soon became evident that it was necessary to correct its errors and supply its defects by some better aid than Caxton's printed edition. The subsidiary MS. employed for that purpose, called *α*. in our notes, was formerly in Archbishop Tenison's library, and when that library was dispersed by public auction, in July 1861, it was purchased for the British Museum, where it is now marked as 24,194 of the Additional MSS.

It is on vellum, and now consists of 261 folio leaves, in double columns. An hiatus of eight leaves occurs between the 41st chapter of the third book and the beginning of the fifth chapter of the fourth book; and again, in the sixth book, the scribe appears to have jumped from part of the 14th chapter to part of the 26th. The volume is otherwise in the finest preservation, and contains many splendid illuminations.²

¹ Described in Cowie's *Catalogue* (u. s.), pp. 75, 76.

Sale Catalogue of Archbishop Tenison's MSS., lot 42, p. 11.

² See Sotheby and Wilkinson's

In the beginning is inserted this note, on a leaf of paper: "Archbishop Tenison's library, MS. No. 1. Higden's Polychronicon, translated by John de Trevisa, finished 1387. The arms upon the first page of this book are nearly obliterated, yet enough remains to show that they are those of Beauchamp and Warwick quarterly. The latter, being the arms sometimes fabulously ascribed to the famous Guy, earl of Warwick, appear to have been borne by the Beauchamps as feudal arms for the earldom. On the 33rd page the same arms occur separately, and in better preservation. This copy of Higden seems, therefore, to have been made, or at least illuminated, for one of the earls of Warwick of the family of Beauchamp." To this Sir F. Madden has added the following remark: "The earl of Warwick, for whom this MS. was executed, is Richard Beauchamp, who died in 1439, and who married Margaret,¹ sole daughter and heiress of Thomas, Lord Berkeley, for whom the translation was made by Trevisa. F. M." The MS. begins with the *Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum*, which is followed by the *Sermo Domini Episcopi Armacani* (both in English). To this succeeds the double *Tabula* of the *Polychronicon*, and after it the work itself; on the last leaf we have: "This translacioun is y-ended in a Thorsday, the eyztepe (sic) day of Aueryl, the zere of our Lord a þowsand þre hondred foure score and seuene; þe tenþe zere of kyng Richard þe secunde after þe conquest of Engelande; þe zere of my lordes age Sire Thomas lorde of Berkeley, þat made me make þis translacioun, fyue and þritty. Explicit."

The MS. in St. John's library concludes with the very same words, except that it reads "Thomas of Berkeley," and has *Deo Gratias* instead of *Explicit*.²

¹ Dugdale (*Baronage*, vol. i. p. 247) calls her Elizabeth, daughter and heir of Thomas, Lord Berkeley. See also p. 361.

² The Harleian MS. (1900) has xvij. for *eyztepe*; and this is quite right. The Harleian Catalogue wrongly makes Tenison's MS. and

The name of a former owner occurs at the end of the tabula, "William Bradwell, A.D. 1610." We have also at the end of the volume, "Mr. John Knighton," "William Knighton," and on the last leaf, "Emanuel, anno Domini, 1570."

It will thus be seen that the contents of this MS. are precisely the same as in our standard MS. So very similar, indeed, are these two magnificent volumes to each other, that they appear at first sight to have been executed by the same scribe. I compared the two, however, in company with Mr. Bond, of the British Museum, and he pointed out differences in the form of the *s* and the *r* in the two MSS., which convinced us both that they are not by the same hand. Both, however, are certainly of the same period, namely, about the reign of Henry IV. Tenison's MS. was composed during the life of the first wife of the earl of Warwick, for whom it was made. He was contracted to her in marriage in 1393, and she died in 1422.¹ It appears, therefore, that both these MSS. are only a few years later than the date of Trevisa's translation (1387). To Mr. Bond's very practised eye the Tenison MS. appears slightly the older of the two.

the St. John's MS. read *eyghtenthe*; there is *ho n* in either of them.

¹ Having in vain endeavoured to ascertain these dates from books, I consulted my learned friend, Mr. C. H. Cooper, who apprised me of the existence of a MS. *Life of the Berkeleys*, by Smyth, in the possession of the Earl Fitzhardinge. By his Lordship's kindness, and that of Mr. J. H. Cooke, who searched the volume, I am enabled to give the following information. "I am directed," says he, "by Lord Fitzhardinge to reply to your note to him asking some information from Smyth's Berkeley MSS., which are in my custody here. Smyth

" does not give the date of the marriage of Elizabeth, daughter and heiress of Thomas, Lord Berkeley (fourth of that name); but he states that the contract for the marriage (with Richard Beauchamp) was entered into in September, 17 Rich^d. II., and the marriage, it is therein stated, was intended to be solemnized 'as soon as conveniently may be,' and that the bride was then under the age of 'seven yeares.' Smyth states that her death took place 28th December, 1st Hen. VI., and that she was buried at the monastery of Kingswood."

The orthography is substantially the same in both the MSS., the same word being written in several different ways in both. In some few cases, more especially where the *z* occurs, the variations in the spelling are recorded. The *z* and *ʒ* are expressed in both MSS. by the same character; and unfortunately the *c* and *t* also, so that it is sometimes uncertain which letter is intended in such words as *nacioun*, *correccioun*, &c. The same clerical errors likewise frequently occur in both MSS., and can sometimes be corrected by the aid of Caxton, who certainly did not use either of them as his standard.¹

As respects the text of Trevisa's translation, he followed the larger form of the chronicle, represented by A., B., E. The long passage about the diameter of the earth (p. 44), which occurs in E. only, is translated by Trevisa, but does not occur in the Harleian version, printed in this edition. The section relating to Brabant (p. 288) occurs in A. only of our MSS., but is translated in both the versions. It is clear that neither translation was made precisely from the text of any MS. used for this edition; there is, however, little or nothing in either of them which is not to be found in one of the three Latin MSS. above mentioned.

With regard to the merits of Trevisa's translation, the following judgment is delivered by Mr. Hardy in the general introduction to Petrie's *Monumenta Historica Britannica*. Literary estimate of Trevisa's version. "This translation by Trevisa " is generally strict and literal, but sometimes confused " from a misapprehension of the author's meaning. " Occasionally short notices [to which Trevisa's name " is prefixed] are inserted by way of explanation. . . . " On the whole, Trevisa appears to have been shrewd " and well-informed " (p. 4). Trevisa appears to have

¹ A specimen of the orthography of Tenison's MS., and also of Caxton's printed text, may be seen in the Appendix.

been puzzled with the Latinity of Higden, which is, however, in general extremely good for the period, as appears by the following words which in his above-named *Dialogue* he puts into the mouth of his patron. "Though I can speke, rede, and vnderstande Latyn, "ther is moche Latyn in these bookes of Cronykes "that I can not vnderstande nether thou, without "studyeng, auisement, and lokyng of other bookes." It must be owned that Trevisa has occasionally fallen into the most ludicrous errors, which a very little "auisement" might have avoided. Thus Higden writes: "Terra frugifera maxime tritici, unde et eam veteres "Cereris horreum nuncupaverunt;" which Trevisa renders thus: "Mesia is a prise lond of wine and of "whete, perfore *the olde cereris* cleped hit a berne" (p. 173). Again, Higden has in his text: "Justinianus "postmodum litteris et bellis egregius addidit tertiam "ecclesiam in honorem Divinæ Sophiæ, id est, Domini "Christi, quem 'hagiam sophiam' vocavit." The passage is thus misdone into English by our clerk: "Ius- "tinianus þe emperour bulde afterward the þridde "chirche in worschippe of Diuina Sophia, þat is, oure "Lord Crist, *that Agia clepeþ Diuina Sophia*, in "Englisshe þe Wisdom of God" (p. 181). Again, what reasonable excuse can we make for a man who can render "Consuluit Cecrops Apollinem Delphicum" thus, "Cecrops axede counsaile of *Appolyn* Delphicus?" (p. 193). The reader who is inclined to be malicious may find gratification in comparing the obscure Latin verses quoted by Higden with Trevisa's rendering of them (p. 237). It ought, however, to be borne in mind that the age of Trevisa was not an age of learning or of criticism; the errors which would be disgraceful in our time are in some degree venial in the fourteenth century.¹ Still it is impossible not to perceive that

¹ Trevisa seems to have suspected | accurate. In his *Dialogue*, the clerk
that his translation was not always | says: "Yf a translacion were made

Higden's scholarship is very far superior to that of his translator. As one of the earliest specimens of English prose (A.D. 1387), containing many rare words and curious expressions, the version of Trevisa will be gladly welcomed by philologists, who will not be over severe upon his errors. All remarks on his language and idioms must be reserved for the glossary at the end of the work.

The edition of Caxton, which Archdeacon Hardwick had begun to collate for this edition, must now briefly be noticed. Besides Trevisa's translation, he gives, as has been already said, the Dialogue of the lord and the clerk, occupying four pages and a half, and also "The Epystle of Sir Iohan Trevisa, chapelayn vnto Lord Thomas of Barkley, vpon the translacion of Polycronycon into our Englysshe tongue," occupying about one page.¹ Caxton's own *Prohemye* occupies nearly

Caxton's
edition of
Trevisa.

"that myght be amended in ony
"poynt, somme men it wold blame;"
to which the lord replies: "Yf men
"blame that is not worthy to be
"blamed, thenne they ben to blame.
"Clerkes knowe wel ynowgh that
"no synfull man doth so well that
"it (he?) ne myght doo better, ne
"make so good a translacion that
"he (it?) ne myght be better."
(Sig. 1. 3, b.) This is quite true,
yet all errors are not equally excusable.

¹ The following portions may interest the reader: "Welthe and worship to my worthy and worshipful lord sir Thomas, lord of Barkley, I, Iohan Trevisa, youre preest and bedeman, obedyent and buxom to werke your wille, holde in herte, thenke in thought, and meen in mynde youre nedefful menyng and speche that yespak and sayde that ye wold have Englysshe

translacion of Ranulphus of Chestres bookes of Cronykes; therfor I wole fonde to take that trauayll and make Englysshe translacion of the same bookes as God graunteth me grace. . . . In somme place I shall sette word for worde, and actyf for actyf, and passyf for passyf arowe right as it stondeth withoute chaungynge of the ordre of wordes; but in somme place I must chaunge the ordre of wordes, and sette actyf for passyf and ayenward; and in somme place I muste sette a reson for a worde, and telle what it meneth; but for al such chaungyng the menyng shal stande and not be chaunged. But somme words and names of countreyes, of londes, of cytees, of waters, of ryuers, of montaynes and hilles, of persons, and of places muste be sette and stonde

four pages, the early part of which consists of a recommendation of the study of history, after which he goes on to say that he "has delyvered to write "twoo bookes notable," viz., the Golden Legend and the Polycronycon, in which are comprised, *inter alia*, "the historial actes and wonderful dedes, syth the "fyrst makynge of heuen and erth vnto the begynnyng "of the regne of kyng Edward the fourth and vnto "the yere of our Lord MCCCCLX., as by the ayde of "Almyghty God shal folwe al a longe after the com- "posynge and gaderynge of dan Ranulph, monke of "Chestre, fyrste auctour of this book, and afterward "englisshed by one Trevisa, vycarye of Barkley, (which "atte request of one Sir Thomas Lord Barkley trans- "lated this sayd book, the byble, and Bartylmew de "proprietatibus rerum out of Latyn into Englyssh,) "and now at this tyme simply empynted and sette "in forme by me William Caxton *and a lytel em- "belysshed fro tholde makynge*, and also haue added "suche storyes as I coude fynde fro thende that "the said Ranulph fynysshed his book, which was "the yere of our Lord MCCCCLVIJ., vnto the yere of the "same MCCCCLX., whiche ben an honderd and thre yere. "... And where the sayd auctor hath alle his werke "in seuen bookes, I haue sette that whiche I haue "added to after a parte, and haue marked it the laste "booke."¹ Caxton elsewhere informs us more par-

"for hem self in her owne kynde,
 "as Asia, Europa, Affryca, and
 "Syrya; Mount Athlas, Syna and
 "Oreb, Marach, Iordan, and Arnon,
 "Bethleem, Nazareth, Iherusalem,
 "and Damascus; Hanybal, Rasyn,
 "Assuerus and Cyrus, and many
 "suche wordes and names. Yf ony
 "man make of these bookes of
 "Cronykes a better Englissh trans-
 "lacion and moore prouffitable,

"God do hym mede." (Sig. 1, 4.
 Caxton, who has taken his usual
 liberties with the orthography.)

¹ Caxton (fol. 389 b.) falsely
 makes Trevisa's translation end in
 1357. "This translacion is ended
 "on a Thursdaye, the eyghtenthe
 "daye of Apryll, the yere of our
 "Lord a thousand thre honderd
 "and lvij., the xxxj. yere of kyng
 "Edward the thyrd after the con-

ticularly what these little embellishments were: "I, William Caxton, a symple person, haue endeouyred me to wryte fyrst ouer all the sayd book of proloconycon (sic), and somewhat haue chaunged the rude and old Englyssh, that is to wete certayn wordes which in these days," (i.e., in 1482), "be neither vsyd ne vnderstanden, and furthermore haue put it in empynte to thende that it maye be had and the maters therin comprised to be knownen."¹

Nothing need be said here about Caxton's continuation of Higden, but a few words may be necessary about his manipulation of Trevisa. Not only are certain words replaced by others, but the whole orthography is changed, so that the English is no longer the language of the 14th, but of the 15th century. In particular the *ȝ* has vanished altogether; so also has the *p* in almost every instance; but this last is of less moment, as the MSS. of Trevisa are very inconstant in the use of the letter. A minute collation of Caxton's text, therefore, with that of the MSS. used for the present edition is well-nigh impossible; it must be sufficient to note in general those readings in which there is a difference of words, and not merely of forms and inflections. The reader is requested to observe in this place, that there are certain words in Trevisa which Caxton in general (but not uniformly) replaces by others, as will appear from the following

"quest of Englonde, the yere of my lordes age, Sir Thomas Lord of Berkley, that made me make this translacion fyue and thyrty." The true date is 1387, and Caxton's error has been corrected in the Harleian MSS. Catalogue. (n. 1900), and in the general introduction to the Monumenta Historica Britannica,

p. 4. The last date mentioned in Trevisa's text is 1357; hence, perhaps, Caxton's mistake; but the chronicle is continued to the year 1360.

¹ Fol. 390 a., where he again mentions Trevisa by name, but gives no information which has not been already set down.

able of variations in words and expressions taken from our first volume.¹

<i>Trevisa's word or expression.</i>	<i>Caxton's substituted word or expression.</i>
clepeþ—i-cleped	- callith, p. 7 ; called, p. 31 (a frequent substitution, but see p. 111).
hi;teres - -	- embelysshers, <i>id.</i>
schulleþ fonge—feng -	- shall resseyue, <i>id.</i> (frequent); resseyued, p. 163.
vnwralle - -	- vnwynde, p. 9.
wonder (adjective) -	- wonderful, <i>id.</i>
trauaille - -	- laboure, p. 11.
ich - - -	- I, <i>id.</i> See <i>Addenda</i> .
lose - - -	- leese or gleyne, <i>id.</i>
eche - - -	- encrece, p. 15.
for me schulde hem knowe	- by cause men, &c., <i>id.</i> (frequent.)
lore - - -	- doctryne, p. 27 (frequent).
i-cleped - -	- named, p. 31 (frequent, see p. 107).
woneþ - - -	- dwelle, p. 45 (frequent).
deleþ - - -	- departe, <i>id.</i> (frequent).
atweyne - -	- a sounder, p. 49 (frequent).
pere - - -	- lyke, p. 49.
mulleþ - - -	- melte, p. 63.
to menyngre - -	- to say, p. 69 (frequent); or, as moche to saye as, p. 103.
efte - - -	- after, p. 71 ; also, agayn, p. 173.
byneme - - -	- teke away, p. 73.
welkeþ - - -	- fade, p. 77.
fren (adj.) - -	- brennyng, <i>id.</i>
al arewe - - -	- al along, p. 79.
eueleþ nouzt -	- wexe not seke, p. 81.
horeþ - - -	- wexe hore, <i>id.</i>
cyren - - -	- egges, <i>id.</i>
buxom - - -	- obedient, p. 87.
i-cast - - -	- disposed, <i>id.</i>
rese - - -	- fyghte, p. 91.
rather - - -	- to fore, p. 93 (frequent).
hatte—hi;t - -	- is named, p. 99 ; was named, p. 115. See p. 131.
defoule - - -	- fylthe, p. 109.
as me troweþ -	- as men suppose, p. 111.
steihe - - -	- ascended, p. 113.
wilneþ - - -	- wyllthe, p. 119.
ouer (his lotte)	- aboue, p. 125.
heleful - - -	- helthful, p. 127 ; holsom, p. 305.
teeldis - - -	- tents, <i>id.</i>
lesue, lese - -	- pasture, p. 131.

It has not been deemed necessary to warn the reader every time that the more common changes

<i>Trevisa's word or expression.</i>	<i>Caxton's substituted word or expression.</i>
to schedep and to falleb	- departe and befalle, p. 133.
aȝe - - -	- agayn, <i>id.</i> (frequent).
meres - - -	- dyches, p. 137.
kynde - - -	- nature and kynde, <i>id.</i> See p. 359.
toke hem to rede	- concluded, p. 139.
schenful - - -	- shameful, p. 141.
rediloker - - -	- redylyer, p. 145.
happed - - -	- happened, p. 151.
schrewednesse	- ylle disposicioun, p. 153.
grisbaytynge	- gruntynge, p. 159.
fette (to hem)	- toke (with hem), p. 173.
auntrede - - -	- aventured, p. 177.
wem - - -	- hurtynge or wemme, p. 185.
nostrilles - - -	- nose thirles, <i>id.</i>
adraynt - - -	- drowned, p. 195.
osprynge - - -	- offsprynge, p. 203.
were twynnes	- were born at one burthou, p. 211.
i-hiȝt - - -	- besette, p. 217.
(be bridde) deel	- part, <i>id.</i>
chene - - -	- space, p. 223; also olyfte or hoole, p. 233.
corn hepe - - -	- corn hupple, p. 225.
ȝede - - -	- went, p. 227.
mynde - - -	- remembraunce, p. 233.
ȝetynge - - -	- milting, p. 235.
(sixty) wynter	- yere, p. 247.
chast (verb) - - -	- chastyse, p. 249.
fey - - -	- feyth, p. 251.
for to þey amende	- vnto the tyme, &c., p. 253.
skymours - - -	- scommers or theuys, p. 261.
outakyn tyn - - -	- reserued (i.e. <i>except</i>) tin, p. 261. See p. 337.
mynystre - - -	- monasterye, <i>id.</i>
to wyfe - - -	- to marie, p. 263.
worschippe - - -	- worship and reuerence, p. 265.
wood wroth - - -	- sore wroth, p. 275.
a payed - - -	- paid and content, p. 283.
is swiþe good - - -	- is right good, p. 293. See p. 343.
keste - - -	- purposed, p. 297.
copy and plente	- plente, p. 301.
at þe best - - -	- wel in the best wyse, p. 317.
sprankcleþ - - -	- sperclyth, p. 319.
(as it is declared) wiþynne	- after, <i>id.</i>
outlawed - - -	- exyled, p. 319.

have been made; but the words in the notes "*and so frequently*," "*and so elsewhere*," will sufficiently apprise him of the fact. Conversely it has been sometimes thought worth while to add that Caxton has in certain places, contrary to his more general usage, retained some of these words in particular passages of his text.

But besides these noteworthy changes by Caxton, there are likewise many others where a clause or even the greater part of a sentence has been re-cast more in accordance, it must be presumed, with the phraseology of his own day. In the more remarkable instances Caxton's text is given in the notes,¹ in others it has been considered enough to say "*slightly varied*

Trevisa's word or expression. *Caxton's substituted word or expression.*

(men) myslyleued	-	-	oute of bylene, p. 323.
nesche	-	-	soft, p. 333.
vseþ	-	-	driuen, p. 339.
lederes	-	-	capitayns, p. 345. See p. 349.
nolles	-	-	hedes, p. 355.
awrekeþ	-	-	auenge, p. 357.
chepinge	-	-	markettis, p. 359.
wilewys	-	-	withges, p. 365.
i-heled	-	-	couered, p. 367.
piȝt	-	-	pight and stycked, p. 369.
wende	-	-	goo, p. 373.
i-loke	-	-	shette, p. 377.
biddeþ meny bedes	-	-	sayen many prayers, <i>id.</i>
battes	-	-	staues, p. 381.
heste	-	-	comaundement, p. 383.
behote	-	-	promise, p. 391.
he and al his meyny	-	-	he and his men, p. 393.
gree	-	-	degree, p. 409.
splekked	-	-	sperckled, p. 429.

These are by no means the only substitutions made by Caxton, but they comprise the principal ones, so far as this volume is concerned, and they will be quite sufficient to apprise the reader of the general cha-

racter of his embellishments. The subject will be more minutely handled in the Glossary.

¹ See pp. 91, 141, 177, 179, 303, 305, 311, 313 (especially), 315, 333, 335, 369, 393 (especially).

in Cax."¹ Without wishing to say anything in derogation of the great patriarch of English typographers, I am compelled to observe that his edition is not of much critical value,² and I could now almost wish that it had not been employed at all in this edition, but that another good MS. had been used in its place.³ However, when the two MSS. differ, and when Caxton agrees with one of them, his authority is frequently sufficient to determine the true reading; and there is also some considerable interest in perceiving what words and phrases were falling into desuetude in Caxton's time, even though some of them be used by the poets, by Spenser in particular, in times much posterior to Caxton.

The Harleian MS., n. 2261, which contains the more recent English translation, now for the first time printed in this edition, is a moderate-sized quarto, on paper, and containing 449 leaves, having lost at the commencement two or three leaves, viz., that part of the tabula which contained the letter A. Each page contains from 30 to 40 lines, neatly written in a hand of the 15th century. The capital letters and headings of chapters and sections are rubricated, and various

The Harleian translation.

¹ See pp. 261, 313, 331, 333, 335, 349, 355, 359, 361, 363, 369, 371, 373, 375, 379, 381, 387, 391.

² Caxton, it has been very justly observed, "exercised the part of editor of his various publications, by no means after the fashion of Madden and Forshall. Lollard works were not patronized by the Royal Caxton press; or the Wycliffe Bible, the greatest authority for the history of old English, would have represented, as it came from his hands, the spelling and even the grammar of the reigns of Edward IV. and Henry VII. *He cared nothing*

for philology; his books were printed for the sake of their matter, and he was not willing to allow the interest of the subject to suffer from the presence of instances of obsolete spelling, though he is strangely inconsistent in his orthography."—*Christian Remembrancer* (vol. 48, p. 220). These words suggest a true notion of his treatment of Higden.

³ Such, for example, as that at Glasgow, which Mr. Hardwick has called in his MS. memoranda "the finest in existence." The Harleian MS. (n. 1900), and another in the Bodleian, are also very fine.

ornamentations occur at the ends of books, &c. A few remarks are added in later hands. The chronicle ends, fol. 445, with an account of the spoliation of the shrine of Hayles, and of St. Edward at Westminster. This appears to have taken place in the same year as the death of Edmund Langley, duke of York, and the expedition of Henry IV. to Wales, and the battle with the Scotch (A.D. 1401), which are mentioned just before.

The last words of the chronicle are: "And soone
" after the shryne of Seynte Edward at Westmonastery
" was spoylede of grete rychesse and iewells, and
" specially of oon table of golde."

After this follows, in the same hand, some verses on the kings of England since the conquest, Henry VI. being the last named. It is evident, from the following lines, that they were composed in his reign.

In speaking of Henry VI., he says:

"The sixte Henry, brouȝte furthe in alle vertu,
" By iuste titulle borne to enheritaunce,
" Afore provided by Criste Jhu,
" To were ij. crownes, of Ynglonde and of Fraunce,
" To whom God hathe ȝiffe souereigne sufficiaunce,
" With vertuous life and chose hym to his knyȝhte,
" Longe to reioyce and reigne here in his ryȝhte.
" Amen."

After mentioning the exactions of Pope Benedict and the Statute of Provisions (1342), "that noo man
" scholde brynge suche prouisions in to his realme fro
" the pope in peyne of prisonment and of hongynge," the translator adds, "The cōpilator of this booke wrote
" vn to this tyme" (fol. 389. b).

From this point the Harleian additions are much fuller than those of Trevisa, which occupy only two pages and a half, whereas those in the Harleian MS. go on to the time of Henry IV., filling 55 leaves (fol. 390-445).

The name of "Jacobus Ravenscroft" occurs on fol. 1.

Of the author of this translation I know nothing, and therefore will say little. It would appear that he executed his translation some time in the reign of Henry VI., between 1432 and 1450, and therefore some years before Edward IV. was raised to the throne.¹

In this MS., as well as in both the MSS. of Trevisa, the 3 and z are expressed by the same character. The p also occurs, but less frequently. (See facsimile.)

This translator, like Trevisa, follows the longer form of the chronicle; numerous omissions, however, occur, and for some of these we need, I believe, seek no more profound explanation than this, that when he could not construe a sentence he passed on to the next. Thus he has wholly omitted to translate the verses quoted at p. 236, which occur in every MS. collated for this edition; and it must be owned that the temptation so to act was in this case not easy to overcome. The translation itself is often bombastic, and can hardly represent the spoken English of any period, being, in fact, frequently unintelligible to persons unacquainted with Latin. It seems scarcely necessary to dwell upon it at greater length.²

After the death of my lamented friend, Archdeacon Hardwick, the task of editing the *Polychronicon* was committed to me by the Master of the Rolls in terms very kindly expressed, and his MS. notes were placed in my hands by our common friend, the Rev. F. Procter, M.A., who did all in his power to facilitate my operations. The Rev. G. E. Corrie, D.D., Master of Jesus College, Cambridge, also liberally allowed me to keep a copy of

Archdeacon Hardwick's labours on Higden.

¹ Henry VI. was crowned in Nov. 1431 at Notre Dame; and by 1450 his power in France was completely broken.

² As only one MS. of this translation seems to be known, I have

been unable to correct its readings, except occasionally by conjecture. But I suspect it to be corrupt in many other places, where I have neither guessed nor said anything.

Macray's *British Historians*, full of MS. notes by the Archdeacon. He had proceeded but a little way, as far as p. 39, with the text and versions; and as the sheets were not struck off, I made such corrections and additions as seemed desirable, and must consequently be held responsible for any errors which may be discovered. It must be borne in mind that I have taken in two MSS. in addition to those which he used; viz. E. for the Latin text, and α . for Trevisa. All the MSS. which he, after an inspection of a great number, selected, have been used for the present edition.¹

It now remains that I should express my thanks to the Senate of the University of Cambridge for permitting me to take out of the University Library MSS. A. and E.; to the Master and Fellows of Caius College, Cambridge, for granting me the like privilege with respect to their MS. B.; to the President and Fellows of Magdalen College, Oxford, for allowing me to take out their MS. C., and to retain it for a long time till the collation was completed; to the

¹ A word or two may here be said in explanation of the mode of editing. In the Latin text the orthography has been freely corrected in accordance with common use, and false spellings are but occasionally recorded. In the English, except in the case of proper names, I have been very unwilling to change the text or orthography from conjecture; wherever letters or words are in brackets the reader will at once be apprised they do not occur in the standard MS., but are usually added from α . or β ., or both. The proper names in the versions have given me much trouble and perplexity. Whenever the word has been changed into an English dress, as Alisaundre, the MS. reading has of course always

been retained, and when it is in a manner naturalized, like Affrica and Babiloun, it has been half reluctantly allowed to stand; in the case however of a Latin word merely barbarised, the MS. reading has been changed into the classical form, except that diphthongs are excluded, which I could wish were banished from the language altogether. Thus, in the English, I write (following the MSS.) "Cesar, Phenicia," &c. both of which are sanctioned by the authorized version of the Bible. Still in many cases it was difficult to judge what course was best to be followed, and the reader is informed in the notes what the MSS. read in all cases where it seemed necessary to mention their orthography.

Master and Fellows of St. John's College, Cambridge, for allowing me to retain in long continued possession their MS. D., as well as the standard MS. of Trevisa, and their fine copy of Caxton's edition; also to the Rev. J. B. Lightfoot, D.D., Hulsean Professor of Divinity, and Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, for allowing me free access to MS. G.; and, in fine, to the Right Hon. S. H. Walpole, M.P., for calling my attention to the valuable Winchester MS. (W.); and to the Rev. G. Moberly, D.D., Head Master of Winchester College, for politely collating, at my request, certain portions of that MS.

Nor must I omit publicly to acknowledge the alleviation of my labours by S. A. Moore, Esq., of the Public Record Office, by whom the collation of MSS. B. and C. for the latter part of this volume, and for the remainder of the work, has been made, and who, in conjunction with T. Duffus Hardy, Esq., has much assisted me in various other ways. To E. A. Bond, Esq., of the British Museum, I am also under obligations for the ready aid of his great paleographical knowledge. In conclusion, I must beg the indulgence of the reader, who may detect errors and oversights which are in some degree unavoidable in the execution of a difficult and laborious undertaking.

St. John's College, Cambridge,
October 21, 1864.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

BOOK THE FIRST.

The Map of the World.

CAP. I.

The Prologue.

Praise of the writers of history. Letters alone keep alive the memory of great actions in past times, and sustain laws and arts in our own. Emperors, philosophers, and apostles would be almost unknown but for written monuments. Of all kinds of writing, history is the noblest, and brings the most honour to its professors. Accordingly the author proposes to hand down the praises of his native land to posterity in a treatise culled from the labours of various historians. His friends urge him to enlarge his work into a general history of the world in regular chronological order. He distrusts his own powers and attainments. However, he will endeavour to be a gleaner after the reapers, through following them at a humble distance. Readers who may not have access to large libraries may at least be instructed by this compendium. Equal certainty in all its parts cannot be looked for in a history. At the same time all wonderful accounts are not to be discarded as incredible. Consequently the author cannot guarantee the accuracy of every statement, but only faithfully reports what he finds in his authorities. At the same time he makes their labours his own, by expressing their meaning in his own words. Their names precede the sentences which are derived from them; when the compiler himself speaks, he prefixes his own name. - - pp. 2-20.

CAP. II.

The names of the authors alleged in this book.

Catalogue of the writers and their works. - - pp. 20-26.

CAP. III.

The division of the work into seven books.

The title *Polychronicon* indicates its character. Its sevenfold division follows the example of the work of Creation. The first book contains a map of the world, being a description of its principal divisions and countries, ending with Britain. The second book contains a brief summary of universal history from the Creation of man, till the destruction of the Jewish temple. The third book continues the history from the return from Babylon to the advent of Christ. The fourth book goes on to the arrival of the Saxons in England. The fifth thenceforward to the invasion of the Danes. The sixth thenceforward to the Norman conquest. The seventh proceeds from the conquest till the author's own time in the reign of Edward the Third. - - - pp. 26-28.

CAP. IV.

Preliminary observations useful to readers of the present work.

On the descriptions of places, of which more hereafter; also on the states of the world; on the distinctions of dispensations; on the successions of empires; on the forms of religions; on the courses of ages; and on the qualities of actions; and on the various modes of computations of years. Modes of computing years among the Hebrews, Greeks, Romans, and Christians. The chronological systems of Dionysius Exiguus, and Marianus Scotus. Errors of Dionysius. The method of noting dates adopted in the present work. - pp. 30-40.

CAP. V.

On the dimensions of the world.

The survey and description of the world undertaken by command of Julius Cæsar. The length and breadth of the habitable world. The diameter of the earth; distance of hell from the earth's surface. - - - pp. 40-46.

CAP. VI.

On the divisions of the Earth.

Boundaries of Europe, Asia, and Africa. - - pp. 46-48. .

CAP. VII.

Description of the parts of the Earth.

Population, temperature, and extent of Europe, Asia, and Africa. Some geographers reckon only Europe and Asia as the divisions of the world, counting Africa as a part of Europe. - - - - - pp. 48-52.

CAP. VIII.

The Mediterranean Sea.

Description of the limits and extent of this sea; names of its bays, straits, and other parts. On the Euxine, Propontis, and Hellespont. - - - - - pp. 52-58.

CAP. IX.

The Ocean.

The ocean encompasses the earth like a circle. The tides most felt near the shores. The probable causes of this. The three great bays of the ocean are the Mediterranean, the Caspian, and the Red Sea. The red dye of that sea derived from the shore. The Caspian gates; legendary stories about them. On whirlpools in the Mediterranean and in the Atlantic. pp. 58-64.

CAP. X.

The provinces of the Earth, and first of Paradise.

Three points to be considered concerning Paradise; its existence, situation, and character. The four rivers of Paradise. Paradise is not, as some suppose, a region elevated above the surface of the globe. Astronomical considerations disprove this. Paradise is with probability placed in the extreme bounds of the east, and considered to be a large tract of country, not less than India and Egypt. Its name signifies a garden of delights; there beauty and loveliness, salubrity and security are perpetual. The waters of Noah's flood did not reach it. A fiery wall and cherubim above it guard Paradise against the approach of men and evil angels. - - - - - pp. 66-78.

CAP. XI.

Asia and its provinces.

Asia, whence so called. India; its natural productions, climate, tribes. Habits of the people; institutions of caste. Monstrous and strange kinds of men: Pigmies, gymnosophists, cynocephali, &c. Trees of the sun and moon; they forbid Alexander to enter Babylon. - - pp. 78-84.

CAP. XII.

Parthia.

Extent of Parthia. Signification of *Parthi*. The Parthians originally exiles from Scythia. Their history obscure till the Macedonian period. Manners of the Parthians. Dynasty of the Arsacidae. The Parthian mode of warfare. pp. 84-90.

CAP. XIII.

Assyria and the adjacent regions.

Etymology of Assyria, Media, and Persia. Their boundaries. Babylonia. Description of Babylon. Chaldea. Description of the Tower of Babel. Arabia, its boundaries and natural productions. Description of Mount Sinai. Mount Libanus described; its natural productions. Syria, its etymology and boundaries; notice of Damascus. - - pp. 92-102.

CAP. XIV.

The region of Judea.

Judea, whence so called. Different significations of the word. Its extent; its length and breadth; its boundaries. Natural productions of Judea. Jerusalem, anciently called Salem. Also called by Solomon Jerosolima, and by poets Solyma. Afterwards called *Ælia* by Hadrian. St. Jerome thinks however, that Salem is Scythopolis or Bethshan. Situation of Jerusalem. Has no fountains. Mount Sion. Church of the Holy Sepulchre. The miracle of the Holy Fire. Ornamentation and fortification of the city by Solomon. The Mount of Olives. The brook Cedron. Gethsemane. Mount Calvary. The Dead Sea; its qualities. Pentapolis. Apples of Sodom. - - - - pp. 102-118.

CAP. XV.

The region of Canaan.

Canaan, whence so called. Palestine, its limits. Idumea, its limits; the fountain Jobyn. Samaria formerly included in Palestine. It lies between Judea and Galilee; signification of *Samaritæ*, i.e., *keepers*. Sichem, now Neapolis. Historical notices of the city. Galilee lies between Judea and Palestine. Upper and Lower Galilee. Lake of Galilee. Ptolemais or Acre. Cedar, its position: seat of the Ishmaelites. Otherwise known as Hagarens or Saracens. Their habits. Phenicia; its boundaries. Phenicians the inventors of letters. - - - - - pp. 120-128.

CAP. XVI.

Egypt.

Egypt, whence so called; its limits; its natural productions. The Nile. Cause of its overflowing. Various opinions on this subject. - - - - - pp. 130-134

CAP. XVII.

Scythia and the adjacent regions.

Scythia partly in Europe, partly in Asia; its boundaries. Habits of the Scythians. They conquer Egypt, Persia, and the army of Alexander. They found the empires of Parthia and Bactria, and their women that of the Amazons. Their three conquests of Asia. The servile insurrection, and its suppression. Boundaries of Bactria. Description of Mount Caucasus. Boundaries of Hyrcania; its inhabitants and productions. Boundaries of Hiberia and Albania. The men and dogs of Albania. Boundaries of Gothia. Character of the inhabitants; their descendants in Europe, Asia, and Africa. Origin of the Armenians. Boundaries and extent of Armenia. Mount Ararat. - - - - - pp. 134-146.

CAP. XVIII.

Cappadocia and Asia Minor.

Limits of Cappadocia. Definition of Asia Minor. The provinces of Bithynia, Galatia, Phrygia Minor or Dardania,

Lydia, Pamphylia or Isauria, Cilicia, including Lycia or Lycaonia. Amazonia partly in Europe, partly in Asia. Habits and government of the Amazons. Queen Thalestris and her correspondence with Alexander. - - pp. 146-154.

CAP. XIX.

Africa and its inhabitants.

Etymology and definition of Africa. Its provinces enumerated. Ethiopia described; character and habits of its monstrous inhabitants; the Garamantes, Troglodytæ, &c.; the animals of Ethiopia; its fountains. Limits and etymology of Libya. Boundaries of the Tripolitana. Gætulia. pp. 154-162.

CAP. XX.

The same, continued.

Boundaries of Numidia. History of the foundation of Carthage. Chronological difficulties about Virgil's account of Eneas and Dido. Dimensions of Carthage. Etymology of Mauretania. Its two divisions, Cæsariensis and Tingitana. Description of Mount Atlas. - - - pp. 162-168.

CAP. XXI.

Europe and its provinces.

Europe, whence named. Its boundaries. The river Tanais. Boundaries of the lower Scythia. Short notices of Alania, Mœsia, Sclavia, and Pannonia. - - - pp. 168-174.

CAP. XXII.

Greece and its provinces.

The ancient and modern names of the inhabitants of Greece. Degeneracy of the later Greeks. Enumeration of the provinces of Greece. Description of Thrace or Epirus, and of its metropolis, Constantinople. The churches erected by Constantine and Justinian. Reliques of the Saints preserved there. Notice of the Lacedemonians or Spartans; they found Tarentum. Boundaries of Macedonia. Description of Mount Olympus and Mount Athos. Boundaries of Dalmatia. De-

scription of Achaia, with notices of Corinth. Description of Arcadia, and notices of its products. Thessaly; its inhabitants and natural curiosities. The Lapithæ and Centaurs explained. Mount Parnassus. Tempe. Deucalion's flood. Helladia, whence so called. Comprises Attica, Bœotia, and Peloponnesus. Cecrops founded Acte, afterwards called Athens. Contest of Minerva and Neptune. Notice of the Hellespont. Early civilization of Athens. Notices of her kings. Etymology of Bœotia; its natural curiosities. Notice of Thebes. - - - - - pp. 174-196.

CAP. XXIII.

Italy and its provinces.

Italy, anciently called Magna Græcia, Hesperia, Saturnia, and Ausonia. Why afterwards called Italy. Its boundaries; its rivers and natural curiosities. Enumeration of its provinces. Notice of Apulia, and its metropolis, Brundisium. Notices of Campania Major and Minor. Capua, Neapolis, and Virgil's baths. Ancient inhabitants of Italy before the Lombards enumerated. Origin and progress of the Lombards.

pp. 198-206.

CAP. XXIV.

The city of Rome.

Modern writers on Rome. Legendary accounts of the building of various parts of the city by Noah, Janus, Saturn, Italus, Hercules, and Evander. Romulus confined them all within the walls of one city. Date of his foundation. Enumeration of the city gates; circumference of the walls. The palaces of Rome. The central palace; the palace of peace, built by Romulus; the palace of Diocletian; the palace of sixty emperors. The Pantheon; the arch of Augustus; the arch of Scipio; the holovitreum destroyed by St. Sebastian. The temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. Origin of the word *flamen*. The magical wonders of the House of Gold. The statue of Bellerophon suspended in mid air. Notices of theatres, aqueducts, and baths. The giant Pallas and his epitaph. Statues of Jupiter and Venus in Rome. Pyramids of Romulus and of Julius Cæsar. The marble horses. Legend of Praxitellus and Fibia (Praxiteles and Phidias). Account of the statue variously said to represent Theodoric, Constantine, Marcus, and Quintus Curtius. Account of the Colossus removed from Rhodes. Its magical properties. How de-

stroyed by pope Gregory. Statue of the City of Rome ; its miraculous destruction. Palace of Vespasian, and verses inscribed on a tablet hard by. - - - pp. 206-238.

CAP. XXV.

On certain institutions of the Romans.

A Roman triumph ; the ceremonies observed ; the licence permitted. Ceremony at an imperial coronation. Mode of proclaiming war among the Romans. The different kinds of toga worn by different persons. On the *dies fasti* and *nefasti*. The *Quinquatria*. The division of the Roman people into two classes by Romulus. Subsequent division into four classes. On the *ides*, *kalends*, &c. On the *milites emeriti*. *Nonariæ*, why so called. The *Proletarii*. Origin of divorce among the Romans. Character of the Roman emperors and people. - - - pp. 238-252.

CAP. XXVI.

Germany and its parts.

Limits of Germany, according to Isidore. Upper and Lower Germany. Their various provinces enumerated. The northern regions more populous and hardy than the south ; hence the vast swarms of barbarous tribes that have poured down from them, Huns, Goths, Vandals, Saxons, &c. Limits of Bohemia. Its natural productions. The Bison. Limits of Thuringia, of Franconia, of Bavaria, of Westphalia, of Suevia, of Saxony. Character of the Saxons. Natural productions of Germany. Ancient government of the Saxons. Limits of Frisia. Manners and government of the Frisians. Limits of Seland. Character of the country and its inhabitants. The *Scribonii*, a people of north-west Germany. The Seven Sleepers. - - - pp. 254-266.

CAP. XXVII.

Gaul, or France.

Gallia, why so called. The Galli, the priests of Cybele, not named from Gallia, but from the river Gallus. Character of the Gauls. Limits of Gallia. Its divisions in the time of Julius Cæsar. Rivers of France. Its minerals ; plaster of Paris. Praises of Paris. The Franks, like most nations of

Europe, took their origin from Troy. Antenor, their ancestor, founded the city of the Sicambri in Pannonia. Their leaders after his death, Trogotus and Franco; whence the nation took their name. Another account makes Charlemagne the author of the name; he released slaves throughout Gaul in honour of St. Denys, and made them freemen or Franks of the saint. From that time Gallia was called France. Others say that the emperor Valentinian called the Sicambri *feranci*, from the ferocity of their manners. The succession of the French kings. The Merovingian dynasty, and notices of the separate kings. Charles Martel; Pepin; Charlemagne. The Carolingian dynasty, and notices of the separate kings. Hugh Capet, duke of Burgundy, and his successors reign in France. Charlemagne's successors reign in Italy and Germany till the time of Conrad. Enumeration of the tribes who successively occupied Gaul. The provinces of France recounted. - - pp. 266-286.

CAP. XXVIII.

Description of the Provinces of France.

Brabant, famous for its wool. The waters of England not so favourable for dyeing; Lincoln however and London produce good scarlet. Flanders, how bounded; its inhabitants and natural productions. The limits of Picardy; Upper and Lower Picardy. Normandy, peopled by Danish and Norwegian sailors; its capital city Rouen. Brittany, twice occupied by Britons, once in the time of Belinus, and again in Vortigern's reign; how bounded. A marvellous fountain in Brittany. Poitou and Poitiers, how peopled; the character of the inhabitants. Aquitaine or Guienne, its boundaries defined. Anjou, its situation. Gascony, formerly counted to Guienne; the Vascones formerly located there by Pompey the Great; the inhabitants now known by the name of Basques. Burgundy, why so called; its inhabitants suffer from *goître*. - - - - pp. 288-298.

CAP. XXIX.

Spain.

Limits of Spain defined. Hispania Citerior and Ulterior; formerly called Hesperia and Hiberia. Provinces of Spain enumerated. Notice of Carthago Spartaria. Occupation of Spain by the Carthaginians, Goths, and Saracens. The last now confined to the eastern districts of Spain. pp. 298-302.

CAP. XXX.

The Islands of the Mediterranean.

Gades or Cadiz described. Signification of the name. Columns of Hercules. Majorca and Minorca. Notice of Sardinia; its marvels. Corsica, its situation described; its extent; named from a woman Corsa; fertility of its soil. Aradus, near Tyre, famed for its sailors. The Cyclades, why so called. Among them are Rhodes and Delos. Derivation of Delos; formerly called Ortygia. The island of Samos; historical notices. Samian ware. Cyprus described. Crete described; its natural productions, arts and sciences; the Labyrinth.

Sicily described; anciently called Trinacria and Sicania; formerly joined by land to Italy at Rhegium; derivation of Rhegium. Scylla and Charybdis. The plough first used in Sicily; comedy invented there. The country abounds in volcanic rocks. Description of Mount Etna; supposed by St. Gregory to be the place of tormented souls. Marvellous wells in Sicily. Crickets, which sing best when dead and without their heads. The city of Palermo. Sal Agrigentinus. The Æolian Islands.

Other islands in the Euxine, which is a part of the Mediterranean, as Colchos and Patmos. - - pp. 302-318.

CAP. XXXI.

The Islands of the Atlantic.

The Canaries or Fortunate Islands; considered by the heathen to be Paradise by reason of their extraordinary fertility. Denmark (Dacia) peopled by Goths; character of the inhabitants; Britain and Gaul invaded by them; they introduced habits of drunkenness into Britain. Wyntland, character of its inhabitants; they sell wind to sailors. Iceland, its situation described; its natural productions; character and occupation of its inhabitants. Island of Thule (Tile), or Island of the Sun; its climate described; six days' sail distant from Britain. Tilis not the same as Tile. Norway described; its climate and natural productions; its inhabitants hunters and pirates. " " " pp. 320-328

CAP. XXXII.

Ireland.

Ireland largely described by Giraldus Cambrensis, the principal authority for this account, which embraces the following subjects: the position and character of the island; its productions and defects; its inhabitants, ancient and modern; its miracles and saints. Ireland, the last island of the West, called Hibernia from Hiberus, brother of Hermon (Hermónius), a Spaniard, or from Hiberus the river. Also formerly called Scotia. Position of Ireland defined. The Irish sea rough and almost impassable. From the Brendan hills to St. Columba it contains eight days' journey in length, of forty miles each, and from Dublin to Connaught four days'. Mountainous and marshy character of the country. Great fertility of its pastures. Salubrity of the climate. Beef wholesome there, pork unwholesome. No poison produced there. The beasts, birds, and fishes of Ireland. The bernacle goose; its strange production from firwood; eaten by religious men on fasting days, as not being properly flesh. This opinion refuted. Errors of Bede and others respecting the natural productions of Ireland. The precious stones and pearls of Ireland. The defects of the country. The wheat produces very small corns; and in general most animals, man excepted, are smaller here than elsewhere. Fresh-water fish for the most part wanting. Certain kinds of falcons and of game and other animals also wanting. Venomous beasts said to have been expelled by St. Patrick. More probably the island never had any. Poisonous creatures die in Ireland; and poison as it approaches the Irish coast loses its force. Irish earth-mould kills venomous creatures. Irish cock-crowing. - - - pp. 328-338.

CAP. XXXIII.

Ireland, continued. The original inhabitants.

Inhabitants of Ireland before the Deluge. Casera and her company. Arrival of Bartholanus, descended from Japhet, three hundred years after the Deluge. His family increased to nine thousand men, all of whom, except Ruanus, died from the stench of the carcases of the giants whom they slew. He lived for fifteen hundred years, till St. Patrick's time, and related to him the history of the nation. Scythian colony under Nimeth; its destruction by war and pestilence

after two hundred and sixteen years. Ireland without inhabitants for two centuries. Greek colony under five generals of Nimeth's posterity. They divide the land into five parts, and set up a pillar in the centre of the country; Sianius at length becomes the sole governor of the island. Spanish colony under Hiberus and Hermon, sons of king Milesius. Hermon kills his brother and becomes sole monarch. A hundred and thirty-one kings reign from his time to the arrival of St. Patrick. From the arrival of the Spaniards to the death of St. Patrick are eighteen hundred years. The Irish also called Gaitels and Scots. Gaytelus, a grandson of Phenius, married Scota, Pharaoh's daughter. Came to Ireland after the Confusion of Tongues, and composed the Irish, or Gaelic language. Afterwards Gurgentius, son of Belinus, king of Britain, introduced some Basques of Spain, whom he found in the Orkneys without a habitation, over whom he placed a governor. Consequently Ireland belongs, of right, to Britain. From the time of St. Patrick to Fedlimidius, thirty-three kings reigned in four hundred years. Turgesius, a leader of Norwegian pirates, then invaded and conquered the country. They construct many fosses and castles. This Turgesius was sent over from Britain by Gurmund, who reigned there by right of conquest. Gurmund known in England as the only conqueror of Ireland. Turgesius, in like manner, in Ireland. After Gurmund's death, Turgesius fell in love with the daughter of the king of Meath. The king murders him by stratagem, after he had reigned thirty years. Soon afterwards other Norwegians come to Ireland for trading purposes; they build Dublin, Waterford, and Limerick. They at length quarrel with the Irish. They introduce the *Sparth*. Seventeen kings in Ireland, from Turgesius to Rotherick, the last king of Connaught, whom Henry the Second conquered. From Hermon to Rotherick, eighty-one kings reigned, not crowned nor consecrated, but raised to the throne by lawless violence.

pp. 340-350.

CAP. XXXIV.

Ireland, continued. The manners of the natives.

The ancient Irish, according to Solinus, lawless, brutal, and idle barbarians. Their manners in the time of Giraldus Cambrensis not much better. Their dress, arms, music. Their dissolute habits; they refuse to pay tithes; their cowardice, perfidy, &c. In Ireland and Wales old hags change themselves into hares. Some Irish conjurers can change

dead matter into live swine; if they cross water, they revert to their original substance, and in no case last more than three days. Marvels always abound most in the extremities of the world; and for that reason in Ireland also.

pp. 350-360.

CAP. XXXV.

Ireland, continued. The Marvels of the country.

The island of immortality. Other marvellous islands. Island in a lake of Ulster containing the Purgatory of St. Patrick. Marvellous fountains in Ireland. Round towers visible below the surface of a lake in Ulster (Loch Neagh). In Ossory every seven years a man and woman are changed into wolves. Petrifying and other wonderful lakes. St. Colman's birds. Large account of the Purgatory of St. Patrick, and of the ceremonies observed by those who do penance therein.

pp. 360-376.

CAP. XXXVI.

Ireland, continued. The Saints of the country.

Irish saints more vindictive than others. Character of the Irish clergy; chaste, but deep drinkers. Their bishops almost wholly taken from the monastic orders; hence they are more given to contemplation than to the active duties. Many confessors, but no martyrs, in Ireland. The bishop of Cashel's satirical explanation of this. Bells and pastoral staves much venerated in Ireland. The staff of Jesus at Dublin, by which St. Patrick expelled snakes. Various ways of accounting for the appearance of animals in islands.

pp. 376-382.

CAP. XXXVII.

Albania, or Scotland.

Scotland, its boundaries. Anciently called Albania, from Albanactus, son of Brutus, or from Albania, a province of Scythia, whence the Scots also derive their name. Then called Pictavia, from the Picts, and then Hibernia. Its connexion with the Irish the reason of this designation. Proofs from Bede that Scotland is called Hibernia. Barbarous habits of the Scotch. Their soil and climate. Their kings not crowned. St. Andrew their chief saint. His his-

tory. Legend of his appearance to Ungus, king of the Picts, at Carcenan, and of the monastic foundations of Regulus in the same place. - - - - - pp. 382-394.

CAP. XXXVIII

Cambria, or Wales.

The reason of the name. Cambria derived from Camber, son of Brutus, who reigned here; afterwards called Wales, from Gwalae, daughter of king Ebrancus, who was married here. The praises of the country. It abounds in meat, fruit, and fish; horses, oxen, and sheep; all kinds of grain; metals, coal, minerals; honey, milk, meath, ale, &c. In a word, Wales is the pantry of the earth. Geographical and political divisions: Demetia, Venedocia: the three courts of Caermarthen, Anglesey, and Pengwern. The manners of the natives: their clothing, arms, food. Their character: fickle, intemperate, lazy, predatory, dirty. Their music, clan customs, superstitions. Their state improved of late by intercourse with the English. They now acquire property, and apply themselves to agriculture, and live in towns. The marvels of the country. A pool at Brechnock has strange sounds and forms of buildings below its surface. Birds sing in honour of the prince of the country, at his bidding. Goldcliff near Caerleon. The island of Barry, near Cardiff; strange sounds heard there in a crevice. Pembroke; its earthquakes produced by demons. A wonderful tumult at Crucmaur. The island of Bardesey, its salubrity. Merlin Silvestris, who lived in Arthur's time, buried there. There was another Merlin, named Ambrosius, the son of a goblin, as it is said, in the time of Vortigern. Various particulars about the two Merlins. Snowdon and its lakes, a floating island in one of them; one-eyed perch and trout live in the other. The spring of Tegengil. Miraculous stone in Anglesey. The rock of Hearing, so called by the rule of contrary. An island near it, where mice eat the viands of discordant monks. Bells and staves here venerated as in Ireland. The spring of Basingwerk. The well of St. Winifrid. - - - - - pp. 394-430.

ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

- Introd. p. xvi., note 4. Add: It is remarkable that Bale, in the earlier edition (1549) of the *Illustr. Scriptores*, does not mention Roger of Chester at all, and in his account of Hugo Vyrley (fol. 141 b.), says that he makes use of 'Ranulphus Cestriensis,' for whom in his later edition (1559) he substitutes 'Rogerus de Cestria.' I now very much doubt whether Virley ever quotes Roger *by name*, though he doubtless uses the shorter form of the *Polychronicon*.
- Page 2, line 2, *quo adviverent*] This is the reading of the MSS., and, except that *advivo* seems to be a new word, might well stand; but there is very little doubt that *quoad viverent* is the true reading. Compare p. 374, note 1. In Gale's MS. (G.) a later hand has joined *quo-ad*. Compare Trevisa's translation.
- Page 6, line 14. The various reading *quadrivialis*, supported also by G., is better, and should be read in the text.
- Page 8, last line, *Provide*] Read *Proinde*; both words make sense, and are usually undistinguishable in the MSS., but *proinde* is doubtless right, and is very distinct in G.
- Page 9, line 11, for *unucralle* read *vnwralle*; and similarly in note 11 for *unwynde* read *vnwynde*.
- Page 11, line 14, *ich*] Add in a note *I., Cx.*
- Page 13, line 9, *the*] Read (with MS.) *be*, and so at p. 15, l. 14; p. 17, l. 7; p. 29, l. 11. But *the* at p. 29, l. 1; p. 41, l. 6; p. 59, l. 16, is correct. Our MS. is not constant in the use of the letter.
- Page 18, line 1, *ver*] Read (with the MSS.) *ubi*; the contraction (*i*/*v*) was misrendered.
- Page 24, *Wilhelmus*] I could wish that here and everywhere else the word were printed *Willelmus*, which is supported by most MSS., when given at length. In this edition it is sometimes (p. 178, &c.) printed *Willielmus*. All three forms are more or less supported by authority. Coins decidedly preponderate in favour of *Willelmus*.
- Page 44, line 16, *Ptolomæum*] Read *Ptolemæum*. (The barbarous reading retained *per incuriam*.)
- Page 54. Cancel note 13, and insert: The true reference is to Gir. Cambr. *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. iii. c. 20, p. 131. Ed. Brewer.
- Page 64. These absurd stories about Alexander are told also by Pseudo-Methodius *Revel.* Sig. b. iiiii. Ed. Basil, 1504.
- Page 80. The reference to Pliny is correct according to the capitulation of some; but in Harduin's edition the chapter is numbered xxii.
- Page 84. Below cap. xii. insert in italics *De Parthia*.
- Page 93. Here and afterwards the marginal notes in the Harl. MS. had better be cancelled, except when they are in English.

- Page 106, l. 1, *hi*] Read *hi*. The same barbarous orthography occurs at p. 126 (bis).
- Page 120, *Capitulum quintumdecimum*] This should have been printed uniformly with the other headings in the *Latin* text, CAP. XV.
- Page 121, line 10, *zerof*] Read *berof* (typ. error).
- Ibid.*, note 12, *Philisti*] Read *Philistym*.
- Page 126, line 11. See Pseudo-Methodius *Revel.* Sig. d. ii. The following reference (p. 128) to Methodius is erroneous: the information is substantially contained in Isidore, lib. xiv. c. 3.
- Page 162, line 4, for *xxi.* read *xx.*; and at p. 168, for *xxii.* read *xxi.*; and at p. 174, for *xxiii.* read *xxii.*; at p. 206, for *xxv.* read *xxiv.*; and at p. 266, for *xxv.* read *xxvii.* The capitulation in the versions is correct in each case. The numbers of the chapters of the text are given correctly in the summary of contents.
- Page 166, note 10, add: Orosius also (lib. i. c. 2, p. 31, Hav.) has *Malua*.
- Page 174, last line (compare the versions), add this note on *Giraldus*, cancelling note 13 at p. 175): The true reference is to Girald. Cambr. *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. (or *dist.*) iii. c. 19, p. 129. Ed. Brewer. See also c. xii.
- Page 178, note 9, cancel *most probably*. See Will. Malm. *De Reg.*, lib. iv. p. 548, where the reference to Virgil shows that his text should be *Mysia*, not, as Mr. Hardy edits it, *Mæsia*.
- Page 183. Cancel note 11; *sede* is quite right, being the rendering of *sedem*.
- Page 197. Harl. version, line 7, Boetia] Correct the MS. reading to Beotia.
- Page 208, line 2. For 'secundum *Estodium*,' Martinus Polonus (lib. ii. c. 4.) has 'demonstrat *Methodius*.'
- Page 210, line 9. The true number, according to Martin, is not 454, but 432. See Mart. Pol., lib. i. c. 2, and c. 4. The omission of a line drawn at an angle to three others makes the difference when written in Roman numerals (ccccliii., ccccxxxij.)
- Page 222, line 10, *Ranulphus*] Taken from Mart. Pol. s. a. 1041.
- Page 292, note 3, add: Here, as usual, C.D. agree better with the original authority. Compare Girald. Camb. *Top. Hib.*, lib. ii. c. 8. See c. 7 for the latter part of Higden's article.
- Page 300, line 1, add a comma after *plana*.
- Page 314, line penult., *septimo*] Higden should have written *octavo*.
- Page 316, *Giraldus in Topographia*] Made up from *Top. Hib.*, lib. ii. c. 8 and lib. i. c. 16.
- Page 362, note 4, add: In Camden's edition of Giraldus, *Top. Hib.*, lib. ii. c. 5, the same error occurs.
- Page 384, line 13, *Giraldus*] Add in a note: See Giraldus *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. i. c. 6.
- Page 388, line 10, *Giraldus*] Add in a note: The true reference is to Girald. *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. i. c. 13.
- Page 398. Cancel last sentence of note 6. *Tivy* in the text is right. See Girald. *Descr. Cambr.* c. 5.

**POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.**

VOL. I.

A

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS.¹

LIBER PRIMUS.

CAP. I.

*Prologus.*²

1. POST præclaros artium scriptores, quibus circa rerum notitiam aut morum modestiam dulce fuit, quo adviverent, insudare, illi merito, velut utile dulci commiscentes, grandisonis sunt præconiis attollendi, qui magnifica priscorum gesta³ beneficio scripturæ posteris derivarunt.⁴

¹ The title varies in the MSS. See the *Introduction*.

² *gesta*] om. A.

³ This word is wanting in A.C.D.

⁴ The whole of this sentence wanting in C.D.



TRANSLACION OF RANULPHUS OF CHESTRE'S BOOKES OF TREVISA.
CRONYKES BY SIR IOHAN TREVISA, CHAPELAYN
VNTO LORD THOMAS OF BARKLEY.¹

1. AFTER solempne and wise writeres of arte and of science, pat hadde swetnesse and lykyng al hir² lyf tyme to studie and to trauaille aboute konnyng and knowleche of kyndeliche³ pinges and aboute sobernesse and redinesse of pewes, pey be worthy to be⁴ hiȝeliche and solempliche⁵ i-preysed,⁶ as pey it were putting and medlyng to gidre profit⁷ and swetnes, pat⁸ write and left vs write⁹ meruailles and wondres, greet berynge and dedes of oure forme fadres,¹⁰ of stalworth the wyt,¹¹ wise and worthy, and of dyuerse manere men pat were in olde tyme.

RANULPHUS, MONKE OF CHESTRE, COMPILEDE THIS PRE-MS. HARL.
SENTE WERKE AND CRONICLE. 2261.

*The Firste Prolog bigynneth here in to pis Story of
mony Cronicles.*

1. AFTER the nowble wryters of artes, to whom hit was a pleasure in this life presente to fixe theire studies and laboures abowte the knowlege of thynges and virtues morale, thei ar to be enhaunsede and exaltede by merite with grete preconyes, as makenge a commixtion of a thyng profitable with a swetenesse mellifluous, whiche haue deriuede to men succedenge thro the benefite of scripture the excellent gestes of men precedenge.

¹ No title to Trevisa's translation in MS. or α . The title given above is supplied by parts of Trevisa's Dedicatory Epistle, printed by Cx.

² *her*, α , Cx.

³ *kyndley*, Cx. (not α .)

⁴ *ben*, Cx, where the same use of n is frequent, both in the infinitive and indicative.

⁵ *and solempliche*] Wanting in Cx.

⁶ *i-preysed*] *I preised*, MS., and α .; and similarly elsewhere. The prefix wanting in Cx., both here and generally.

⁷ *profit*, α .

⁸ *pat*] Wanting in Cx, and placed in our MS. and α . immediately after 'pey' (though), just preceding.

⁹ *i write*, α .

¹⁰ *forn-faders*, Cx.

¹¹ *wight*, Cx.

2. In historico namque¹ contextu chronographorum nobis² diligentia³ delegato relucet clarius⁴ norma morum,⁵ forma vivendi, probitatis incentivum, trivium quoque⁶ theologicarum virtutum et quadrivium cardinalium trabearum, quorum notitiam apprehendere seu⁷ vestigium imitari nostra modicitas non sufficeret, nisi sollicitudo scriptorum nostræ transfunderet imperitiæ memoriam transactorum. Siquidem vita brevis, sensus hebes, animus torpens, memoria labens, inutilis demum occupatio nos impediunt multa scire, novercante semper oblivione memoriæ inimica. Sed et⁸ in præsentiarum artes et jura prorsus ruerent, spectabilium actionum exemplaria⁹ non paterent, loquendi quoque tropi et schemata penitus deperirent, nisi in remedium imperfectionis humanæ litterarum usum divina miseratione providisset.¹⁰

3. Quis, quæso, Cæsares hodie sciret, philosophos miraretur, apostolos sequeretur, nisi eos insignirent

¹ *namque*] Wanting in C.

² *nobis*] After *diligentia* in C.D.

³ *diligentia*] om. E.

⁴ *planius*, E.

⁵ *norma morum*] *norma*, (only) D.; both words wanting in C.

⁶ *que*, E.

⁷ *seu*] aut, C.D.

⁸ *et*] Wanting in B.C., added above the line in D.

⁹ *actionum exemplaria*] *actionum exempla*, B : *gestorum exempla*, C. D. ; but in C. *exempla* is corrected into *exemplaria*.

¹⁰ *prævidisset*, A.

2. For in þe makynge and¹ bookes of stories, þat is to vs TREVISA.
i-sent and byqueþe by grete besynesse of þe writers of cro-
nicles,² blaseþ and schyneþ clerliche þe riȝt rule of þewes,
ensauple of leuyng, clensynge³ of goodnes, þe metynge
of þe pre waies of þe pre vertues of deuynyte, and þe
metynge of foure weies of þe foure chief⁴ vertues of þewes
of real clopyng. Of þe whiche þinges our litel konnyng
myȝte nouȝt take knowleche, noþer⁵ folwe þe foure,⁶ but
besines of writers to oure vnkunnyng hadde i-holde and
i-streyned⁷ mynde of olde dedes. For why schort lyf, dul
witte, and slowe vnderstondynge, and ydel occupacioun
letteþ vs to knowe many þinges; forȝetingnes all wey
kypinge þe craft of a stepdamme, he⁸ is enmy of mynde.
Also now, in our tyme, art, sciens and lawe al were i-falle,
ensample of noble dedes were nouȝt i-knowe; nobilite and
faire manere of spekyng were all i-lost; but þe mercy of
God had i-ordnyed vs of lettres in remedie of⁹ vnparfiȝt-
nesse of mankynde.

3. I praye who schulde now knowe emperours, wonder of
philosofres, oper¹⁰ folwe þe apostles, but hir¹¹ noble dedes
and hir wonder werkes were i-write in stories and so i-kept

2. For in the contexte historicalle the rewle off lyvenge MS. HARL.
and forme of vertues moralle, and the incentiue of manhode, 2261.
ȝiffe grete resplendence thro the diligence of croniclers. Also
the triuialle of the vertues theologicalle and quadriualle of the
cardinalle vertues, to comprehend the knowlege of whom oure
insufficience sufficethe not, withowte the sollicitude of writers
scholde transfude to vs the memory of thynges of antiquite.
For schort lyfe, a slawe sawle, and a slipper memory lete
vs to knowe mony thynges, obliuion schewenge helpe, an
enmye alleweies and a steppe moder to the memory. For
in this tyme presente artes and lawes scholde falle vtterly,
thexemplares of acciones spectable scholde not be patent,
the ornat eloquence scholde peresche, but that diuine mi-
seracion hath provided vse of letters in to the remedy of
the imperfecion of man.

3. What man scholde haue perfect knowledge of em-
peroures, meruaile of philosophres, and folowe thapostles,
but that the actes of writers made theym nowble? There-

¹ of, Cx.

² cronykes, Cx. a.

³ knowyng, Cx.

⁴ principal, Cx.

⁵ ne, Cx.

⁶ fourth, Cx.

⁷ shadde and stremed, Cx.

⁸ he] wanting in Cx. (not a.).

⁹ of þe, a.

¹⁰ or ellys, Cx.

¹¹ theyr, Cx., here and frequently;
here, a.

monumenta scriptorum? Quis denique Lucilium cognosceret, nisi eum Seneca suis epistolis illustrasset?¹ Plus profecto scripta poetarum² Cæsareis laudibus addiderunt quam omnes mundi divitiæ quas tulerunt. Historia igitur, cum sit testis temporum, memoria vitæ, nuncia³ vetustatis, dotes possidet præminentes, suosque quam plurimum prærogat professores. Historia namque quadam famæ immortalitate peritura renovat, fugitiva revocat, mortalia quodammodo perpetuat et conservat.

4. Cur⁴ igitur,⁵ inter cæteros trivialium tramitum protritores ac sesquipedalium verborum efflatores, qui non minimum⁶ stadii⁷ sui bravium sunt adepti, nostri non erunt laude digni⁸ orbis quadrifidi dimensores, quadriviales⁹ historiæ descriptores; immo proculdubio, velut¹⁰ tetragoni, sine vituperio triumphalis erunt laureæ comprehensores?

5. Horum nempe merito provocatus et exemplo, non mea jactanter jaculans nec aliena joculariter jugulans,¹¹ decrevi, ut potui, geniale solum meum profusioribus extollere laudum titulis, ac sic¹² tractatum aliquem, ex variis auctorum decerptum¹³ laboribus, de statu insulæ Britannicæ ad notitiam cudere futurorum.

¹ *Quis . . . illustrasset*] Wanting in C.D.

² *scripta poetarum*] After *laudibus* in B.; *scriptura prophetarum*, E.

³ *nuncius*, C.D.

⁴ *Cur*] Et ut, D.

⁵ So B.C.D.; ergo, A.E.

⁶ *minimi*, A.

⁷ *studii*, B.

⁸ *digni laude*, B.

⁹ *quadriviali*, B.; *quadrivialis*, C.D.

¹⁰ *velut*] Wanting in A.

¹¹ *jaciens*, C., but *jugulans* written above; *joculans*, A.

¹² *ac sic*] et sic, C.D.; ac si, B.

¹³ *excerptum*, C.D.; but corrected to *decerptum* in the former.

in mynde? Who schulde knowe Lucilium, but Seneca in TREVISA.
his pistles hadde i-write his dedes? Writinge of poetes
is more worthy¹ to preisyng of emperoures þan² al þe
welþe of pis worlde, and riches³ þat þey welde⁴ while þey
were alyue. For storie is wytnesse of tyme, mynde of lyf,
messenger of eldnesse;⁵ story weldeþ passyng doynges, storie
putteþ forþ hire⁶ professoures. Dedes þat wolde be lost
storie ruleþ;⁷ dedes þat wolde flee out of mynde, storrye
clepeþ⁸ aȝen;⁹ dedes þat wolde deie, storrye kepeþ hem
euermore.¹⁰

4. Wherefore, among opere noble trauaillours of þe pre
pathes¹¹ and faire florischers and hiȝteres¹² of wordes and of
metre, þat haueþ of here trauaille greet pryse i-gete, we mowe
nonȝt ful preyse hem, þat in stories¹³ meteþ and discryueþ
all þe worlde wyde. But wipoute eny drede þey schulleþ
fonge¹⁴ her mede of hym þat rewardeþ and quyteþ al þat
wel worcheþ.¹⁵

5. By þe worþynesse and ensauple of so worpy writeris
i-spiȝt and i-egged,¹⁶ nouȝt bostyng of myn owne dedes
noþer skornyng ne blamyng of¹⁷ oper men dedes, I haue
y-kast and y-ordeyned, as I may, to make and to write a
tretes, i-gadered of dyuerse bookes, of þe staat of þe ylonde
of Britayne, to knowleche of men þat comeþ after vs.

fore a story is the testimony of tymes, the memory of life, MS. HARL.
2261.
hauenge in possession dowerys preeminent, renewenge as
thro immortalite thynges like to peresche, beyng as in a
maner a conseruatiue perpetuelle to thynges mortalle.

5. Wherefore y, wyllenge to folowe the descriptores of
the storrye quadriualle, and as provoke thro thexemple
of theim, intende to compile a tretys of the state of the
yle of Breteyne, excerpte of diuerse labores of auctores.

¹ worth, Cx., a.

² þat, MS. ; than, Cx.

³ rycheses, Cx.

⁴ welded, Cx.

⁵ oldnesse, a.

⁶ her, Cx.

⁷ reneweth, Cx. ; renweth, a.

⁸ callith, Cx.

⁹ aȝe, a.

¹⁰ for euermore, a.

¹¹ Cx. here inserts instead of 'and'
the clause 'arne mooste worthy to

ben praysed ;' thus altering the con-
struction of the sentence.

¹² embelysshers, Cx.

¹³ historyes, Cx, here and fre-
quently.

¹⁴ schulleþ fonge] shall resseyue,
Cx.

¹⁵ werke, Cx.

¹⁶ so worpy . . . i-egged] noble
wryters that herto fore haue wreton,
Cx.

¹⁷ of] om. a.

6. Quod¹ dum sodalibus meis innotesceret, quibus familiare fuit semper² facta majorum³ speculari, importuna eorum instantia sum pulsatus, ut etiam de famosioribus orbis historiis ab initio macrocosmi usque ad nostram ætatem non solum juxta temporum seriem,⁴ verum etiam juxta singulorum annorum supputationem congruentem aliqua compilarem.⁵

7. Cujus negotii, velut Dædalini labyrinthi,⁶ inextricabilem attendens intricationem, rogata sum veritus attemptare. Nam, præter id quod soleat⁷ grandia cogitantibus desidia quædam et segnities obrepere, animadvertēbam tamen ad tantum involucrum evolvendum ingenii mei disparilitatem, necnon et flagitatæ materiæ vastitatem, scribentium quoque in hac⁸ materia numerum et auctoritatem, ac potissime subsecutam exinde modernorum saturitatem; qui devotionis obsequium minus, ut assolet, attendentes super isto cibo levissimo facile nausearent, quinetiam ad renovata seu reculcata, æmulum more, linguas acuerent, supercilia arcuarent. De quibus Gregorius loquitur Nazianzenus, quod "aliena facillime carpunt, sed bona difficilius" imitantur." Provide verebar plane ego⁹ vir videns

¹ The rest of this chapter is, in C. and D., compressed into four short sentences, thus:—"Si quid vero a fide dissonum aut a moribus alienum hic reperiatur, hoc tempori potius quam viro ascribatur. Quamobrem in hac assertionem . . . communico," (as at p. 18). After which: "Et quamvis . . . præscribitur," (as at p. 20). The first part is rendered in the Harl. MS.

² *semper fuit*, E.

³ *majoris*, A.

⁴ *temporum seriem*] These words transposed in B.

⁵ *computarem*, B.

⁶ *Dædali in laberintho*, B.

⁷ *solebat*, B.

⁸ *hac*] om. B.

⁹ *ego*] ergo, A.

6. Dan special frendes¹ pat knewe myn entent [and]² had³ likynge⁴ to knowe greet men dedes, prayed me besiliche, pat I schulde also write þe famous stories and acounte þe zeres from þe bygynnyng of þe world anon⁴ to oure tyme. TREVISA.

7. Þoo toke I hede pat þis matir, as⁵ laborintus, Dedalus⁶ hous, hap many halkes and hurnes, wonderful weies, wyndynges and wrynkylynges, pat wil nouzt be vnwarled,⁷ me schamed and dradde to fynde⁸ so grete and so gostliche⁹ a bone to graunte. For ydelnesse and sleupe letteþ grete werkes pat men wolde worche; my witt is ful luyte¹⁰ to unwralle¹¹ þe wrappynges of so wonder¹² werkes: þe matire is large, writers þerynne beþ¹³ many, and greet for fulnesse perof; now men beþ¹⁴ al sad and takeþ þe lasse hede and liȝtliche wolde flaterie¹⁵ vpon þis symple foode,¹⁶ and, as enemyes, whette her tinges and bende hire browes. Of suche men spekeþ Gregory Nazianzenus, pat willeþ liȝtliche blame defauȝtes of opere men, and goodnesse nouzt sopelich¹⁷ folwe. Al þis ich hadde in mynde, and also I

6. Whiche labore expressede to my felawes hauenge inop-MS. HARL. pinable appetite to beholde gestes of antiquite, y was 2261. movede thro the importune instance of theyme to compile somme thynges of the famos storyes of the worlde from the creation of man vn to oure age, not oonly after the ordre of tymes, but also after the supputacion of euery yere congruent. f. 17 b.

7. Attendenge the intricacion inextricable of this labor presente as of the mase of Dedalinus [y] am preyede to attempte hit withowte drede; aduertenge ofte tymes slawthe to mete men thenkenge grete thynges, and the insufficiencie of my wytte, and the obnubilous and clowdy processe of this mater y-desirede, perauenture men in these dayes attendenge but litelle the obsequy of deuocion as thei be wonte, scholde take disdeyne of this liȝhte meyte. Of whom Gregorius Naz[i]anzen spekethe, seyenge, "Suche men reprove liȝhtely "straunge thinges, but vnnethe with grete difficulte thei "folowe goode thynges." Wherefore y seenge the poverte

¹ lordes, Cx.

² Added from Cx. and a.

³ desyre, Cx.

⁴ worlde unto, Cx.

⁵ as] was, MS. and a.; corrected from Cx.

⁶ his hous, a.

⁷ be unwarled] lyghtly be opened and shewed, Cx.

⁸ fynde] take on me, Cx.; founde, a.

⁹ ferdful, Cx.

¹⁰ lytil, Cx.

¹¹ unwynde, Cx.

¹² wonderful, Cx.

¹³ beþ, a.

¹⁴ So also a.

¹⁵ wolde flaterie] wolde fynde fawte, Cx.; flatþe, a.

¹⁶ werke, Cx.

¹⁷ so liȝtliche, a.

paupertatem meam, post tantos tubicines, cum sterili eloquio "racidulum quiddam balba de nare"¹ proferre, aut certe sycomoros² vellicans uvam acerbam proponere delicatis.

8. Quis enim non rideat, seu³ potius irrideat, si post Herculeos labores, si post Olympicos agones plene consummatos, pygmæus se præparet⁴ ad conflictum? Et me certe fragili modulantem avena quis non derideat, si, post tam grandisonos Boanerges, qui in tanto facundiæ cataclysmo præfixerunt satiræ periodum, stridulo soni sibilo decolorarem tantæ materiæ majestatem? Sed scio quid dixit Booz ille clemens paterfamilias ad Ruth verecunde colligentem spicas post terga metentium remanentes. "Nemo," inquit, "tibi sit molestus." Et iterum ait ad messorum, "Etiam si vobiscum metere voluerit, ne prohibeatis; et colligentem nemo corripiat." Poeta quoque Mantuanus, Maro Virgilius, ut ait⁵ Isidorus Etymol.,⁶ lib. x.,⁷ sive Flaccus ille Horatius, ut vult Hugo⁸ Pisanus in suis Derivationibus, capitulo præviso;⁹ "Cum sibi improperebatur ab æmulis, quod versus quosdam

¹ Pers. Sat. i. v. 33.

² *sicomores*, B.

³ *sed*, A.

⁴ *præparat*, A.

⁵ *vult*, B.

⁶ *Etymol.*] added from B.E.

⁷ xi°, E. (wrongly). See § 44.

⁸ *Hugucio*, E.

⁹ Perhaps *prævio* is the true reading; E. has *proviso*; Cx. prints *perviso* at length.

knewe myn owne pouert, and schamede and dradde after so noble spekers, þat sownede as trompes, to putte forþ my bareyn speche, hosnes¹ and snochyng, as who so² roteþ³ vp moolberyes and serueþ likerous men, þat lyueþ in likyng, wip soure grapes. TREVISA.

8. Ȝif⁴ after þe trauaille⁵ of Hercules, and after þe strif, ioustes, and turnementis⁶ of Olympy, a pigmey boskep hym to bataille and array hym to fȷte, who myȷte þanne leue to laughe? Also who wolde schoute to skorne, ȷif I pipe wip an otene reed, and vnhiȷte so noble a matire wip grisbaitinge,⁷ gruntyng and whistelyng, after so noble spekers þat sownede at þe beste; and of hem faire facounde and resonable⁸ speche, folowed and streynede⁹ all her lyf tyme? But ich haue wel in mynde what Booz seide to Ruth þat was schamefast, and lase¹⁰ vp þe eeres after his ripe men, "No man," he seide, "þe schall wrappe;" and to his ripe men he seide, "Ȝif ȷe¹¹ wole wip ȷow rype, "forbedeþ hir nouȷt; and here fore to lose¹² no man schal "lette." Þe poet, also, Mantuanus Maro Virgilius, as Isidorus seiþ, Eth. libro decimo, and Horatius, as seiþ Hugutio Pysanus, In derivationibus¹³ suis, capitulo peruiso: "Whan "enemyes despised Horacius and bere hym an¹⁴ honde þat he

and insufficiency of my connyng after so splendidious laboures dredde to proferre a raw thyng with bareyne eloquence and to purpose as a thyng bytter to so mellifluous delices. MS. HARL. 2261.

8. What man wolde not laȷhe and also haue in derision, if that a pigmei scholde make him redy to conflicte after the labores of Hercules and after the actes Olimpicalle plenerly finischede? What man wylle not haue me in derision intendenge to decoloure the maieste of soe highe mater after so nowble wryters? Neuerthelesse y remembre the dicte of Booz to Ruth gedreng cornes remaynenge behynde the backes of men scherenge, seyenge, "Noo man schalle be gre- "vous to the." Also the Poette Mantuan Maro Virgilius, as Isidorus rehersethe, Eth. liº decimo, or elles Flaccus Horatius, as Hugo Pisanus wylle in his Derivationes (capitulo perviso), when hit was seyde in obprobry to hym of his enmyes and aduersaries, that he scholde take some versus of that nowble

¹ hoose, Cx.

² om. a.

³ recheth, Cx.

⁴ For yf, Cx., a.

⁵ laboure, Cx.

⁶ tourneyes, Cx.

⁷ mowing, Cx.; om. a.

⁸ renable, Cx., a.

⁹ folowed and streynede] flowed and stremed, Cx. (stremed also in a.)

¹⁰ leese, Cx.; laas, a.

¹¹ she, Cx. (not a.), probably rightly.

¹² leese or gleyne, Cx.; lese, a.

¹³ diuinacionibus, Cx.

¹⁴ on, a.

“Homerianos transferens suis immiscuisset¹ carminibus,
 “et ex hoc compileret veterum diceretur, respondit:
 “Magnarum esse virium clavam de manu Herculis
 “extorquere.”

9. Nullus igitur² me majorum³ exulceretur,⁴ quæso,
 si sabuli cinerisque vicem gero, quæ, quamvis luce
 carentia fuerint et impura, subjectas tamen attritu
 materias puras solent reddere et fulgentes, sicut et
 quædam alia, quæ⁵ in se non habent, aliis⁶ solent
 ministrare. Unde⁷ poeta satiricus ait:—

“fungar vice cotis, acutum
 Reddere [quæ] ferrum [valet].”⁸

Et Gregorius in suo Pastoralis ait:—“Depinxi pulchrum
 “hominem,⁹ ego pictor fœdus.” Præsumens igitur de illa
 caritate, quæ, secundum Gregorium in Homilia,¹⁰ vires
 ministrat, quas imperitia denegat, messuram aggrediar
 lucubratione plenam, fastidiosus forsitan despicabilem,
 sed, ut arbitror, non¹¹ inutilem studiosis. Intrabo,
 inquam, in agros priscorum, metentes subsequens si

¹ *immiscuisset suis*, B.

² *ergo*, F.

³ *me majorum*] *majorum* mc, B.

⁴ *exulceretur*, A. ; *exulceret*, B.

⁵ *quod*, B.

⁶ *alii*, B.

⁷ *Vnde et*, B.

⁸ Horat. Ars Poet. 304. The words in brackets are omitted by Higden, who thus falsifies the construction.

⁹ *ymaginem*, B.

¹⁰ B. adds *s* (= sua ?).

¹¹ *non*] om. A.

" hadde i-take som of Omeres [vers],¹ and i-medled among his TREVISA.
 " and cleped² hym a gaderere of old wrytynges, he answerde
 " and seide, 'It were wel³ greet strengþe to wreste a mace
 " 'oute of Hercules honde.' "

9. Perfore I pray þat no man me blame, þei ich⁴ fare as
 sonnd and askes;⁵ þat⁶ þouȝ þei beep⁷ dym and foule hym
 self, other pinges þey clenseþ and makeþ schyne⁸ ful briȝt;
 and meny oper pinges þat þey haueþ not in hem self,
 ȝeueþ⁹ to opere. So saip the prophete¹⁰ Satiricus, "I fare
 " as the whetston¹¹ þat makeþ yren sharpe and kene." Item,
 Gregorius in suo Pastoralis seiþ, "I haue peynt a wel faire
 " man, and am my self a foule peyntour." Perfore I truste
 on þat charite þat Gregorie spekeþ of in his Omelye, þat
 wiþ¹² vertues and strengþe, þat vnkunnyng denyeþ; and
 auntre me in to þe rype,¹³ þat is ful of trauaille and wa-
 kynges, oute caste,¹⁴ despised of envious men and proude,
 and ȝit I hope profitable¹⁵ to good¹⁶ studiers and meke. I
 schal entre in to þe feeldes of oure forme fadres,¹⁷ and folwe

and laureate poete callede Homerus, and adde or inmixe theym MS. HARL.
 vnto his werkes and labores, and callede by that a compiler 2261.
 of olde thynges, he answered seynge that hit was a signe of
 grete strenȝhte to take the mace from the honde of Hercules.

9. Preynge that noo man haue indignacion thauȝhe
 y bere asches or sonde, whiche semenge as thynges impure
 and wontenge lyȝhte be wonte to yelde pure materes
 and fulgent, lyke as somme thynges be wonte to ministre
 to other thynges that thei haue not in theyme selfe.
 Whereof the poete Satiricus seythe "I schalle vse to make
 " a knyfe scharpe in the maner of a whetteston." And
 Seynte Gregory in his Pastoralles, "Y a fowle peynter haue
 " made a feyre man in picture." Wherefore y presumege of
 that charite, whiche, as Seynte Gregory seythe in an Omely,
 minstrethe strenȝhtes, schalle prosecute my processe, pera-
 uenture contemptible to fastidious men, but as y iugge not
 vnprofitable to goode studentes. Makege an entre in to f. 18 a.
 the felde of olde men, folowenge the scherers after my

¹ *Homeres versis*, Cx. ; *vers* added
 from a.

² *called*, Cx.

³ *right*, Cx.

⁴ *þeiȝ*, a.

⁵ *ashes*, Cx. ; *askeþ*, a. (and MS.
 originally).

⁶ *for*, Cx. The true reading is
 probably 'for þat.'

⁷ *be*, a.

⁸ *schene*, a.

⁹ *ȝeueþ* yet yeuen, Cx.

¹⁰ *poet*, a.

¹¹ *as a weston*, a.

¹² *wytte*, Cx. The sense requires
 ȝeueþ.

¹³ *þe rype*] *repyng*, Cx.

¹⁴ *in caas*, Cx. ; *oncas*, a., probably
 rightly.

¹⁵ *profitable*] it shall be prouffy-
 table, Cx.

¹⁶ *goode*, a.

¹⁷ *forn-faders*, Cx.

potuero, quoquomodo colligens¹ mihi spicas remanentes, vel saltem micas cadentes de mensa dominorum, qui quondam saturati dimiserunt reliquias suas parvulis suis. Sed etiam² de fragmentis cophinorum, quæ superfuerunt prandentibus, minutias³ recolligens, quippiam adjiciam laboribus auctorum, nanus residens in humeris giganteis, unde non solum minores ad rudimentum sed et majores ad exercitium provocentur, ut qui spatiosa illa materiæ hujus volumina tam⁴ late digesta nondum⁵ attigerunt, præsentī saltem compendio instruantur; ubi non dico sententiæ subtilitas neque⁶ verborum venustas, sed devotionis sinceritas materiæ⁷ militabit. In quo quidem compendio universa pæne problemata majorum sunt dicta; nonnulla vero, quæ in libris auctorum minime reperi, ex usu quotidiano et rerum experientia, quasi de quadam morum historia excerpsi. Enim⁸ vero multorum notitia gestorum partim violentia hostilitatis, partim desidia scriptorum

¹ *colligans*, B.² *et*, E.³ *micas*, B.⁴ *tam*] om. B.⁵ *non bene*, B.⁶ *aut*, E.⁷ *maxime*, B.⁸ *Quum vero*, A.

þe rype men, ȝif ich may any wyse leese and gadre me TREVISIA.
 som eres þat rype men schedep and skapeþ of here hondes ;
 oper, nameliche, ȝif I myȝte¹ gadre somewhat of þe crommes
 þat falleþ of lordes bordes, þat somtyme were fulfilled and
 left hir² relif to hir children. And also ȝif I myȝt gadre
 eny scrappes of þe releef of þe twelf cupes,³ and somewhat
 putt to and eche⁴ writinge of auctours, as a dwerf sittynge
 on a geauntis nekke ; wher þoruȝ ȝongelynges⁵ mowe be
 brouȝt to lore and gretter men to vse⁶ and to besynesse
 i-spyed,⁷ þat þey mowe be enformed and i-tauȝt by þis
 schort tretys, þat haueþ nouȝt i-seie þe grete volyms and
 large, þat beep of stories i-write, nouȝt sotilte of sentence,
 noþer faire florischynge of wordes, but swetnesse of deuocion
 of þe matire schal⁸ regne in þis book. In the whiche book
 and tretys wel nyh al problemys and questiouns of þe
 wiseste men þat⁹ beep¹⁰ i-planted ; also many pinges þat
 beþ nouȝt i-write in oper bookes, ich haue i-gadered of þe
 comyn, as þey it were of a storye, and i-write in þis tretis,
 for me¹¹ schulde hem knowe after oure time. For somdel
 by mallice of enemys, somdele by sloupe¹² of writeres, know-

power, gedrenge the eres of cornes remanent, or elles cromes MS. HARL.
 fallenge from the table of lordes, whiche replete lefte frag- 2261.
 mente to theire childe and successoris, gedrenge the litelle
 partes to men hungre of the fragmentes of the cophinnes
 remanent, schalle adde somme thyng to the labores of auc-
 tores. Thro whiche labour lytelle men schalle not be inducede
 oonly to doctrine but also grete men schalle be prouocate
 to exercise, that men whiche haue not seen so large volumes
 of this mater may be instructe by this compendious labor,
 where y say not that subtilite of sentence or mellifuous
 eloquence schal be expressede in hit, but sinceritie of deu-
 ocion schalle schewe obsequy to the matere. In whom alle-
 moste alle the problemes of grete men be seyde, and many
 other thynges not founde in the bokes of auctores whom y
 have excerpede, as in a maner as a story by vse quotidian
 and experience of theyme ; in parte thro¹³ the knowlege of
 many thynges, parte thro the violence of hostile, and parte

¹ and gadre me . . . I ȝif
 myȝte] wanting in Cx.

² here, a. (and so often.)

³ vij. kipes or lepes, Cx.

⁴ eche] encrece, Cx. (not a.)

⁵ þoruȝ ȝong peple, a.

⁶ vse] So Cx. ; vice, MS. ; vys, a.

⁷ i-spyed] sette, Cx.

⁸ that, Cx. (typ. error for that shal?)

⁹ þat] wanting in Cx. The true
 reading is, perhaps, ' þat beep, beep
 i-planted.'

¹⁰ beþ, a. (but also beep elsewhere.)

¹¹ for me] by causemen, Cx. (not a.)

¹² þe sleupe, a.

¹³ The text is corrupt.

est adempta, ita ut vix hodie nuda locorum nomina sint salvata.

Quod si figmenta gentilium, si dicta ethnicorum, si miranda locorum in hoc opusculo interdum inserantur, Christianæ tamen religioni famulantur. Licuit enim Virgilio aurum sapientiæ in luto Ennii poetæ quærere, et filiis Israel ad Terram Promissam¹ proficiscentibus Ægyptios spoliare. In quibus pæne cunctis aliunde membratim excerptis, sed hic lineamentaliter concorporatis, ita seriosis ludicra,² ita religiosi³ ethnica vicissim sunt admixta, ut succinctis tritis laxatisque exoticis⁴ processus series⁵ observetur, et integra pro posse veritas non vacillet; æqualis tamen utrobique per⁶ omnia teneri non poterit certitudo. Nam divina miracula, secundum Augustinum, De Civitate Dei,⁷ admiranda sunt et veneranda, non disputatione discutienda: mirabilia vero non sunt omnino discredenda; cum dicat Hieronymus, "Multa "incredibilia reperies et non verisimilia, quæ nihilominus vera sunt. Nihil enim contra naturæ Dominum⁸

¹ *promissionis*, B.

² *ludibria*, B.

³ *reliosis*, A.

⁴ *exitiis*, B.

⁵ *cereos*, A.

⁶ *per*] *et per*, E.

⁷ *Dei*] Added from B., wanting in A.E.

⁸ *Dominum naturæ*, A.

leche of greet dedes¹ is so nyh loste and forȝet, þat skars-
liche bare names of places we haueþ now² in mynde. TREVISA.

10. Þey feynynge and sawes of mysbileued and lawles³
men, and wondres and merueillis of dyuerse contrees and
londes be i-planted in þis book, suche serueþ and is good
to be knowe of Cristen men. Virgile souȝt gold of wit
and wisdom in the fen of Ennii þe poete, and þe children
of Israel, in hire goynge into þe londe of byheste, spoiled
þe Egipcians. Þat is in oper bookes i-write welwyde and
parcel mele i-plaunted, here it is i-putte togidre in rule
and in ordre; so merpe to sadnesse and hepen to Cristen,
euerich among opere, þat straunge stories beþ so abregged,
schorted and i-lengped þat þe storie is hool,⁴ in soopnesse
nouȝt i-chaunged. Neuerþeles⁵ more certeyn som is i-holde
þan opir. For Augustinus, de Civitate Dei, seith: "We
schul trowe and worschippe þe miracles of God and nouȝt
hem despreue by despitusoun."⁶ Wondres beþ not al to
be vntrowed: for Hieronymus seip,⁷ "Meny wondres þow
schalt fynde þat þou woldest nouȝt bileue,⁸ and ȝit þey
beþ ful soop: kynde may not doo aȝenst God, Lord of

is adempte and loste þro the slawthe of wryters, so that
vnnethe the bare names of places be saluede. Thauȝhe the
figmentes of gentiles and dictes of ethnikes be inmixte to
this werke thei do seruyce to the Cristen religion and feyth.
For it was lawefulle to Virgille the nowble poette to seche the
golde of sapience in the cleye of Ennius the poete, and to the
childer of Israel goenge in to the londe of promission to spoile
men of Egipte. In whom alle thinges excerpte of opere men
ar⁹ broken in to smalle membres, but concorporate here lini-
amentally; thynges of disporto be admixte with saddenes, and
dictes ethnicalle to thynges religious, that the ordre of the
processe may be obseruede, that to my power the integrite
of trawthe schalle not feynte. For egalle certitude may
not be holden by alle thynges and in alle thynges. For
after Seynte Austyn, de Civitate Dei, diuine miracles ar
to be meruailede and to be worschipped, not worthy to be
discussede by disputacion. Thynges to be meruailede be
not in alle maneres to be taken to discredence, sythe Seynte
Ierom seythe, "Thow schalle¹⁰ fynde mony thynges incredible
and not lyke, and neuerthelesse thei be trewe. Truly there
is noo thyng more preualent ageyne the domyny of nature

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ So a.; *dredes*, MS.

² *not*, Cx.

³ So Cx. and a.; *lawes* of, MS.

⁴ *and*, Cx.; *hool and soþnesse*, a.

⁵ *notheles*, a.

⁶ *disputicion*, Cx.; *despitesoun*, a.

⁷ *Hieronymus seip*] *somme telle*, Cx.

⁸ So Cx.; *i leue*, MS.

⁹ *ar*] *as*, Harl. MS.

¹⁰ So Harl. MS.

“prævalet ipsa natura.” In multis quoque veri certitudo nullatenus vacillare videretur, probabiliter tamen dubitatur. Dicit enim Isidorus, *Etymol.* [lib.] xv^o. : “Si de constructione urbis Romæ certa ratio non appareat,¹ non est mirum si in aliarum opinione dubitetur.” Unde nec historicos nec commentarios ² varie loquentes condemnare debemus, quia antiquitas ipsa creavit errorem. Illorum igitur dictis, secundum Hieronymum, quorum religio fidei [et] moribus non ³ præjudicat, nec veritati agnitæ contradicit, fidem convenit adhibere.

Quamobrem in hac assertione historica periculum veri statuendi per omnia mihi non facio, sed quæ apud diversos auctores legi⁴ sine invidia communico. Nam et apostolus non, “Quæcunque scripta sunt vera sunt,” ait; sed, “Quæcunque scripta sunt, ad nostram doctrinam scripta sunt,” inquit. Et quamvis alienum sit quod assumo, meum tamen facio quod meis ali-

¹ *apparet*, E.

² *conjectarios*, B.

³ *nec*, A.

⁴ *lege*, A.

"kynde." Also of many pinges that seemep ful soop, TREVISA.
 nopeless skilfulliche me douteþ.¹ Isidorus, Eth., quinto
 decimo, seiþ: "ȝif resoun is vncertayne of þe buildynge of
 "the citee of Rome, what wonder þey men be vncerteyn of
 "the buldynge of oper citees and townes? Wherefore we
 "schulle not blame² makeres and writeres of stories, þat
 "dyuersliche spekeþ and writeþ; for longe passynge of tyme
 "and elde of dedes makeþ hem vnknowe and writers to
 "erre." Perfore Hieronymus seiþ, "It is semeliche to trowe³
 "her sawes þat wiþseiþ⁴ nouȝt oure byleue noþer soop-
 "nesse that is knowe."

Wherefore in þe writynge of pis storie I take nouȝt vppon
 me to aferme for soop⁵ all þat I write, but such as I haue
 seiþ⁶ and i-rad in dyuerse bookes, I gadere⁷ and write wiþ
 oute envie, and comoun to opere men. For þe apostel seith
 nouȝt, "All þat is write⁸ to oure lore is soop," but he seiþ
 "Al þat is i-write to oure lore⁹ it is i-write." And þei I
 take it of oper menis, I clepe pis storie myn; and for þat

"then that nature." Neuerthelesse a dubitacion may be MS. HARL.
 moveþ probably in many thynges, where certitude dothe 2261.
 not appere to be variaunte. Isidorus seythe, Eth. libro xv°, f. 18 b.
 "If that certeyne reason appere not of the construccion of
 "the cite of Rome, hit is not mervayle if a dubitacion be
 "moveþ in the oppinion of theyme. Wherefore we awe not
 "to condempne commentatores and wryters of storyes spekenge
 "diuersely, for the antiquite per of causethe erreure. For hit
 "is conueniente to ȝiffe feithe and credulite to the dictes of
 "those men, after Seynte Ierom, the religion of whom schew-
 "ethe not preiudice to vertues neiper seythe contrary to
 "the trawthe y-knowen."¹⁰ If eny thyng be founde disson-
 naunte to feithe auþer diuerse or straunge to vertues in
 this werke, hit schalle be ascribede raper to the tyme
 then to man. Wherefore y make not to me by alle thynges
 perelle of trawthe to be ordeynede in this spekenge of
 storyes, but takenge parte withowte envye thynges of diuerse
 auctores whom y haue redde. For Seynte Paule seythe,
 "That alle thynges wryten be not trewe, but alle thynges
 "wryten be wryten to oure doctrine." And thauȝhe y take
 the wordes of other men, y make hit myne that y pro-

¹ me douteþ] it is to be doubted,
 Cx.

² make blameres, a.

³ beleue, Cx.

⁴ So a.; wiþ seiþ, MS.; gaynsaye,
 Cx.

⁵ trouthe, Cx.

⁶ y-seie, a.

⁷ So a, and Cx.; gadered, MS.

⁸ y-write, a.

⁹ to oure lore] for oure doctryne
 and loore, Cx. (a has various words
 omitted.)

¹⁰ y knowen, Harl. MS., and simi-
 larly elsewhere; here always print-
 ed conjunctim.

quando verbis antiquorum sæpe¹ sententias² profero, adeo ut quos auctores in capite libri præscripsero,³ illis utar pro clypeo contra sugillantes. Quum⁴ vero compiler loquitur, sub hac figuratione [R] littera⁵ præscribitur.⁶

CAP. II.

*Nomina auctorum in hoc opusculo allegatorum.*⁷

RECITANTUR hic⁸ auctorum nomina de quibus hæc⁹ potissime abstracta¹⁰ est Chronica :

Josephus Judæorum historicus¹¹ insignis,¹² qui ab initio sæculi usque ad xiv^m. annum Domitiani libros antiquitatum xx., necnon et de subversione urbis Hierosolymæ¹³ gentisque suæ¹⁴ captivitate vii. libros¹⁵ conscripsit.

Hegesippus, de Excidio Urbis, quem transtulit Ambrosius.¹⁶

Plinius, in xxxvii. libris de Naturali Historia.

Trogus Pompeius, in xliv. libris de cunctis præne Orbis historiis, quem abbreviavit discipulus suus¹⁷ Justinus.

Eusebius, in Historia Ecclesiastica, cujus xi. sunt libri.

Historia Ecclesiastica Tripartita, cujus tres sunt

¹ *semper*, D.

² *sententias*] So B. (where the word *profero* is written twice); *sententiis*, A.E.

³ *scripsero*, B.

⁴ *Quum*] Quando, E.

⁵ *littera*] om. D.

⁶ *præscribetur*, D.

⁷ Heading (here and usually) as in B. *Præfatio secunda ad historiam*, E. In A.C.D. is no heading.

⁸ *Sunt autem hæc*, C.D.

⁹ *hic*, B.

¹⁰ *extracta*, C.D.

¹¹ *historiographus*, C.D.

¹² *insignis*] om. E.

¹³ *Hierosolymæ*] So D.E.; *Hierosolymitanæ*, A.B.

¹⁴ *suæ*] om. C.

¹⁵ *libros* 7, B.

¹⁶ D.E. add *doctor*.

¹⁷ *suus*] Added from B.D.E. In C. the reading is *ejus*.

I write oþer whiles myn owne wordes and sentens of olde men, þe auctores þat¹ in the firste bygynnyng of þis booke I take for schelde and defens, me for to saue and schilde² aȝenst enemyes þat me wolde despise strongly³ and blame; first for my self and for myn owne name I write þis letter [R].

TREVISA.

Capitulum secundum.

HERE I write and reherse þe auctours names of þe whiche þis cronycle is nameliche⁴ i-gadered and i-drawe: Iosephus Judeorum historicus insignis, qui ab initio sæculi usque ad quartum decimum annum Domitiani libros Antiquitatum viginti, necnon et de subversione civitatis Hierosolymæ, gentisque suæ captivitate septem conscripsit. Hegesippus, de Excidio Urbis quem transtulit Ambrosius. Plinius in xxxvii. libris, de Naturali Historia. Trogus Pompeius, in xliv. libris, de cunctis pene orbis historiis, quem abbreviavit discipulus suus Iustinus. Eusebius, in Historia Ecclesiastica, cujus xi. sunt libri. Historia Ecclesiastica Tripartita, cujus

ferre other while of the sentence of olde men by my wordes, vsenge the auctores whom I schalle wryte in the begynnenenge of the booke as a schelde and defense ageyne men movenge contrarious thynges. When the compiler spekethe, the letter shall be proscribede in this forme folowenge [R].

MS. HARL. 2261.

Explicit Præfatio prima.

Capitulum Secundum.

THE names of the auctores been rehersed here, of whom f. 19 a. thys presente cronicle is abstracte. Iosephus, the nowble wryter of storyes of the Iewes, whiche dide wryte xx^u bookes of antiquite, and vij. bookes of the subuersion of the cyte of Ierusalem and of the captiuite of the peple þer of, from the begynnenge of the worlde vn to the xiiijth yere of Domician themperoure. Also Hegesippus, de Excidio Urbis, whom Seynte Ambrose translate. Plinius, in hys xxx^u vij. bookes of Naturalle Storyes. Trogus Pompeius, in hys xl^u iiij. bookes, allemoste of alle the storyes of the worlde, whom Iustinus his disciple did abbreviate. Eusebius, in his Story Ecclesiasticalle, in whiche story xj. bookes be conteynede. Also the Ecclesiasticalle Story tri-

¹ I sette, or something similar, seems to be omitted.
² kepe, Cx.

³ strangely, Cx.
⁴ special, Cx.

auctores, *sc.*¹ Eusebius, Hieronymus, et² Theodorus episcopus.

Augustinus, de Civitate Dei, potissime in xvii^{mo}.³ et⁴ xviii^{mo}.

Orosius Hispanus, Terraconensis presbyter,⁵ in libro de Ormesta⁶ Mundi.

Isidorus Hispalensis episcopus, in libro Etymologiarum.

Solinus, de Mirabilibus Mundi.

Eutropius, in Historia Romana.

Paulus Diaconus, in Historia Longobardorum.

Cassiodorus,⁷ de Gestis Imperatorum et Pontificum.

Methodius martyr et episcopus, cui incarcerato revelavit angelus de mundi statu principio,⁸ et fine.⁹

Suetonius, de Gestis Romanorum.

Valerius Maximus, de Gestis Memorabilibus.¹⁰

Macrobius, in Saturnalibus.

Priscianus Grammaticus, in Cosmographia.¹¹

Petrus Comestor,¹² in Historia Scholastica.

Gregorius, de Mirabilibus Romæ.¹³

Beda, de Gestis Anglorum.

Item, Beda, de Naturis Rerum.

Item, Beda, de Temporibus.¹⁴

¹ Added from D.

² *et*] Added from C.D.

³ 16. D., which places *De C. Dei* at the end.

⁴ *et*] et in, E.

⁵ C. and D. add *et discipulus beati Augustini*.

⁶ In all the MSS. Respecting the orthography and probable import of this title, see Smith's *Dict. of Greek and Roman Biogr.*, vol. iii. p. 59, Lond. 1849.

⁷ C. and D. add *Senator et historicus*.

⁸ *principio*] Added from B.E.: in *principio*, C., but *in* is cancelled: a *principio*, D.

⁹ C. and D. insert, at this point, *Herodotus, Quintilianus, Agellius* (i.e. *Aulus Gellius*. D. has *Angelius*.)

¹⁰ A. adds, here also, *et fine*, but the words are run through by some corrector of the MS.

¹¹ *sua*, add C.D.; in *Cosmographia* om. B.

¹² *Trecensis* (f) *presbyter*, add C. D., which last has *Cretensis*.

¹³ *Magister Gregorius in libro de*, C.D.

¹⁴ The two last works of Bede are omitted in D., and added in C. by a later hand.

tres sunt auctores, Eusebius, Hieronymus, et Theodorus episcopus. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, potissime xvii. et xviii. Orosius Hispanus Terraconensis presbyter, in libro de Ormesta Mundi. Isidorus Hispalensis in libro Etymologiarum. Solinus de Mirabilibus Mundi. Henricus Huntynghdonensis¹ archidiaconus. Eutropius [in]² Historia Romana. Walterus archidiaconus Oxoniensis. Paulus Diaconus in Historia Longobardorum. Alfridus Beverlacensis thesaurarius. Cassiodorus de Gestis Imperatorum et Pontificum. Galfridus Monamutensis, in Historia Bretonum. Methodius etiam³ martyr et episcopus, cui incarcerato revelavit angelus de mundi statu principio et fine. Willelmus⁴ Ryvalensis. Giraldus Cambrensis, qui descripsit Topographiam Hiberniæ, Itinerarium Walliæ, et vitam regis Henrici Secundi sub triplici distinctione. Suetonius, de Gestis Memorabilibus.⁵ Macrobius, in Saturnalibus. Johannes Salisburiensis in suo Polycraticon, quem intitulavit, de Nugis Curialium et Philosophorum. Priscianus Grammaticus, in Cosmographia. Petrus Comestor in Historia Scholastica. Hugutio Pisanus episcopus in Magnis Derivationibus⁶ suis. Gregorius, de Mirabilibus Romæ. Vincentius Belluacensis, in Speculo Historiali. Beda, de Gestis Anglorum. Ivo Carnotensis episcopus. Beda, de Naturis Rerum. Historia Francorum. Beda, de Temporibus. Titus Livius, de Gestis Romanorum.

TREVISA.

partite of whom be iij. auctores, Eusebius, Ierom and Theodorus the byschoppe. Seynte Austyn de Civitate Dei, and specially in the xvij^{the} and xviii^{the} books. Orosius Hispanus, in his booke de Ormesta Mundi. Isidorus Hispalensis, in his Ethimologies. Solinus, of the Meruayles of the Worlde. Eutropius, in his story of Romanes. Paulus Diaconus in his Story of Longobardes. Cassiodorus, of the Gestes of Emperoures and Byschoppes. Methodius, martir and byschoppe,⁷ to whom, beenge in prison, an angelle schewede of þe state of the worlde, begynnenge and ende. Suetonius, of the Gestes of Romanes. Valerius Maximus, of the Gestes of Memorye. Macrobius, in Saturnalibus. Priscianus Grammaticus, in his Cosmographye. Petrus Comestor, in his Storye Scolasticalle. Gregorius, of the Meruailles of Rome. Bede, of the Gestes of men of Englonde; also, Bede, of the Natures of Thynges; also, Bede, of Tymes.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Hontingdon, a.*² *in]* Added from *a*, and *Cx*.³ *etiam]* om. *Cx*.⁴ *Willmus*, MS., and so a little below.⁵ *Romanorum, Valerius Maximus de gestis memorabilibus, a.*⁶ *diuinacionibus, Cx.*⁷ *byschop*, Harl. MS.

Gildas,¹ de Gestis Britonum.²

Marianus Scotus.

Wilhelmus³ Malmesburiensis monachus, de Gestis Regum Angliæ et Pontificum.⁴

Henricus Huntindonensis⁵ archidiaconus.

Walterus Oxoniensis⁶ archidiaconus.

Alfridus Beverlacensis⁷ thesaurarius.⁸

Galfridus Monemutensis⁹ in Historia¹⁰ Britonum.

Wilhelmus Rievallensis.¹¹

Giraldus Cambrensis, qui descripsit Topographiam Hiberniæ, Itinerarium Walliæ, et Vitam regis Henrici Secundi sub triplici distinctione.

Johannes Salisburiensis,¹² in suo Polycraticon,¹³ quem¹⁴ intitulavit de Nugis Curialium et Philosophorum.

Hugo¹⁵ Pisanus episcopus, in Magnis¹⁶ Derivationibus.

Vincentius Beluacensis, in Speculo Historiali.

Ivo Carnotensis episcopus.

Historia Francorum.¹⁷

Titus Livius, de Gestis Romanorum.

Martinus pœnitentiarius domini papæ in Chronicis suis de Imperatoribus et Pontificibus.¹⁸

Et Florentius Wigornensis monachus, quem in

¹ Item Gildas, B.

² C. and D. add *Nennius* (*Nennius*, C.) *Brito Eldugi* (read *Elvudugi*) *discipulus, presbyter*.

³ *Wilhelmus*] So B. Various written and abbreviated in the MSS.

⁴ C. and D. omit the title of the book. B. has *de regibus Angliæ et pontificibus*.

⁵ *Hunteyngdonien.*, B.

⁶ *Exon.*, C.D.

⁷ *Bleuerlacen*, B.

⁸ *thesaurius*, A.

⁹ *Munemutensis*, D.

¹⁰ *historiis*, B.

¹¹ *Rivalensis*, D.

¹² *Salesbur*, D.

¹³ *Polychronicon*, B. (*Polycraticon* in marg. in later hand), E. A con-

fusion of names which is often repeated in the titles of the present work.

¹⁴ *qui*, A.

¹⁵ *Hugutio*, B. (*Hugo* in marg.), C.D.E. Both forms are good.

¹⁶ *Magnis*] *suis*, C.D.

¹⁷ The allusion is most probably to the work of Gregory of Tours, although in some MSS. the punctuation seems to imply that the writer intended the *Chronicon de Regibus Francorum* of Ivo of Chartres. (Hardwick's note.) C. has '*Ivo Carnotensis Episcopus, Historia Francorum, T. Livius*,' all in the margin. D. omits them entirely.

¹⁸ *in cronicis de pontificibus*, C.D.

Gildas, de Gestis Britonum. Martinus pœnitentiarius do- TREVIS.
mini papæ, in Chronicis suis de Imperatore et Pontifice.¹
Marianus Scotus. Willelmus Malmesburiensis Monachus de
Gestis Regum Angliæ et Pontificum. Florentius Wygor-

Gildas, of the Gestes of Briteynes. Marianus Scotus. MS. HARL. 2261.
Willelmus² Malmesburiensis monachus, of the Gestes of the
Kynges of Englonde and of the Byschoppes. Henry, Archi-
diacon of Huntyngedon. Waltere, Archidiacon of Oxford.
Alfride, Treasurer of Beuerlaye. Galfridus Monomutensis,
in his Story of Britones. Willelmus² Riualensis. Giral-
dus of Wales, which describde Topographie of Irlonde,
Itinerary of Wales, and the Lyfe of Kinge Henry the
Secunde, under a triuiale distiuccion. Iohannes Salesburi-
ensis, in his Policraticon, whom he intituled de Nugis Curi-
alium. Hugo Pisanus Byschoppe, in his Deriuaciones. 5
Vincentius Beluacensis, in his Myrrour Historiacle. Ivo f. 19 b.
Byschoppe Carnotense, of the Storye of Frensche men.
Titus Liuius, of the Gestes of Romanes. Martinus, the peni-
tentiary of the Pope, in his Cronicles of Emperoures and
Byschoppes. Also Florentius, monke of Wurcestre, whom

¹ *de Imperatoribus Pontificibus*, Cx. | ² *Willms*, Harl. MS. (twice).

annorum supputatione una¹ cum Mariano Scoto² potissime sum secutus.

CAP. III.

*Divisio hujus Opusculi in septem libros.*³

ET quia præsens chronica multorum temporum continet gesta, idcirco eam *Historiam Polychronicam*,⁴ a pluralitate temporum quam continet, censui nuncupandam. In cujus negotii pertractatione, exemplo primitivi Opificis sub senario cuncta condentis et in septimo⁵ quiescentis, cujus actio nostra est⁶ instructio, subtractum opus in septem libellos⁷ subdistingxi. Quorum primus describit orbis loca, reliqui sex orbis gesta juxta⁸ numerum sex ætatum. In primo tamen⁹ hujus operis¹⁰ libro, more divisi generis in species,¹¹ mappa mundi describitur. Deinde, orbis in suas partes¹² principales dividitur. Tertio, provincia quæque partialis percurritur, donec perveniatur ad omnium novissimam¹³ Britanniam, tanquam ad speciem¹⁴ specialissimam,¹⁵ cujus gratia tota præsens lucubrata est historia.¹⁶

¹ una] om. B., which arranges the words of the sentence differently.

² C. and E. omit *una cum Mariano Scoto*. D. omits all after *monachus*. The order in which this catalogue of authors appears is not quite the same in all the Latin MSS. The text is as A.B.E.

³ *Præfatio tertia ad historiam*, E.

⁴ *Policraticam*, C., (not D.): and similarly in the colophon of the same MS.

⁵ *septenario*, B.

⁶ *est*] sit, B.

⁷ *libellos*, B.E.

⁸ *juxta*] secundum, B.

⁹ *etiam*, C.D.

¹⁰ *hujus operis*, om. C.D.; *hujus partis*, E.

¹¹ *more . . . species*] om. C.D.

¹² *partes* interlineated in later hand after *principales* in A.

¹³ *omnium novissimam*] So B.C.E.; *omnem novissimam*, D.

¹⁴ *speciem*, A.

¹⁵ *tanquam . . . specialissimam*] om. C.

¹⁶ *I. p. h.*, C. (omitting *est*).

nensis, quem in annorum supputatione, una cum Mariano, TREVISA.
potissime sum secutus.

Prefatio secunda ad Historiam.

AND for pis cronicle¹ conteyneþ berynges and dedes of meny tyme,² perfore I clepe³ it *Pollicronicon*, pat is pe⁴ cronicle of meny tymes. In pe whiche work, by pe ensaump of pe firste Worchere, pat wrouȝhte alle his werkes in sixe dayes and reste in pe seuene (for his doynge is oure lore⁵), pis werke I departe and dele in seuene bookes. Pe firste book descryueþ placis and contrees and londes and alle pe worlde wyde.⁶ Pe opere sixe bokes, by pe noubre of vi. ages, pat conteyneþ berynge and dedes from pe bygynnyng of pe world vnto oure tyme. Nepeles in pe firste book of pis werk, as who⁷ descriueþ general, comoun and special, mappa mundi is purtrayed and i-peynt, pat is pe clope pat pe schap of pe worlde wide is i-peynted ynne. Panne in his cheef parties pe world is i-deled; and for pis storie is bytrauailled⁸ by cause of Brytayne, eueriche prouince and londe is descryued for to me⁹ come to Britayne pe laste of alle, as most special; and pere ynne is i-conteyned

y folowe specially with Marianus Scotte in the supputation **MS. HAR**
of yeres. **2261.**

The secunde Preface vn to the storye. Capitulum tertium.

AND for cause that this cronicle presente conteynethe the gestes of mony tymes, I haue studiede that hit schal be called *Policronicon* of the pluralite of tymes whom it dothe conteyne. In whiche werke y haue subdiuidede in to viij. bookes, after the exemple of the firste Maker makenge alle thynges vnder the nowmbre of vj. and restenge in the vijth. The firste boke of whom describeth the places of the worlde, other vj. bookes describe the gestes of the worlde after the nowmbre of vj. ages. Mappa mundi is describete in the firste boke of this werke, in the maner of a diuision genericalle in to a diuision specificalle. After that the worlde is diuידede as in to his partes principalle. In the thrydde euery parcialle province is discussede, till hit be comen to Breteyne the last prouince, as vn to a specialite moste specialle for

¹ for as moche as this cronkye, Cx.

² tymes, Cx. (not a.)

³ So Cx. and a.; cleped, MS.

⁴ So Cx. and a.; in, MS.

⁵ doctryne, Cx.

⁶ wyde world, Cx., and so just below, with other slight variations.

⁷ So Cx.; first who, MS.; first as who, a.

⁸ is traauylled, Cx.

⁹ for to me] vntil we, Cx.

Quo¹ in loco quindecim contexta² sunt capitula, summariam³ quidem sed necessariam insulæ Britannicæ notitiam continentia, velut isagogæ quædam⁴ primæ ad majores categorias in libris reliquis subsequentes, ut cui fortassis plenam ponendorum cœnam gustare non libuerit, his saltem⁵ præviis acruminibus⁶ delectetur. Deinde⁷ secundus liber aggreditur⁸ gesta sæculi, cum descriptione minoris mundi; verum quia gesta uniuscujusque ætatis non sunt æque multa et librorum quilibet⁹ æquilibratam portionem vendicat in contentis, ea propter secundus liber quatuor ætatum sæculi¹⁰ continet gesta, a plasmatione scilicet protoplasti usque ad¹¹ incensionem templi Judaici. Tertius a transmigratione populi usque adventum Christi. Quartus a Christo usque adventum Saxonum. Quintus abinde usque adventum Dacorum. Sextus abinde usque adventum Normannorum. Septimus abinde¹² usque ad ævum nostrum, quod est sub regno Edwardi Tertii post Conquæstum. Et sic, juxta vaticinium Isaiæ præloquentis, immensitas historiæ profluentis percussa est in septem rivis, ut jam¹³ per eam transeant calceati, pateatque via residuo populo Dei.

¹ Quo . . . delectetur] om. C.D.

² contexta] om. B.

³ non summariam, Gale's MS.(G.), (but non is interlineated), and so the Winchester MS. (W.) and Harl. version; badly.

⁴ ysagoge quidam, A.; isagoge quædam prima is probably the true reading. See Trevisa.

⁵ B. adds descriptionibus.

⁶ acruminibus] So B., apparently, and G., quite distinctly; compare p. 404; a criminibus, A.E.W.; and so Trevisa, absurdly.

⁷ Thus abridged in C.D.: *Deinde secundus liber gesta seculi cum descriptione minoris mundi aggreditur: quatuorque (secundus liber quatuor, C.) ætatum continet gesta, sc. ab Adam usque incensionem templi.*

⁸ aggreditur before secundus in B.

⁹ quilibet] queliter, A. (without sense.)

¹⁰ sæculi] om. B.

¹¹ ad] om. B.

¹² abinde] om. B.

¹³ ut jam] ita quidem ut, C.D.

xv. chapitres nedful to þe knowleche of the ylond of Britayne, as þei; it were an¹ in-bryngyng to gretter knowleche in oper² bookes þat folowep; þat who þat may nouzt come to ful knowleche of þe ful storie, mowe by such forledyng haue [lykyng]³ to leue schrewednes and synne. Þe secunde book aunterp⁴ forto telle beryng and dedes wip descripcioun of the lasse world; and for þe ages of þe world beep nouzt all euene of beryng and of dedes, and euery book is euene and conteynep i-liche; þerfore þe secunde book conteynep þe beryng and dedes of the foure ages from the makyng of oure formest fader to þe brennyng of þe temple of Iewes. Þe pridde book from þe transmygracioun of þe peple to the comyng of Crist. Þe fourþe from Crist to þe comyng of Saxouns. Þe fifte from Saxouns to þe Danes. Þe sixte from þe Danes to þe Normans.⁵ Þe seuene fro Normans to oure tyme, þat is, reinyng⁶ of kyng Edward þe pridde after þe Conquest. And so by þe prophecie of Isay, þis grete storie is departed in seuene streemes, so þat boþe i-hosed and i-schod Goddes peple may passe perby.

TREVIS.

whom his present storye was made. In whiche place xv. MS. HARL. chapitres bene contexte, not as summary, but as conteyn- 2261. enge necessarily the knowlege of the yle of Bryteyne. The secunde boke tretethe of the gestes of the worlde, with a description of the lesse worlde. Sythe the gestes of euery age be not egalle in multitude, and euery booke chalange the his particion in contentes, þerfore the secunde boke conteynethe the gestes of the iiij. ages of the world, from the plasmacion of Adam vn to the incension of the temple of the Iewes. The thrydde boke conteynethe from the transmigracion off the peple to the commenge of Criste. The iiij^{the} from Criste to the commenge of Saxones. The v^{the} from theym to the commenge of Danes. The vij^{the} from that to the commenge of Normannes. The vij^{the} from theyme to our age. And soe this presente story is smyten in to vij. ryuerers, after the prophecy of Ysay that men y-schoede may goe by hyt, and þat the weye may be patente to the residu peple of God.

¹ and, MS. ; txt, Cx.

² þe opere, a.

³ Added from Cx. and a.

⁴ auentureth, Cx.

⁵ fram (sic) Danes to Normans, a.

⁶ vnder þe reinyng, a. ; vnder the regne, Cx.

CAP. IV.

De quibusdam præambulis utilibus ad opus subsequens.¹

SATAGENTIBUS² igitur plenam historiæ notitiam apprehendere utile foret³ octo scire, videlicet descriptiones locorum, status rerum, distinctiones temporum,⁴ successiones regiminum, variationes rituum, decursiones ætatum, qualitates actionum; et⁵ in his⁶ omnibus varias prorsus supputationes annorum.

Primum istorum in primo libro, reliqua in reliquis sunt expressa.

Quoad secundum est notandum, quod⁷ duo sunt status; unus ab exordio mundi usque ad Christum, qui dicitur⁸ *deviationis*; secundus, a Christo usque in finem, qui dicitur⁹ *reconciliationis*.

Quantum ad tertium, nota¹⁰ quod tria sunt tempora; unum ante legem scriptam, secundum, sub lege scripta, tertium, sub gratia.

Quantum ad quartum, nota quod licet quatuor fuerunt aliquando¹¹ regna principalia, Assyriorum, scilicet,¹² Persarum, Græcorum, et Romanorum, tamen,¹³ quoad mundi cursum et Sacræ Scripturæ seriem,

¹ *Præfatio quarta ad historiam*, F.

² *Satagentibus*] cupientibus, C.D.

³ *utile foret*] necessarium erit, C.D.

⁴ *temporum*] om. A.

⁵ *et*] om. B.

⁶ *his* added from C.D.; om. A.B.

⁷ *est notandum quod*] om. C.D.

⁸ *qui dicitur*] et hic fuit, C.D.

⁹ *est*, C.D.

¹⁰ C.D. om. *nota quod*, and so below.

¹¹ *aliquando fuerunt*, B.

¹² C. om. *scilicet*.

¹³ *tamen*] After *mundi* in C.D.

Præfacio Tertia ad Historiam.

TREVISA.

To hem pat will haue ful knowleche of stories nedep¹ eypte pinges [to knowe: descrypcions of places, states of thynges],² distincceion³ of tymes, aftir followyng of kyngdoms, dyuerste of liuyng, passyng of ages, maner of doynge, and in all pese verray accountyng of zeres.

Pe firste of pese in pe firste booke, and pe opere in pe oper bookes beep oponliche i-write.

Touchyng pe secounde take hede of tweie⁴ states, oon from pe bygynnyng of pe world to Criste, and is i-cleped⁴ pe staat of mysgoynge; the secounde staat from Criste to pe worldes end, and is i-cleped⁵ pe state of grace and of mercy.

For pe pridde, take hede of pre tymes, oon to fore lawe i-write, pe secounde vnder pe lawe i-write, and pe pridde vnder grace and mercy.

For pe fourthe, take hede pat somtyme pere were foure principal kyngdoms⁶ Assyriorum, Persarum, Græcorum, Romanorum. Neuerpeles touchyng the⁷ cours of the worlde and pe processe of Holy Writt, pe firste kyngdom was

The thrydde Preface to the storje. Capitulum quartum. MS. HARL. 2261.

Truly viijth thynges be profitable to men willenge to haue plenerly knowelege of this story presente, that is to say, descripciones of places, states of thynges, distincceiones of tymes. Successiones of gouernaunce, variaciones of customes, decursions of ages, qualites of acciones and trewe supputaciones of yeres in alle these thynges. The firste of these is in the firste booke and oper⁸ in other⁸ books be expressede. As vn to the secunde hit is to be attendede that per be ij. states; oon state from pe begynnenge of the worlde to Criste, whiche is the state of deuiacon. The secunde is from Criste to the ende of the worlde, whiche is the state of reconsiliacon. As vn to the thrydde hit is to be attendede that there be iij. tymes; oon afore the lawe y-wryten. The secunde vnder the lawe wryten. The thrydde vnder grace. As vn to the iiijth hit is to be attendede, thauze per were oper while iiij. principalle realmes, as men of Assiria, of Persia, Grekes, and Romanes, neuerpelesse as after the course of the worlde and ordre of Holy Scripture the firste gouernayle was from Abraham

¹ it *nedeth*, Cx.

² [. . .] added from Cx., and α.

³ *distinccon*, MS.

⁴ *i-cleped* called, Cx.

⁵ *i-cleped* named, Cx.

⁶ Cx. has "that is to wete of the
" Assyryens, Perces, Grekes, and
" Romayns."

⁷ So the MS. See p. 63, note.

⁸ *oper*, *other*] See p. 63, note.

primum regimen fuit sub Patribus ab Adam usque ad¹ Moysen; secundum sub Judicibus² a Moyse usque ad Saulem, tertium sub Regibus a Saule usque ad Zorobabel, quartum sub Pontificibus, a Zorobabel usque ad Christum.

Quoad quintum, nota quod quinque ritus fuerunt: primus in prima ætate³ sub lege naturæ communis erat omnium hominum;⁴ secundus in secunda ætate inolevit ritus gentilium, quando sub Nino orta est idolatria: tertius in tertia ætate sub lege scripta surrexit⁵ ritus Judæorum, quando lex et circumcisio Judæos a cæteris distinguebat gentibus:⁶ quartus sub Christo ritus cœpit Christianorum, quando fides et gratia sacramentorum informabat vitam eorum: quintus⁷ sub Machometo ritus cœpit Saracenorum, sicut inferius in quinto libro, post tempora Heraclii imperatoris, plenius ostendetur.⁸

Quoad sextum, nota quod sex sunt ætates, prima ab Adam usque ad Noe, secunda a Noe usque ad Abraham, tertia ab Abraham usque ad David, quarta a David usque ad transmigrationem Babylonis,⁹ quinta a transmigratione Babylonis usque ad Christum, sexta

¹ C. omits *ad* after *usque* in each case, except before *Christum*.

² *judicibus*] *ducibus*, B.

³ *fuerunt*; a *prima ætate*, B.

⁴ *hominum* added from C.D.E.

⁵ *erat*, C.D.

⁶ *gentibus*] om. C.D.

⁷ *quinto*, A.

⁸ *plenius ostendetur*] *plenius wanting* in B.C.D.; *tempore Heraclii continetur*, C.D.

⁹ *Babylonis*] om. C.D.E., and so below.

vnder oure fore fadres from Adam to Moyses ; þe secunde vnder iuges¹ from Moyses to Saul ; þe þridde vnder kynges from Saul to Zorobabel ; þe fourthe vnder bisshoppis from Zorobabel to Crist. TREVISA.

For þe fifte, take kepe of fyue manere of lyuing, þe firste was in þe firste age vnder þe lawe of kynde comyn to alle men ; þe secunde in þe secunde age [was]² þe leuyng of mysbyleued men, whan mametrie bygan in Nynus tyme, kyng of Nynyue ; þe [þridde in þe]³ þridde age vnder lawe i-write, whan circumsisioun and lawe departed þe children of Israel from laweles⁴ and mysbyleued men : þe fourþe lyuyng of Cristen men bygan vnder Crist, whan byleue and grace of sacramente halwed hir lyf.⁵ Þe fifte leuyng of Sarazynes bygan vnder Makomete as it is in þe fifte⁶ book, and after þe tyme of Heraclius þe emperour, openliche i-schewed.

For þe sixte, take hede of sixe ages ; oon is from Adam to Noe ; þe secunde from Noe to Abraham ; þe þridde from Abraham to Daud ; þe [fourþe]⁷ fro Daud to þe transmygracioun, þat was whan Israel was i-brouȝt into praldom of Babiloyne ; þe fifte from þe transmygracioun to Criste, þe sixte from Criste to þe worldes

to Moysen. The secunde was vnder Iugges from Moyses MS. HARL.
to Saul. The thrydde vnder Kynges from Saul vn to 2261.
Zorobabel. The iiij^{the} vnder byschoppes, from Zorobabel
vn to Criste. As vn to the v^{the}, hit is to be attendede that
pere were v. rytes. The firste was in the firste age vnder Of v. rytes.
the lawe of nature commune to euery man. The secundo
rite began in the secunde age, that was the rite of gentiles,
when ydolatrye spronge vnder Nino. The thrydde ryte did
aryse in the thrydde age vnder the lawe wryten, when þe
lawe and circumcisioun made a distinccon betwene the Iewes
and other folke. The iiij^{the} ryte is of Cristen men that
began vnder Criste, when feithe and grace of sacramentes
informede the life of theyme. The v^{the} rite is of Saracenys,
whiche began under Machomete, as hit schalle be schewede
after the tyme of Heraclius themperoure more plenerly.
As vn to the vj^{the}, hit is to be attendede that there Of vj. ages.
be vj. ages ; the fyrste from Adam to Noe ; the secunde
from Noe to Abraham ; the thrydde from Abraham to
Daud ; the iiij^{the} from Daud to þe transmigracion ; the
vj^{the} from the transmigracion to Criste ; the vj^{the} from

¹ *under iuges*] wanting in Cx.

² Added from Cx. (not in a.)

³ Added from a, and Cx.

⁴ *lawes*, Cx.

⁵ *self*, Cx

⁶ So a, and Cx. ; *firste*, MS.

⁷ Added from a, and Cx.

a Christo usque ad finem mundi.¹ Ubi est sane advertendum quod ætates sæculi non distinguuntur penes æqualitatem annorum, sed penes aliquod mirabile contingens in principio ætatum;² utpote quod prima ætas incipit a creatione mundi, secunda ab inundatione diluvii, tertia a circumcissione mirabili, quarta ab inchoatione regni, quinta a transmigratione populi, sexta ab Incarnatione Christi.

Quoad septimum, nota quod septem leguntur personæ, quorum gesta³ crebrius in historiis memorantur, videlicet, principis⁴ in regno, militis⁵ in bello, iudicis⁶ in foro, præsulis⁷ in clero, politici in populo, cœconomi in domo, monastici in templo. Ex quibus proradiant⁸ correspondenter septem famosa actionum genera, quæ sunt constructiones urbium, devictiones hostium, sanctiones iurium,⁹ correctiones criminum, compositio rei popularis, dispositio¹⁰ rei familiaris, adquisitio meriti salutaris,¹¹ et in his jugiter¹² relucet præmiationes proborum et punctiones perversorum.

Quoad octavum, est sciendum quod octo fuerunt

¹ The whole of the following sentence occurs lower down in B.; and is omitted altogether in the shorter class of chronicles, represented by C. and D.

² *ætatis*, E.

³ *facta*, C.D.

⁴ *principes*, B.

⁵ *milites*, B.

⁶ *iudices*, B.

⁷ *præsules*, B.

⁸ *corradiant*, B.

⁹ *virium*, E.

¹⁰ *dispositio rei familiaris*] om.

C.D.; *depositio*, B.

¹¹ *singularis*, E.

¹² *jugiter*] om. D.

ende. And here take hede, pat ages of þe world beþ TREVISA.
 nouȝt to-deled¹ by euenes of ȝeres, but by meruayles pat
 byfel in her bygynnyng; as þe firste age bygan from
 þe bygynnyng of the wor[l]de;² þe secounde from Noes
 flood; þe þridde from þe circumsicioun; þe fourþe from
 þe bygynnyng of kynges; the fift from þe transmi-
 gracioun; þe sixte from the Incarnacioun of Crist.

For the seuene, take hede of seuene persones whos
 dedes me writeþ³ in stories, pat beþ,⁴ kyng in his
 rewme, knyȝt in bataile, iuge in plee, bisshop in clergie,
 lawefulman in þe peple, housbond in hous, religious man
 in chirche. Of þe whiche springeþ out seuene manere of
 famous doynge, buldyng of citees, victorie of enemyes,
 makynge of lawes, correccioun⁵ of trespas, help of þe
 comyn profiȝt, gouernynge of meyny⁶ and of householde,
 getynge of blisful mede, in þe whiche blaseþ and schyneþ
 rewardynge of gode men and punyschyng of euel men.

For the eyȝte, take hede of eyȝte dyuerse manere of

Criste to the ende of the worlde. Hyt is to be attendede MS. HARL.
 that the ages of the worlde be not diuersificate as 2261.
 anendes the equalites of yeres, but anendes somme mer-
 uellous thyng happenge in the begynnege of that age;
 as the firste age began from the creation of man; the
 secounde of a meruellous invnacion of water; the f. 20 b.
 thrydde of a meruellous circumcicion; the iiij^{the} from
 the begynnege of reigne of kynges; the v^{the} of the
 transmigracion of peple; the vij^{the} of the incarnation off
 Criste. As vn to the vij^{the} hit is to be attended that
 vij. persones be redde whose gestes be remembrede ofte-
 tymes in stories; that is to saye, the person of a prynce
 in his realme, of a knyȝte in batelle, of a iugge in his
 seete, of a byschoppe in the cleregye, off a politike
 man in the peple, of a howsebonde man in a howse, of
 a contemplatif man in the chirche. From whom vij.
 generalites of acciones doe procede correspondent to
 theyme, whiche be construcciones of cytes, victoryes of
 enemyes, sanciones of lawes, correcciones of crymes, com-
 posicion of a commune thyng, the disposicion of a thyng
 familier, the adquisicion of a hollesom merite in whom
 the rewardes of goode men schyne, and the peynes of
 ylle men. As vn to the viij^{the} hit is to be attendede

¹ *delid*, Cx.

² *world*, a.

³ *me writeþ*] ben wreton, Cx.

⁴ *beþ*] is to wete, Cx.

⁵ In this and in other places *cor-
 reccioun* or *correctioun* suits the MS.
 equally well.

⁶ *meyne*, Cx.

modi annos calculandi, tres apud Hebræos, tres apud Græcos, unicus apud Romanos, et unicus modo¹ apud Christianos. . Hebræi namque tripliciter annum sumunt: est enim apud eos annus usualis a² Januario incipiens, quo utuntur in contractibus: ³ est et annus legitimus a Martio incipiens, quo utuntur in cæremoniis suis: est et apud eos annus emergens, a Maio incipiens, quando egressi sunt de Ægypto, quo utuntur in chronicis et calculationibus. Græci quoque tripliciter annos notaverunt: primo enim ad gloriam victoriæ suæ annos connotaverunt⁴ a captivitate Trojæ; deinde, incepta Olympiade, notaverunt annos⁵ juxta numerum Olympiadum⁶ earundem: tertio, quando cœperunt super orbem dominari, notaverunt isto modo,⁷ anno regni⁸ Græcorum tali vel tali, sicut patet⁹ in libris¹⁰ Machabæorum. Demum Romani florentes ab urbe condita quotaverunt. Novissime vero Christiani ab Incarnatione Domini annos supputarunt.¹¹

Ubi erit advertendum cum ad id¹² loci ventum¹³ fuerit, quod calculatio¹⁴ secundum Dionysium Exiguum,¹⁵

¹ modo] om. B.

² in, C.D.

³ contractionibus, A.

⁴ So A.; cotaverunt, B.; quotaverunt, C.E. (which is perhaps the true reading); notaverunt, D.

⁵ annos] om. D.

⁶ Olympiadum] om. C.D.

⁷ isto modo] sic, C.D.

⁸ regni] om. D.

⁹ patet] om. B.

¹⁰ libro, C.D.

¹¹ supputaverunt, B.C.D.

¹² id] illud, C. (in marg.); cum id loci fuerit, B.

¹³ om. A.B.

¹⁴ computatio, C.D.

¹⁵ Exiguum] om. C.D.

accountynge of 3eres. Pro pe Iewes vseþ, pre pe Grees, TREVISA.
oon Romaynes, and Cristen men oon. For pe Iewes in
tretys and couenauntes haueþ a 3ere vsual, and bygineþ
in Ianuarie.¹ In deuocioun and sacrifice pei haueþ a 3er²
laweful, and byginneþ in Marche. Also pey haueþ a
3ere of apperynge þat pey vseþ in calculynge and in
cronicle, and bygynneþ in May, whan þey passed out of
Egipte. Also pe Grees in pre manere wise accountep hir
3eres; first, for ioie of pe victorie pey accountep hir
3eres from pe takynge of Troye; afterward pei accounted
here 3eres by Olympades, þat beþ pe tymes of here
iustes and tornementis; but after þat pey reignede, pei
accounted here 3eres by here reignynge, in þis manere
“anno regni Græcorum, quinto vel tertio, tali vel tali,”
sicut patet in libro Machabæorum. Whan pe Romaynes
wax³ in hir floures pey acounted hir 3eres by here reign-
ynge in þis manere, from pe buldynge of citee,⁴ “ab
“urbe condita.” But Cristene men from pe⁵ Incarnacioun
of Crist accountep her 3eres.

But whan me comeþ to þat place, me mote⁶ take hede

that þer were viij. maneres to calcle yeres; iij. anendes MS. HARL.
2261.
men of Ebrewe, thre anendes the Grekes, oon at the
Romanes, and oon now at Cristen men. Men of Ebrewe
take theire yere in thre maneres. The vsualle yere is
begynnenge from Ianuary anendes theyme whom thei
vse in contractes. Also a lawefulle yere begynnenge
from Marche, whom thei vse in cerimonyes. Also there
is a yere emergente as anendes theyme begynnenge from
May when thei wente from Egipte, whom thei vse in
cronicles and calculaciones. The Grekes note theire yeres
in thre maneres:—In the firste they cotede yeres at the
glory of their victory from the captiuite of Troye. After
that pe Olimpias begunne, thei assignede the nowmbre of
peire yeres after the nowmbre of theyme. In the thrydde
maner, when thei began to haue dominacion, thei notede
their yeres in thys maner:—In suche a yere in the
reigne of men of Grewe, or in suche a yere, as hit is
expressede in the bookes of Machabes. At the laste pe
Romanes floryschenge ascribede theire yeres from the
begynnenge of their cite y-made. But nowe laste Cristen
men suppute theire yeres from the Incarnacion of Criste.
Wherefore hit is to be aduertisede that the calculation of

¹ *Ianuere, ar*

² *a;er*, MS., and similarly else-
where the article and noun are
sometimes written *conjunctim*.

³ *waxed*, Cx.

⁴ *þe citee*, a.

⁵ *þe*] om. a.

⁶ *me mote*] men muste, Cx.

quem communiter sequitur Gallia et Anglia minus habet quam computatio¹ Hieronymi secundum evangelicam veritatem numero XXII.² annorum. Refert enim Wilhelmus Malmesburiensis, lib. iv. de Pontificibus, quod Marianus Scotus et monachus,³ apud Mogenciam,⁴ urbem Germaniæ, inclusus circa annum gratiæ⁵ MLX.,⁶ sub longo solitudinis suæ otio chronographos sit scrutatus, dissonantiamque cyclorum Dionysii Exigui contra evangelicam veritatem vel solus vel primus animadvertit. Nam ab initio sæculi annos singulos recensens XXII. annos,⁷ qui cyclis prædictis deerant, superaddidit, magnam et diffusam chronicam commentatus. Cujus quidem⁸ librum Robertus⁹ Herefordensis¹⁰ episcopus splendide postmodum defloravit. Inde est quod vulgares chronicae, quæ Dionysium prædictum¹¹ sequuntur, titubant tota die. Nam, teste Hieronymo in transferendo chronicam Eusebii, decem anni deficiunt inter passionem Domini et tempora¹² Vespasiani, et¹³ iterum¹⁴ quatuordecim anni deficiunt circa tempora Decii,¹⁵ sicut inferius patebit sub sexta seculi ætate. Hunc autem errorem plurimum adauget,¹⁶ quod

¹ *habet a computatione*, C.D.

² *xrv.*, B.

³ *Scotus et*] wanting in C.D.

⁴ *Magontiam*, D.; *Mogonciam*, E.

⁵ *Domini*, C.D.

⁶ 1068, C.

⁷ *annos*] *annis*, B.

⁸ *quidam*, A.

⁹ *i.e.* Robert Lorrayne, who died in 1095.

¹⁰ *Herefordensis*, B.

¹¹ *prædictum*] *om.* B.D.

¹² *tempora*] *tempus*, B.

¹³ *et*] *om.* C.

¹⁴ *iterum*] *item*, C.D.

¹⁵ B. adds *Cæsaris*.

¹⁶ *adauget*] *auget*, C.D.

pat þe calculyng of Denys, þat Engeland and Fraunce fol- TREVISA.
 weþ, hap lasse by xxii. ȝere þan þe calculyng of Ierom,
 þat folweþ þe gospel. William Malmesbury, libro quarto
 de Pontificibus,¹ seiþ þat Marianus, Scotus and monok,²
 i-prisoned in Maguncia, a towne of Almayne, aboute þe
 ȝere of grace a þowsand and þre score and sixtene,
 loked besiliche in bookes and accounted³ þat Dionysius
 Exiguus acordeþ nouȝt with þe Gospel in accountyng of
 ȝeres. For þis Scot, Marianus, accounted all þe ȝeres
 from þe bygynnyng of þe worlde, and putte hit⁴ to
 xxii. ȝere, þat lakkeþ of Dionysius acountes, and wroot
 a grete cronicle and huge;⁵ þe whiche book Robert Bis-
 shop of Herforde deflored, and perfore⁶ hit is þat þe
 comyn cronicles þat folweþ⁷ Denys failleþ al day. For⁸
 Ierom, in transferendo chronicam Eusebii⁹ seiþ þat ten
 ȝeres¹⁰ lakkeþ be tweyne Cristes passioun and Vespasianus
 tyme. And also xij.¹¹ lakkeþ aboute Decius Cesar his¹²
 tyme as it is i-schewed in þe sixte age. Þis errour byfalleþ,

Dionysius, whom Englonde and Fraunce doe folowe, hathe MS. HARL.
 lesse then the computacion of Seynte Ierom by the 2261.
 nowmbre of xxthij. yere. Also William Malmesburye dothe
 rehearse in his booke of byschoppes the iiijth that Ma-
 rianus a Scotte and a monke, included at a cyte called
 Mangotia in Allemeyne, abowte the yere of grace m^lxxvj., f. 21 a.
 serchede cronicles thro grete study and labour, aduertenge
 firste or sole the dissonaunce of the cicles after the cal-
 culation of litelle Dionise ageyn the trawthe of the Gos-
 pelle, whiche accomptenge euery yere from the begynnege
 of the worlde addede to the foreseide cicles xxthij. yere,
 makenge a harde and a diffusede cronicle, whose booke
 Roberte Byschoppe of Herefforde onornede splendidiously;
 wherefore commune cronicles folowenge Dionysius fayle and
 stumble alle day, Seynte Ierom wyttene in the translacion
 of the cronicle of Eusebius, where x. yeres wonte betwene
 the passion of Criste and tyme of Vaspasian, and also
 xiiij. wonte abowte the tymes of Decius themperoure, as
 hit schalle be schewede under the vjth age of the worlde.
 That erroure is moche encreased in so moche, that dayes

¹ *Pontificis*, MS. and a.

² and monok] and the monke, Cx.

³ accounted and fonde, a.

⁴ hit] wanting in Cx. and a.

⁵ an huge, Cx.

⁶ that for, Cx.

⁷ foloweden, Cx.

⁸ So Cx. ; *From*, MS.

⁹ in translatyng the cronyke of Eu-
 seabii, Cx.

¹⁰ that yeres, Cx.

¹¹ xij. ȝeres, a.

¹² Cezars, Cx.

frequenter prætermittuntur dies et menses quibus super integros annos reges regnaverunt. Negliguntur etiam intervalla temporum inter fines regnantium et primordia subsequen-
tium. Quapropter unumquodque, qualiter¹ suo contigerit anno, notabo pro viribus in hoc scripto. Ita sane quod columnarum margines juxta gestorum capita aliquando cum duplici nonnunquam cum triplici annorum serie purpurabo. Ab Abraham etenim usque ad urbem conditam, annus ætatis sæculi et ducis conferetur. Ab urbe vero² usque ad Christum, annus ætatis et urbis³ inseretur. A Christo autem⁴ in antea, annus gratiæ et principis pariter⁵ conscribetur.⁶

CAP. V.

*De orbis dimensione.*⁷

Priscianus in Cosmographia. Ex senatus consulto censuit⁸ Julius Cæsar, dum consulatus sui fascēs ageret, omnem orbem per prudentes viros dimetiri.⁹ Igitur

¹ *qualiter unumquodque*, B.E.

² *vero*] *Romana condita*, added in C.D.

³ *ætatis urbis et ducis*, B.C.D.

⁴ *autem*] *vero*, D.

⁵ *pariter*] om. C.

⁶ After this follows in C. a paragraph of nineteen lines, which is wholly out of place here, beginning:—"Servitia quinque portuum domino regi per mare debita.

"Villa de Hastingge 3 naves.

"Aqua de Peuenesse 1 navem." Curiously enough, a space of 16 lines is left blank in D.

⁷ Title wanting in A.; added from B.E.; C. and D. begin thus:—*De orbis divisione.* Julius Cæsar divinis humanisque rebus singulariter instructus cum consulatus, etc.

⁸ *censuit*] *fecit*, C.

⁹ *admetiri*, D.; *demetiri*, B.

for dayes and monthes were vurekened pat kynges reignede ouer ful ȝeres. Also dayes and monpes pat voydede bytw[e]ne tweie kynges were forgendred.¹ Wherfore in pis book I schal marke as I may how and in what² ȝeres such defautes fille; so pat I schal hiȝte pe margyns by pe hedes of the stories som wip double and som wip treble rewes ȝeres.³ From Abraham to pe citee i-bulde, I sette to gidres pe ȝere of pe age of pe worlde and of pe ledere; from pe cite i-bulde to Crist, I sette to gidre pe ȝere of⁴ pe citee and of pe ledere; and from Crist forwarde, I write to gidre pe ȝere of grace and of pe prince pat regnep.⁵

TREVISA.

*De orbis dimensione. Priscianus in cosmographia.
Capitulum quintum.*

IULIUS CESAR, by counsaile of pe senatoures and elder men⁶ of Rome, lokede⁷ and serchede stories⁸ and bookes of his ȝeres of doynge and dedes, [and]⁹ ordeyned wyse men

and monethes be ouerskippe in whom hit is seyde kynges haue reignede by holle yeres; and also other spaces of tymes be neglecte betwene or amonge the endes off men reignenge and begynnenges of men folowenge. Wherefore y schalle ascribe how euery thyng hath bene in the yere per of after my powere in this presente wrytunge. In so moche that y schalle purpulle the mariantes nye the hedes of pe gestes with a dowble ordre of yeres. From Abraham vn to the cite off Rome y-made, the yere of the age of the worlde and of the duke and gouernoure schalle be wryten. From the cite y-made to Criste, the yere of the age of the cite and of the transmigracion schalle be wryten. From Criste, the yere of grace and of the prynce reignenge that tyme schalle be wryten to gedre.

MS. HARL.
2261.

*Priscian in his Cosmographie of the Dimension of the
Worlde. Capitulum quintum.*

Iulius Cesar ordeneide by the cownsele of the senate sette in pomposite alle the worlde to be dimencionate by men discrete and prudente. Wherefore messangers were sende

¹ forgotten, Cx.² and what, Cx. a.³ treble ȝeres, a.⁴ pe ȝere of the age of, a.⁵ regned, Cx.⁶ aldermen, Cx.⁷ sought, Cx.⁸ historyes, Cx.⁹ Added from Cx.

a consulatu Julii usque ad consulatum Saturnini per triginta duos annos missi sunt legati¹ dimensores, viri docti, arte gnomonica periti, per omnem terram ad præsides, duces, et judices provinciarum; ut describerent et mensurarent² terras, aquas, nemora, plana, concava, montes, colles atque³ itinerarium maritimum, quæ etiam⁴ loca navigaturi tangere deberent.⁵ Et si forte aliquod prodigium in his⁶ locis occurreret, illud senatui reipublicæ scripto nunciarent. *Ranulphus*. Hoc attestatur Hieronymus in transferendo historiam Eusebii, libro secundo, capitulo secundo, ubi dicit quod Pilatus præses Judææ nunciavit Tiberio Cæsari de mirabilibus quæ fecit Jesus in terra Judææ, et Tiberius nunciavit senatui, verum quia talia non fuerant senatui prius nunciata,⁷ illa respuerunt.⁸ *Priscianus*. Et sic repertum est per tales præsidum denunciationes⁹ quod omnis orbis habet famosa maria triginta, insulas septuaginta duas, montes famosos quadraginta,

¹ *legati sunt*, B.

² *et mensurarent*] om. B.

³ *atque*] om. D.

⁴ *etiam*] om. A.

⁵ *deberent*] debuerunt, C.D.

⁶ *his*] om. B.

⁷ *senatui prænunciata*, B.

⁸ *Hoc . . . respuerunt*] om. A. C. D.; added from B.E. See also the versions.

⁹ *per . . . denunciationes*] om. A. B.C.D.; added from E.

and redy to mete and discreue all þe worlde aboute. Þan TREVISIA.
 from Iulius his tyme to Saturnus tyme, two and pritty
 zere, messangeres, wise men and wel i-tauzt¹ in þe practike
 of gemetrie,² konnyng and profitable to mete³ and to gesse
 hiżenesse and lowenesse, lengþe and brede and depnesse
 also, were rediliche i-sent into⁴ euery londe aboute to iuges
 and⁵ to cheueteynes,⁶ to lederes⁷ of londes, for þey schulde
 mete⁸ and discreue londe and water, woodes and landes,
 valcies and pleynes, downes and hulles,⁹ and þe see stronde
 and euery place where eny man myzt goo oþer¹⁰ ride oþer¹⁰
 schip seily; and write and certifie þe senatoures where and
 what wondres were i-founde. R. Þis witnessith Hieronymus,
 in transferendo historiam Eusebii, libro secundo, capitulo
 secundo. Pere, he seith, þat Pilatus, iuge of Iewerye,¹¹ cer-
 tified Tiberius Cesar of meruayles and wondres þat Criste
 wrouzte in þe Iewerie, and Tiberius certified þe senatoures,
 but þe¹² senatoures trowed¹³ nouzt, for þey had nouzt
 herd [afore]¹⁴ of so wonder werkes. *Priscianus*. And so,
 by warnyng and certefieng of cheueteynes¹⁵ of londes, it
 was i-founde and i-knowe þat al þe worlde aboute hap name
 kowthe¹⁶ sees¹⁷ pritty, ylondes pre score and twelue, famos

from the consulate of Iulius Cesar vn to the consulate of MS. HARL.
 Saturnius, by xxxij^d yere, þro alle the worlde, to presidentes, 2261.
 dukes, and iuges of prouinces, that thei scholde describe
 and measure londes, waters, woodes, playnes, concautes,
 hilles, and the itinerary of the see to whiche places thei
 scholde sayle, and towche hyt if they myzhte fynde eny
 meruellous thyng there that myzhte be schewede to the
 senate. R. Seynte Ierom testifieth that in the trans-
 lacion of þe cronicle of Eusebius, libro ij^o, capitulo secundo, f. 21 b.
 where he saythe that Pilatus presidente of the Iewery
 schewede to Tiberius themperour of the meruayles whom
 Iesus did amonge the Iewes. And Tiberius schewede theyme
 to the senate, whiche despisede theyme in that thei were
 not schewede a fore to the senate. *Priscian*. And soe hit
 is founde by the denunciaciones that alle the worlde hathe
 xxx^{ti} famose sees, lxxij^{ti} yles, xl^{ti} famose hilles, lxx^{ti} and

¹ tauzht, a. (not Cx.)

² So MS. and a; *geometrye*, Cx.

³ *mesure*, Cx.

⁴ *redyly sente to*, Cx.

⁵ a omits *and*.

⁶ *capytayns*, Cx.

⁷ *gouernours*, Cx.

⁸ *mesure*, Cx.

⁹ *montaynes and downes*, Cx.

¹⁰ *or*, Cx.

¹¹ *þe Iewery*, a.

¹² a omits *þe*.

¹³ *byleued*, Cx.

¹⁴ Added from Cx.; not in a.

¹⁵ *capytayns*, Cx.

¹⁶ *couth*, a.

¹⁷ *hath sees of dyuerse names*,
Cx.

provincias septuaginta octo,¹ urbes insignes trecentas septuaginta, flumina quinquaginta septem, gentes centum viginti quinque. Cujus orbis ambitus est trecenties² quindecies centena millia passuum. Longitudo vero terræ habitabilis ab ortu³ usque ad occasum, id est, ab India usque ad columnas Herculis in Gaditano freto habet⁴ octies quinquies centena septuaginta octo milliaria. Cujus quidem longitudinis dimensio compendiosior est per mare quam per terras. Latitudo autem terræ ab⁵ australi littore oceani Æthiopici usque ad ostium Tanai fluminis in septentrione pene dimidio minor est quam prædicta longitudo, et continet quinquagies⁶ quatuor centena sexaginta duo milliaria. Repertum est etiam quod profundissimus locus maris⁷ Mediterranei continet spatium quindecim stadiorum in perpendiculo.⁸ *Ranulphus*. Secundum Ptolomæum circulus continet quantitatem diametri ter, et septimam partem tertiæ partis; unde proportio circuli ad diametrum est sicut proportio XXII. ad VII. Ex quo colligitur quod rotunditas circuli terræ continet viginti millia et quadraginta milliaria; quæ quidem summa, cum divisa fuerit per tria et septimam partem unius tertii, quantitas diametri terræ erit, sex millia quingenta fere

¹ *septuaginta octo*] 68, C.D.

² So E.; *trecentas*, B.

³ *ab ortu* . . .] est ab ortu et habet, C.

⁴ *et habet*, C.D.

⁵ *ab*] est ab, C., which places a

full stop after *septentrione*. So also D., punctuation excepted.

⁶ *quinquagies*] quinquagesies, C.D.

⁷ *profundissimum mare*, C.D.

⁸ *perpendiculo*] The remainder of the chapter (Secundum . . . terræ) is omitted in A.B.C.D.; added from E.

hullys¹ fourty, prouinces pre skore and eyztene, noble citees TREVISIA.
 pre hundred pre skore and ten, grete ryucres seuene and
 fifty, dyuers naciouns sixe skore and fyue.² Þe roundenesse
 of þe worlde aboute is pre hundred sipes and fiftene sipes
 an hondred powsand paas. Þe lengþe of þe erþe þat men
 woneþ³ ynne from þe est to þe west, þat is from Ynde to
 Hercules is⁴ pilers in þe sec Gaditan is eyzti sipes and
 fyue sipes an hundred pre score and eyztene mile. But þe
 wey from oon⁵ ende to þat oper is wel⁶ lasse by water þan
 by londe. Þe brede of þe erþe from þe soupe to þe north,
 þat is from þe clyue⁷ of ocean in Ethiopia, þe londe of
 Blomen⁸ to þe moupe of þe ryuer Thany wel nyh haluendel
 lasse þan þe lengþe, and conteyneþ foure and fifty hundred
 and two and sixty myle. Also it was i-founde þat þe dep-
 pest place of þe sec of myddel erþe conteyneþ doun riȝt fif-
 tene furlonge depe. [R.]⁹ Tholomeus seiþ þat þe rounde-
 nesse of a cercle¹⁰ aboute conteyneþ pre¹¹ so moche as þe
 brede [and the seuende of the brede],¹² so þat þe propor-
 cioun of þe roundenesse aboute of a cercle is¹³ to þe brede
 as is þe proporcioun of two and twenty to seuene. So it
 is accounted þat þe roundenesse of þe erþe aboute conteyneþ
 twenty powsand and fourty myle. Ȝif we deleþ¹⁴ þe¹⁵ somme
 on pre and þe seueneþe parte of þe þridde, þe piknesse of þe
 erþe þorw oute is almost sexe þousand and fyue¹⁶ hondred

viiij. prouinces, nowble cites cccclxx., floodes lviij. The MS. HARI.
 compasse of whiche worlde is iiijc. tymes xv. tymes a c.m^l 2261.
 of passes. The longitude of the erthe habitable from the
 este to the weste. that is from Ynde to the Pillers of
 Hercules in the sec Gaditan, hathe viij^{the} tymes v. tymes
 a clxxⁱⁱ myles and viij^{the}. The dimension of the longitude
 of whom is more compendious by the see then by the
 londe. The latitude of the erthe from the este syde of
 the ocean of Ethioppe vn to the durre or begynnege of
 a floode callede Thanay in the northe is lesse in the halfe
 then the longitude a fōreseyde, and hit conteynethe lvi
 tymes iiijc. lxij. myles. Also hit is founde that the depeste

¹ montaynes, Cx.

² an c. and fyfe and twenty, Cx.
 (Similar variations of expressing
 numbers occur elsewhere often.)

³ dwelle, Cx.

⁴ So also a; pylers of H., Cx.

⁵ that oon, Cx.

⁶ moche, Cx.

⁷ clyf, Cx.

⁸ blak men, Cx.

⁹ Added from a.

¹⁰ acercle, MS., and similarly in
 many other places.

¹¹ thryes, Cx.

¹² Added from a and Cx. (There
 is some variation in expressing the
 words following.)

¹³ a, MS., but cancelled by a dot.

¹⁴ So also a; departe, Cx.

¹⁵ þat, a.

¹⁶ and fyue] foure, a.

milliaria, quia novem ad minus desunt de hoc numero. Et sic erunt sex millia quadringenta nonaginta unum. Proinde si hoc diametrum dimidiaveris, erunt a centro terræ usque ad superficiem ejus tria millia ducenta quadraginta quinque milliaria et quædam minuta. Ex quo liquet quot sunt milliaria a superficie terræ usque ad infernum, secundum quod infernus dicitur esse in medio terræ.

CAP. VI.

De orbis divisione.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro xvi. cap. viii. Nota¹ quod orbis terrarum universus oceano cinctus in tres dividitur partes, Asiam, Europam et² Africam. Quem si in tres partes³ dividas, Asia secundum numerum erit tertia, secundum magnitudinem erit dimidia; quæ tendens a meridie per orientem usque ad septentrionem oceano undique clauditur,⁴ sed ab occidente mari magno finitur. *Beda, de Naturis rerum.*⁵ Sunt-que⁶ termini ejus ostium Nili fluminis in austro et

¹ C. begins thus: — [O]rbem igitur si in tres partes dividas, Asia secundum numerum, &c. So also D., omitting *igitur*.

² *et*] om. B.

³ *partes*] om. B.

⁴ *clauditur*] concluditur, C.D.

⁵ *rerum*] wanting in A.B.; added from E. The whole extract from Beda wanting in C.D.

⁶ *que*] So E.; quia, A.

myle,¹ for nyne myle lakkep at þe leste of þat somme. So pere schal be sexe þowsand foure² hondred four³ score and elleuene myle. Þan half þe piknesse of þe erpe inward and doun riȝt is þre þowsand two hundred and fyue and fourty myle and somewhat ouer, as it were half a myle. So ȝif helle is in⁴ myddel of þe erpe doun riȝt, me myȝte knowe how meny myle is⁵ to helle. TREVISA.

De orbis divisione. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sexto-decimo, capitulo octavo. Capitulum sextum.

FOR þe delynge⁶ of þe worlde take hede þat þe grete see of ocean byclippeþ al þe erpe aboute, and þe erpe is i-deled⁷ in þre⁸ grete parties. Asia is þat oon,⁹ Europa þat oper, and Affrica þe pridde. But pese¹⁰ þre parties beþ¹¹ not alle euene and yliche moche;¹² for Asia, oon of þe þre, conteyneþ half þe erpe, and streccheþ from þe south by þe est anon to þe¹³ north, and is i-closed aboute with þe see of ocean; but he¹⁴ endeþ westwarde at þe grete see. *Beda, de Naturis.*¹⁵ His endes beþ þe mouth of þe ryuer

place in the see Mediterrany or ocean conteynethe the space of xv. forlonges by a plumme of ledde. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the diuision of the worlde. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo. Capitulum sextum.

ALSO hit is to be attendede that alle the worlde cincte to the ocean is diuided in to iij. partes, Asie, Europe, and Affryke; whiche diuidede in to thre partes, Asia after nowmbre schalle be the thrydde part, and after magnitude the halfe, whiche goenge from the meriden or sowthe by the este vn to the northe, is compassede on euery syde with the ocean, and in the weste hit is finischede with the grete sec. *Beda, de Naturis.* The termes of whom be the begynnenge and durre of a floode callede Nilus in the sowthe, descendenge by the northe ocean and water

¹ fyue honderd four score and enleuen myle, Cx. (also he omits all that follows, till *Thenne half*, &c.)

² fyue, Cx.

³ So Cx.; nyne, MS.

⁴ in þe, a.

⁵ it is, Cx.

⁶ departing, Cx.

⁷ departed, Cx.

⁸ aþre yn þre, a.

⁹ Asia that is oon part, Cx.

¹⁰ the, Cx.

¹¹ þe, Cx., and similarly elsewhere.

¹² euen lyke moche, Cx.

¹³ eeste vnto, Cx.

¹⁴ it, Cx.

¹⁵ nature, MS.

amnis Tanais in aquilone. *Isidorus, libro quarto-decimo, capitulo quarto.* Altera pars, Europa, a fluvio Tanai descendens per septentrionalem oceanum in fines Hispaniæ porrecta ab oriente et meridie, mari magno jungitur, et in Gades insula finitur. *Item, Isidorus, capitulo quinto.* Tertia pars, Africa, protenditur ab occidente in meridiem usque in finem Ægypti. Et hæ¹ duæ partes, Africa et Europa, inter se marino brachio distinguuntur. *Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo.* Cujus marini brachii² fauces originales³ quindecim millia passuum habent in longitudine, et quinque millia passuum in latitudine,⁴ a quibus faucibus mare mediterraneum exoriens per varia brachia introrsus versus terram distenditur.

CAP. VII.

*De partium orbis descriptione.*⁵

Plinius, libro sexto. Tenendum⁶ est quod Asia sit⁷ quantitate maxima,⁸ Europa⁹ minor, sed par est¹⁰ in populorum numerosa generositate; Africa vero et situ

¹ Ægypti. Et hæ] Ægypti protenditur. Hæ, &c., C.D.

² marini brachii] om. D.; interlin. in C.

³ originales] om. C.

⁴ B. omits *et quinque . . . latitudine.*

C. reads thus after *latitudine*:—

“*Idem.* Mare mediterraneum surgens per varia brachia distenditur.” D. has *indeque* for *idem*.

⁵ The title added from E.

⁶ C. and D. begin thus:—“Asia quantitate maxima, Europa minor, &c.”

⁷ sit] partium terræ, add. B.

⁸ magna, E.

⁹ Europa] vero, add. B.

¹⁰ est] om. C.D.

Nilus in þe souþ, and of þe ryuer Thanays in þe norþe. TREVISA.
 [That other parte, Europa, stretcheth downward fro the
 riuer Thanays by the northe]¹ ocean to þe costes of
 Spayne, and ioyned to þe grete see by este and by south,
 and endep in þe Ilond Gades. *Isidorus, libro quarto de-*
cimo, capitulo quarto. Affrica, þe þridde parte, strecchep
 from the west to þe southe, anon to² þe coste of Egipte,
 and þese tweie parties, Affrica and Europa, bep departed
 atweyne³ by þe⁴ arme of þe see. *Plinius, libro tertio,*
capitulo primo. Þe mouthes of þe⁵ arme conteyneþ fiftene
 þowsand paas in lengþe, and fyue þowsand paas in brede;
 and of þilke mouþes þe⁶ see of myddel erþe bygynneþ,
 and by dyuers armes spredeþ and wexeþ inward the
 londes.

De partium orbis descriptione. Plinius, libro sexto;
Priscianus in Cosmographia. Capitulum septimum.

ASIA is most in quantite, Europa is lasse, and pere⁷
 in noumbre of peple; bot Africa is lest of alle þe pre

of Thanais in the northe. *Isidorus, libro 14, capitulo* MS. HARL. 2261.
quarto. Europa, that other parte, from the floode callede
 Thanay, descendenge from the northe ocean extendede from
 the este and meriden in to the costes of Speyne is ioynede
 to the grete see and finischede in an yle callede Gades. *Isi-*
dorus, capitulo quinto. The thridde parte, which is Affrica,
 is protendede from the weste in to the meriden in to the
 coste of Egipte. And these partes, Europe and Affrike,
 be dividede a sundre thro an arme of the see. *Plinius, libro*
tertio, capitulo primo. The chekes and begynnenges of f. 22 a.
 those armes of the see haue in longitude xv. m^l of passes,
 and v. m^l passes in latitude, from whom the see mediter-
 ranee begynnege by diuerse armes is distendede towarde
 londes.

Of the Descripcion of Partes of the Worlde. Plinius,
libro sexto. Capitulum septimum.

Hir is to be holden that Asia is moste in quantite,
 Europa lesse in quantite, but egalle in the numerous gene-
 rosite of peple. Affrike is leste in quantite of partes in

¹ The words within brackets are
 added from Cx. and a, which latter
 reads *the oþer*.

² *southe vnto*, Cx.

³ *a sounder*, Cx.

⁴ *an*, Cx.

⁵ *that*, Cx. and a.

⁶ *of þe*, MS. a; txt, Cx.

⁷ *lyke*, Cx.

et populis¹ partium est minima. *Priscianus*, in *Cosmographia*. Idcirco² qui res humanas evidentius agnoverunt duas tantum orbis partes accipiendas censuerunt,³ scilicet Asiam solummodo⁴ et Europam; Africam vero censuerunt Europæ finibus deputandam, quia et⁵ spatio latitudinis eget et⁶ malo climati subiacet, laborat quoque corrupto aere, feris, et venenis. Idcirco² qui eam tertiam orbis partem posuerunt,⁷ non spatiorum mensuras sed divisionum rationes secuti sunt, et tanquam situ pessimo languidam partem ab optimis resecarunt. Itaque⁸ Africa⁹ natura sui¹⁰ minus habet spatii, et inclementia cœli plus habet deserti. Et cum Africa sit modica, plus tamen¹¹ terræ in ea solis ardore quam in Europa frigoris rigore manet inhabitata. Cuncta namque animantia sive germinantia tolerabilius ad summum frigoris quam ad summum ardoris accedunt. *Item, Plinius, libro sexto.* Inde est quod Europa corpore majores, viribus fortiores, animo audaciores,

¹ *et situ et populis*] at the end of the sentence in C.D., which also omit *est*.

² *Idcirco*] *ideo*, C.D. (twice.)

³ *censuerunt*] *suaserunt*, C.D.

⁴ *solummodo*] *tantummodo*, C.D.

⁵ *quia et*] *et quia*, D.

⁶ *et*] om. D.

⁷ *qui eam orbis terræ posuerunt tertiam partem*, B.

⁸ *Itaque*] *Ita*, B.

⁹ *Africa*] om. D.; added in later hand in C.

¹⁰ *sui*] *sua*, A.

¹¹ *tamen*] om. B.

parties bope in place and in noumbre of peple; and perfore somme men, pat knowe¹ men and londes, acountede but tweie parties of pe erpe onliche, Asia and Europa; and pey acountede pat Affrica longep to Europa, for Affrica is narwe in brede; and yuel doers, corrupte ayre, wyld bestes and venemous wonep² perynne. Perfore pey pat acountep Affrica pe pridde part acountep not by space and mesure of lengpe and brede, bot by dyuerse disposiciouns better and worse, and departep Affrica from Europa and Asia, as a sore membre pat is nouzt from membres pat beep hole and sounde and in good poynt at pe beste. Also Affrica in his kynde hap lasse space, and for pe sturnesse of heuene he hap pe more wildernes. [And though Affryca be lytil, it hath more wyldernes]³ and waste londe, for grete brennyng and⁴ hete of pe sonne, pan Europa, for all pe chil and greet colde pat ofte⁵ is perynne. For why all pat lyuep and growep may bettre endure wip colde pan wip hete; bote mesure rule⁶ bope. *Plinius, libro sexto.* Perfore it is pat Europa noriscep and bryngeth forp men huger and gretter of body, myztier of strengpe, hardier and bolder of herte, and fairer⁷

TREVISA.

site and in peple. *Priscianus, in his Cosmographie.* Therefore men that hade euidente knowlege perceyvede ij. partes of the worlde to be taken, that is to say, Asia and Europa, deputenge or ordeynenge the partes of Affrike to be added to the costes off Europa. For Affrike hathe nede to the space of latitude, subiecte to an ylle coste and laboreng with a corrupte aier, with wilde bestes, and venom. Perfore men puttenge hit the thrydde parte of the worlde folowede not the measures of spaces but reasones of diuision, departenge hit as a wailenge parte in the wurste site and ordre from the beste places. Also Affrike of his nature hathe leste space and moste of deserte in the clemency of heuyn. And with owte dowte thauzhe Affrike be leste in quantite, zitte per is moore grownde inhabitable in hyt thro the heete of the sonne then is in Europe thro rigornesse of colde. Truly alle thynges lyffenge or groenge accede moore tollerably to the hieste colde then to the hieste heete. *Plinius, libro sexto.* Perfore the cause is that men in Europe be more grete in body, more myzhty in strenghte, moore bolde in herte, more feire in beaute, then

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *knawe, a.*² *dwellen, Cx.*³ The words in brackets added from Cx. and *a*, which latter has *he* for *it*.⁴ *of, Cx.*⁵ Omitted in Cx.⁶ *ruleth, Cx. (not a.)*⁷ So Cx.; *fiire, MS.*

specie pulchriores efficit populos quam Africa.¹ Nam radius solaris per continuam permanentiam super Afros exhauriendo² eorum humores efficit corpore breviores, cute nigriores, crine crispiores, et per evaporationem spirituum facit animo defectiores.³ E contra est⁴ de septentrionalibus populis, in⁵ quibus frigore exterius⁶ poros oppilante pinguescunt humores; et inde fiunt homines corpulentiores, candidiores, et⁷ interius calidiores, ac per hoc⁸ audaciores.

CAP. VIII.

*De mari magno sive Mediterraneo.*⁹

Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo. Est itaque¹⁰ maris magni origo in¹¹ occidente apud Herculis columnas, ubi oceanus Atlanticus irrumpens¹² in terras facit Gaditanum fretum; (cujus longitudo in quindecim millia passuum¹³ extenditur; latitudo vero in quinque millia expanditur);¹⁴ ad sui dexteram habens Africam,¹⁵ ad lævam vero¹⁶ Europam; indeque in maria interna diffunditur,¹⁷ cujus termini sunt amnis¹⁸ Tanais ad boream

¹ *Africa*] aut *Asia*, add. C.D.

² *exhauriendo* after *humores* in C.D.

³ *animo defectiores*] *sicciores*, C.

⁴ *est*] om. C.

⁵ *de septentrionibus* in, C.; *de septentrionalibus* in, D.

⁶ *exterius* after *poros* in C.D.

⁷ *et*] om. C.D.

⁸ *ac per hoc*] et per consequens, C.D.

⁹ Title added from E.

¹⁰ *Est itaque*] om. C.D.; *ita*, B.

¹¹ *in*] est in, C.D.

¹² *irrumpens*] So, C.D.E.; *erumpens*, A.B.

¹³ *millia passuum*] *milliaria*, C.D.

¹⁴ *latitudo ... expanditur*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *Africam habens*, C.D.

¹⁶ *vero*] om. B.

¹⁷ *infunditur*, D., and so C. originally, it would seem.

¹⁸ *amnis*] *amnes*, C.D.

of schap, þan Affrica. For þe son beme al wey abideþ vpon þe men of Affrica, and draweþ oute þe humours, and makeþ hem schort of body,¹ blak of skyn, crips of heer, and by drawing oute of spirites makeþ hem coward of herte. Þe contrarie is of norþeren² men, in þe whiche³ colde wip oute stoppeþ smale holes and poorus, and holdeþ the hete wip ynne; and so makeþ hem fatter, gretter, and whitter and hatter⁴ with inne, and so hardier and boldere of herte. TREVISA.

De mari magno medio, sive Mediterraneo. Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo. Capitulum octavum.

THANNE þe grete see of myddel erpe hygynneþ in þe west at Hercules pilers; þere þe see of ocean of Athlant brekeþ out, and makeþ the see Gaditan. Þe lengþe of þat see is fiftene þowsand paas, and þe brede fyue þowsand paas, and hap in þe riȝt side Affrica, and in þe lefte side Europa; and þerof springeþ þe ynnere sees. Þe endes þerof is þe water Thany an þe norþ side, and Nilus in

in Affrike. For the beame of the sonne beenge continually by contynualle permanence on men of Affrike consumeþ theire humores, causethe theyme to be more schorte of body, more blacke of skynne, more crispedde in heire, also more feynte in herte by the euaporacion of spirites: hit is in contrary wyse of men beenge in þe northe partes; for colde causege opilacion and stoppenge the poores ex-^{MS. HARL. 2261.} terially causethe humores to be fatte, that makethe men more of body, moore whyte, and moore hoote interially, and by that moore bolde.

Of the grete see or Mediterranye. Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo. Capitulum octavum.

THE begynnenge of the grete see is in the weste, at the pyllers of Hercules, where the ocean Atlantyke brekenge vp to londes makethe the see Gaditan. The f. 22 b. longitude of whom is protendede in to xv. m^l of passes. The latitude of hit is extente in to v. m^l passes, hauenge at the ryȝhte parte of hit Affrike, at the lyfte parte Europe: after that hit is diffusede in to sees internallc. The termes of whom be the water of Thanays at the northe,

¹ bodies, Cx.

² norþrene, a.

³ Omitted in Cx. (typ. error.)

⁴ and hatter] omitted in Cx.

et Nilus ad austrum.¹ *Isidorus, libro nono, cap. vi.*² Mare magnum fluens ex oceano vergit in meridiem, deinde in aquilonem,³ cujus primus sinus Balearis funditur in Hispanias. Deinde sinus⁴ Gallicus alluit⁵ provinciam Narbonensem, mox Ligusticus urbem Januam. Post hoc⁶ Tyrrhenus sive Ionius Italiam attingit; inde⁷ Siculus, qui a Sicilia ad Cretam vadit; deinde Creticus, qui in Pamphyliam et Ægyptum tendit; inde Hellepontus, qui versus septentrionem magnis anfractibus retortus; sed juxta Græciam apud Bosporum⁸ in angustiam septem stadiorum restringitur, ubi rex Xerxes pontem fecit de navibus, ut Græciam invaderet.⁹ *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo primo.* Ibi tam strictum est mare inter orbes Asiæ et Europæ, ut alitum¹⁰ cantus et¹¹ canum latratus, nisi ventus impediatur,¹² invicem audiantur. *Giraldus, distinct. prima, capitulo decimo.*¹³ Mare illud strictum dicitur brachium Sancti Georgii quod urbem Constantinopolim præterfluit¹⁴ ac

¹ *austrum*] lævam, C.D.

² Sic E.; lib. xiv., A.B.C. The true reference is to Isid. *Orig.* lib. xiii. c. 16.

³ *in aquilonem*] ad septentrionem, C.D.

⁴ *sinus*] om. D.; added in later hand in C.

⁵ *alluit*] ambit, B.

⁶ *hoc*] hæc, D.

⁷ *inde*] deinde, B.

⁸ *Bosporum*] Bosforum, A. &c., intending the incorrect form *Bosphorum*.

⁹ *invaderet*] ingrederetur, C.D.

¹⁰ *alitum*] hominum, E.

¹¹ *et*] ad, B.

¹² *nisi ventus impediatur* after *audiantur* in C.D.

¹³ *quarto*, B.C.D. The passage does not occur in the excerpts from either chapter, edited by Mr. Brewer. See Girald. *De instr. Princ.* pp. 186, 194. (Lond. 1846.) Unfortunately, the first book or *distinction* is not printed entire.

¹⁴ *præterfluit*] præterluit, E.; prævaluit, B.

pe souþ side. *Isidorus, libro decimo quarto.* Þe grete see TREVISA.
 flowynge oute of ocean¹ turnep into pe souþ, and þan into
 pe north. Balearis, pe firste greet hauen and passage of
 þat see,² schedep into Spayne. Þan pe oper mouth Gallicus
 passeþ by pe prouince of Narbon; þan Ligustius by Ianua,
 a citee; þan Tyrrhenus to Ytaly arechep;³ þan pe hauen of
 Sicilia passeþ to Creta; þan pe passage of Creta strecchep
 in to Pamphylia and Egipte. Þere han pe streen⁴ of pe
 grete hauene and moupe Hellespontus brekep oute abrode
 in greet wawes and stremes, and torneþ norþwarde. But
 bisides Grees at Bo[s]forum, he⁵ wexeþ narwe and straiþte
 as pe space of seuen forlonge;⁶ and þere Xerxes⁷ pe kyng
 made ouer a brigge⁸ of schippes for to passe in to Grees
 and werre þere ynne. *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo primo.*
 Þere pe see is so narwe bytwene Europa and Asia, þat me⁹
 may hire in eyþer side oute of oper houndes berke, and
 foules synge, but¹⁰ weder and wynde lette. *Giraldus, distinct.*
prima, capitulo decimo. Þat narwe see¹¹ is i-cleped¹² Seint
 Georges Arme, and strecchep forþ by Constantinopolim,

and Nilus at the sowthe. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* MS. HARL.
 The grete see flowenge from the ocean turnethe in to the 2261.
 sowthe, after that in to the northe, the fyrste end of whom
 is in to Speyne; after that hit floethe in to the prouince
 Narbonense; after that the bosom of pe water Ligusticus
 watrethe the cite callede Ianua; after that the see Tyren
 atteynethe to Ytaly. Then Siculus goethe from Sicille to
 Crete. Then the water callede Creticus in to Pamphylia
 and to Egipte. Then the see Elesponte retorte with grete
 passage turnethe to the northe, but abowte Grece, nye a
 place namede Bosforus, hit is restreynede in to the streyte-
 nesse of vij. forlonges where kyng Xerxes⁷ made a brigge
 off schippes that he myȝhte goe in to Grece. *Plinius, libro*
sexto, capitulo primo. The see is so streyte per betwene
 the costes of Asia and of Europe, that the singenge of
 bryddes and berkenge of dogges may be herde to gedre,
 with owte the wynde cause resistance. *Giraldus, distinct.*
prima, capitulo decimo. That streyte see is callede the arme
 of seynthe George, whiche flowethe abowte Constantinople,

¹ the ocean, Cx.

² Cx. adds and.

³ archeth, Cx.

⁴ Sic MS.; stream, a. and frothens
the strene, Cx.

⁵ Bofornit, Cx.

⁶ furlonges, Cx.

⁷ Exerces, MS. and a.; Xerxes,
Harl. MS. Here and elsewhere the

classical orthography is restored,
when the word does not appear to
be in a manner anglicised, e.g.,
Africa.

⁸ brydye, Cx.

⁹ men, Cx.

¹⁰ but yf, Cx.

¹¹ place, Cx.

¹² named, Cx.

orbis gemini¹ discrimen faciens tam Asiam quam Europam delambit. Ibi quoque est Insula Abydos.² *Isidorus, libro nono.*³ Indeque pontus diffusus versus septentrionem facit Propontidem. Inde etiam stringitur⁴ in secentos passus et fit Thracius; inde⁵ Ponticus sinus amplissimus qui⁶ ab aquilone allambens⁷ Thraciam et Moesiam⁸ extenditur versus⁹ Mœotides paludes; ibique recipit fluvium Tanaim,¹⁰ inde versus orientem expansus transit juxta Asiam minorem usque ad fines Iberiæ et Armeniæ, quod quidem mare dicitur Euxinum. *Isidorus, libro nono.*¹¹ Et est illud mare dulcius, brevius, nebulosius propter accurrentia undique¹² flumina. In quo quidem amplo¹³ sinu sunt insulæ Colchos,¹⁴ Patmos et. aliæ.¹⁵ *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo quinto.*¹⁶ Nec refluit Ponticus sinus sicut¹⁷ cætera maria, sed semper fluit in Propontidem et Hellespontum. *Ranulphus.*¹⁸ Cujus rei causa poterit esse quod impetus fluminum a tergo labentium¹⁹ urgent²⁰ pontum Euxinum²¹ ad continuum fluxum. Nec valet æstus Helles-

¹ *gemini*] om. B.

² *Insula Abydos*] This is clearly Higden's text, whose error is due to Isidore (*Orig.* xiv. 6). C. and D. have *Aludos*, by a clerical error.

³ B. does not notice that a new quotation begins.

⁴ *etiam stringitur*] et constringitur, C.

⁵ *inde*] Sic C.D.E.; *unde*, A.

⁶ *qui*] Sic C.D.E.; *quia*, A.

⁷ *aquilone*] occidentem gyrans, C.D.

⁸ *Moesiam*] Misiam, or Missiam, MSS., and similarly the versions.

⁹ *extenditur versus*] ad aquilonem tangit, D., and so probably C. originally, in which corrections are made in a later hand.

¹⁰ *et fluvium Thanay recipit*, C.D.

¹¹ The title of the extract is omitted in C.D.E. B. has 14°. Neither the 9th nor 14th book seems to be had in view.

¹² *undique*] om. C.D.

¹³ *amplo*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *Chalcia* is probably intended. Trevisa has *Calchos*. Nothing in Isid. lib. ix. corresponds to this.

¹⁵ *aliæ*] quædam aliæ, C.D.

¹⁶ The book only (not the chapter) cited in A.B.C.D.

¹⁷ *sicut*] ut, C.D.

¹⁸ C. and D. omit *Ranulphus*.

¹⁹ *labentium*, D.

²⁰ *urget*, C.D.

²¹ *Euxinum*] om. C.D.

and bytwene Europa and Asia; and in pat see is pe llood TREVISA.
 Abydos. *Isidorus, libro nono.* Panne pe see schedep norp-
 ward, and makep pe see Propontides. Penne he narwep to
 pe narwenesse of sex hondred paas, [and]¹ is pe so² Trach.
 Panne pe grete see³ Ponticus pat passep by north by Thracia
 and Mœsia, strecchep to pe wateres and marys of Mæotides,
 and fongep⁴ pere pe ryuer Thanays. Penne he strecchep
 estward, and passep by pe lasse Asia, anon to⁵ pe endes of
 Iberia and Armenye. And pat see is i-cleped⁶ Euxinum.
Isidorus, libro nono. And pat see is swetter, schorter,
 and more mysty, for fresshe ryueres al aboute turnep and
 fallep⁷ perto. In pat grete mouthe and baye⁸ bep ilondes
 Calchos, Patmos,⁹ and opere. *Plinius, libro sexto.* And
 pe see Ponticus flowep not noþer¹⁰ turnep aȝen as opere
 sees doop, but eucere turnep¹¹ into pe see Propontidem and
 Hellespontum. R. pe cause pere of is myȝte and strengþe
 of ryueres and bakwateres, pat rennep perto, dryuep forþ
 pe see Euxinum alway in oon cours. And pe strengþe
 and pe flood of pe see Hellesponticus, pat is fer from ocean,

compassenge abowte also as welle Affrike as Europe. There MS. HARL.
2261.
 is an yle callede Abydos. *Isidorus, libro nono.* The see
 callede Pontus, diffusede from pens towarde the northe
 maketho the see callede Propontides. And from thens
 hit is streynede also into vj^c passes a[nd] causethe a water
 named Thracius.¹² Then the see Pontike compassenge abowte
 from the northe the londes of Thracia and Mœsia is ex-
 tendede towarde Mæotides Paludes where hit receyvetho a
 floode named Thanay, which extendede towarde the este
 goethe towarde Asia the lesse to the costes of Hiberia
 and of Armeny, whiche is callede the see Eusyne. *Isidorus,*
libro nono. That see is moore swete, more schorte for
 floodes, accurate on euery side. In the grete arme of
 whom be yles callede Colchos, Patmos,⁹ and oper. *Plinius,*
libro sexto. The see Pontike reflowetho not as other sees,
 but hyt dothe floe alle weies in to that see Propontides
 and Elesponte. R. The cause may be assignede that im-
 petuosites of floodes in the backe of hit constreynetho
 the see Eusyne to floenge continualle, and Elesponte deriate

¹ Added from Cx., and a.

² *besce*, MS.; *the see*, Cx.

³ *the see*, Cx.

⁴ *receyueth*, Cx.

⁵ *Asia vnto*, Cx.

⁶ *named*, Cx.

⁷ *renne and fullen*, Cx.

⁸ So Cx.; *bay*, a.; *pey*, MS.,

which adds *and baye* after *opere* in the line following.

⁹ *Patmos*] *Pathmos*, MS. and Harl. MS.

¹⁰ *ne*, Cx., who omits *as opere sees* doop.

¹¹ *renneth*, Cx.

¹² *Tracheus*, Harl. MS. Trevisa has also mangled the word.

ponticus, tanquam longius ab oceano derivatus, tam validum¹ impetum retorquere. *Isidorus, libro nono.*² Et sicut terra cum una sit pro diversis tamen locis et causis variis appellatur vocabulis, ita hoc mare magnum³ pro diversis regionibus, insulis, oppidis, gentibus, quas allambit,⁴ et eventibus diversimode nominatur.

CAP. IX.

De Oceano.

*Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.*⁵

MOLEM⁶ terræ ambit oceanus in modum circuli oras terrarum circumplectens, alternisque æstibus accedit et recedit; respirantibus enim in profundum ventis aut revomit maria aut absorbet. *Plinius, libro secundo, cap. xcix.* Æstus oceani intumescit super Britanniam octogenis cubitis. Et magis deprehenduntur hi motus circa⁷ littora maris⁸ quam in alto pelago; quin et in⁹ extremis corporum partibus¹⁰ pulsus venarum magis sentiuntur quam in¹¹ medio corporum.¹² Omnis autem¹³ æstus

¹ *tam validum*] tantum, C.D.

² 14°. B. The true reference is to lib. xiii. c. 16.

³ C. and D. add *sive Mediterraneum*.

⁴ *quas allambit*] om. C. D.

⁵ *quarto decimo*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiii. c. 15.

⁶ C. and D. begin thus:—"Oceanus in circuli modum ambit orbem oras," etc.

⁷ *circa*] juxta, B.

⁸ *maris*] om. C.D.

⁹ *et in*] om. A.; added from C. D. E.; *et*, om. B.

¹⁰ *partibus*] om. B.

¹¹ *in*] om. A.

¹² *quam in medio corporum*] om. C.D.

¹³ *autem*] etiam, E.; quoque, C.D.

may nouȝt wiȝstonde þe course and þe strengþe of þe strong stremes þat rennep¹ þat course. *Isidorus, libro nono.* As þe erþe þat is oon hap dyuerse names by cause of dyuers [places, so the² grete see by cause of dyuerse]³ kyngdoms, ylondes, peple, citees, and townes þat he⁴ passeþ by, and happes þat falleþ perynne is dyuersliche i-nempned⁵ and hap dyuers names. TREVIS.

De oceano. Isidorus, libro decimo tertio. Capitulum nonum.

THE see of ocean byclippeþ al þe erþe aboute as a garlond, and by tymes comeþ and goop ebbynge and flowynge, and sweloweþ⁶ in sees, and casteþ hem vp; and wyndes bloweþ perynne. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo 99.* Þe hiȝe flood of ocean ariseþ vp⁷ þe costes of Bretaine foure score cubitis hiȝe. And þat risynge and depnesse is better i-knowe by þe cleues þan in the hiȝe see; for betynge of veynes is bettre i-knowe in þe vttre parties of bodies⁸ þan ynward and⁹ in þe myddel wiȝynne. Euerich flood arist¹⁰ more in ocean

so ferre from the ocean may not returne ageyne that huge impetuosite. *Isidorus, libro nono.* And neuerthelesse, sythe the erthe is oon or londe, and callede in diuerse names thro diuerse causes and diuerse places, soe in lyke wyse the grete see is namede in diuerse maners for diuerse regiones, yles, cites, and peple that hit compassethe. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 23 a.

Of the Ocean. Isidorus Eth. libro tertio decimo. Capitulum nonum.

THE ocean compassethe the erthe in the maner of a cercle, foldenge abowte the regiones of londes, commethe to, and recedethe; the wyndes respirenge and restenge in the profundite of hit, auþer hit flowethe furthe or retractethe the sees in to hit. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo 99.* The heete and feruence of the ocean swellethe on Breteyne viij^c¹¹ cubites and moore, the mouenges be deprehendede raper abowte the sides of the sees then in an oper hie see. For the pulses of the veynes be felede moore in the extremities than in the myddes of the body. Euery heete and feruence hathe more invndacion in the

¹ eorneþ, a.

² þis, a.

³ Added from Cx. and a.

⁴ it, Cx.

⁵ named, Cx.

⁶ floweth, Cx. (typ. error.)

⁷ vpon, Cx., a.

⁸ the body, Cx.

⁹ Om. Cx.

¹⁰ aryseth, Cx.

¹¹ A blunder for 80.

magis inundat in oceano quam in mari magno, sive quia totum in universitate sua¹ animosius est quam in parte, sive quia magnitudo patens efficacius sentit vim sideris lunaris quam angustia² coarctata. Quamobrem nec lacus nec amnes eo modo moventur. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo.*³ Oceanus in varios sinus infusus versus terram plerisque in locis interna maria pene tangit, adeo ut sinus Rubri maris qui Arabicus dicitur centum quinquaginta millibus passuum vix distet ab Ægyptio mari; Caspius vero sinus trecentis septuaginta quinque millibus a ponto distet⁴ Euxino.⁵ *Bede de Naturis.* Inter omnes sinus quos oceanus versus terras procreat, tres sunt famosiores. Primus est fretum Gaditanum sive Atlanticum, quod ab occidente erumpens⁶ mare magnum in medio terrarum facit. Secundus sinus dicitur⁷ mare Caspium, quod a Vulturno ingrediens dividit borealem partem Indiæ a Scythia, ac versus Euxinum mare tendit.

¹ sua] om. D.; interlineated in C.

² angustia] in angus. (i.e. angustum?), C., which as well as D. arranges the words in this clause otherwise.

³ The true reference is to lib. ii. c. 68.

⁴ distet at the end of the sentence in C.D.

⁵ C. and D. omit the extracts from Bede, Solinus, and Ranulphus, beginning again from Paulus: — *Sunt plures aquarum voragines.*

⁶ erumpens] irrumpens, B.E.

⁷ Secundus est, B.

pan in þe grete see; þat is, for þe hoole to gidre is myȝtier and strengre pan any partie by hem¹ self, oper for þe hole ocean is grete and huge and fongep² more worchyng of þe mone pan eny partie by hym self þat is smallere and lasse. Pefore lakus, ryueres, pondus, and opere fresche wateres noper³ ebbep ne flowep as ocean dop. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo sexto.*⁴ Ocean spredep and schedep in to dyuers mouthes and costes toward þe lond, and in many places wel nyh touchep þe ynnere sees so nygh þat þe moupe [þat is cleped Arabicus, and is þe moup]⁵ and þe coste of þe Rede see [is fro the see of Egypte; but fifty thousand paas; also the mouth and see]⁶ þat is i-cleped⁷ Caspius is but þre hundred þre score and fiftene myle from þe grete see þat is i-cleped⁷ Euxinus. *Beda, de Naturis.* Amonge alle þe mouthes and sees þat comep toward þe londe and out of ocean,⁸ þre been most famous i-holde. Þe firste⁹ mouthe and see hap tweie names, and is i-cleped⁷ Gaditanus and Atlanticus also. Þe secounde is i-cleped⁷ Caspius, and entrep toward þe norþ est,¹⁰ and departep by twene þe norþside of Inde¹¹ and Scythia þat londe, and so¹² strecchep toward þe grete moupe and see þat is i-cleped

TREVISIA.

ocean then in the grete see. The cause is for euery thyng is of more animosite and audacite in his vniversalle then his parte parcialle. And also for the patente magnitude felethe by more efficacite the strenȝhte of þe moone then a see coartate; wherefore a lake and other waters be not y-movede in that maner. *Plinius, libro 2º, capitulo 7º.* The ocean infusede in to diuerse places towardes londes towchethe alle moste the entiere sees in many places, in so moche that a parte of the Redde see whiche is callede Arabicus is vnnethe distante from Egipte a c. lⁱⁱ mⁱ of passes. The see callede Caspius is distante by ecc. lxxv. mⁱ passes from the see callede Eusyne. *Beda, De Naturis.* Amonge alle the armes of the ocean, that hit dothe cause, thre be of moste nowble fame. The firste is the see Gaditan, or Autlantike, whiche brekenge vp from the weste makethe the grete see in the myddes of the erthe. The secunde see is callede the see of Caspius, whiche goenge from the sowthe este, diuidethe the northe parte off Ynde from Scythia, and goethe from that to the see Eusyne. The thrydde is

MS. HARL.
2261.
---¹ *him, a.*² *receyueth, Cx.*³ *ne, Cx.*⁴ *septimo, a.* See the Latin text.⁵ Added from *a.*⁶ Added from *Cx.* and *a.*⁷ *called, Cx.*⁸ *the ocean, Cx.*⁹ *Om. Cx.*¹⁰ *out of north east, Cx.*¹¹ *So a.; Indu, MS.*¹² *that, Cx.*

Tertius sinus dicitur mare Rubrum, quod ab euro orbis intrans dividit australem partem Indiæ ab Æthiopia et Ægypto, indeque progrediens in duos sinus scinditur, quorum Persicus sinus aquilonem petit, Arabicus vero versus mare magnum petit occidentem. Hoc autem mare Rubrum nomen suum a roseo colore trahit, quem tamen non naturaliter habet, sed a vicinis littoribus, quæ sanguineo colore rubent, inficitur; ideoque minium acutum¹ et rubræ gemmæ inde leguntur. *Solinus*. Juxta mare Caspium sunt montes Caspii habentes in longum² VII. millia passuum, in lato³ vix plaustro permeabiles; laterum saxa, liquentibus inter se salis venis, exundant humorem⁴ affluentem. Qui constrictus vi caloris velut in æstivam⁵ glaciem corporatur, et ita labes nimia accessum vetat.⁶ Præterea viginti octo millibus⁷ passuum spatio tractus omnis peragitur. Humus arida sine præsidio sitit, et tunc serpentes undique confluunt,

¹ B. adds *est*.

² So A.B.E. Perhaps *longo* or *longitudine* (see Harl. MS.) may be the true reading.

³ *latitudine*, B.

⁴ A. has *et* before *humorem*.

⁵ *æstivum*, A.E.

⁶ *vetat*] *negat*, E.

⁷ *millibus*] *milia*, E. *Millium* would be a better reading. See Trevisa.

Euxinus. Þe þridde mouþe and see is þe Rede see, and comeþ of þe north est, and departeþ þe south side of Inde from Ethiopia and Egipte from þilke tweye londes. Þan þe Rede see streccheþ forþ, and departeþ in tweie mouthes and sees. Þat oon is i-cleped¹ Persicus, and streccheþ norþward, þat oþer is i-cleped¹ Arabicus, and streccheþ westward and toward þe grete see. Þe² Rede see is nouȝt rede of kynde, but aflascheþ³ and wascheþ oon⁴ rede clyues and stones, and so is i-died rede as a rose. Þerfore of þe clyues and strondes of þe Reed see is i-gadered vermylon and rede precious stones. *Solinus*. By þe see þat is i-cleped⁵ Caspius beþ hilles, þat beþ i-cleped þe hilles of Caspi,⁶ and haueþ in lengþe seuen þowsand paas, and in brede vnneþe þe space of a cart wey. In þe sides of þe hilles of Caspii salt veynes mulleþ⁷ and woseth oute humours, and moysture i-dried and i-clunge by hete of þe sonne ioyned and cleueþ to gideres, as is opere⁸ glas; and somme⁹ may nouȝt clymbe on þe hilles, þe wey is so slider. Also euerich drauȝt is ful drawe in þe space of eyȝte and twenty þousand paas; þe londe is drie wiþoute socoure, and adders and serpentes falleþ

TREVISA.

called the Redde see, which entrenge from the este parte of the worlde diuidethe the sowthe parte of Ynde from Ethiopia and Egipte, which takenge his progresse from thens is departede in to ij. armes, of whom the¹⁰ arme Persicalle, or of þe¹⁰ cuntre of Perse, dothe aske the northe. The see of Araby askethe the weste toward the grete see. That Redde see, takenge his name of a redde color whom hyt hathe not naturally, but of nye places to hyt, whiche be redde like to the colour of bloode, where redde precious stones be founde. *Solinus*. The hilles callede Caspii be nye the see callede Caspius, as longenge to them, hauenge in longitude vij. m^l of passes, in latitude vnnethe f. 23 b. permeable with oxen, the stonyes of whom as meltenge thro the veynes of salte mixte amonge theyme causethe an humor affluente; whiche compacte and constructe thro the heete of the sonne, is incorporate as in to yse, and see the slipper waye dencyethe commenge to theyme. That drye grownde thurstethe as with owte presyde. Then the serpentes take

MS. HARL. 2261.

¹ i-cleped] named, Cx. (twice.)² þis, a.³ it flassheth, Cx.⁴ on the, Cx.⁵ called, Cx.⁶ Caspii, a, and so MS. below.⁷ melte, Cx.⁸ as yse or, Cx.⁹ so men, Cx.¹⁰ þe . . . the] So Harl. MS., and similarly the MS. of Trevisa on this page has mulleþ and woseth; whence the inconstancy of the use of þ clearly appears, when they were written. See also p. 31.

ita ut nisi in hyeme accessus omnia negatur.¹ *Ranulphus*. Et secundum Marcianum portæ Caspiæ ferreis trabibus sunt obseratæ, quæ verno tempore serpentibus obcluduntur;² et secundum Magistrum in historiis³ ad preces Alexandri Magni, hi montes invicem⁴ cohæserunt.⁵ *Paulus*, in *Historia Longobardorum*, libro primo.⁶ Sunt etiam plures aquarum voragine sive vortigines juxta marium margines⁷ e quibus ducuntur in mari mediterraneo inter Italiam et Siciliam, Scylla scilicet et Charybdis, de quibus Virgilius loquitur —

Dextrum Scylla latus, lævum implacata Charybdis.⁸ Sunt et aliæ voragine in oceano, quarum una in occidentali littore Britanniae minoris⁹ umbilicus¹⁰ maris dicitur; alia quoque inter Britanniam et Galliciam,¹¹ quæ bis in die naturali fluctus sorbere et rursus evomere navesque attrahere et rejicere tanta velocitate dicuntur, ut sagittarum lapsum imitari videantur.

¹ So A.B.E. The syntax requires *negetur*; but the error may be Higden's own.

² *obscinduntur*, B.

³ *Magistrum historiarum*, B.

⁴ *ad invicem*, B.

⁵ So B.E.; *sunt* (for *sibi*?) *adheserunt*, A.

⁶ The extract from *Paulus* is wanting in A.; down to *Charybdis*

added from E.; B. omits the title of the extract, and begins it (after *Charybdis*) thus: *Sunt et aliæ, &c.*

⁷ *juxta marium margines*] om. D.

⁸ *implicata*, E. (*Obsidet* governs these accusatives, *Æn.* iii. 421.)

⁹ *minoris*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ Sic C.; *umbilicum*, A.B.D.E.

¹¹ So the MSS.

perto; so þat, but it be wynter, þere may no man come þerynne. **R.** Martianus seiþ þat þe¹ ȝates of Caspij beþ i-steke² wip yren barres, and in springyng tyme faste i-barred for serpentis and addres; and þe Maister³ of þe stories sayth,⁴ þat at þe prayeres of kyng Alisaundre Caspij hulles were i-closed and ioyned to gidres. *Paulus, in historia Longobardorum, libro primo.* Þere beþ many swolwynges and whirlynges of wateres by þe see brynkes; tweyne beþ in þe see of myddel erþe bytwene Itali and þe londe⁵ Sicilia. Þilke tweie swolwes beþ i-cleped⁶ Scylla and Charybdis; of þe whiche spekeþ Virgil, and seiþ: Scylla is perilous in þe riȝt side, and Charybdis in þe lift side. Opere swelowes and periles of wateres⁷ beþ in ocean; oon is in þe west clif of litel⁸ Bretayne, and is i-cleped⁹ þe nauel of þe see; þe toþer¹⁰ is bytwene Bretayne and Gallicia, and it is i-seide þat þese swelowes twyes in þe nyȝt and day sweloweþ ynne stremes and flodes, and casteþ hem vp aȝe.¹¹ Also he¹² draweþ in schippes, and casteþ hem vp aȝen,¹³ as swiftliche as an arwe to a manis sight.¹⁴

TREVISA.

theire confluence to hyt on euery syde, in so moche that commenge to theyme is denyede, but in wynter. **R.** And after Martian the ȝates of theyme be lockede with cheynes of yrne, whiche be stopped in the somer tyme with serpentis. And after the Maister in storyes, those hilles wente to gedre at the preyers of kynge Alexander. *Paulus, in historia Longobardorum, libro primo.* Also there be monye deiþe places of waters nye to the sydes of the sees, of whom tweyne be in the grete see betwene Ytaly and Sicille. Also there be other swaloes of the see in the ocean. Oon of theym is in the weste side of Briteyne the less, y-namede the navelle of the see. That oper is betwene Briteyne and Fraunce, whiche be seyde to deuoure waters and evomette theyme twyes in a day, drawenge to theyme schippes and puttenge theyme awaye with suche a swiftenesse, that thei appere to folowe the schote of an arowe.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ a. omits þe.² faste shette, Cx.³ So Cx., (who has of historyes); maistres, MS.⁴ sayth] Added from Cx. and a.⁵ ilonde, Cx.⁶ called, Cx.⁷ water, Cx.⁸ Om. Cx.⁹ called, Cx.¹⁰ other, Cx.¹¹ agayn, Cx. (not a.)¹² it, Cx.¹³ casted hem agayn, Cx.¹⁴ So the MS. (not, as usually, siȝt.)

CAP. X.

*De provinciis Orbis. Et primo de Paradiso.*¹

Quatuor
flumina
Paradisi.

CIRCA notitiam Paradisi terrestris tria potissime sunt advertenda; primo namque quoad ejus existentiam seu conditionem quæritur an sit; secundo quoad ejus positionem quæritur ubi sit; tertio quoad ejus descriptionem quæritur qualis sit. De primo notandum est quod ejus existentiae² attestantur quatuor; videlicet narrationes historiarum,³ quæ comparant Paradiso loca Sodomæ antequam subverteretur. Secundo, testimonia expertorum, qui se vidisse locum illum scripserunt. Tertio, quatuor flumina inde exeuntia, quorum origo in nostro habitabili nec in mari nec in fonte uspiam reperitur, cum tamen circa hoc per reges Ægypti et alios frequenter fuerit elaboratum. Idcirco, teste Isidoro,⁴ XIII. Etymolog., Hieronymus animadvertit de Paradisi fluminibus aliter fore sentiendum quam auctores tradi-

¹ *Paradiso*] E. adds in the title : —“ Et opinionibus circa ipsum locum.” C. omits all after *Orbis*, and all the early part of the chapter (see below); and the rest also is so much transposed that its readings can be but imperfectly represented. D. agrees exactly with C. in its arrangement, and has not a single

various reading of importance, and, indeed, very few deviations of any kind.

² *existentiam*, B.

³ *historiarum*] Om. B., which has also *loca Sodomæ* before *Paradiso*.

⁴ This extract from *Isidore* is substantially the same in C.

De provinciis orbis; primo de Paradiso. Capitulum TREVISA.
decimum.

FOR þe knowleche of erpelyche Paradys þre poyntes moste be i-knowe. Wherefore þre questiouns beþ i-axed: þe firste questioun axep,¹ Ȝif eny suche place is on erpe? þe secounde axip,¹ Whiderwarde or where is Paradys in erpe? þe þridde askep,¹ What contraye or what place² is Paradys in erpe? For þe firste, foure manere witnesses we haueþ þat Paradys is in erpe; first stories þat liknep Sodom, or³ hit were ouertorned, to Paradise; þe secounde witnes is of⁴ hem þat assaiede and⁵ write and seide, þat þey had i-seie⁶ þat place; þe þridde witnesse beþ⁷ þe foure ryueres, þat rennep out of Paradyse; for þe heed of pilke ryueres beþ nouȝt i-founde in see, noþer in fresche water, noþer in londe þat men woneþ⁸ ynne, þeyȝ kynges of Egipt and many oþer trauailed wel ofte and souȝte pereaftre. Perfore Isid[ore], xiii. Eth., seiþ þat Hieronymus⁹ toke hede þat ouper vnderstandynge bihouep of þe ryueres of Paradys, þan auctours writeþ;

Of the Prouinces of the Worlde, and firste of Paradise. MS. HARL.
2261.
Capitulum decimum.

THRE thynges ar to be aduertisede principally as abowte the knowlege of Paradise. Fyrste hit is inquirede as vn to the existence of hit other¹⁰ condicion wheþer hit be. In the secunde hit is inquirede as vn to the posicion of hyt where hit is. In the thrydde hit is inquirede in what maner hit is. Of the fyrste, hit is to be attendede that iiij thynges bere wyttensse to the beenge of hit, that is to say, narraciones of storyes, the whiche do comparate the places of Sodomye to Paradise afore the subuersion of theyme. In the secunde, the testimonies of men experte whiche haue writen theyme to haue seen that place. In the thrydde, iiij. waters flowenge from hit, the begynnege of whom was not founde in oure partes habitable, neiper in the see, neither in eny other welle whiche hathe be laborede by diuerse kynges of Egipte and other men ofte tymes. Therefore, Isidorus wyttensse xiiij^o. Eth., Seynte Ierom perceyvethe other wise of the floodes of Paradise then other auctores

¹ a. has the same variations of spelling; Cx. has *axeth* in all three places.

² *contray and place*, Cx.

³ *er*, Cx.

⁴ So Cx.; *witnessip of*, MS.

⁵ *and*] om. Cx., who has *wrote*.

⁶ *seen*, Cx.

⁷ So a.; *wytnes ben*, Cx.; *witnessip that beþ*, MS.

⁸ *dvelle*, Cx.

⁹ *Ieronimus*, MS., and so often; *Iherom*, Cx.

¹⁰ So the MS., but *or the* is probably the true reading.

derunt. Dicit¹ enim Basilius in Hexaameron et Isidorus Etymolog., libro xiv., et Josephus, libro primo, quod de Paradisi altissimo monte cadentes aquæ lacum efficiunt, de quo velut de fonte quatuor flumina nascuntur. *Petrus*,² *capitulo quartodecimo*. Quorum primus Phison qui interpretatur *inundatio* educitur in Indiam trahens secum aureas arenas, et dictus est Ganges a Gangaro rege Indiæ, quod interpretatur *caterva*; eo quod decem flumina recipiat. Secundus fluvius dictus est Gyon, qui et Nilus, circuitque³ Æthiopiam et Ægyptum. Tertius fluvius Tigris secundum Josephum dicitur Diglath,⁴ quod sonat *acutum*, eo quod velox sit ut tigris, et vadit contra Assyrios. Quartus fluvius Euphrates, quod sonat *frugifer*, vadit contra Chaldæos.⁵ *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo*.⁶ Salustius auctor certissimus asserit quod de Cerauniis⁷ montibus Armeniæ ad pedem Caucasii montis oritur fons, qui caput est duorum flu-

¹ These extracts are more fully exhibited in C. and D., thus: *Basilius Hexaem.* Igitur de paradisi altissimo monte cadentes aquæ magnum faciunt lacum, ex quo velut ex uno fonte quatuor nascuntur flumina. *Isid. lib. 4* (sic). De medio enim Paradisi fons prorumpens totum nemus irrigat; dividitur quoque in quatuor flumina nascentia. *Josephus* li. 1. Nam Phison educatur in Indiam, Euphrates et Tigris in mare rubrum feruntur. Gihon vero per Ægyptum fluens Nilum facit.

² The extract from *Petrus* is con-

tained in C. and D., but abbreviated. B. has 4 for 14.

³ *que*] So B.; om. A.E.; *et circuit*, C.D.

⁴ *Diglath*] Dilath, E.; Diglat, C.D.

⁵ The MSS. of text and versions omit *h* in the first syllable. In the former it is corrected.

⁶ *quarto decimo*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiii. c. 21. s. 10. This extract is also contained in C., but much altered.

⁷ *Cerauneis*, MSS.

also Basilius, in Hexaameron, Ysid[ore], Eth. lib. quarto decimo, and Iosephus, libro primo, seiþ pat wateres fallynge of þe hiȝest¹ hille of Paradys makeþ a grete ponde, and out of þat ponde (as it were of a welle) þe foure ryueres springeþ. *Petrus, capitulo quarto decimo.* Of þe whiche foure ryueres þe firste is Phison, and is to menyngge *ful wexynge of plente*; þat ryuer Phison passeþ into Inde, and draweth wiþ hym golden grauel. Phison hap anoper name, and is i-cleped Ganges of a kynge² of Ynde þat was i-cleped Gangarius; but Ganges³ is to menyngge⁴ *felawschippe and companye*, for he fongeþ ten greet ryueres þat renneþ perto. Þe secounde is i-cleped Gyon and Nilus also, and goop aboute Ethiopia and Egipt. Þe pridde is Tigris, and, as Iosephus seiþ, Diglath also, þat is to menyngge,⁵ *scharp*, for he⁶ is swift as tigris, þat is a wel⁶ swift best; and Tigris passeþ toward Assyria þat londe. Þe fourþe is Euphrates, þat is to menyngge *fructuous and fruit berere*, and goþ toward Caldea þat londe.⁷ *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* Þe moste certeyn auctor, Salustius, seiþ, þat þere comeþ a welle oute of Cerauneys, þe hulles of Armenye, and springeþ out at⁸ þe foote of þe hulle þat is i-cleped Caucasus; and þat welle is

TREVISA.

have diffinede. Basilius in his Hexaameron and Isidorus, libro MS. HARL. quartodecimo Eth., and Iosephus, libro primo,⁹ that waters 2261. fallenge from Paradise make a lake, from whom iiij. flowedes f. 24 a. hathe theire begynnenge as of a welle. *Petrus, capitulo quarto decimo.* The firste floode of whom is calledde Phison, the invndacion of whom is educede in to Ynde, drawenge with hit grauelle of golde, whiche is callede Ganges off a kynge some time in Ynde Gangarius by name, whiche is called a cumpanye by interpretacion, in that hit dothe receyve x. floedes. The secunde is callede Gyon or Nilus, whiche compassethe Ethioppe and Egipte. The thrydde floode is callede Tigris, after Iosephus hit is called Diglath, whiche sowndethe scharpe, in so moche that hit is swifte as a tigre, and goethe ageynes Assirioncs. The furthe is callede Euphrates, that sowndethe as plentuous of corne, whiche goethe ageyne men of Calde. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* Salustius, the moste certeyn auctor, seythe that a welle is spronge from the highe hilles of Armenye, at the foote of the hille callede Caucasus, whiche welle is the hede

¹ of heyȝeste, a.² So a.; MS. *askynge*.³ So Cx.; *Gangus*, MS.⁴ to say, Cx., who has, howcver, to menyngge above.⁵ it, Cx. (and so often).⁶ ryght, Cx.⁷ þe fourþe . . . þat land] om. Cx.⁸ of, Cx.⁹ *scien*, or some such word, has been omitted.

minum Tigris et Euphratis ; qui ¹ aliquotiens separantur, aliquotiens inter se commiscuntur.² Sæpe a terra³ absorbentur, et iterum emergunt;⁴ et tandem post longum circa Mesopotamiam circuitum descendunt in mare Rubrum. *Ranulphus*.⁵ Et Nilus licet legatur⁶ a Paradiso procedere, quidam tamen asseverant ipsum oriri in occidentali parte Æthiopiæ non procul ab Atlantico monte, qui inde circuiens Æthiopiam descendit per Ægyptum. De cujus proprietate vide infra, capitulo *Ægyptus*. Quarto existentiae⁷ Paradisi attestatur fama diuturna. Nam famæ diuturnæ et illesæ multum est credendum. Sed fama de paradiso stetit inconcussa per sex millia annorum et amplius, quia a principio mundi usque ad dies nostros. Fama autem de re falsa cadere consuevit aut per oblivionem aut per contrariam opinionem. De secundo, quod est ejus situatio seu positio ubinam sit, non est putandum secundum quosdam brevis intellectus et paucæ experientiae Paradisum esse regionem longo-

¹ *quia*, A.

² So B.C.E. ; *intercommiscuntur*, A.

³ *a terra*] terræ, B.

⁴ *et iterum emergunt*] et locis iterum in pluribus emergunt, C.D.

⁵ The whole of this long extract from *Ranulphus* is omitted in C. and D., except so much as is contained

in the following sentence, which closes the chapter : " Inde est quod " de ortu eorum varia leguntur ; " quod Ganges dicitur nasci in locis " Caucasi montis ; Nilus non procul ab Atlante monte ; Tigris et " Euphrates in Armenia."

⁶ *licet legatur*] legitur, B.

⁷ *existentiam*, B.

pe hede of tweie ryueres [of Tigris and of Euphrates, pe TREVISA.
 whiche tweie ryuers]¹ somtyme beep i-deled atwynne² and
 somtyme i-melled³ to gidres, and ofte tyme pey beep
 i-swelewed into pe erpe, and efte⁴ springeþ up azen, and
 longe after goop aboute Mesopotamia⁵ pat londe, and doun-
 ward into pe Rede see. R. And pey me⁶ rede in bookes
 pat Nilus comeþ out of Paradys, 3it som men affermeþ
 and seip⁷ pat Nilus springeþ in pe west side of pe londe of
 Ethiopia, nouzt fer from pe hil pat is i-cleped Atlas,⁸ and
 goþ aboute Ethiopia and dounward by Egipt. Loke⁹ pe
 propurte of Nilus in pe chapitre Egiptus. Þe fourpe wit-
 nesse and preef, pat suche a place is in erpe pat is i-cleped
 Paradys, is olde fame and longe durynge; for me schal
 trowe¹⁰ olde fame, pat is nouzt wipseide; but fame of Para-
 dys hap i-dured¹¹ wipoute wipseinge¹² sexe þowsand 3ere
 and more; for from pe bygynnyng of pe world anon to
 oure dayes [it hap endured. And]¹³ fame pat is false dureþ
 nouzt so longe, for it fallip out of mynde, oper is des-
 preued by sopenesse i-knowe. Of pe secounde questioun, pat
 axeþ in whiche side of pe worlde and in what place
 Paradys schulde be; pey¹⁴ schort witted men and litel of

of tweyne waters, that is to saye, of Tigris and Euphrates, MS. HARL.
2261.
 whiche be other while separate and operwhile commixte,
 oftetyme deuourede of the erthe; and at the laste thei descende
 abowte Mesopotamy in to the Redde see. R. And thauzhe
 men say that Nilus dothe procede from Paradise, some men
 afferme hit to haue his begynnenge in the weste parte of
 Ethiop, not ferre from the mownte Atlantike, whiche com-
 passenge Ethioppe descendethe by Egipte, of the properte
 off whom beholde with in the chapitre Egiptus. In the iiijth,
 the olde fame berrethe testimonye to the existence of Para-
 dise. But trewely the fame of Paradise hathe stonde as
 inconcussede by vj. m. yeres and more. The fame of a
 false thyng is wonte to falle auer by obliuion, other by
 oppinion contrarious. Of the secunde, where it is, hit is Paradisus.
 not to take to credence after some men of pover and breue
 intellecte, and also of lytelle experience, Paradise to be a

¹ Added from a. and Cx. Here, and commonly, the versions write *Eufrates*.

² departed a sonder, Cx.

³ medlid, Cx.

⁴ after, Cx.

⁵ Macepotanea, MS. and a.; Mesopotonya, Cx.

⁶ men, Cx., and so in many other places, where MS. and a. agree in reading *me*, *a3e*, &c.

⁷ affermen and saye, Cx., to whom this plural seems unknown.

⁸ Athlas, MSS. and Cx.

⁹ Seche, Cx.

¹⁰ bileue, Cx.

¹¹ endured, Cx., and endureth for dureþ, below.

¹² gayn sayeng, Cx., but withseyde above.

¹³ Added from Cx. (not in a.)

¹⁴ though that, Cx.

maris tractu a nostro habitabili distantem ac¹ usque ad lunarem circulum elevatum; quia hoc nec natura patitur nec ratio; quia, si separaretur a nostro habitabili, nec aqua nec aer tantam molem sufferre posset. Item cum elementum ignis occupet² totum intermedium spatium inter aereum circulum et lunarem,³ constat ibi non esse Paradisum; cum nihil vegetabile ibi vivere posset. Item hoc dato locus ille sic elevatus induceret aliquando eclipsim lunarem, maxime in partibus terræ orientalibus;⁴ sed de tali eclipsi nihil audivimus hucusque. Item si Paradisus separaretur a nostro habitabili, quomodo⁵ tunc pervenirent ad nostrum habitabile illa quatuor flumina prædicta per tam vastum mare vel per aerem intermedium? Si autem dicatur quod Paradisus sit aliquantulum contigua⁶ nostro habitabili, videtur quod terra non sit sphærica, sicut communiter descripta est a doctis; immo tunc foret oblonga. Sed hoc stare

¹ *ac*] et, B.

² *occupet*] So A.; *occupat*, B.E.

³ So B.E.; *aerem et circulum lunarem*, A.

⁴ *in terris* or., E.

⁵ So B.E.; *qualiter*, A.

⁶ *contigua*] So the MSS. A.B.E.

(C. and D. do not contain the passage). Either the text should be altered to *contiguus*, or, more probably, *regio* should be added after *sit*. It is possible, however, that Higden himself may have regarded *Paradisus* as a feminine noun.

assay seie pat Paradys is longe seillynge out of erpe¹ pat men woneþ ynne, and also departed from þe erpe and² hiȝe as þe mone,—hit is not to trowynge;³ for kynde⁴ and resoun bope wipseieþ.⁵ For ȝif Paradys were departed atwynne from þe erpe pat men woneþ ynne, noþer⁶ water noþer⁶ aier myȝte bere suche a burpen. Also þe fuyre⁷ occupieþ al þe myddel space bytwene the aier and þe mone, þan Paradys is nouȝt þare; for þan noþing myȝte lyue perynne. Also ȝif Paradys were so hiȝe, somtyme it schulde byneme⁸ þe liȝt, and make þe clips⁹ of þe mone; but of suche¹⁰ eclipse herde we neuere. Also ȝif Paradys were so hiȝe, and departed in sonder¹¹ from euery oper¹² lond and erpe, how schulde þe foure ryueres pat springeþ out of Paradys passe by þe aier and þe wide see and come in to londes pat men woneþ ynne? And ȝif me seith pat Paradys is so hiȝe and in oon¹³ place contynued¹⁴ to þe erpe pat men woneþ ynne, þan þe erpe is cuen longe¹⁵ and nouȝt rounde al aboute, as wise men descryueþ hit; bot pat may not stonde: for it is i-knowe by experience

TREVISA.

region in grete distaunce from this worlde habitable, cleuate vn to the cercle of the moone. For nature wylle not suffre that, neither reason. For if hit were separate in that maner from this worlde habitable, neither the aier, neither the water, myȝhte susteyne suche a burdon and hevynesse. Also sythe the elemente of fyre occupyethe alle the mydelle place betwene the cercle of the aier and of the moone, wherefore hit may be concludede Paradise not to be there, sythe noo thyng vegetable may haue lyfe per. That grauntede, that place scholde induce otherwhile the eclipse of the moone, and specially in the este partes of the erthe; but we haue not herde of such eclipse vn to this presente tyme. Also if Paradise were separable from oure places habitable, how scholde the iiij. flowedes aforeseyde atteyne to oure habitacles by so grete a see other by the aier intermediate? If hit be seyde that hit is in a maner contiguous to oure place habitable, then hit scholde appere that the erthe were not rownde, as hit is describete of discrete men, but longe, and by consequent hit scholde yelde a schado inegalle in

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *þe erpe*, a., Cx.² Cx. adds *is*.³ *to be bilued*, Cx.⁴ *nature*, Cx.⁵ Cx. adds *it*.⁶ *ne*, Cx., twice.⁷ So a. and Cx.; *ferpe*, MS. (clerical error.)⁸ *lynyme*, a.; *take away*, Cx.⁹ *make eclips*, a., Cx.¹⁰ Cx. adds *an*.¹¹ *asonder*, a., Cx.¹² Om. Cx.¹³ *oo* and *one*, Cx.¹⁴ *it contynueth*, Cx.¹⁵ *is enlong*, Cx. (typogr. error?).

Paradisus
in extremis
finibus
orientis
situatur.

non potest, cum constet per juge experimentum, quod umbra terræ in omni eclipsi lunari faciat pyramidem rotundam; quare liquet quod terra cum suis partibus sit rotunda. Unde concludunt docti quod Paradisus terrestris sit in extremis finibus orientis, et quod sit magna portio corporis terræ, non minor quam India¹ aut Ægyptus, utpote locus toti² generi humano, si non peccasset, deputandus. ³ De tertio, quod est ejus descriptio, qualis sit,⁴ sciendum est⁵ secundum Isidorum, libro xiv°. capitulo tertio, quod Paradisi vocabulum de Græco in Latinum versum dicitur *hortus*, Hebraice vero *Eden*, quod sonat *deliciæ*, quod utrumque junctum facit *hortum deliciarum*. *Ranulphus*. Nec mirum; habet enim locus ille quicquid vitæ congruit. *Isidorus*, librō quarto decimo. Habet⁶ enim salubritatem; quia temperie gaudens nec frigus sentit nec æstum, in tantum quod quicquid⁷ ibi vivit, mori non potest. Cui⁸ attestatur quod Enoch et Helias adhuc vivunt ibidem incorrupti. *Johannes Damascenus*.⁹ Habet etiam¹⁰ locus ille

¹ *Iudea*, A.

² *toti*] om. B.

³ C. and D. begin the chapter thus:—*Isid.* li. 4 (sic), cap. 3. Paradisus locus est in oriente longo maris tractu à nostro habitabili segregatus; ejus vocabulum à Græco in Latinum versum dicitur hortus, etc.

⁴ *sit*] est, B.

⁵ *est*] om. A.; added from E.

⁶ This citation from *Isidore* occurs near the beginning in C. and D.

⁷ *æstum*; et quicquid, C.

⁸ *Cui*] quod, B.; *cui rei*, C.

⁹ This extract from *John Damascene* is contained in C. almost verbatim. B. omits the title of the extract.

¹⁰ *etiam*] So B.C.D.; et, A.E.

and assay, pat in euery eclips of þe mone þe erþe makeþ TREVIS.
 a rounde schilde. Þerfore þe erþe, wip alle his parties,
 mote¹ nedes be rounde. And so wise men concludeþ pat
 Paradys is in þe vttermest ende² of þe est, and pat it
 is a grete contray³ of þe erþe no lasse þan Ynde oper⁴
 Egipte;⁵ a place large and couenable for al mankynde to
 wone ynne, ȝif mankynde had nouȝt i-synned. Of þe
 priddyde pat axep of Paradys, What manere place⁶ it schulde
 be, Isid[ore] seip, libro quarto decimo, capitulo tertio, pat
 þis name *Paradys* i-turned out of Grew in to Latyn is to
 menyng⁷ *an orcheȝerde*. But Paradys in Hebrewe⁸ is
 i-cleped *Eden*, pat is to menyng⁹ *likyng*; þe whiche
 twayne i-putte¹⁰ to gidres makeþ *an orcheȝerde of likyng*.
 R. No wonder, for in pat place is al þyng pat accordeþ
 to lyf. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo*. Þere is helpe, for
 þe aier is in tempre¹¹ noþer to hote noþer¹² to colde, so pat
 no þyng pat leueþ may deie þerynne: pat witnesip Ennok
 and Ely, pat ȝit beep þere on lyue.¹³ *Iohannes Damascenus*.

euery eclipse; but that may not stonde, sythe hit is provede MS. HARL.
 by experience that the schado of the erthe in euery eclipse 2261.
 of the moone makethe a rownde schado. Wherefore hit is
 schewede that the erthe with his partes is rownde. Where-
 fore prudent men conclude that Paradise terrestrialle is in
 the extreme partes of the este, and that a grete porcion of
 the erthe is þer, not lesse then Ynde or Egipte, as a place
 deputate to alle mankynde if Adam hade not synnede. Of
 the thrydde, that is the discripsion of hit, what maner a
 place hit is, hit is to be attended that after Isidor, libro
 14^o, capitulo iij^o, that this worde *Paradisus* turnede from
 Grewe in to Latyn, is callede a *yorde* or a *gardyn*. In
 Ebrewe hit is callede *Eden*, that sowndethe *delites*,¹⁴ whiche
 coniuncte makethe a *gardyne off delites*.¹⁴ R. And noo
 meruayle, for that place hathe euery thyng that is con-
 gruente to lyfe. *Isidorus, libro 14^o*. Hyt hath salubrite
 and wholsomnesse, for hit iogethe in temperaunce, felenge
 neither coldenesse ne heete, in so moche that a thyng
 lyffenge there may not dye. A testimony perof Enoc and
 Helias lyve ȝitte there incorrupte. *Magister Iohannes Da-*
mascenus, libro quarto decimo. That place hathe also

¹ muste, Cx.² endes, Cx.³ contrey, Cx.; contrary, MS.⁴ or, Cx.⁵ Cx. adds and.⁶ place] Added from a. and Cx.⁷ is as moch to say as, Cx.⁸ Hebrewe] Added from a. and Cx.⁹ to say, Cx. (and so generally).¹⁰ Cx. here, contrary to his cus-
tom, retains y put.¹¹ is attemperat, Cx.¹² ne, Cx. (and so often).¹³ a lyue, Cx.¹⁴ The reading of Harl. MS. may
be *delices*.

amoenitatem, nam universæ pulcritudinis erat promptuarium, ubi cuncti generis arbores comam non perdunt, flores non marcescunt. Habet et jocunditatem, cui¹ attestatur fructuum dulcedo, sicut in Genes. secundo dicitur:² Omne lignum pulchrum visu³ et ad vescendum suave. Habet et⁴ securitatem cui attestatur loci altitudo.⁵ *Ranulphus.* ⁶ Ubi secundum Petrum, capitulo xiiij^o, aquæ diluvii non pervenerunt; quod autem aliqui dicunt Paradisum attingere lunarem circulum, hoc dicit Alexander, non esse secundum rei veritatem, sed secundum hyperbolicam locutionem, ut sic ejus incomparabilis altitudo et eminentia respectu nostri habitabilis excellens ostenderetur. Sed⁷ heu quia, sicut dicit Isidorus, libro xiv.⁸ capitulo tertio, loci illius aditus per peccatum primi hominis interclusus est. Septus est enim⁹ undique rumphea flammea, id est,¹⁰ niuro igneo; ita ut ejus cum cœlo pene jungatur incendium ad

¹ cui] rei, add. C.D., and so below.

² In A., *dicitur* follows *pulchrum*, which gives a different construction. The versions agree with the text as printed.

³ visu] om. B.

⁴ et] om. A.

⁵ C. and D. add here, *Beda*. Nam pertingit aerem quietum usque ad lunarem circulum.

⁶ The following sentence is much

altered in C. and D. B. omits the title *Ranulphus*.

⁷ This and the following sentence are placed almost at the head of the chapter in C. and D., and very much altered.

⁸ So B.E. This is the true reference. See lib. xiv. c. 3. A. and the versions give *ix*.

⁹ enim] om. A.

¹⁰ id est] So E. (and also C.); et, A.

Pat place hap faire weder and merpe, for it was pe celer and place of all fairenesse: no manere of¹ tree leseþ pere his leues; no floures pere welkeþ;² pere is merpe and swetnesse; of fruyt and trees pat groweþ pere, Genesis, secundo capitulo, it is i-write: Euerich tree perynne is swete to ete and faire to siȝt. Perynne is sikernesne and suerte, for pe place is hiȝe. R. Petrus, capitulo tertio decimo, seiþ pat pe water of pe greet flood com³ nouȝt in Paradys. Þei som men seiþ pat Paradys is hiȝe as pe mone, pat is not soop in wordes and in dede; but pat speche is i-saued by an excusacioun of spekyng, pat is i-cleped yperbolica: so pat þei pat so spekeþ wolde mene, pat Paradys in heyȝt passeþ all oþer londes. *Trevisa.* So we preiseþ a worldely⁴ man Iordan or Iohan, and seiþ pat he was pe beste man pat euere was; and ȝit he was neuere so good as Crist. So in wordes pat sotil men wole⁵ deuyne, his menyng⁶ trewe and good. But allas, as Isidre⁷ seiþ, libro nono, capitulo primo: Oure wey to Paradys is faste i-stopped by cause of pe synne of oure forme⁸ fader; it⁹ is i-closed al aboute wip a firen¹⁰ wal, so pat pe brennyng perof arecheþ to heuene, as som men

TREVISA.

amenite. For hit is the pantre or place of alle pulcritude, *MS. HARL.* where the trees of euery kynde loose not their beaute, 2261. floures fade not, hauenge in hit pleasaunte frute. As hit is schewede in the secunde chapitre of Genesis, where hit is seide, Paradise hathe in hit every tre feyre to siȝhte and swete to eyte. Also hit hathe securite, to the whiche seynge the altitude of the place berrethe testimonye. R. Where, after Petrus, capitulo xiiij^o, the waters of Noe floode f. 25 a. atteynede not to hyt. That somme men seyde Paradise to atteyn to the cercle of the moone, Alexander seythe that not to be trawthe, but after a looucion iperbolicalle, that the altitude and eminence scholde be schewede excellent, and incomparable in the respecte of oure places habitable. But allas, for as Isidorus seythe, lib. ix^o, cap. iij^o, the entre in to that place was schut by the synne of Adam, whiche is compassede abowte with a walle off fyre; in so moche that the heete of hit is ioynede allemoste with heuyn, to remove

¹ a. and Cx. omit of.² welwob, a.; fade, Cx., who has ne for no.³ cometh, Cx.⁴ erbe, MS.; erthly, Cx.⁵ wel, Cx.⁶ the menyng is, Cx.⁷ Ysidorus, Cx.⁸ forn, Cx.⁹ a. omits it.¹⁰ brennyng, Cx.

arcendum homines; supra vero rumpheam illam positi sunt cherubin, id est, angeli boni, ad arcendum angelos malos.¹

CAP. XI.

De Asia et ejus provinciis.

Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. REFERT² Isidorus quod Asia ex nomine cujusdam mulieris Asiæ³ illam quondam inhabitantis denominata sit. Continet⁴ plures
De India. provincias de quibus hic per ordinem. India ab oriente ortu solis, ab austro oceano, ab occidente Indo flumine, a septentrione Monte Caucaso terminatur. In anno bis habet fruges, gignit homines tincti coloris, avem habet⁵ psittacum, et elephantes,⁶ piper, ebum, ebur;⁷ et lapides pretiosos, beryllos, chrysoprasos, carbunculos, adamantes,⁸ et montes aureos,⁹ quos tamen adire propter dracones et griphones et immensorum hominum monstra quasi impossibile est. Est autem India inter omnes

¹ C. and D. add, *rumphea autem arcet homines.*

² C. and D. begin thus :—Asia . . . denominata plures continet, etc.

³ *Asiæ*] om. B.

⁴ *Continet*] quæ continet, B.

⁵ *habet*] om. C. D.

⁶ Elephantes, gestantes ebur et lapides, etc., C.; elephantes, piper et calamum aromaticum, ebur, D.; elephantos, E.

⁷ *ebur*] om. B.

⁸ *adamantos*, A.

⁹ C. and D. stop here till the extract from *Pliny* begins.

wolde wene. Paradys is i-closed wip pat wal to holde out TREVISIA.
 mankynde; aungelles stondeþ on pat wal to kepe wel —
 Paradys, pat none euel goostes mowe come perynne.

*De Asia et ejus provinciis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.
 Capitulum undecimum.*

ISIDORUS seip pat Asia hap þe name, and is i-cleped after a womman pat woned perynne, pat was i-cleped Asia. In Asia beep many prouinces and londes, þe whiche I schal descriue and rekene al arewe,¹ and bygynne wip Ynde. Inde hap in þe est side þe sonne risynge, in þe south þe see occean, in þe west þe ryuer of Inde, in þe north þe hulle pat is i-cleped Caucasus; and so Ynde is i-ended. In Ynde beep men of colour and hewe i-died. In Ynde is a brede pat is i-cleped phitacus, elephantis, peper, and a tree pat is i-cleped hebanus, euery, and precious stones,² beriles, crisoprassus, charbunculus,³ adamantis, and goldene hulles, to þe whiche it is ful harde for to come for dragouns and grypes, and for dyuers manere of⁴ men grisliche and wonderliche i-schape. Among alle þe londes of þis worlde Ynde is þe⁵

men, that thei comme not to hit, where cherubyn and other MS. HARL.
 goode angelles be putte to remove ylle angelles from thens. 2261.

Of Asia, and of the Prouinces of hit. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum undecimum.

ISIDORUS rehersethe that Asia toke that name of the name of a woman, somme tyme inhabitenge in hit, whiche conteynethe mony prouinces, of whom hit schalle be expressede by ordre. Inde is terminate from the este with the rysenge of the sonne, of the sowthe with the occean, of the parte weste with the floode of Ynde, and of the northe with the hille callede Caucasus. That lond berrethe twyes corne in oon yere, bryngenge furthe men of a spottede colour, hauenge in hit nyzhtengales, elephautes, pepir, precious stones, berilles, crisoprassus, carbuncles, adamantes, and hilles of golde. Neuerthelesse hyt is as impossible to go to theyme for dragones and grifynnes and other diuerse wonders of men. Ynde is moste amonge alle oþer regiones

Of Ynde
 and of [the]
 mervayles
 of h[it].

¹ *al along*, Cx.

² *stones*] Added from *a.* and Cx.

³ *charbonicles, a.; carbunculis, Cx.,*
 who has *crisopassus* (sic) just before.

⁴ *a.* and Cx. om. of.

⁵ *a.* and Cx. om. þe.

regiones orbis major, opulentior, potentior, populosior, et in stupendis mirabilior. Ibi enim ficus est tam expansa, ut sub unius fici latitudine multæ hominum turmæ possint¹ discumbere.² Hoc autem facit ubertas soli, temperies cœli, et abundantia aquæ. *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo nono decimo.*³ India multos habet reges et populos, quorum alii terram excolunt, alii merces evehunt, alii militiam⁴ componunt. Alii sapientiæ et disciplinæ intendunt. Ibi sunt⁵ arbores tam proceræ, ut cacumen⁶ earum a jactu sagittæ vix pertingatur; internodium quoque arundinis in alveo navigabili ternos fert homines. Sunt et ibi homines quinque cubitorum, qui nec expirant⁷ nec languescunt. Sunt⁸ ibi satyri et homines monstrosi; sunt ibi et⁹ homines cubitalis mensuræ,¹⁰ pigmæi nuncupati, qui in quarto anno ætatis generant et in quinto¹¹ canescunt. Hi collecto agmine sedentes super arietes pugnant contra grues, quorum¹² nidos et ova confringunt, ne hostes contra se nimis

De mon-
struosis
hominibus
et pigmæia.

¹ So E.; *possunt*, A.

² *Ibi . . . discumbere*] placed in C. and D., with alterations, in the latter part of the extract from *Pliny*, ending thus: ut turmas hominum sub se recipiat.

³ C. and D. contain first the extract from *Pliny*, as far as *intendunt*; then the extract from *Cicero*, then the remainder of the *Pliny* here given, a little altered and abbreviated. The authors of the extracts are not properly distinguished.

⁴ *militiam*] A. adds *earum*.

⁵ *sunt*] om. B.

⁶ *cacumen*] acumen, C.D.

⁷ *expirant*] aspirant, B.

⁸ *sunt*] sunt et, B.; sed ibi, D.

⁹ *sunt ibi et*] So C. and D. (the latter omitting *ibi*); *quia sunt ibi*, A.B.E.

¹⁰ *mensuræ*] *staturæ*, C. D., which have also other small variations.

¹¹ *quorum*] om. C.D.

¹² *quinto*] *sexto*, D.

grettest and most richest,¹ strengest and most ful of peple, yn wonder and meruayles most wonderful. In Inde a crop of a figge tree is so huge² and so wide i-sprad, þat meny compaynes of men may sitte at þe³ mete wel i-now pere vnder. Þat makeþ⁴ goodnes of þe lond, temprure⁵ of wedir and plente of watir. *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo decimo nono.* In Ynde beep many kynges and peples; som of hem tilieþ⁶ londe, som vseþ chaffare and marchaundise, som knyȝthode and chyualrie, and som beep grete clerkes. In Ynde beep trees, þat haueþ coppis⁷ as hiȝe as me schal schete wiþ an arwe. Also of a gobet bytwene tweie knottes of a rede in Ynde me makeþ a boot, þat ouer depe watres⁸ bereþ pro men at ones. In Ynde beep men of fyue cubites⁹ long, þat cueleþ nouȝt,¹⁰ noþer¹¹ ȝildeþ vp þe breeþ. Also pere beep Satyri and oþer dyuers men grisliche and wonderliche i-schape. Þerynne beþ men of a cubite longe, and beep i-cleped Pigmei; þese Pigmei geten children and gendrep¹² in þe fourþe ȝere, and horeþ¹³ in þe fiftē ȝere; ¹⁴ þei gadereþ a greet hoost and rideþ vppon wetheres and rammes to fiȝte wiþ cranes, and destroyeþ her nestes and her eyren; ¹⁵ for þe cranes þat beep hir enemyes schulde not encrese and wexe to many. Pere beep

TREVISA.

moste plentuous, moste in peple, hauenge in hit moste meruayles and wondres. There is a figge tre soe expande, that mony multitudes of peple may sytte vnder the latitude of oon figge tre. The plente of the sonne, the temperaunce of heuyn, and habundaunce of water do cause that. *Tullius de Tusculanis questionibus.* Ynde hathe mony kynges and peple. Somme peple tulle the erthe, somme vse marchandise, somme cheuallery, somme intende to sapience and discipline. There be trees of so semely stature that vnnethe the altitude of theym may be atteynede by the schote of an arowe, the space betwene ij. knottes of a reede makethe a boote for iij. men. There be men also of v. cubites, whiche dye not, neither waile. Also there be men of the measure of a cubite callete pigmeis, whiche gendre in the iiij^{the} yere of their age, and wexe hoore in the v^{the}: these men gedrede in a multitude, syttenge on wedres, fiȝhte ageyne cranes, whose nestes and egges thei breke leste their enemyes be multipliede ouer hugely

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ ryche, Cx.² grete, Cx.³ Cx. omits þe.⁴ causeth the, Cx.⁵ So also a.; temperure, Cx.⁶ tylleth the, Cx.⁷ toppis, Cx., which may be right.⁸ a depe water, Cx. (after at ones).⁹ cubyte, Cx.¹⁰ were not seke, Cx.¹¹ ner, Cx.¹² engenderen, Cx.¹³ were hore, Cx.¹⁴ a. and Cx. om. ȝere.¹⁵ egges, Cx.

multiplicentur. Sunt¹ ibi gymnosophistæ philosophi, qui per diem² quasi immobiles irreverberatis oculis solem contemplantur. Alii quoque capita canina habentes dicti Cynocephali;³ latratus edunt potius quam voces; ferarum pellibus vestiti, dentibus et unguibus armati venatu et aucupio vivunt. Alii sine ore frondium lanugine tecti solo odore narium vivunt.⁴ Alii in juventute canescunt et in senectute nigrescunt. In quibusdam⁵ Indiæ montibus sunt homines adversas plantas habentes et digitos octonos in manibus.⁶

Uxor sepe-
lietur cum
marito.

Tullius, de Tusculanis quæstionibus. Est quædam gens in India, ubi cuilibet viro licitum est plures habere uxores; sed mortuo marito conveniunt⁷ omnes conjuges, et quæ ex illis comperta⁸ est a vivente marito plus dilecta fuisse⁹ illa cum marito mortuo sepeliatur viva,¹⁰ et hoc habet¹¹ pro solatio et præconio. *Petrus, capitulo cxcvj^{to}.*¹² Arbores solis et lunæ sunt in India, de quarum pomis vescentes sacerdotes per quingentos annos vivebant. Dicebantur autem arbores solis, quia quamcito radius solaris sum-

De arbo-
ribus Solis
et Lunæ.

¹ *Sunt*] sunt et, B.

² *diem*] totum diem, C.D., which add et after *immobiles*.

³ *Et alii cum caninis capitibus dicti Cynocephali*, C.D.

⁴ *Alii sine ore . . . vivunt*] Wholly omitted in C.; D. only omits *narium*.

⁵ *quibusdam*] B. adds *vero*.

⁶ *In quibusdam . . . manibus*] Wholly omitted in C.D.

⁷ So A.B. (but the latter omitting *conjuges*), and D. (but omitting *omnes*); convenient, E.C.

⁸ *comparata*, A.; *probata*, C.D.

⁹ *a vivente plus dilecta extitisse*, C.D.

¹⁰ *cum marito viva sepeliatur*, B.

¹¹ *habet*] om. A.

¹² The extract from *Petrus* is omitted in C.D.

besy filosofres pat byholdep on pe sonne al pe day long. TREVISA.
 Also somme hap hedes as it were houndes, and pe voys pat
 pey makep is liker to an¹ houndes berkynge pan to a¹ manis
 voys; pey beep i-cloped in wylde bestes skynnes and
 i-armed wip hir owne teep and nayles, and lyuep by huntynge
 and haukyng. Opere pere beep pat hauep no mouth, and
 lyuep by odour and smelles, and bep i-cloped in mosse
 and hery tuftes pat growep out of treen.² Oper horeth in
 zonpe, oper³ wexep blak in elde. In som hulles of Ynde
 beep men pat hauep⁴ soles of hir feet ouertorned and eyzte
 fyngres in oon honde. *Tull. de Tusc.* 90.⁵ In oo con-
 tray of Ynde euerich man hap many wyfes; but whan
 pe housbond is deed, pe wyfes schulle goo to gidres, and
 loke whiche of hem was best i-loued of pe housbonde; and
 sche schal be beried wip hym and putte⁶ on erpe⁷ quyke⁸
 alyue; and in pat contray pat is acounted pe fairest hap
 and [fortune, and also]⁹ worschippe pat eny wyf myzte haue.
Petrus, 196.¹⁰ In Ynde beep trees pat beep i-cleped pe
 trees of pe sonne and of pe moone; preostes pat ete of pe
 apples of pilke trees lyued¹¹ fyue hondred zere. Pey were
 i-cleped pe trees of pe sonne, for euerich of hem quaked

on theyme. Also there be men hauenge hedes lyke dogges, MS. HARL.
 whiche be callete Cynoccephali,¹² berkenge more like to dogges 2261.
 then to the voices of men, clothede with skynnes of wylde f. 25 b.
 bestes y-armed with teithe and talaundes, lyffenge by haw-
 kenge and huntenge. Also somme men lyve there only
 by odour. Also somme of that cuntre wexe hoore in yowthe
 and blakke in their age. Also in somme partes of Ynde
 be men hauenge holowe fyngers in their hondes. *Petrus*,
capitulo 196.⁵ There is a peple in Ynde to whom hit is
 lawefulle to haue mony wyfes; but, the man dedde, alle his
 wifes comme to gedre, that wife that was luffedde beste
 of hym schalle be buryede with hym, hauenge that for a
 grete solace. *Petrus*, 196. The trees of the sonne and of
 the moone be in Ynde, by the apples of whom prestes
 lyffede by vc. yeres. Thei were namede the trees of the
 sonne and of the moone, for as soone as the sonne sende

¹ a. om. an and a; Cx. has to
 berkynge of houndes.

² trees, Cx., and so elsewhere.

³ and, Cx.

⁴ Cx. adds the.

⁵ The reference should be to Cic.
Tusc. Quæst. lib. v. c. 27.

⁶ i-put, a.

⁷ in the erthe, Cx.

⁸ Cx. adds and.

⁹ Added from Cx., who places
 acounted after fortune.

¹⁰ 19°, 6, MS. and Cx.

¹¹ lyuen, Cx.

¹² Cenophali, Harl. MS.

mitatem alicujus earum tangebatur, statim tota tremebat et responsa dabatur circumstantibus. Similiter et de arboribus lunæ fiebat. Per has arbores interdictum fuit Alexandro Magno, ne aliquando intraret Babylonem. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Ophir¹ est insula Indiæ, ubi est auri copia, ad quam de mari Magno² transitur per mare Rubrum.³

CAP. XII.

*Isidorus libro quartodecimo, capitulo octavo.*⁴

OSTENDIT Isidorus quod⁵ Parthia regio propter invictam Parthorum virtutem, qui nomen suum Assyriis et Medis diffuderunt, solebat continere totam terram Assyriæ, Mediæ, Persidis,⁶ Carmaniæ; quæ extenditur in longitudine a mari Caspio usque ad mare Rubrum, et in latitudine ab Indo flumine usque ad flumen⁷ Tigris, quod est principium Mesopotamiæ. *Trogus,*

¹ *Ophir*] *Offir*, A.B.D.; *Offyr*, E.; *Ofir*, C.—C. and D. omit the *est* following.

² *Mediterraneo*, C.D.

³ *navigio*, add. C.D.

⁴ The text and versions are both erroneous. The true reference is to *Isid. lib. xiv. c. 3. § 8.* (Op. vol. iv. p. 145. Ed. Arev.)

⁵ The first three words omitted in B.C.D.

⁶ *Persidis*] *Persidæ*, A.C.E. This barbarous form occurs elsewhere in the MSS. of the text and versions, but is corrected in the text.

⁷ So B.C.D.E.; *fluvium*, A.

and schoke as sone as þe sonne beem touched his cop,¹ and answered men þat stood aboute. Þe same doyngc was of þe trees of [þe]² mone. By þese trees þe grete kyng Alexander³ was forbode, þat he schulde neuere come in Babylon. *Isidorus libro quinto decimo.* Offir is an ylond of Ynde; þerynne is greet plente of golde, and þe passage þerto out of þe grete see⁴ is by þe Rede see.

De Parthia. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum duodecesimum.

ISIDORUS schewep þat Parthia⁵ þat kyngdom, for myȝt and strengþe of men of þat lond, þat her name spredde into þe londes Assyria⁶ and Media, and⁷ was i-woned⁸ to conteyne al þe lond of foure contrees, of Assyria, of Media, of Persida,⁹ and of Carmania; þe which lond Parthia strecchep in lengþe from þe see þat is i-cleped Caspius anon to þe¹⁰ Rede see; and in brede from the ryuer of Ynde to þe ryuer þat is i-cleped Tigris. Þat is þe bygynnyngc of þe lond þat is i-cleped Mesopotamia. *Trogus, libro decimo, capitulo*

furthe his beames and towchede the altitude of eny of MS. HARL. 2261. theyme, alle the tre movede and ȝafe answeres to men stondenge abowte. Hit was doen in lyke wyse to the trees of the moone. Hit was interdicted by those trees to kyng Alexander, that he scholde not entre in to Babylon. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Offir is an yle off Ynde, where is plente of golde, to whom hit is goen from the grete see by the Redde see.

Of Parthia. Isidorus, libro 14^o. Capitulum duodecesimum.

ISIDORUS schewethe that the region callede Parthia for the vertu invincible of men of that region, whiche diffusede theire name to men of Assyria and of Media, was wonte to conteyne alle the londe of Assyria, of Media, of Persida, and of Carmania, whiche is extendede in longitude from the see Caspius vn to the Redde see, and in latitude from the floode of Inde vn to the floode of Tigris, whiche is the begynnenge of Mesopotamye. *Trogus, libro quinto.* Men of Parthia be

¹ *toppe*, Cx. (and possibly this may be the MS. reading.)

² *þe*] Added from a. and Cx.

³ *Alysaundre*, Cx.

⁴ *þe grete see*] *Grece*, Cx. (confusing *c* and *t*.)

⁵ The MS. looks like *Parchia*, and so Cx. prints it; but *c* and *t*

are identical (or nearly so) in MSS.

⁶ *of Assiria*, Cx.

⁷ *and*] Added from Cx.

⁸ *woonte*, Cx.

⁹ Cx. omits *of* before *Media* and *Persida*.

¹⁰ *Caspius vnto the*, Cx.

Parthi. *libro xlv*.¹ Parthi Scythico ² sermone *exules* dicuntur ; nam in primis Scytharum exules fuerunt, et regno a Medis ad Persas translato quasi praeda victorum extiterunt. Unde et inter orientales populos usque ad Macedonicum regnum obscuri mansere. Deinde triumphato per Macedones oriente Macedonibus servierunt, sed tandem cum Romanis imperium orbis ³ dividerunt. Hi mores Scytharum, de quibus pulsi fuerant, contraxerunt ; unde et illis sunt arma plumea,⁴ ingenia tumida, seditiosa, fraudulenta. Quippe viris violentiam, mulieribus mansuetudinem deputant. Semper aut in domesticos aut in externos motus eorum sunt inquieti. Natura sunt taciti, ad faciendum magis quam ad loquendum prompti. Proinde secunda ⁵ sicut adversa silentio tegunt, principibus metu non pudore parent ; in libidinem projecti varia uxorum libidine delectantur. Singuli plures uxores habent ; nullum ⁶

¹ 44, A. ; 45, D. The versions again differ from these. The text is correct. See Just. xli. 1, *sqq.*

² *Scythico*] Scitice (i.e. Scythicæ, for Scythiæ), A.

³ *orbis imperium*, B.

⁴ *plumea*] plumbata, C.D. (Justin, xli. 2, has *loricæ plumatæ sunt.*)

⁵ *secunda*] prospera, C.D.

⁶ C. and D. insert before this word, *Girald.*, d. 17.

*quingagesimo primo.*¹ Parthi,² þe men of Parthia, in þe langage of þe contrey Scythia, beþ i-cleped outlawes;³ for in the bygynnyng of men of Scythia Parthi, þat beþ men of Parthia, were outlawes; and whan þe kyngdom was i-take from þe men of Media to þe men of Persida, þan were þe Parthi as it were pray to þe victores, and were as it were vnknewe amonge men of the est londes, and anon⁴ vnto þat⁵ tyme þat men of Macedonia bycom⁶ kynges and lordes of londes. Þan afterward þey serued þe Macedonyes, when þe Macedonyes were victours in þe est londes. But at þe⁷ laste þey were partyners wip the Romayns, and deled lordschipe wip hem. Þese Parthi vseþ⁸ þe maneres of men of Scythia, þat put⁹ ham ouȝte som tyme; þerfore her armes and wepene beþ verray¹⁰ swellynge wittes, gileful aspies. Men þey accounteþ violent and wommen mylde, and euere þei beþ vnesi to hir [owne]¹¹ neiheboures oþer to¹² strong men. Þey beþ comounliche stille and litel of speche, more redy for to doo þan for to speke. Þerfore þey holdeþ pryue good happes and boonchief, as wel as yuel¹³ happes and meschief. Þey beþ buxom¹⁴ to here lordes for drede and not for schame. Þei beþ al i-cast¹⁵ to lecherie wip hire owne wives; eueriche

TREVIS.

called owtelawe after the speche of men off Scythia. For thei were firste owtelawes in the realme translate from men of Media to men of Pers[i]a, beenge to theyme as a pray of victores. Wherefore thei dwellede obscurely amonge men of the este vn to the realme of Macedony inhabitate. After that, the victory hade by Macedones, thei did seruyce to theyme; but at the laste they diuidede the empire of the worlde wip the Romanes. Thei exercisede the maneres and consuetudes of men of Scythia, from whom they were expelled, the wittes of whom be timorous, fulle of fraude, deputenge violence to men and mansuetude to women, whiche be other in malice amonge theyme selfe, other with oþer men. Styll in nature, moore prompte to do ylle than to speke, couerenge thynges aduersaunte with silence, proiecte in the lustes of lechery, [þei] haue grete delectacion in women. Euery man hathe

MS. HARL.
2261.

f. 26 a.

¹ *quinto*, Cx.² *Perchii*, Cx.³ *of Scicia*, Cx., who omits all following till *were outlawes* (by clerical or typogr. error). The MSS. of both versions usually write *Scicia*.⁴ *and anon*] om. Cx.⁵ *þat*] the, Cx.⁶ *bycam*, Cx.⁷ Cx. omits *þe*.⁸ *vseden*, Cx.⁹ *put*] Added from *a.* and Cx.¹⁰ *fethery*, Cx., probably rightly; the text, with which *a.* agrees, is corrupt; perhaps *þei ben* has been omitted.¹¹ *owne*] Added from *a.* and Cx.¹² So *a.*; *þe*, MS.; *to straunge*, Cx.¹³ So *a.* and Cx.; *of yuel*, MS.¹⁴ *buxom*] obedient, Cx.¹⁵ *disposed*, Cx.

delictum adulterio gravius puniunt. Quamobrem fæminis suis consortia, aspectus, et convivia virorum¹ interdiciunt. In cibis² sunt parci, nulla carne nisi venatica vescuntur. *Giraldus distinctio xviij.* Gens illa postquam a Seleuco Rege defecit sub Arsace mansit, a quo et Arsacidæ dicti sunt, qui illos primum legibus informavit,³ milites⁴ legit, castra munivit, urbes firmavit. Tandem Arsaces præfatus regnum Hyrcanorum suo adjecit imperio. Inter quos, succedentibus aliquot post hoc⁵ regibus, Mithridates filius Mithridatis post interfectionem Crassi Romani consulis regnum per quadraginta tres⁶ annos tenuit; in quibus multas claras victorias habuit,⁷ sicut infra suo loco dicetur. *Trogus, libro xlvj.*⁸ Parthorum gens inter Scythas et Medos media est; inter quos servi plurimum⁹ abundant, quia nunquam manumittuntur; liberi eorum omni tempore

¹ *virorum*, om. B. ; *consortia virorum, convivia et aspectus*, C.D.

² *cibo*, C.D.

³ *instruxit*, B.

⁴ *milites*] *militem*, C.E.

⁵ *hæc*, D.

⁶ So A. (and the versions); lxiiij., B. ; xlvj., C.D.E.

⁷ *habuit*] After this word E. adds *Ranulphus*.

⁸ 14, C.D., wrongly. See Just. xli. 2.

⁹ *plurimum*] om. C.

of hem hap many wifes; no trespas among hem is i-pun[i]sched so grevousliche as spouse breche¹ by here lawe. [Perfore]² pey forbedep hire wifes³ siȝt festes and companye of oper men; þei leueþ scarsliche and by litel mete, and etep no flesche but venysoun. *Giraldus, dist. 17.* Pilke men, after pey lefte þe kyng Seleucus,⁴ woned vnder þe kyng Arsaces; and perfore pey were i-cleped Arsacide. Þat kyng Arsaces tauȝt hem first lawes; he gadered knyȝtes and buldo castelles, citees, and strong walled townes; and at þe⁵ laste Arsaces þe kyng ioyned þe kyngdom of Hyrcania to his emperie, and so men of Hyrcania longed to his empere. Among þe whiche aftirward among oper kynges come Mithridates. Mithridates⁶ sone after þe slauȝter of Crassus, consul of Rome,⁷ regned and helde þe kyngdom pre and fourty ȝere, in þe whiche tyme he dede many viage, and⁸ many faire victories hadde, as hit is declared ynnere yn þis place.⁹ *Trogus, libro quadragesimo primo.*¹⁰ Parthi, þe men of Parthia, beep in þe myddel bytwene þe Scitis,¹¹ men of Scythia, and Medes, men of Media. That londe of Parthi hap¹² many bonde men amonge hem, for pey beep neuere i-made fre; here fre men alwey rideþ on hors,¹³ and hir

TREVISA.

mony wifes. They punnysche noo synne more than advoutery, therefore thei enterdite to theire wifes felawship and festes of men. Whiche be of litelle meyte, eitenge noo flesche but that is geten with huntenge. *Giraldus, d. 17.* After that peple failede vnder kyng Seleucus thai dwellede vnder kyng Arsace, of whom thei be callede Arsacides; informenge theyni firste with lawes he gedredde a companyee of knyȝtes, makenge castelles and citees. At the laste the foresaide Arsaces adiecte to his empyre the realme of Hircanes. Amonge whom, somme kynges succedenge after that, Mithridates the sonne of Mithridatis holdede that realme by xliij. yere after the dethe of Crassus, consul of Rome; in whom he hade mony clere victories, as hit schalle be schewede in his propre place. *Trogus, libro 41.* The peple of Parthia is betwene the men of Scythia and Medes, amonge whom seruauntes be habundante, for thei haue not their manumission; the fre men of theym

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *aduoultrye, Cx.*² Added from *a.* and *Cx.*³ *open, add. Cx.*⁴ *Soleucus, MS.*⁵ *þe] om. Cx.*⁶ *Mithridates]* Added from *a.* and *Cx.* The MSS. of both versions write *Metridates* or *Mitridates*.⁷ MS. adds *he*. The scribe has misunderstood the sense.⁸ *viages and had, Cx.*⁹ *within forth in his place, Cx.;* þis (in text) seems a clerical error for *his*.¹⁰ 14, *Cx.* See note on text.¹¹ *bytwene Scitas, Cx.*¹² *that londe. And Purchii haue, Cx.*¹³ *riden alway on horsbak, Cx.*

equis vectantur ; servi pedibus¹ incedunt. Et in equis quidem² bella peragunt ; conviviaque³ publica et⁴ officia privata adeunt. Liberos suos equitare, sagittare⁵ summa cura docent. Ut quisque eorum locuples⁶ est, ita plures in bello equites⁷ regi suo repræsentant. Comminus præliari aut urbes obsidere nesciunt ; pugnant enim⁸ procurentibus equis aut terga dantibus. Sæpe enim in ipso fervore certaminis fugam simulant, et cito post pugnam repetunt, ut incautius insequentes vulnerent. Signum illis in prælium⁹ non tuba sed tympanum.¹⁰ Nec diu pugnare possunt ; intolerabiles quippe forent, si tanta illis esset vis et perseverantia quantus est impetus. Sepultura illis est bestiarum laniatus, et¹¹ ossa sola sepeliunt.

¹ B. omits *pedibus*.

² *quidem*] quidam, B.

³ B. omits *que*.

⁴ *et*] om. E.

⁵ *et sagittare*, B.C.

⁶ *locuples*] *locuplex*, A.C.D.E.

⁷ B. omits *equites*.

⁸ B. omits *enim*.

⁹ *prælium*] So B.C.D.E. ; *prælio*, A.

¹⁰ A.C.D. add *est*.

¹¹ *et*] unde et, E.

bonde men goop on foot.¹ And in bataile pey fízteþ on hors. Pey goop to priue offis and to comyn feestes, but pey techip besiliche here children to ride and to schete,² and euerich of hem by his richesse and power fyndeþ to hir power³ horsmen⁴ in bataile for to fízte. Þei konnep nouzt fízte in no⁵ comyn manere, noþer þei konnep nouzt bysege castelles noþer strong walled townes; pey fízteþ on hors rennyng⁶ in ful cours and turnynge aze, and ofte in hardest and strengest fízþ pey feyneþ for to flee and sodeynliche turneþ and riseþ⁷ azen, þat pey mowe þe slyloker⁸ here enemyes wyne and slee. In bataile þei vseþ taboures and no trompe, and pey mowe not dure⁹ longe for to fízte. No men schulde hem awelde and wipstonde,¹⁰ and¹¹ pey were as stronge and stalworpe to dure, as they beep angry¹² to rese;¹³ hire burienge is wonderful; for bestes [al] to haleþ and tereþ and eteþ þe¹⁴ flesch; and [pey] burieþ onliche þe bones.

TREVISA.

ryde alleweies on horses, the scruauntes goe on foote, vsenge horses in batayles, goenge to commune festes and priuate offices, techenge the childe libérale with grete attendaunce to ryde and to schote, amonge whom euey man schalle presente to the kyng certeyne men of armes in batelles after the extent of his rychesse. Whiche can not fízhte and put seges to cites, for thei fízhte their horses rennyng, other elles fleenge and schewenge their backes, feynenge oftetymes theym to flee, and after that repetenge fízhte, that thei may hurte men folowenge theym indiscretely. A tympan is a melody to theyme in batelles, and not a claryon, whiche may not fízhte longe. For thei scholde be intollerable and invincible, if they myzhte haue the vertu of perseueraunce after their impetuosite. The deuourenge of bestes is a sepulture to theyme, and after that they do take their boones to sepulture or beryenge.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ a foote, Cx.² schote, Cx.³ king, a.; kynde, Cx.⁴ horsmen men, MS., by mere clerical error; (not a. or Cx.)⁵ more, a.; in comyn, Cx.⁶ ernyng, a.⁷ fyght, Cx.⁸ slytyer, Cx., who places their enemyes after slee.⁹ endure, Cx., and so usually.¹⁰ wip stonde (and so frequently), MS.¹¹ yf, Cx.¹² and hasty, added in a. and Cx.¹³ fyghte, Cx.¹⁴ for beestes teren, eten, and al to halen theyr flessch, and they burye only but the bones, Cx., from whom the words in brackets, wanting also in a., are supplied.

CAP. XIII.

De Assyria et ejus provinciis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.

Assyria. NOTANDUM est quod¹ Assyria ab Assur filio Sem dicta est, qui eam post diluvium primum inhabitavit. Hæc ab ortu habet Indiam, ab austro Mediam, ab occidente Tigrim fluvium, a septentrione montem Caucasum ubi sunt portæ Caspiæ. *Trogus, libro xliij*². **Media**³ condita est a Medo filio Ægei, regis Athenarum, qui æmulans virtutes Jasonis vitrici sui Mediam³ urbem in honorem Medæ matris suæ constituit caput regni Medorum. Hæc Media ab aquilone tangit Parthiam, ab ortu Indiam, ab occasu Chaldæam, ab austro Persida.⁴ *Isidorus, libro xliij*⁵. Persis a Perseo nominatur qui⁵ eam conquisivit et nobilem ex ignobili fecit.⁶ Quæ habet ab ortu Indos, ab occasu sinum maris Rubri, ab aquilone Mediam; ab austro Carmaniam tangit. In qua

¹ *Notandum est quod*] om. C.D.; est only omitted in E.

² *Media*] Medea, A.B. In C. and D. the following sentences are compressed as follows: "Media et Persida a regibus Medo et Perseo cognominatæ sunt, qui illas provincias bellando aggressi sunt. E quibus Media ad occasum Parthiam tangit, a septentrione Armeniam, a borea Caspios, a meridie

"Persidam videlicet. Persida autem" (D. omits *autem*) ab ortu tangit "Indos, &c." as in text.

³ *Mediam*] So E.; *Medam*, A. Justin (xlii. 4. Ed. Græv.) has *Medeam*.

⁴ *Persida*] Persidam, MSS., and Persida for Persis below. See note on c. 12.

⁵ *quia*, A.

⁶ *fecit* after *nobilem* in B.

De Assyriis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum *TREVIS.*
tertium decimum.

TAKE hede þat Assyria hap þe name of Asur Sem his sone, for he was þe firste þat woned perynne after Noes flood. Þis londe Assyria hap in þe est side Inde, in þe south Media, in þe west þe ryuer Tigris, and in þe north þe hille þat is i-cleped Caucasus. Þere bep þe zates of Caspy; þere þe hilles beep longe and narwe. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo.* Egeus was kyng of Athenis; Medus was Egeus¹ sone, and folowed þe dedes of Iason þat was his owne stepfader, and belde² þe cheef citee of Media, and cleped þe citee Media also, in worschippe of his moder þat was i-cleped Media. Þat londe Media hap in þe north side Parthia,³ in þe est Inde,⁴ in þe west Caldea, in þe south Persida. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Persida is i-nempned and hap þe name of Perseus þat conquered þat londe, and made it a worpy lond þat was raper⁵ vnworpy. Persida hap in þe est syde⁶ Inde, and⁷ in þe west þe Rede see, in þe norþ Media, and⁸ in þe south Carmania.

Of Assyria, Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum tertium *MS. HARL.*
decimum. *2261.*

HIT is to be aduertisede that Assyria toke his name of Assur the sonne of Sem, whiche inhabite firste hit after Noe floode. Assyria hathe on the este parte of hit Ynde, of the sowthe Assyria. Media, of the weste parte the floode of Tigris, of the northe the grete hille callede Caucasus, where be partes of Caspius hilles. *Trogus, libro 42.* Media was made of Medo son of Media. Egeus kynge of Atheynes, which, folowenge the vertu of Iaso his victrix, made that cite callede Media in to the honor of Medee his moder, whiche cite he made the hede and princi- *f. 26 b.* palle place of that realme. That cuntre of Media towchethe Parthia of the northe parte, and of the este Ynde, of the weste Caldea, and of the sowthe parte Persida. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Persia was namede of a man callede Persius, Persia. that conquerede hit, whiche hathe of the este parte to hit men of Ynde, of the weste side parte of the Redde see, of the northe parte Media, towchenge Carmany of the sowthe parte: in

¹ *his*, add. in *a.* (not *Cx.*)

² *buyt*, *Cx.*

³ *the see*, *Cx.*

⁴ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *ende*, *MS.*

⁵ *rather*] to fore, *Cx.*

⁶ *syde*] om. *Cx.*

⁷ *and*] om. *Cx.*

⁸ *and*] om. *a.*

Perside exorta est primum¹ ars magica sub Nemproth gigante, qui post confusionem linguarum terram illam adiens docuit Persas ignem colere et solem,² qui lingua eorum El dicitur. Hujus³ terræ metropolis aliquando⁴ fuit Elam sic dicta ab Elam filio Sem, quæ postmodum⁵ dicta est Elymais,⁶ et nunc vocatur Persepolis;⁷ de qua fit mentio in libro Machabæorum.⁸ Et ab isto Elam Persæ⁹ vocabantur Elamitæ, sicut patet in Actibus Apostolorum.¹⁰ Mesopotamia jacet inter Tigrim ab ortu et Euphraten ab occasu. Incipit autem a septentrione inter Montem Taurum et Caucasum quam a meridie sequitur Babylonia.¹¹ *Isidorus, libro xv.* Babylonia, quamvis¹² postmodum diceretur pars Chaldææ, primitus tamen tam insignis fuit¹³ ut Chaldæa, Assyria, Mesopotamia, in ejus nomen transirent. Cujus caput fuit urbs Babylon, quam Nemproth gigas fundavit. Sed Semiramis regina¹⁴ eam postmodum¹⁵ ampliavit. *Petrus, c. xxxvij.*¹⁶ Babylon est proprium¹⁷ nomen civitatis; Babylonia est¹⁸ nomen regionis, quamvis¹⁹ unum pro

¹ primo, B.

² qui post . . . dicitur] qui docuit Persas colere ignem et solem, C. and D., which wholly omit from *Hujus . . . Apostolorum*.

³ hujus] So A.B. (and Trevisa); *cujus*, E. (and Harl. version).

⁴ aliquando] quendam, E.

⁵ postea, B., and so below.

⁶ Elymais] Elamaida, A.B.E.

⁷ P. vocatur, A.B., which latter omits in before *libro*.

⁸ A. adds *cap. vij.* See 1 Macc. vi. 1.

⁹ E. adds *quendam* after *Persæ*.

¹⁰ sicut . . . *Apostolorum*] om. A.B.; added from E.

¹¹ Babylonia] A.C.D. add *deinde Chaldea, deinde Arabia*.

¹² quamvis] licet, C.D.

¹³ C.D. add *regio*.

¹⁴ regina] A. and C. add *Assyriorum*.

¹⁵ eam postmodum] om. E.

¹⁶ A. does not notice that a new citation begins. C. has *Petrus, cap. 174*.

¹⁷ So A.; *Babilon proprie*, B.C. D.E. See Harl. version. Both readings are good.

¹⁸ est] om. E.B., which last also omits *nomen*.

¹⁹ quamvis] licet, D.

In þat Persida bygan first wiccheecraft in Nemproot¹ þe TREVISA.
geauntes tyme, þat after þe spredinge of þe tyme² of many
langage³ and tonges went into Persida, and tauȝt men of
þat londe to worschipe þe fire and þe sonne, þat is i-cleped
in her langage El. Þe cheef citee of þat londe was i-cleped
Elam, after Elam Sem his⁴ sone; þat citee was afterwarde
i-cleped Elamaide, and is now i-cleped Persipol.⁵ Of þat
citee spekep Holy Writt in libro Machabæorum, and of þat
citee þey hadde þe name, þat⁶ were sometyne i-cleped
Elamyte in Actibus Apostolorum. Mesopotamia lyth bytwene
Tigris in þe est side and Euphrates in þe west side, and
bygynneþ out of þe north bytwene the tweye hilles Taurus
and Caucasus, and hap Babylon⁷ in þe south side. *Isid.*
libro quinto decimo. Þei Babylonia were afterwarde i-cleped
a parte of Caldea; hit was first so solempne þat it con-
teyned⁸ Assyria, Caldea, and Mesopotamia, þre londes. Þe
cheef citee of Babylonia was Babylon, þe citee þat þe geant
Nemprot⁹ bulde; ¹⁰ and Semiramis þe quene aftirward made
þat citee more. *Petrus, capitulo 37.* Þe citee is i-cleped Baby-
lon, and þe londe Babylonia; þey þat oon be wel ofte i-take for

whiche Persia wycche crafte began firste under Nemproth the MS. HARL.
gigante, whiche goenge to that londe after the confusion of 2261.
tonges tauȝhte men of Persia to worschipe fire and the sonne,
which is callede El in the langage of theyme. The chiefe
place of whom was callede Elam somme tyme, of Elam the
sonne of Sem whiche was callede afterwarde Elamadia, now
callede Persepolis,¹¹ of whom mencion is made in the booke of
Machabees. And of this Elam men of Persia were callede
Elamites, as hit is schewede in the Actes of Apostles.
Mesopotamy lyethe betwene Tigris of the este and Euphrates Mesopota-
mia.
of the weste, begynnenge from the northe betwene the hilles
Taurus and Caucasus, whom Babylon folowethe from the
meridien. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Thauȝhe Babylon
was callede afterwarde a parte of Calde, fyrste hit was so
nowble that Caldea, Assyria, and Mesopotamia wente into the
names of hit, the hede of whom was that cite callede Babylon
whom Nemproth the gigante made, but the qwene Semi-
ramis made hyt more large. *Petrus, capitulo 37.* Babylon
is the propre name of the cite, and Babylonia¹² the name
of the region, thauȝhe the oon be put ofte for that other,

¹ *Nemprot, a.; Nembroth, Cx.*
² *Cx. om. of þe tyme.*
³ So MS. and *a.; langages, Cx.,*
probably rightly.

⁴ *Sem his] Semmes, Cx.*
⁵ *Persipolis, a., Cx.*
⁶ *they, Cx.*

⁷ The MSS. of both versions
usually have *Babilon* and *Babilonia*.
⁸ *conteymeth, Cx.*
⁹ *Nemport, a.; Nemproth, the geant,*
Cx.
¹⁰ *buylded, Cx.*
¹¹ *Persipolis, Harl. MS.*
¹² *Babilonia, Harl. MS.*

altero sæpe ponatur; sed Babel¹ nomen est turris. *Orosius*,² libro ij^o. Babylon more castrorum fuit mæni-
bus paribus per quadrum disposita; quorum latitudo
fuit quinquaginta³ cubitorum, altitudo quater tantum.
Longitudo muri ab angulo ad angulum sexdecim⁴ mil-
liaria tenuit, ambitus murorum quadringentorum octo-
ginta⁵ stadiorum fuit, hoc est sexaginta quatuor mil-
liaria. Materia muri fuit ex cocto latere et bitumine
interstrato,⁶ ita quod neque igne neque aqua dissolvi
posset. Portæ urbis centum, fossa extrinsecus late
patens; fluvius⁷ Euphrates per medium urbis fluxit;⁸
quam tamen cepit et destruxit Cyrus rex Persarum,
sicut infra dicitur.⁹ *Ranulphus*. De hujus¹⁰ urbis
reliquiis, secundum Hieronymum, ædificatæ sunt duæ
urbes in Perside;¹¹ et¹² locus Babylonis nunc desertus
est¹³ et feris plenus.

Chaldæa.

Chaldæa, quasi Cassidæa, a Caseth filio Nachor fratris
Abrahæ sic dicta,¹⁴ regio est magna juxta Euphraten,
in cujus campo Sennar ædificabatur¹⁵ turris Babel.
Josephus, libro primo.¹⁶ Cujus altitudo ducentos sep-

¹ *Babel* autem, C.D.; *Babel* est nomen, B.

² So C.D.E.; *Oracius*, A.; *M. Orosius*, B. This extract is much compressed and in part transposed in C.D. In A. and B. there is some trifling variation and transposition, but little compression.

³ i5, C.D.

⁴ xlij., A.

⁵ B. omits *octoginta*; and (with A.) has *quinquaginta et unius* for *sexaginta quatuor* just afterwards, where C. and D. have 15. The text is right. See *Oros.* lib. ii. c. 6.

⁶ *interstructo*, C.

⁷ *amnis*, B.

⁸ *fossa . . . fluxit*] Omitted in C., which also omits *cepit* et.

⁹ The last part of the sentence stands thus in A. and B.: "Verun-
tamen hanc urbem demum de-
struxit Cyrus rex Persarum."
Similarly C.D., omitting *reruntamen*.

¹⁰ *hujus*] *cujus*, A.B.C.D.

¹¹ The MSS. here have the correct form (not *Persida*).

¹² *et*] ita quod, E.

¹³ So A.C.D.; *est* after *plenus* in B.F.

¹⁴ *sic dicta*] *dicta* est (after *Cassidæa*), E.

¹⁵ *ædificatur*, C.

¹⁶ *secundo*, B.; no number attached in C.D. See *Joseph.* *Ant.* lib. i. c. 4. § 3.

pat oper; bote pe tour is i-cleped and hatte¹ Babel. *Orosius*,² TREVISA.
libro secundo. Babylon was i-buld as a castel, and i-walled wip
 foure walles square al aboutes; ³ eueriche wal was fifty cubites
 in brede, and foure tyme⁴ so moche in heiþe; pe lengþe of
 euery⁵ wal from oon corner to anoper was sixtene myle. Pe
 walles were all aboute foure hondred and foure score forlong,
 þat is foure and fourty⁶ myle. Pe walles were i-made of brend
 tile and of glewe in stede of mortar, so þat [noper]⁷ water
 noper fire myȝte ham to schifte noper to dele.⁸ In pe⁹ citee
 werþ an hondred ȝates and a diche wip oute, þat was fer i-seie;
 pe ryuer Euphrates ran by pe myddel of pe citee þorwoute.
 Neuerþeles Cyrus, kyng of Persida, tooke þat citee aftirward
 and destroyed hit, as it is inner more¹⁰ i-write. Ierom seiþ þat
 of pe releef of þis citee were i-buld two grete citees in Persida,
 and pe place of Babylon is now wilderness and ful of¹¹ wylde
 bestes. Caldea, as Cassidea, hap pe name of Casseth, Nachor
 his sone. Nachor was Abraham his broþer. Caldea is a grete
 kyngdom bysides Euphrates; in Sennaar,¹² a hile¹³ of þat kyng-
 dom, pe toure Babel was i-buld. *Josephus, libro primo*. Þe¹⁴

but Babel is the name of the towre. *Orosius, libro secundo*. MS. HARL.
 Babylon was disposede as with egalle walles after the maner 2261.
 of castelles by a quadrante, the latitude of whom was of
 lⁱ cubites, the altitude in iiij. tymes so moche, the lenghte
 of the walle from cornelle to corner holdede xvj. myles.
 The compasse of the walles was of iiij^c. and lxxxⁱ forlonges,
 whiche dothe make ljiⁱ myles. The mater of whiche walle
 was made of sodde tyle stones mixte with pycche, in so moche
 that thei myȝte not be dissoluede with fire or water. Thro
 the myddes of whiche cite the floode Euphrates did flowe.
 Whom Cyrus kynge of Perse toke and destroyed, as hit
 schalle be expressede in his place. R. Off the levenes of
 whiche cite, after the seyenge of Seynte Ierom, ij. cites were
 made in Persida, so that the place of Babylon is nowe deserte,
 and fulle of wilde bestes. Caldea is seyde as Cassidea, of Caldea.
 Casethe the sonne of Nachor broþer of Abraham, whiche
 is a grete region nye to Euphrates. In the filde of Sennar Turris
 the towre of Babelle was edifiede. *Josephus, libro primo*. f. 27 a.

¹ called and named, Cx.
² Orocius, a.; Oracius, MS. and
 Cx.
³ aboute, Cx.
⁴ tyme] added from Cx.
⁵ So also a.; both forms occur
 in both MSS.
⁶ fifty, a.
⁷ noper, a.; nether, Cx.; om. MS.

⁸ myȝte hem schyfte ne departe,
 Cx.
 this, Cx.
⁹ inner more] afterward, Cx.
¹⁰ ful of] om. a.
¹¹ Semaar, MS., a., and Cx.
¹² So a.; hild, MS., apparently;
 felde, Cx.
¹³ þat, a. and Cx.

septuaginta duo¹ passus tenet, latitudo vero tanta erat ut prope eam aspicientibus longitudo videretur minor. *Ranulphus*. Secundum quosdam hæc turris habuit in altitudine tria milliaria,² sed secundum Ivonem Carnotensem in chronica sua habuit in altitudine quinque milliaria et pene ducentos passus, in latitudine³ quatuor milliaria.⁴

De Arabia. Arabia ad austrum Chaldææ posita, ab ortu habet Persida,⁵ ab occasu sinum maris Rubri. Terra quidem thurifera, myrrham habens, cinnamomum, et avem phœnicem; cujus terræ portio versus Eurum dicitur Saba, quæ⁶ a Saba filio Chus sic⁷ nuncupata est, quam⁸ a tribus lateribus mare Rubrum cingit. *Josephus, libro*
 Mons Sina. *secundo*. In hac Arabia in partibus Madian est Mons Syna, cujus pars est mons Oreb; mons quidem pabulosus⁹ et excelsus, sed propter scopulos præruptos pene inaccessibilis. Illuc primus omnium Moyses greges duxit. Dicitur etiam mons terroris et fœderis; quia populo Israel,¹⁰ circa radices ejus commoranti, Deus in-

¹ So B. (and the versions); 270, A.; duo millia centum lxxij. (so written); E.; 2272 passus continet, C.D.

² milia, A.

³ A. adds vero.

⁴ The whole of the previous sentence is omitted in C.D.

⁵ ad austrum habet Persidem, C.D., omitting the rest of the sentence.

⁶ quia, A.

⁷ sic] om. C.D.

⁸ hanc autem Sabam, C.D.

⁹ babilosus, B.; scopulosus, C.D.

¹⁰ Israel] om. C.D.

toure Babel was i-buld two hondred pre score and twelf paas TREVISIA.
 hiȝe, þe lengþe somdel þe¹ lasse to hem þat byhelde it nyh,
 for þe brede was so moche. R. Som men seiþ þat þis² tour was
 pre myle hiȝe, but Iuo Carnotensis seiþ in his cronicle þat þis
 toure was fyue myle and almost two hundred paas hiȝe and
 foure myle brode. R. Arabia is i-sette by south Caldea, and
 haþ in þe est side Persida, and in þe west side þe Rede see.
 In Arabia is store, mir, and canel; and a brid,³ þat hatte⁴
 fenix. Þe norþ est porcioun of Arabia hatte⁵ Saba, [and
 is i-cleped⁶ Saba]⁷ after Sabacus⁸ his sone. Þis Saba is
 i-clipped⁹ in pre sides wiþ þe Rede see. *Josephus, libro*
*secundo.*¹⁰ In þis Arabia, in þe contray [of]¹¹ Madyan, is
 þe hil¹² Syna. Þe mount of¹³ Oreb is a partie of þe mownte
 of Synay, and is hiȝe, and haþ grete plente of gras and of
 lese; but hit is harde to come perto for hiȝe rokkes and
 skarres. Moyse was þe firste man þat ladde pyder bestes.
 Hit is i-cleped also þe mount of couenaunt and of drede:
 for God all myȝty pere vppon made ponderynge and liȝtynge,
 and ȝaf þe lawe to þe folk of Israel, þat were at þe hulle

The altitude of whom was cclxxij. passes, the latitude of MS. HARL.
2261.
 whom was so huge that hit apperede to men beholdenge
 hit that hit was more brode than longe. R. After somme
 men that towre hade iij. miles in altitude. But after Iuo
 Carnotense, in his cronicle, hit hade v. miles in altitude
 and allemoste ij^c. passes, and iiij. myles in latitude. Araby,
 y-sette at the sowþe parte off Caldea, of the este parte hatte
 Persida, of the weste parte the¹⁴ Redde see. A plentuous
 londe of encense, hauenge myrre, cinamome, and a brydde
 callede fenix. *Josephus, libro secundo.* The mownte of Fenix.
 Synay is in that Arabye in the partes of Madiam, a parte
 of whom is callede Oreb, a plentuous hille and highe, but Syna^{et}
 now hit is allemoste inaccessible for schrubbes and broken
 stones. Moises brouȝhte his schepe to þat place firste
 of men: hit is callede also the mownte of fere and of luffe;
 for oure Lorde apperede to Moyse in hit with thundre and
 liȝttenge, the peple of Israel taryenge at the foote of hit
 where oure Lorde ȝafe lawe. Wherefore men hade not

¹ þe] om. Cx.² the, Cx.³ byrde, Cx., who writes phenyx.⁴ that is called, Cx.⁵ is named, Cx.⁶ called, Cx.⁷ [...] added from a. and Cx.⁸ Saba Chus sone, Cx.⁹ byclipped, Cx.¹⁰ primo, Cx.¹¹ Added from a. and Cx.¹² the mount of, Cx.¹³ of] om. Cx.¹⁴ the] of the, Harl. MS.

tonuit, coruscavit,¹ legem dedit. Unde non nisi mundi et purificati² accedere audebant.

Mons
Libani.

In finibus etiam Arabiæ, versus circium, est mons Libani qui distinguit abinvicem³ Arabiam, Judæam,⁴ Phœnicem;⁵ mons quidem summæ altitudinis, ita ut juges nives ex aliqua sui parte continens⁶ navigantes in mari magno ad varios portus dirigat. Est etiam mons⁷ salubritatis et fecunditatis; nam cypressi, cedri, arbores, et herbæ ibidem crescentes thus et gummi⁸ distillant, redolentiam exhalant, quibus morbidi sanantur, venena⁹ fugantur.

Syria unde
dicitur.

Syria, a quodam Siro inhabitatore nepote Abrahæ sic vocata, jacet inter fluvium¹⁰ Euphraten ab oriente et mare magnum ab occasu; habetque a septentrione Armeniam et Cappadociam, ab austro sinum Arabicum, et continet in se multas provincias, scilicet Commagenam, Palæstinam, Phœnicem,¹¹ Canaan, Idumæam, Judæam.¹² Hujus provinciæ caput quondam fuerat Damascus quam ædificavit Eleazer¹³ servus Abrahæ, cujus

¹ *coruscans*, A.

² *ibidem*, add. C.D.

³ *abinvicem*] om. C.D.

⁴ *Judæam*] om. B.

⁵ *et Phœniciam*, C.D.

⁶ *continens*] in se tenens, C.D.

⁷ C. and D. add *summæ*.

⁸ *gummi*] *gummam*, C. (not D.)

⁹ *venena*] et *venenosa*, C.D.

¹⁰ *flumen*, C.D.

¹¹ *Phœniciam*, C.D.

¹² The chapter in A.C.D. ends here.

¹³ *Eleazer*, B.

foot; so pat no man durste neyhe,¹ but he were purified and i-made all² clene. *Trevisa.* Fenix is a wonder brid, for of³ al pat kynde is but oon alyue. R. In þe contray of Arabia toward Circius is þe hil pat is i-cleped Mons Libani. Pat hille departeþ þre londes atwynne,⁴ Arabia, Jude, and Fenix.⁵ Pat hul is ful hiȝe, so pat snowe⁶ lyeth all wey in som side of pat hille. [And it]⁷ is certeyn merk and token to schipmen pat seileþ in þe grete see and ledeþ hem to dyuers mouþes and hauenes. Hit is an hille of helpe and of⁸ plente; for cipres, cedres treen, and herbes groweþ peron, þat droppeþ gom and smelleþ swetely;⁹ by þe whiche treen, gom, and swetnesse seke men beþ i-heled and venyme destroyed. Syria hap þe name of Cirus Abrahams neuwe, and lieth bytwene þe ryuer Euphrates¹⁰ in þe est side and the grete see in the west side, and hap in þe norþ side Armenia and Cappadocia, and in þe souþ side þe see pat is i-cleped Arabicus, and conteyneþ many prouinces pat beþ Commagena, Palestina, Fenys, Canaan, Idumea, Iudea pat is þe Iuerie. Damascus was somtyme þe chief citee of pat prouince.¹¹ Eleazer¹² Abraham's seruau

TREVISA.

audacite to attempte to goe to hit, but men devoute and clene in theire conscience. The mownte of Libanus is in the costes of Arabye abowte the sowthe weste, which dividethe a sundre Araby, Iewery, and Fenicea. Whiche is an hille of excellent altitude, in so moche that hit, counteynge grete habundaunce of snawe, directethe men saylunge in the see to diuerse portes. Hyt is also an hille of wholesomesse and of fecundite. For trees of cipres, cedre trees, and oper yerbes groeuge there, distille encense and gumme ȝiffenge mellifluous redolence, þro whom seke men be healede, and venomes be expellede. Syria, callede by that name by Sirus Syria. the inhabitator of hit, lyethe betwene the floode Euphrates¹⁰ of the este parte, and the grete see on the weste parte, hauenge in the northe parte Armenye and Cappadocia,¹³ on the sowthe parte the see of Arabye, conteynenge in hit mony prouinces, Commagena, Palestina, Fenices, Canaan, Idumea, and the Iewery. The principal place of that province was Damascus, whom Eleazer the seruauante of Abraham edifiede. Rasyn,

MS. HARL.
2261.Mons Li-
bani.¹ *approche to it, Cx.*² *all*] om. Cx.³ *of*] added from a. and Cx.⁴ *a sonder, Cx.*⁵ So also a.; *Fenys, Cx.*, which is better; and so MS. below.⁶ MS. repeats *pat* (clerical error).⁷ Added from Cx⁸ *of*] om. Cx.⁹ *swete, a., Cx.*¹⁰ *Eufrates, MSS.*, as usual.¹¹ So Cx.; *prouinces, MS.* and a.¹² *Elcaser, Cx.*¹³ *Capodocia, Harl. MS.*

rex Rasyn semper præbuit opem decem tribubus¹ Israel contra reges Juda. Et interpretatur Damascus *fundens sanguinem*, quia ibi Cayn occidit Abel et abscondit eum in sabulo fluminis.

CAP. XIV.

*De regione Judææ.*²

JUDÆA regio est Syriæ, sed pars³ Palæstinæ, a Juda, filio Jacob, sic dicta; quæ tamen prius dicebatur Cananea,⁴ a Cham, filio Noe, sive a decem Cananæorum gentibus per Judæos expulsis seu contritis.⁵ *Petrus.* Judæa diversis modis accipitur. Quandoque pro tota terra promissionis, et tunc dicitur a Judæis, non a Juda; sub hoc sensu intelligitur⁶ quod “Pompeius magnus fecit Judæam tributariam.” Quandoque sumitur pro regno Juda; ut ubi,⁷ “Audiens autem quod Archelaus

¹ *tribibus*, E.

² The Latin title is found in the English versions and Cx.; but there is no heading to the chapter in B. C.D.E.; A. has *De Judæa*.

³ A. adds *est*.

⁴ *Canaan*, A.

⁵ *seu contritis*] om. C.D.

⁶ *intelligatur*, A.

⁷ *ubi*] So E., distinctly; but the other MSS. seem to have *ibi*; *ut ibi, Audivit Joseph quod Archelaus*, C.D.

bulde and made pat citee Damascus. Rasyn kyng of Dam- TREVISA.
 ascus¹ helpe² away þe tenþe lynage³ of Israel aȝenst the
 kynges⁴ of Iuda. Damascus is to menyng⁵ *schedynge blood*,
 for þere Caym slowh Abel and hyd hym in þe sonde.

De regione Iudææ. Capitulum quartum decimum.

IUDEA is a kyngdom of Syria a party of Palestyna, and
 hap þe name of Iudas Iacobus⁶ sone, and was somtyme
 i-cleped Cananea of Cam Noe his sone, [o]pere⁷ of þe ten
 manere of⁸ peple þat þe Iewes putte oute of þat londe.
Petrus. Iudea is i-take in many manere; oper whiles⁹ for all
 þe lond of byheste, and þan he¹⁰ hap þe name of þe Iewes and
 not¹¹ of Iudas; and so it is i-take in pis speche: "þe grete
 " Pompeius made Iudea tributaries;" and oper while it is
 i-take for þe kyngdom¹² of Iuda; and so it is i-wrote of
 Ioseph, þat "whan þey¹³ herde þat Archelaus regnede in

the kyng of whom, ȝafe helpe alle weies to the x. tribus MS. HARL.
 of Israel ageyne the kynges of Iuda. And Damascus is 2261.
 callede by interpretacion, *schedenge blood*. For Caym
 did slee Abell þer, and hidde hym in the sonde of the
 floode.

*Of the Region of the Iewery. Capitulum quartum
 decimum.*

IUDEA, whiche is callede the Iewery, is a region of Syria, Judea.
 but a parte of Palestine, callede Iudea of Iuda the sonne
 of Iacobe, whiche was callede afore Cananea of Cham the
 sonne of Noe, other elles of x. peple of Chananees expulsede
 and contrite by the Iewes. *Petrus.* Iudea is taken in f. 27 b.
 diuerse maneres; hit is taken other while for the londe of
 promission, and then hit commethe of this worde, Iudeus,
 and not off this worde, Iuda; and so hit is vnderstonde in
 that sense that Pompeius Magnus made the Iewery tribu-
 tary to hym. Other while hit is taken for the realme of
 Iuda, as Ioseph herenge that "Archelaus reignede in the

¹ *Damaske*, Cx., but *Damascus*
 below.

² *halp*, a. (not Cx.)

³ *ten lynages*, Cx.

⁴ So a. and Cx.; *kyng*, MS.

⁵ *as moche to saye as*, Cx. (who
 makes similar alterations every-
 where).

⁶ *Iacobs*, a. Cx.

⁷ *oper*, a.; *eyther*, Cx.

⁸ a. om. of.

⁹ *while*, Cx., who omits *all*.

¹⁰ *it*, Cx., and similarly often.

¹¹ Om. Cx. (typ. error?)

¹² *royamme*, Cx.

¹³ *þey*] he, Cx.

Ambitus
Judææ.

“regnaret in Judæa,”¹ &c. Quandoque sumitur pro sola sorte Judæ, ut ibi,² “Judæa et Jerusalem, nolite timere.” *Giraldus, distinctione tertia.* In hac Judæa est terra promissionis, cujus longitudo ad litteram intellecta³ est a Dan usque⁴ Bersabe,⁵ et secundum Hieronymum in epistola ad Dardanum⁶ vix continet centum sexaginta⁷ milliaria terræ illius. Latitudo vero est a Joppen usque Bethleem, et vix continet quadraginta sex milliaria terræ illius.⁸ Sed secundum librum Numerorum Judæa habet hunc ambitum; ad meridiem mare Salinarum quod Mortuum dicitur, et inde per Syna et⁹ Cadesbarne usque torrentem Ægypti qui fluit in mare magnum¹⁰ versus occidentem; inde ad aquilonem habet montem Taurum; ad orientem montem Libani et principia Tiberiadis et Jordanis, qui¹¹ ad radices montis Libani oriuntur. Inde Jordanis fluens in mare Mortuum facit limitem inter Judæam et Arabiam. Hæc autem terra Judæa fuit patribus nostris promissa, sed non omnino¹² possessa, teste Apostolo ad Hebræos, qui

¹ *Juda*, A.

² So the MSS., but *ubi* would be a better reading. See above.

³ *intellecta*] om. B.

⁴ C.D. add *ad*; and so below.

⁵ E. has *Daan* and *Bersabee*, but trivial variations of this kind will not always be noticed.

⁶ *secundum... Dardanum*] om. C.D.

⁷ C.D. omit *centum*.

⁸ *terræ illius*] om. C.D.

⁹ *Syna et*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ The text proceeds thus in C.D.: *Habet autem terra promissionis ad orientem montem Libani et flumina Tiberiadis et Jordanis, quæ, &c.*

¹¹ *qui*] So A.B.E.; *quæ*, C.D., which seems better.

¹² *omnino*] om. B.

"Iudea he dredde¹ for to goo pider;" and somtyme it is i-take onliche for þe lot of² þe lynage of Iudas, and so spekep Holy Writt and seip: "Iudea and Ierusalem drede "3ow³ nouȝt." *Gir.⁴ Dist. tertia.* In þis Iudea þe lond of byheste þe lengþe þerof is from⁵ Dan to Bersabe, and Ierom seip, in epistola ad Dardanum, þat it is scarseliche an hondred and sixty myle in lengþe, and þe brede is from Ioppen to Bethlem scarsliche sixe and fourty myle of þat lond. Bote, secundum librum Numerorum, Iudea is byclipped in þis manero aboute, and hap in þe souþe side⁶ þe Dede see. And þan he strecþeþ forþ by Syna and Cades-barne noon⁷ to⁸ þe streem of Egipte þat ȝerneþ⁹ westward in to þe grete see, and in þe norþ side þe hulle þat hatte mons Taurus,¹⁰ and in þe est þe hille¹¹ mons Libany [and the bygynnyng of the see Tiberiadis, and of þe streem Iordan þat springeþ at þe foot of mont Libany],¹² boþe Tiberiadis and Iordan. Þan Iordan renneþ in to þe Dede see and departeþ Iudea and Arabia.¹³ Þe¹⁴ londe Iudea was byhote¹⁵ to oure forme¹⁶ fadres, but nouȝt al i-had, as Poul seip, ad Hebræos, "Al

TREVISA.

"Iewery." *Gir. Dist. tertia.* The londe of promission is in the Iewery, the longitude of whom is vnderstonde after the letter, From Dan to Bersabe; and after Seynte Ierom, in his epistole to Dardanus, hit conteynethe vnnethe clx. myles of that cuntre. The latitude of hit is from Ioppen vn to Bethleem conteynenge vnnethe xlvj. myles of that region and cuntre. And after the boke of Nowmbres the Iewery hathe this circuite; at the meridiem the Dedde see, and after that by Sina and Cades Barnee vn to the ryuer of Egipte, whiche flowethe in to the grete see. The londe of promission hathe the grete see to the weste parte of hit, and an hille callede Taurus at the northe, and on the este parte the mownte callede Libanus, and the begynnenges of that water callede Tiberiades, and of the water off Iordan, whiche haue their originale principle at the foote of the mownte callede Libanus. Then that floode of Iordan floenge in to the Dedde see makethe admision betwene the Iewery and Araby. This londe of Iuda was promisede to oure faderes, but not utterly possessedde,

MS. HANL.
2261.

¹ *drad*, Cx.² So *a.* and Cx.; *for*, MS.³ *ye*, Cx.⁴ *Gregor.*, MS.⁵ *from*] *fro*, Cx., and so below.⁶ *side*] *om.* Cx.⁷ *anon*, *a.*⁸ *Cudes berne vnto*, Cx.⁹ *corneþ*, *a.*; *renneth*, Cx.¹⁰ *is named mount*, Cx.¹¹ *þe hille*] *om.* *a.*¹² Added from *a.*; and so Cx., nearly.¹³ *Arabie*, Cx.¹⁴ *þis*, *a.* Cx.¹⁵ *byhoote*, Cx.¹⁶ *forn*, Cx.

dicit, quod "hii omnes mortui sunt, non acceptis pro-
 " missionibus." Ex quibus liquet aliam esse terram
 promissionis, in qua est cœlestis Jerusalem; et aliam
 in qua terrestris Jerusalem, per quam cœlestis est figu-
 rata.¹ Hæc itaque terra Judæa opulenta est, frugifera,
 vinifera,² aromatica; cedris, cypressis, balsamis, olivis,
 malogranatis, palmis, ficubus,³ melle et lacte abun-
 dans, quæ in medio sui velut in umbilico terræ⁴
 urbem habet Jerusalem. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo*
*Jerusalem. primo.*⁵ Hanc urbem asserunt Judæi Sem, filium Noe,
 id est, Melchisedech, post diluvium fundasse, et Salem
 nuncupasse,⁶ quam postmodum tenuerunt Jebusæi; ex
 quibus sortita est vocabulum Jebus, sicque ex duobus
 vocabulis copulatis, Jebus et Salem, composita est Je-
 rusalem, quæ postmodum a Salomone dicta Jerosolima.⁷
 Hæc etiam⁸ a poetis corrupte vocata est Solima. Et

¹ *quæ figura est cœlestis*, C.D., which have other trifling variations.

² *vinifera*] om. C. (not D.)

³ *ficubus*] om. C.D.

⁴ *terræ*] om. C.D.

⁵ D. (not C.) omits the heading of the extract.

⁶ *nuncupasse*] *vocas*, C.D., which also arrange some words differently, and contract the whole period.

⁷ In this place the orthography of the MSS. (which fluctuate, how-
 ever, as usual between *Jerosolima*

and *Jerosolyma*), is preserved in order to exhibit Higden's views respecting the derivation of the different forms of the word *Jerusalem*. For the matter itself, see Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.* vol. ii. p. 17. The ordinary Latin orthography (*Hierosolyma*, *Hierusalem*) arises from an error which is as old as the time of St. Jerome, if not of Josephus.

⁸ *autem a poetis corrupta*, B., which is perhaps better.

"pey beep¹ deed and fenge² nouzt pe byhestes." And so it moot³ be, pat pere be tweye⁴ londes of byheste, erpeliche and goostlyche. In pe⁵ oon is heuenly Ierusalem; and in pe⁵ oper, erpely Ierusalem; [by the whiche erthly Ierusalem]⁶ pe heuenliche⁷ is bytokened. Dis lond Iudea is riche and fruitful, and hap plente of wyne and of spicerie, of cedres, of⁸ cipres, of baume, of olyues, of pomgarnet, of palmes, of figes, of mylk, and⁹ of hony; and hap in pe myddel, as it were in pe nauel of pe erpe, pe cite Ierusalem. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo primo.* Pe Iewes seip pat Sem, Noes sone, pat is i-cleped Melchesedek,¹⁰ also made and bulde¹¹ pe citee Ierusalem after Noes flood, and cleped¹² hit Salem, but aftirwarde a peple pat were i-cleped Iebusei woned¹³ perynne and cleped¹² pe citee Iebus. Of¹³ pilke tweye names Iebus and Salem is i-made oo¹⁴ name Ierusalem. Afterward Salamon cleped pe¹⁵ citee Ierosolyma,¹⁶ and poetis pat spekep¹⁷ schortliche clepep pe citee Solyma

TREVISA.

thapostle testifenge, that "thei diedde alle, the promissiones MS. HARL. 2261.
"not accepte;" by the seyenge of whom hit may be concludede an other londe to be the londe of promission in whom heuenly Ierusalem is, and an other in whom terrestrial Ierusalem is, by whom heuenly Ierusalem is figured. Also that londe of Iuda is plentuous of cornes, of wynes, of thynges aromaticalle, of cedre trees, cipre trees, bawmes, oliues, pomegranardes, palme tres, figge trees, habundaunt in hony and mylke, whiche hathe the cite off Ierusalem in Jerusalem. in the myddelle parte of hit. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo primo.* The Iewes afferme and say, Sem the sonne of Noe, other wyse called Melchisedech, to haue made that cite after the floode of Noe, whom the Iebuseis kepede after that tyme, by whom hit hade this name, Iebus; and so these ij. wordes, Iebus and Salem, copulate to gedre, this worde, Ierusalem, resultethe by composicion; whiche was callede afterwarde of Salomon, Ierosolima; callede also

¹ ben, Cx.² receyueden, Cx.³ muste, Cx.⁴ two, Cx.⁵ that, Cx. twyce, and so often.⁶ Added from Cx., who modernises a little.⁷ pe] a. and Cx. add *Ierusalem*.⁸ of] So a. and Cx.; and, MS.⁹ a. omits and, (not Cx.)¹⁰ *Melchisedech*, Cx. (quid?), but *Melchisedech* below.¹¹ buylded, Cx.¹² *cleped, woned, cleped*] Replaced in Cx. by *called, dwelld, named*, and so often.¹³ *So of, a. and Cx.* (which is perhaps better).¹⁴ one, Cx.¹⁵ pat, a.¹⁶ *Iherosolyma*, Cx., who also always prints *Iherusalem*.¹⁷ a. adds *perof*.

postea ab Imperatore Aelio Hadriano vocata est *Ælia*,¹ quam majori murorum ambitu ampliavit et dilatavit; ut sic locum Dominici sepulcri, quod olim extra urbem fuerat, includeret. *Ranulphus*. Verumtamen Hieronymus, in epistola ad Evangelum² presbyterum, videtur velle quod urbs Salem vel Salim quam incolebat Melchisedech, sit alia quam Jerusalem, ubi dicit Salem esse oppidum juxta Scythopolim, quod usque hodie dicitur Salem; et ostenditur ibi³ palatium Melchisedech. De qua dicitur in fine Genesis quod transivit Jacob in Salem, civitatem Sichem, quæ est in terra Canaan. *Willelmus de Regibus*. Fons intra urbem nullus,⁴ sed cisternis, ad hoc preparatis, latices colliguntur. Nam urbis ipsius situs ab austro⁵ montem Syon habens, molli clivo versus boream⁶ descendens,⁷ sic disponitur ut pluvia stillans nequaquam lacum⁸ faciat, sed instar rivulorum in cisternis excipitur,⁹ vel saltem, per portas

¹ After this, C. and D. omit all before *Habet quoque in se regio*, which occurs near the end of the chapter. The MSS. have *Helio*, *Helia* (or *Helyæ*), and *Adriano*. Compare the English MSS.

² So B.E., rightly; but the name is blundered in E. and the versions.

³ *ubi ostenditur*, B.

⁴ B. adds *est*.

⁵ *aquilone*, A.B. (and both the versions). These variations are instructive, and show that we have a later and better text in E., which

seems to be made from the author's final corrections. On the even now disputed point of the position of Sion, see Williams in Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.* vol. ii. p. 1009, who maintains in common with most modern writers that "Sion" proper is the S.W. hill of Jerusalem.

⁶ *austrium*, A.B. (and the versions).

⁷ *ascendens*, B.

⁸ *lutum*, B. (and so Harl. version).

⁹ *excipitur*, B.

in her schort speche. And after pat Aelius¹ Adrian pe Emperoure cleped pat citee Aelia,¹ and walled hit, and made it more aboute; so pat oure Lordes sepulcre, pat was somtym wip oute pe citee, is now² wip ynne. R. Neuerpeles³ it semep pat Hieronymus, in epistola ad Evangelium⁴ presbyterum, wil seie, pat Salem oper Salim, pat Melchisedek made and woned ynne, was anoper citee pan Ierusalem. Pere he seip pat Salem is a toun beside Scythopolim,⁵ pat 3it hat⁶ Salem; and perynne is i-seie pe paleys of Melchesedek and perof spekip Holy Writt, Genesis; and seip pat Iacob wente into Salem pe citee of Sichem, pat is in pe londe of Chanaan. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro primo.* No welle is wip ynne Ierusalem, but watres be i-gadred, and i-kept in cisternes; for pe citee is so i-sette pat he hap in pe north side pe mount⁷ Syon, and is disposed pat pe water, pat fullep downward and soupward wip pe pendaunt⁸ toward Ierusalem, takep no defoul,⁹ but is clene i-now, and rennep into pe citee, and no fen makep, and¹⁰ rennep into cisternes, as¹¹ it were lakes and welle stremes. And somme

TREVISA.

corruptely of poetes Solima; and afterwarde callede Aelya¹ MS. HARL. by Aelius¹ Adrian themperoure, whom he amplified with 2261. more circuite of walles, in so moche that he includede the place and sepulcre of oure Lorde, whiche was somme tyme withowte the walles of that cyte. R. But truly f. 28 a. Seynte Ierom in his epistole to Eugenius expressethe, seyenge that the cyte callede Salem or Salim, in whom Melchisedech dwellede, to be an other cite from Ierusalem, nye to Scythopolis,¹² whiche is callede Salem vn to this tyme presente, where hit is schewede the palice of Melchisedech, of whom hit is seyde in the ende of Genesis that Iacob wente in to Salem, a cite of Sichen, whiche is in the londe of Chanaan. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro primo.* There is noo welle within the cite, where waters be collecte, but in cestrens and veselles ordcynede perfore. For the site of that cyte, hauenge the mownte of Syon of the northie descendenge towarde the sowthe with a softe dependence, is so disposede that pe reyne reynenge makethe not clay, but as lytelle ryuers, whiche is receyvede in cestrens, or elles

¹ *Helius*, and *Helia*, MSS. and Cx.² *nowe closed*, Cx.; *now i-closed*, a.³ *Netheles*, Cx.⁴ *Evangelistum*, Cx. See note on text.⁵ *Sitopolym*, MS.; *Sicopolim*, Cx. a.⁶ *hat*] is called, Cx. (as usual).⁷ a. and Cx. add of.⁸ *dependaunt*, Cx.⁹ *fylthe*, Cx.¹⁰ *and maketh no fylthe*, but, &c., Cx.¹¹ *as þey*, a.; *as though*, Cx.¹² *Sitopolis*, Harl. MS.

effluens, torrentem Cedron adaugeat.¹ Igitur in ipso vertice montis Syon² fuit arx seu turris pro decore et defensione. In declivo montis fuit templum quasi medium inter arcem et inferiorem urbem. Ideo³ sæpe Scriptura vocat Jerusalem filiam Syon, quia sicut filia protegitur a matre et ei subditur, sic civitas inferior subdita fuit templo et arci. Constantinus magnus erexit aliquando in ea ecclesiam Sancti Sepulcri, quæ nunquam ab hostibus fidei⁴ tulit injuriam; quod creditur contigisse pro igne cœlesti, qui quolibet anno in vigilia Paschæ⁵ lampades ibidem illuminat; quod quidem miraculum, quando inceperit, incertum habetur. Hanc urbem cinxit aliquando rex Salamon muro triplici non solum ad munimentum, sed etiam ad distinctionem inhabitantium; ita ut infra primum murum circa montem

¹ *adauget*, B.

² *Syon*] om. B.

³ *Unde*, B.

⁴ *fidei*] om. B.

⁵ B. adds *ibidem videtur et*.

perof rennep into pe brook pat is i-cleped torrens Cedron, TREVISA.
 and makeþ pe brook torrentem Cedron wexe and bewel¹
 pe more. In pe top² of mont Syon was a real³ toure⁴ for
 feiren[e]s⁵ and defens. In pe side of mont Syon was pe
 temple as it were in pe myddel bytwene the toure and pe
 citee; pe citee was lower þan pe toure, and perfore ofte
 Holy Writt clepeth⁶ Ierusalem pe douzter of Syon. For as
 a⁷ douzter is meyntheyned and defended by pe moder and
 sogett⁸ to the moder; so pe citee was lower and sogett to
 pe temple and to pe tour. Also⁹ pe grete Constantinus
 arered pere somtyme pe chirche of pe Holy Sepulcre. Mys-
 byleued men mysdede neuere þat chirche; and þat is, as
 me trowep¹⁰ for euery zere an¹¹ Ester eue comeþ fire from¹²
 heuene, and tendep and liþep pe lampes þerynne; but whan
 þat miracle bygan first, hit is vncertayne and vnknewe.¹³
 Salamon pe kyng wallede þis citee somtyme wip þre walles
 al aboute; neuerþeles nouzt onliche for strengþe, but for
 distinccioun¹⁴ of dyuers manere men þat woned pere; pe¹⁵
 preostes and clerkes þat serued in pe temple, also¹⁶ pe kyng

the water descendenge by the zates of the cite increaseth MS. HARL.
2261.
 the ryuer of Cedron. Therefore þer was a towre in the
 altitude of the mownte of Syon for worshippe and defence.
 In the dependence of whiche hille was a temple, as in
 the mydde part betwene the towre and the cite under hit,
 wherefore Scripture calleth ofte tymes Ierusalem the
 dozhter of Syon; for like as a dozhter is protecte of the
 moder, and subiecte to her, soe the cite inferior is subiecte
 to the temple and to the towre of Syon. The nowble and De cœlesti
igne Jeru-
salem in
vigilia
Paschæ.
 grete Constantyne made in hit a chirche off Seynte Sepulcre,
 whiche hath not suffrede iniury vn to this tyme of enmyes
 of the feithe, whiche men suppose to be causede for heuently
 fyre, whiche dothe illumyne the lampes there of on the
 vigile of Pasche or Ester, whiche miracle is incerteyne as
 to the begynnenge off hit. Kynge Salomon compassede that
 cyte with a threfolde walle not oonly for defence, but for the
 distinccion of men inhabitenge hit, soe that the temple of

¹ be wel (divisim), MS. and Cx.
 and a.

² toppe or sommet of the, Cx.

³ ryal, Cx.

⁴ a. adds y-made.

⁵ fayrenes, Cx.

⁶ For this once Cx. has left clepeth
 in his own text.

⁷ a. omits a. (not Cx.)

⁸ subgette, Cx., and so below.

⁹ Also] Given as the last word in
 the previous sentence in a. and Cx.

¹⁰ as men suppose, Cx.

¹¹ an] on, Cx., who has suen.

¹² fro, Cx.

¹³ vnknewen, Cx.

¹⁴ So a. and Cx.; destruccioun, MS.

¹⁵ þe] So Cx.; þat, MS.; a. has
 some omissions here.

¹⁶ and also, Cx.

Mons
Oliveti.

Syon esset templum Domini, mansiones quoque hebdomadariorum¹ sacerdotum ac ministrorum, domus etiam regia² cum mansionibus domesticorum. In secundo ambitu habitabant potentes viri et prophetæ, unde legitur in libro Regum quod Olda prophetissa habitabat in Jerusalem in secunda, id est, in secunda distinctione. In tertio ambitu³ habitabant opifices et plebes. *Ranulphus*. Juxta⁴ Jerusalem, ad orientem templi, erat mons Oliveti, propter abundantiam olivarum sic vocatus; qui ab Augustino super Johannem vocatus est mons chrismatis et unctionis, mons luminis et pinguedinis, mons refectionis et medicaminis, eo quod fructus olivæ sit unctuosus, luminosus, deliciosus. Signanter autem dicebatur mons luminis, quia⁵ oriente sole recepit⁶ lumen a sole per diem, a luminaribus templi per noctem. In quo quidem monte Salamon aliquando, mulierum amore infatuatus, erexit delubra et excelsa, sicut patet ij. Regum x^o. De quo etiam monte Christus cælos⁷ ascendit, et in

¹ There is little doubt that this is the true reading, but the MSS. curtail the word strangely, thus: *ebd."riox*.

² *et ministrorum ac domus regia*, B.

³ *distinctione*, B.

⁴ *Et juxta*, A.

⁵ *eo quod*, B.

⁶ *recipit*, B.

⁷ *cælos*] om. B.

and his mayne woneþ¹ wip ynne þe firste wal by þe mount² TREVISA:
 Syon. Wip ynne þe secounde wal woned prophetes and
 myȝty men and stalworþe; so spekep Holy Writt, pat Elda³
 prophetissa woned in Ierusalem in þe secounde distinccioun.⁴
 Wip ynne þe bridde woned þe comoun peple and craftes men⁵
 in þe wal.⁶ [R.]⁷ Faste by Ierusalem, in þe norþ side of þe
 temple, is þe mount of Olyuete for plentee of olyues. Seynt
 Austyn super Iohannem clepþ it þe hulle of crisma⁸ and of
 vnccioun, þe hille of liȝt and of fatnes, þe hille of medicyne
 and of fedynge; for þe fruit⁹ of olyue is ful of liȝt, likynge,
 and vnctuous; and it was specialiche þe hille and þe mont
 of liȝt, for it was beschyne wip¹⁰ liȝt of þe sonne al day
 and wip liȝt of the temple al nyȝt. In þat hille Salamoun,
 whan he wax¹¹ mad and al by schrewed for loue of wommen,
 he bulde temples in¹² hiȝe places for mametrie; so seiþ Holy
 Writ, secundo Regum, decimo capitulo.¹³ Out of þat mount
 Crist steiþe¹⁴ vp into heuene; and in þat mount he schal

oure Lorde was within the fyrste walle abowte the mownte MS. HARL.
 of Syon, the mansiones also of the ebdomadaries, prestes, 2261.
 and minstres, the kynges palice, with mansiones for his men.
 Nowble men and prophetes inhabite within the secunde walle,
 as hit is redde in the boke of Kynges that Olda prophetissa
 dwellede in Ierusalem in the secunde distinccion. Men of
 crafte and commune peple dwellede in the thrydde distinc-
 cion and circuite of the walles. R. The Mownte of Oli- Mons
 uete is nye to Ierusalem, at the este parte of that temple, Oleueti.
 callede Oliuete for habundaunce of oliues, whiche is callede
 by Seynte Austyn on Iohan,¹⁵ the hille of creme and of
 noy[n]tenge, the hille of liȝhte and of fattenes, the hille of
 refreschenge and of medicyne, in that the frute of oliues
 is vnctuous, luminose, and delicious. Whiche was callede
 significatiuely the mownte of liȝhte, for the sonne schynenge
 hit receyvede liȝhte of hit, and of the temple by nyȝhte. f. 28 b.
 In whiche mownte Salomon thro þe luffe of women made
 hie places and chirches in hit, as hit is expressede Re-
 gum xº. From whiche mownte Criste ascendede to heuyn,

¹ *dwelleden*, Cx. (the preterite seems right,) and similarly below.

² *mount of*, a. and Cx.

³ *Olda*, Cx.

⁴ So a. and Cx.; *destruccioun*, MS.

⁵ *men of crafte*, Cx.

⁶ a. and Cx. omit *in þe wal*.

⁷ R. added from a. and Cx.

⁸ *crisme*, Cx.

⁹ *fruyȝt*, a.

¹⁰ *wip*] *by*, a.

¹¹ *war*] *were*, Cx.

¹² *in*] and, Cx.

¹³ So MS. and a.; but Cx. absurdly has *Romanos 2º, 1º capitulo*.

¹⁴ *steiȝ*, a.; *ascended*, Cx., who omits *vp*.

¹⁵ *Iohñ.*, Harl. MS. (which elsewhere writes *Iohñes* for *Johannes*.)

fine ibidem judicabit orbem. In hujus montis pede oritur torrens Cedron qui fluit in vallem Josaphat, inter cujus ripam et montem fuit hortus ille quem Christus totiens intravit ad orandum, in quo etiam¹ horto² captus fuit. Juxta quem fuerat aliquando villula Gethsemane,³ et in ipso monte⁴ erat viculus sacerdotum qui dicebatur Bethphage, et in latere montis erat urbs Lazari, Marthæ, et Mariæ, nomine Bethania. *Hugutio*. Ad septentrionalem plagam montis Syon est mons Calvariæ, ubi crucifixus est Christus, qui, lingua Syra, dictus est Golgotha,⁵ quod interpretatum sonat Calvaria, quæ est pars frontis patens supra supercilia, pro eo quod ibi decalvabantur ossa latronum, damnatorum, et decapitatorum. Cætera de mirabilibus templi require in libro Regum.

De mari
Mortuo.

*Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo primo.*⁶ Habet quoque in se regio Judæa mare solitudinis, quod dicitur⁷

¹ *etiam*] et, A.

² *horto*] om. B.

³ *Gethsemany*, E.; *Gethsemani*, A. B.

⁴ *monte*] om. B.

⁵ *Golgotha*, MSS., and so also in the MSS. of both the versions.

⁶ *secundo*, B. Both references are false, and possibly Isidore is not the authority for this statement at all.

⁷ *quod dicitur*] sive, C.

deme þe worlde at þe laste.¹ At þe foot² of þe³ mount TREVISA.
springeþ þe brook torrens Cedron, and eorneth⁴ in to þe
valey of Iosephat. Bytwene þe brynke of torrens Cedron
and þe mount was þe orchezerde þat Criste went ynne ful
ofte⁵ for to bidde⁶ and praye; in þat orchezerde⁷ Crist
was i-take, by þe whiche was a prope⁸ þat hiȝt⁹ Geth-
semany. In þat mount was þe litel strete of preostes, þat
heet¹⁰ Be[th]phage.¹¹ In þe side of þe hille was þe yn¹² of
Lazarus,¹³ of Martha, and of Marie Mawdeleyn; þat toun
hiȝt¹⁴ Bethania. *Hugo.* In þe norþ side of mount Syon is
þe mount Caluerie; ¹⁵ (þar¹⁶ Crist deide on þe rode;) and is
i-cleped Golgotha in þe longage¹⁷ of Syria. Golgotha is to
menyng a baar scolle. For whan þeues and mysdoeres were
pere byheded,¹⁸ þe hedes were i-left pere, and so at þe laste
þe sculles wexen al bare. Opre wondres of þe temple loke
in libro Regum. *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo primo.*
Also in þe reem¹⁹ of Iuda is þe see of wildernesse þat is

where he schalle iugge also euery man in the day of iugge- MS. HARL.
mente. In the foote of whiche hille the ryuer of Cedron 2261.
is spronge, whiche flowethe in to the vale of Iosaphath,
betwene the brynke of whom and the mownte was that
gardyn in to whom Criste entrede ofte tymes to prey, in
whom he was taken, nye to whom was a litelle towne
callede Gethesemani, in whiche mownte was also the strete
of prestes, whiche was callede Bethfage, and in the side
of the mownte was the cite of Martha, of Lazarus, and of
Mary, Bethania by name. *Hugo.* The mownte off Caluarye Mons
is at the northe plage of the mownte of Syon, where Criste Calvaria.
was crucifiede, whiche is callede, after the langage of men
of Sire, Golgotha, soundenge by interpretacion, Caluaria, in
hat the boones of men condempnede and hedede were
made bare there. As for other meruayles of the temple
haue respecte to the bokes of Kynges. *Isidorus, libro quinto-*
decimo, capitulo primo. The region of Iuda hathe in hit

¹ at laste, Cx.
² atte foote, Cx.
³ that, Cx.
⁴ renneth, Cx.
⁵ wel ofte, a.
⁶ bidda, a.
⁷ orchard, a.
⁸ a thorpe, Cx.
⁹ heet, a. and Cx.
¹⁰ heȝht, Cx.

¹¹ Bethfage, a. and Cx.
¹² toun, a. and Cx.
¹³ Lazar, Cx.
¹⁴ hiȝt] was named, Cx.
¹⁵ mont of Caluary, a. and Cx.
¹⁶ So a.; þat, MS.; there, Cx.
¹⁷ langage, a. and Cx.
¹⁸ byhedded, a.
¹⁹ royamme, Cx.

Mortuum, distans a¹ Jerosolimis stadiis ducentis, quæ reddunt² viginti quinque milliaria; dividitque Judæam, Palæstinam, et Arabiam. *Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro xiiij.*³ Extenditur autem lacus ille a finibus Judææ non longe a Jerico usque ad Zoros Arabiæ stadiis septingentis octoginta, quæ faciunt milliaria nonaginta quatuor. Latitudo⁴ ejus⁵ stadiorum centum quinquaginta, usque ad vicinia Sodomorum. Dicitur autem lacus ille Lacus Salinarum, quia sales ibi fiunt. Dicitur⁶ et lacus asphalti, quod est bitumen tenax, eo quod locus ille sit bituminosus, qua⁷ de causa ventis non movetur, resistente semper bitumine, quo omnis aqua stagnatur. Neque ullam navem aut aliam⁸ materiam sustinet nisi bituminatam.⁹ *Petrus, capitulo quinquagesimo.*¹⁰ Cujus loci bitumen seu¹¹ gluten nihil potest dissolvere,¹² nisi duntaxat sanguis menstruus. *Isidorus, libro tertio-decimo.* Dicitur etiam mare Mortuum, quia nihil vivum gignit aut recipit. Nam neque pisces, neque aves mersiles admittit. Sed et¹³ quæcunque viva im-

¹ quod distat a, C. D.

² faciunt, C.

³ xvj^o, E., wrongly. See lib. xiii. c. 19.

⁴ C. and D. add *vero*; D. omits the preceding words.

⁵ ejus] om. B.

⁶ dicitur] om. C., D.

⁷ qua] hac, C., D.

⁸ aliam] om. C., which places *sustinet* at the end.

⁹ bituminata, B.

¹⁰ 20, B. Both references seem to be false. Petrus Comestor (*Hist. Lib. Gen.* c. 53) has much in common with this chapter, but not the clause for which his authority is cited. Josephus (*Bell. Jud.* lib. iv. c. 8. § 4) is the authority for the statement.

¹¹ sive, B.

¹² dissolvere potuit, C. D.

¹³ et] om. B.

pe Dede see, and from Ierusalem two hondred forlonges; TREVISA.
 pat makip fyue and twenty myle, and departe Iudeam,
 Palestinam, and Arabiam.¹ *Isidorus, Eth. libro tertidecimo.*
 Pat lake² streccheþ from þe endes³ of Iudea noȝt fer from
 Ierico anon to þe Zores⁴ of Arabia seuene hondred forlonges
 and foure score, pat⁵ makip foure score myle and fourtene.
 Pat lake is⁶ in brede seuene score forlong and ten,⁷ and
 streccheþ nyh⁸ to þe contrees⁹ of Sodoma. Pat lake is
 i-cleped lacus Salinarum, for salt is i-made pere. Also
 pere is moche glew in pat contray; and perfore it meueþ¹⁰
 nouȝt for wyndes, for þe glew wipstondeþ alwey: for water
 pat haþ glew stondeþ stille, and pat lake susteyneþ no schip
 ne non opere matere, but it be glewed. *Petrus, capitulo*
quingagesimo. Noþyng may vndo þe glewe of pat place, but
 onliche þe blood pat is i-cleped sanguis menstruus. *Isidorus,*
libro tertio decimo. It is¹¹ i-cleped also þe Dede see, for
 pat see bryngeþ forth no ping pat is quyk and on¹² lyue;¹³
 so pat he fongeþ noþer water foules, noþer fisshes; so pat
 what quik ping¹⁴ pat it be¹⁵ pat duppeþ þerynne, anon it

the Dedde see, beenge from Ierusalem ii. forlonges, whiche MS. HARL. 2261.
 do make xxv^d. myles, diuidenge the Iewery, Palestine, and
 Araby. *Isidorus, Eth., libro 13^o.* That place is extendede
 from the costes of the Iewery, not ferre from Ierico, to
 Zores of Arabye vij. forlonges and lxxx^d, whiche do make
 xc. myles and iiij. The latitude of hit is of cl^d. forlonges
 vn to nye places of Sodome. That place is callede the
 place of salteneſſe, in that salte is made per. Also that place
 is callede the place of pycche, for it is ful per of; whiche
 water susteyneth not eny schippe, but if hit be welle
 pycchede, or enny other mater. *Petrus, capitulo quingua-*
gesimo. The pycche or glu of whiche place noo thyng
 may dissolue, but the bloode of a woman suffrenge the
 monethely infirmite: whiche place noryscheth not fysches
 or fooles; but whikke thynges caste in to that water lepe

¹ So a. and Cx.; *Abraham*, MS.

² So Cx.; *lakes*, MS. and a.

³ ende, Cx.

⁴ Ierico vnto zores, Cx.

⁵ pat] the whiche, Cx.

⁶ So Cx.; *lakes is*, a. The MS. omits *is*, but has *lakes*.

⁷ an hondred and fyfthy furlonges, Cx.

⁸ neyȝ, a.

⁹ contrayes, a.

¹⁰ moeueth not with, Cx.

¹¹ a. and Cx. place also after *is*.

¹² olyue, a.; a lyue, Cx.

¹³ a. adds also *pat se may fonge noþyng pat is quyk and on lyue*. Cx. agrees with MS., except in having *it receyueth for he fongeþ*.

¹⁴ a. omits *ping*.

¹⁵ *pat it be*] om. Cx., who has *dippeth*.

merseris statim prosiliunt, mortua vero absorbentur; adeo ut¹ lucerna accensa supernatet, extincta demergatur. *Josephus, libro primo.*² Hoc patuit in diebus Vespasiani principis de duobus hominibus qui, manibus post terga ligatis, ibidem projecti statim rejiciebantur.³ *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo,*⁴ *capitulo tertio.* Regio etiam⁵ illa dicta est Pentapolis, a quinque urbibus⁶ impiorum ibidem⁷ submersis et incineratis. Terra quidem olim magis quam Jerusalem uberrima, (nam inter ejus lapides sapphiri et gemmæ pretiosissimæ inveniebantur, et aurum inter ejus glebas, sicut testatur Job xxiiiij^o.)⁸ sed nunc species et umbra ignis in ipsis favillis et arboribus videtur.⁹ Nam poma virentia sub tanta specie maturitatis nascuntur, ut desiderium edendi gignant; quæ, si carpas manu, fatiscunt in cinerem, fumumque exhalant quasi adhuc ardeant. *Ranulphus.* Est autem¹⁰ et alia Pentapolis, regio in Africa.¹¹

¹ in tantum etiam ut, C., D., which also have *supernatet*; C. (not D.) has *demergitur*.

² B. misplaces the extract from Josephus in the following chapter.

³ *patiebantur*, B.

⁴ *nono*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiv. c. 3, § 24.

⁵ *autem*, A.

⁶ *civitatibus*, C.

⁷ *ibidem*] om. B.

⁸ *nam ... Job*] om. C., D. B. has after Job, *capitulo suo* 14. The passage intended is Job xxviii. 6.

⁹ *videntur*, C. D.

¹⁰ *tamen*, B.

¹¹ *Est alia tamen Pentapolis regio in Africa*, A.

lepep vp azen; and alle dede pinges it swelewith¹ so fer TREVISA.
 forþ, þat a lanterne wip lyzt fletep and swymmeth aboue.²
 And 3if þe lizt is³ i-queynt, it duppep doun and dryncþep.
Iosephus, libro primo. Þat was assaied and i-knowe in þat
 grete princes tyme Vespasianus⁴ be tweie men þat were
 i-bounde hir hondes by hynde hem and i-cast yn pere, but
 anon þey were i-cast vp aze. *Isidorus, libro nono, capitulo*
tertio. Þat kyngdom hatte⁵ Pentapolis⁶ also, for fyue
 wicked citees þat pere were a-dreynt and i-brent to asshes.
 Þat was⁷ som tyme more riche and more plenteuous þan
 Ierusalem; for saphire⁸ and oper wel precious stones and
 golde also were i-founde among þe cley of þat londe, as
 Iob witnessip, vicesimo quarto capitulo. But now pere
 semeþ somer schadue⁹ and liknesse of fuyre bope in ves-
 selles¹⁰ and in trees. For apples¹¹ þat pere growep semeþ
 so faire and so ripe, þat who þat hem seep hym wilnep¹²
 for to ete; but pilke apples þat¹³ falleþ to asshes¹⁴ anon as
 þey ben¹⁵ i-handeled, and smokeþ¹⁶ as þei afire were. R.
 But pere is anoþer Pentapolis in Affrica.

furthe anon, dedde thynges be deuourede per anon; in so MS. HARL.
 moche that a lawnterne y-lyzhtede putte in to hit swymmeth 2261.
 above, and a lawnterne extincte is drowned in to hit.
Iosephus, libro primo. Whiche thyng was experte, in the
 dayes of Vespasian prince, of ij. men, the whiche were caste
 in to that water, theire hondes y-bounde behynde theym,
 whom the water wolde not receyve. *Isidorus, libro nono,*
capitulo tertio. That region was callede Pentapolis, of the
 v. cites of wicked men drowned there. That londe was
 somme tyme more then Ierusalem in plentuousenesse; for f. 29 a.
 sapphires and other precious stones were founde amonge the
 stones of hit, and golde, as Iob testifieth, capitulo xxiiij.
 For now the similitude of fire apperethe in the trees.
 For apples be spronge per vnder suche a similitude of
 ripenes, that thei move the appetite of man to eyte of
 theyme; whiche apples y-taken be redactē vn to esches, as
 if thei brente, to this tyme. R. Also per is an other region
 callede Pentapolis in Affrike.

¹ he swoleweþ, a.

² aboue] om. Cx.

³ is] be, Cx.

⁴ Vaspasianus, MS., a, and Cx.

⁵ hatte] is called, Cx.

⁶ So a. and Cx.; *Pentapolis*, MS., and so below.

⁷ was] were, Cx., who has no stop after *asshes*.

⁸ sapphires, a.; sapphirs, Cx.

⁹ schadowe, a.

¹⁰ herbis, Cx.

¹¹ appolis, a.

¹² wyllleth, Cx.

¹³ þat] to, a. Probably the word should be simply cancelled.

¹⁴ thylke appels fullen anon to asshes, Cx.

¹⁵ beep, a.

¹⁶ So a.; smoked, MS.; smoken, Cx.

*De regione Canaan.**Capitulum quintumdecimum.¹*

CANAAN regio est Syriæ² a filiis Canaan filii Cham post diluvium primitus possessa, septem in se continens nationes, quasi ex primo Cham filio Noë hæreditarie maledictas. Palæstina provincia est Syriæ, dicta quondam Philistea, cujus metropolis dicta est Philistiim, nunc vero³ Ascalon, ex qua urbe tota illa provincia Palæstina seu Philistea vocata est, et incolæ ejus Palæstini seu Philistei, quia Hebreus sermo *p* litteram non habet sed pro eo utitur *ph*; inde Philistei, quasi Palæstini; qui tamen dicti sunt *allophyli*, id est *alienigenæ*, eo quod semper fuerint a filiis Israel alieni. Hæc regio habet ab austro Ægyptum, ab occasu⁴ Tyrios, ab aquilone Ju-

¹ The descriptions of the provinces are thus arranged in C. and D.: Galilee, Palestine, Phenicia, Canaan, Cedar, Egypt.

² *Assyriæ*, C.

³ *autem*, B.

⁴ *ad occasum*, A.

De Canaa terra. Capitulum quintumdecimum.

TREVISA.

CANAAN is a reem¹ of Syria² and hatte Canaan, for Canaan³ children were þe firste þat woned perynne after Noes flood; and conteyned seuen⁴ naciouns acorsed as it were by heritage of Cam,⁵ Noes sone. *Trevisa*. Cham was Noes sone, and hadde his fader⁶ cors; for he lowh⁷ his fader to scorne, for he say⁸ his priue harneys⁹ al bare and vnheled, while he lay on slepe. *R.* Palestina¹⁰ is a prouince of Syria, and þat hiȝte somtyme Philistea; þe cheef¹¹ citee ȝerof hiȝte Philistim,¹² and now hatte Ascalon.¹³ And after þat¹⁴ citee is þe prouince i-cleped Palestina oper Philistea. And men of þat contrey hatte Palestini and Philistei also; for in þe speche of Hebrewes¹⁵ is no *p*, but instede of *p* þey useþ *ph*; perfore Philistei and Palestini beþ all oon, and beþ also i-cleped *allophili*, þat is to menyng *aliens* and straunge men, for þey were alwey aliens and straunge to the folk of Israel. Þat prouince hap in þe south side Egipt, in þe west Tyrus, in þe north Iudea,

*Capitulum quintumdecimum.*HARL. MS.
2261.

Canaan is a region of Syria,¹⁶ possessed firste of the childre of Canaan, sonnes of Chayin, after Noe floode, conteynenge Canaan. in hit vij. naciones as cursede by enheritaunce of Cam the sonne of Noe. Palestina is a prouince off Syria, callede Palestina. somme tyme Philistea, the chiefe cyte of whom was called Philistea. Philistijm and now Ascalon, of whiche cite alle that prouince was callede Palestina or Philistea, and the inhabitatores of hit were callede Philisteis, for men of Ebrewe vse not this letter, *f*, but *ph* in the place of hit. Of whom the Philisteies were callede *alophili*,¹⁷ that is to say *aliauntes*, in so moche that they were straunge alleweyes to the childer of Israel. That region hathe Egipte on the sowthe parte of hit and men of Tire at the weste, the Iewery at the northe, and

¹ *royamme*, Cx.² *Siria*, MS., which has also other slightly unclassical forms of proper names in this chapter.³ So *a.*; *Caanes*, MS.⁴ *vj.*, Cx., who has *alle* before *acursyd*.⁵ þe *Cham*, *a.*⁶ *faders*, Cx. (not *a.*)⁷ *lowz*, *a.*⁸ *sawe*, Cx.⁹ *membrys*, Cx.¹⁰ *oper Phylistea*, added in *a.*¹¹ *chif*, *a.*¹² So *a.*; *Philisti*, MS.¹³ So *a.* and Cx.; *Ascelon*, MS.¹⁴ *þe*, *a.* and Cx.¹⁵ *Hebrew*, Cx.¹⁶ *Siria*, Harl. MS., and so throughout.¹⁷ The translator's orthography, who evidently thinks ἀλλόφυλοι is Hebrew, has been allowed to stand. Just before he has wrongly written *f* for *p*.

dæam, ab ortu Idumæam, sic dictam ab Edom qui et Esau, quæ quidem Idumæa terra est fortis, montuosa, et calida, extendens se ad mare Rubrum.¹ *Isidorus, libro nono.*² In hac Idumæa est fons Jobyn quater in anno colorem mutans, ternis scilicet mensibus tenens colorem pulvereum, aliis tribus sanguineum, aliis tribus viridem, reliquis³ tribus limpidum et aqueum colorem.⁴ Palæstina etiam solebat in se comprehendere⁵ Samariam regionem cujus metropolis Samaria, sed nunc Sebaste.⁶

Samaria. Samaria siquidem, a Somer⁷ monte dicta, jacet media inter Judæam et Galilæam; de qua ejectis aliquando et captivatis incolis introducti sunt Assyrii qui solam legem Moysis⁸ admittunt, in ceteris vero a Judæis discrepant. Et dicti sunt Samaritæ, quod sonat *custodes*, quia populo terræ captivato ad custodiam deputabantur.⁹ Sichem vel Sichima modica est terra in Samaria, a Sichem, filio Emor, qui eam incoluit, sic vocata. Et est Sichem urbs,

¹ *Palæstina provincia ... Rubrum*] C. and D. contract the text into one short sentence. A. omits *se* after *extendens*.

² 14, A., B., C., D. The place intended occurs at lib. xiii. c. 13. § 8. Isidore, however, has *Job* for *Jobyn*. The account of the Samaritans, indeed, a little below, is taken from lib. ix. c. 1. § 54., and that of Galilee from lib. xiv. c. 3. § 23.

³ *et reliquis*, B.

⁴ *colorem limpidum*, C. and D., in

which other trifling variations also occur.

⁵ *Palestina vero continet in se*, C.

⁶ *sed nunc Sebaste*] om. in C., which adds *quondam vocabatur* before *Samaria*. D. has *et nunc ab Augusti nomine vocatur Sebasten* (sic).

⁷ *Samar*, A.; *Samer*, B.

⁸ *Moysi*, MSS.

⁹ *Et dicti ... deputabantur*] om. C., D., in which the whole description of *Sichem* is also omitted. For *deputabantur* (so A. and B.) E. has *deputantur*.

in¹ þe est Idumea. Idumea hap þe name of Edom; Edom² and Esau is all oon, Iacobus broþer. Þat Idumea is a strong londe, hully and hoot, and streccheþ to þe Rede see. *Isidorus, libro nono.* In þis Idumea is Iobus³ welle. Þat welle chaunge[p]⁴ hewe and colors foure sipes⁵ a ȝere by þe monthes; þe firste þre monþes pale as asshe; þe secounde þre monþes reed as blood; þe þridde þre monþes grene as gras; and þe fourþe þre monþes cleer as water.⁶ Palestina was i-woned to conteyne þe lond Samaria. Þe cheef⁷ citee of þat lond was somtyme i-cleped Samaria, but now he is i-cleped and hatte Sebaste. Samaria hap þe name of þe hille þat hatte Somer, and Samaria lieþ bytwene Iudea and Galilea. Men þat woned in Samaria were i-dryue oute, and Assyii were i-brouȝt ynne. Assyii holdeþ Moyses lawe, and in⁸ oper discordeþ from the Iewes, and hoteþ also Samaritæ, þat is to menynges *kepers*. For whan men of þe londe were i-take, þey were ordeyned wardeynes of hem.⁹ Sychem, þat hatte Sichema¹⁰ also, is a litel lond yn Samaria, and hap þe name of Sichem, Emor his sone,

TREVISA.

Idumea on the este parte. That londe is myȝhty, fulle of hilles, and hoote, extendege hit to the Redde see. *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.* The welle of Iobyn is in that Idumea,¹¹ chaungege his colour iiij. tymes in oon yere; in thre monethes holdenge the colour of duste, in other thre the colour of bloode, in oper thre monethes a grene coloure, and in other thre a clere colour of water. Also Palestine was wonte to comprehende Samaria in hit; the chiefe place of that region was callede Samaria, but now hit is callede Sebaste. Samaria toke the name of hit of the mownte callede Samer, whiche lyethe in the myddes betwene the Iewery and Galile; the inhabitatores of whom somme tyme ciete and put in captiuite, men of Assyria were introducte, whiche admitte oonly the lawe of Moyses. In other thynges they discorde from the Iewes and be callede Samaritanes, whiche sowndethe *kepers*, for they were deputate to the kepenge of that londe, the peple of hit putte in captiuite. Sichen or Sichenia is a lyttelle grownde in Samaria, namede Sichen. so of Sichem the sonne of Emor, whiche inhabite hit firste. f. 29 b.

¹ and in, Cx.² Edom] added from Cx.³ Jobyns, a.; Jacobs, Cx.⁴ chaungeþ, Cx.⁵ a. has some omissions here.⁶ a. and Cx. have some slight omissions in the foregoing sentence.⁷ chif, a.⁸ in] added from a.; Cx. has but in somme thynges they discorde.⁹ ham, a.¹⁰ Sychim, a.¹¹ Ydumea, Harl. MS.

quæ nunc Neapolis dicitur, quam Jacob aliquando pecunia et labore gravi comparatam dedit filio suo Joseph super sortem, sicut dicit Hieronymus supra Genesim XVIII. Et fuit hæc aliquando urbs refugii cum suburbanis suis in finibus montis Ephraim,¹ sicut patet Josuæ XX. Nam et illa terra fuit de tribu Ephraim, et ibi sepulta sunt ossa Joseph, postquam translata fuerant de Ægypto, ut patet Josuæ ultimo. In quo loco fratres Joseph paverant greges suos; quem tamen locum postmodum destruxit Abimelech, filius Jeroboal. Et interfectis habitatoribus seminavit ibi sal,² ne terra illa³ denuo germinaret, sicut habetur Josuæ IX. Ibi quoque fuit fons Jacob, super quem Christus fessus ex itinere requievit.

Galilæa. Galilæa regio est inter Judæam et Palæstinam, quæ⁴ et duplex est, superior et inferior, ad invicem contigue adherentes Syriæ et Phœniciæ.⁵ Utriusque Galilææ

¹ *Effraym* or *Effraim*, MSS.

² *ibidem salem*, A.

³ *illa*] om. A.

⁴ *quæ*] om. C. D.

⁵ *Fenici*, B.; *Phenici*, D.

pat first woned perynne. Also pere is a citee pat hatte Sychem, and now is i-cleped Neopolis. Pat citee Iacob bouzte som tyme wip money and grete trauaille, and 3af it to Ioseph his sone ouer¹ his lotte, so seip Hieronymus,² Genesis, octodecimo capitulo. And pis was a cite of refute³ and of socour, so it is i-write Iosua vicesimo capitulo. For pat lond⁴ was de tribu and of pe lynage of Ephraym; and pere were Ioseph is⁵ bones i-buried, after pat⁶ pey were i-brouzte ouzt of Egipte; witnesse of Holy Writt, Iosua ultimo capitulo. In pat place Ioseph his⁷ breperen fedde and kepte flokkes⁸ of bestes: but afterward Abymelech,⁹ Ierobabel¹⁰ sone, destroyed pat place, and slow pe men pat woned perynne, and sewe salt perynne, for pe lond schulde na more¹¹ bere fruit and corne; witnesse Iosua nono capitulo. Also¹² pere is Iacobus welle, pat¹³ Criste reste by, whan he was wery of wey and of goynge. Galilea is a londe bytwene Iudea and Palestina, and is double, pe ouer Galilea and pe neper Galilea, and ioyned to gidres, and also to Syria and to Phenicia;¹⁴ in eyper Galilea is good lond

TREVISA.

And Sicheim was a cite whiche is callede now Neapolis, MS. HARL. whom Iacob bouzte for moneye and grete,¹⁵ 3iffenge hit to Ioseph his sonne, as Seynte Ierom seyethe on Genesim ca°. xviiij^o, whiche was somme tyme the cite of refute with the suburbarbes of hit sette in the costes of the mownte of Efraym, where the bones of Ioseph were buryede¹⁶ after that thei were translate from Egipte, as hit is schewede Iosua ultimo capitulo. In whiche place the breder of Ioseph kepede bestes: whiche place Abimelech destroyede after the son of Zorobabel, sawenge there salte, the inhabitatores of hit y-sleyne, that the londe scholde not be plentuous, as hit is schewede Iosua nono capitulo. Where the Fons welle of Iacob was, on whom Criste beenge feynte of labor Iacob did reste. Galile is a region betwene the Iewery and Galilea. Palestine, whiche is duplicate, the superior and inferior, drawenge to gedre as contiguate to Syria and to Phenicia;¹⁷

2261.

¹ *aboue*, Cx.
² *Iherome*, Cx.
³ *refuge*, Cx.
⁴ So a. and Cx.; MS. adds *pat* (clerical error).
⁵ *Iosephs*, Cx.; *Ioseph his*, a.
⁶ *pat*] om. Cx.
⁷ *Iosephs*, Cx.
⁸ *droues and flockes*, Cx.
⁹ So Cx.; *Abimaleche*, MS.
¹⁰ *Ierobabels*, a. and Cx.

¹¹ *nomore*, Cx. (not a.).
¹² *and*, Cx.
¹³ *pat*] *where*, Cx.
¹⁴ *Fenicia*, MS. and Cx.
¹⁵ The Harl. MS. has omitted *trauaille*, or some such word.
¹⁶ The MS. had *translate* before *buryede*, but a pen is drawn through it.
¹⁷ *Fenicea*, Harl. MS.

gleba est fertilis; lacus¹ utiles et salubres qui pro sui² magnitudine et piscium multitudine maria nuncupantur, sicut patet de lacu Tiberiadis et Genesareth,³ Item⁴ in occiduis partibus Galilææ inferioris versus mare magnum juxta Ptolemaida (quæ est Acon civitas)⁵ est fons quidam, quo metalla injecta⁶ mutantur in vitrum.

Cedar.

Cedar est regio⁷ in superiori parte Palæstinæ, quam incoluit Cedar primogenitus Ismaelis,⁸ et post eum Ismaelitæ,⁹ qui verius dicuntur Agareni quam Saraceni, quia¹⁰ de Agar ancilla matre Ismaelis¹¹ sunt progeniti; sed nomen de Sara sibi¹² usurparunt.¹³ *Methodius*. Hii domos non ædificant, sed per vastam solitudinem vagantes¹⁴ tabernacula inhabitant, de prædis et venationibus victum¹⁵ quærentes. Hii aliquando congregati exhibunt de desertis et occupabunt¹⁶ orbem terræ per octo hebdomadas annorum, urbes subvertent,

¹ *Utriusque gleba fertilis. Lacus* habent, &c., C., D.

² *sui*] om. C. (not D.)

³ So B.; *Genesar*, A., C., D., E.

⁴ *Item*] om. C., D.

⁵ *quæ est Acon civitas*] om. C., D.

⁶ *injecta*] om. B.

⁷ *nomen est regionis*, C., D.

⁸ *Ismael*, A.

⁹ *Cedar, filius Ismaelis, et postmodum Ismaelitæ*, B.; *hanc (tamen,*

D.) *terram postremo (postmodum, D.) incoluerunt Ism.*, C., D.

¹⁰ *qui*, A.

¹¹ *matre Ism.*] om. C., D.

¹² *ibi usurpant*, B.

¹³ *sed ... usurparunt*] quasi usurpato nomine, C., D., which arrange the clauses differently.

¹⁴ *vagantes*] om. B.

¹⁵ *victum*] vitam, C., D.

¹⁶ *occupabunt*] obtinebunt, C., D.

and greet plente of corne and of fruit, grete lakes and huge, profitable and heleful,¹ and som lake is so huge² and so ful of fische þat me clepeþ it a³ see. So þe lake of Tiberiadis is i-cleped þe see of Tiberiadis, and Genosar þat lake is i-cleped also. Also in þe west side of þe neþer Galilea toward þe grete see fast by þat citee Ptolemaida,⁴ þat hatte Acon⁵ also, is a welle þat torneþ into glas⁶ al metal þat is cast perynne. Cedar is a londe yn þe ouerside of Palestina, and hap þe name of þat Cedar þat wonede perynne,⁷ þat Cedar⁸ was Ismael his eldest sone. Þe ofspringe of Cedar and of Ismael were afterwarde i-cleped Ismaelitæ, and also Agareni more riȝtfulliche þan Saraceni,⁹ for þey come of Agar þat was Ismael his moder and serued Sarra, but afterward for pryde þey toke wrongfulliche þe name of Sarra and cleped hem Saraceni. *Methodius*. Þese men haueþ noon hous but walkeþ in wilderness and woneþ in tabernacles and in teeldis,¹⁰ and lyueþ by prayes¹¹ and by venysoun. Þese men schole¹² somtyme gadere to gidres and goo out of wilderness and occupie the londes aboute eiȝt wekes of ȝeres, þat is eiȝte sipes seuene ȝere, and þey

TREVISA.

eiper of hit is plentuous, hauenge profitable waters and wholsome, whiche be callede sees what for the magnitude of theyme and for the copious multitude of fisches, as the water of Tiberiadis and of Genazareth. Also there is a welle in to whom metalles caste be turnede in to glasse in the weste partes of the inferior Galile, towarde the grete see nye to Ptolemaida,¹³ whiche is the cite of Achon. Cedar is a region in the superior parte of Palestine, whom Cedar the firste son of Ysmael didde inhabite; after hym callede more truly Agareni then Saraceni; for the progenye of theyme descendede from Agar, seruaunte and moder of Ismael, vsurpenge to theyme the name of Sara. *Methodius*. Theye edifie noo howses, but, goenge by a waste wildernes, inhabite tabernacles, gettenge theire meyte thro preyes and huntenges. These men somme tyme congregate schalle goe furthe from deserte, and schalle occupye alle the worlde by viij. wekes off yeres, subuertenge citees and defilenge holy

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *helpful*, a. and Cx.² *grete*, Cx.³ So a. and Cx.; þe, MS.⁴ *Ptholomaida*, MS., a., and Cx.⁵ *Acres*, Cx.⁶ *aglas*, a.⁷ þat wonede perynne] Added from a. and Cx.⁸ *Cedar*] Added from a. and Cx.⁹ *Sareceny*, MS.¹⁰ *tentes*, Cx.¹¹ *praye*, Cx.¹² *schulle*, a.; *shal*, Cx.¹³ *Ptolomaida*, Harl. MS.

sacra loca polluent, sacerdotes¹ occident, ad sanctorum sepulcra ligabunt jumenta sua; et hoc pro nequitia Christianorum.² *Ranulphus*. Ista videntur impleri sub ultimis temporibus Heraclii Imperatoris, quando³ Machometus pseudo-propheta Persas occupavit, Ægyptum et Africam subjugavit, nefariamque sectam Saracenorum commentavit,⁴ sicut inferius post tempora Heraclii planum erit.⁵

Phœnicia. *Methodius*. Phœnicia est regio in qua Tyrus et Sidon comprehenduntur⁶ habens ab ortu Arabiam, ab austro mare Rubrum, a septentrione montem Libani, ab occasu mare magnum. *Isidorus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto*. Istis Phœnicibus tradidit Phenix filius Agenoris quasdam litteras vermiculatas, unde et color ille Phœnicus dictus est, et postmodum littera mutata Puniceus dicebatur. *Hugutio, capitulo Phœnix*. Et quia Phœnices fuerunt primi litterarum inventores adhuc litteras capitales rubeo colore scribimus, ut sic repræsentemus eos fuisse litterarum repertoires.

¹ B. adds *autem*.

² *nequitia Christianorum quas faciunt*, added in C., D.

³ *Hoc impletum est tempore Heraclii imperatoris quando*, &c., C., D.

⁴ *commentavit*] *adinvenit*, C., D.

⁵ *sicut infra sub tempore Heraclii continetur*, C., D.

⁶ *regio est in qua sunt Sidon et Tyrus*, C., D., which omit the remainder of the chapter after *mare magnum*, as does also B.

schullep¹ ouertorne citees and townes, and slee preestes, and defoule clerkes and holy places, and teie her² bestes to tombes of holy³ seyntes; þat schal byfalle for wickednesse of euel lyuynge of Cristen men. *R.* Þis doynge semep fulfilde in þe laste tyme of Heraclius þe emperour, whan⁴ þat false prophete Machometys⁵ occupied Persida⁶ and made Egipte and Affrica sogett,⁷ and wroot and brouȝt yn þe false lawe and secte of Saracins, as it is innermore⁸ pleyn i-write after Heraclius tyme. Phenicia⁹ is a lond in þe whiche is conteyned tweye londes, Tyrus and Sidon, and hap in þe est side Arabia, in þe soup þe Rede see, in þe norþ þe hil þe mount Libany,¹⁰ and in þe west þe grete see. *Isidorus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto.* Phenix, Agenoris sone, by toke rede lettres to þe Phenices, þat beep men of Phenicia, and perfore þat colour was i-cleped *Phenicus*; and afterward þe lettre chaunged, and þan it was i-cleped *Puniceus*, þat is, *reed*. *Hugo, capitulo Phœnix.* For Pheniciens¹¹ were þe¹² firste fynderes of lettres, ȝit we writen capital lettres wiþ reed colour, in token and mynde þat Phenices were þe¹² firste fynders of lettres.

TREvisa.

places schalle sle prestes makenge faste theire bestes at MS. HARL. 2261.
the sepulcres of seyntes, and this schalle falle for the wickidnesse and synne of Cristen men. *R.* These thynges seme to have bene fullefillede in the tyme of Heraclius themperoure, when Machomete the false prophete occupied Persa, Egipte, and made Affrike subiecte to hym, commentenge the wickede secte of Saracenys, as hit schal be expressede after the tymes of Heraclius. Phenicia is a region Phenicia. in whom Tyrus and Sidon be comprehendede, hauenge of f. 30. a. the este parte off hit Araby, of the sowthe the Redde see, of the northe the mownte of Libanus, of the weste parte the grete see. *Isidorus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto.* Phenix the sonne of Agenoris toke to these Feniceonnes somme redde letters, wherefore that colour was callede *pheniceus*, and after a letter chaungede hit was *puniceus*. *Hugo, capitulo Phœnix.* And for cause men of that cuntre were the firste fynders of letters we wryte vn to this tyme the capitalle letters with a redde color, that we may represente theyme to be the firste fynders of letters.

¹ *shal*, Cx., as usual.² *here*, a.³ a. omits *holy*.⁴ So Cx.; *what*, MS.⁵ *Machometes*, a.⁶ So Cx. and a.; *Persidia*, MS.⁷ *subgette*, Cx.⁸ *ynnere more*, a.⁹ *Fenicia*, MS., but *Phenix* and*Phenisia* just below; and so a., (nearly). Harl. MS. has *F* everywhere.¹⁰ Perhaps this is meant for the genitive; and if so should be edited *Libani*, as Cx. has it, who omits *þe hil*; a. agrees with MS.¹¹ *Phenices*, a. and Cx.,¹² a. and Cx. omit *þe* (twice).

CAP. XVI.

*De Ægypto.*¹

AB Ægypto Danai fratre dicta est Ægyptus, quæ quondam² Aerea³ vocabatur, ab ortu habens mare Rubrum, ab austro Nilum flumen et Æthiopes, a septentrione mare magnum et partem Syriæ superiorem, ab occasu Libyam. Est itaque Ægyptus regio imbri insueta,⁴ a solo Nilo flumine irrigata et foecundata, frugum et mercium copiosa. *Petrus, capitulo nonagesimo quarto.*⁵ Ægyptus, contra naturam aliarum regionum, quando abundat frugibus,⁶ sterilis⁷ est in pascuis, et e contra. Nam diuturnior⁸ mora Nili fluminis super terram tempora⁹ culturæ¹⁰ impedit vel sata extinguit, et tunc pascua nutrit. Ibi abundant cocodrilli,¹¹ et hippotauri, qui sunt equi fluviales.¹² Ægyptus ad ortum sui vastam habet eremum¹³ varia monstra continentem, ad ejus oc-

¹ Title wanting in the Latin MSS. B. has *Egiptus* in margin.

² *Ægyptus ab Ægypto Danai fratre sic dicta quondam*, C.D.

³ So the MSS. See Eus. *Chron. Can.* (vol. 2. p. 61., ed. Auch.) Isid. lib. xiv. c. 2. § 27., where it is written *Aeria*.

⁴ *inconsueta*, C.; *mansueta*, D.

⁵ 44, C. (not D.)

⁶ *in frugibus*, B.

⁷ *tunc sterilis*, C. (not D.)

⁸ *Diuturnior enim*, C.D.

⁹ *tempora*] tempore, E.; opus, B.

¹⁰ *culturæ*] colendi, C.D.

¹¹ So all the MSS.

¹² *ypotauri* (sic) *et fluviales equi*, C.D.

¹³ *Ad orientem sui vastam* (sic) *habet eremum*, C.D.

De Ægypti provinciis. Capitulum sextum decimum.

TREVISA.

EGIPTE hap þe name of Egipt, Danay his broþer,¹ and hiȝte² somtyme Aer[e]a,³ and hap in þe est side þe Rede see, in þe south þe ryuer Nilus and Blomen,⁴ in þe north þe grete see and þe ouere partie of Syria, and in þe west Libya. Egipt is silde bereyne,⁵ and hap water and moisture onliche of þe ryuer Nilus, and is riche of corne and fruit and marchaundise.⁶ *Petrus, capitulo nonagesimo quarto.* Egipte aȝenst kynde of oper londes hap plente of corn; he is bareyne⁷ of lesue,⁸ and whan he hap plente of lesue it⁹ is bareyne of corn. For whan þe ryuer Nilus is vppe and ouer wexip and ouerflowep þe londe and abideþ longe in seed tyme, or¹⁰ þe flood wiþdrawe, it letteþ sowynge and drenchep¹¹ þe seed; and so corne is destroyed, and lesue and gras growep after in tyme. Þere beep cokkedrilly¹² and hippotauri¹³ also, þat beep water hors.¹⁴ Egipt hap in þe est side a grete wilderness and dyuerse manere bestes wonderliche

Capitulum sextum decimum.

EGIPTE toke the name of hit of Egyptus, broþer off Danay, MS. HARL. which was callede somme tyme Aeria, hauenge on the este 2261. parte to hit the Redde see, of the sowthe Nilus and men of Ynde, of the northe the grete see and the superior parte of Syria, of the waste parte the mownte of Libanus. This region of Egipte is not vsede to reyne, hauenge water oonly of that floode callede Nilus, plentuous of corne and copious of marchandise. *Petrus, capitulo nonagesimo quarto.* When Egipte is plentuous of corne, hit is bareyne in pastures, ageyne the nature of other regiones and in contrary wyse; for the taryenge of þat floode callede Nilus on the londe lettethe the tymes of plowenge, other destroyethe cornes and then hit noryschethe pastures. Cocodrilles be habundaunte there and horses of the floode, callede hippotauri.¹⁵ Egipte hathe at the este parte of hit waste deserte, conteynenge

¹ Danays broder, Cx.
² highte, Cx., inconsistently. See p. 115.

³ Aerea, a.; Aeria, Cx.
⁴ So a.; Blomen, MS.; Blac men, Cx.

⁵ is sylde bereyne, a.; is zelde beraynd (so), Cx.; bareyne, MS.

⁶ of fruyt and of, Cx.

⁷ barayn, a.

⁸ lese, a.; pasture, Cx., who omits two or three lines here.

⁹ he, a. (more consistently.)

¹⁰ ar, a.

¹¹ adrenchep, a.

¹² cocodrilly, a.; cocodrylly, Cx.

¹³ ipotauri, MS.; ipotaury, a.; ypotamy, Cx., which is nearer the truth, but may be his own correction.

¹⁴ hors] horses, Cx. (not a.)

¹⁵ ypotauri, Harl. MS.

cidentem est regio Canopea, quæ quidem insula finis est Ægypti, et Libyæ principium. Ibique est ostium Nili fluminis, ubi cadit¹ in mare magnum. *Ranulphus*. Nilus tamen qui et Gyon,² quamvis³ legatur de Paradiso procedere, asseritur tamen oriri⁴ in occidentali⁵ fine⁶ Æthiopis, non procul ab Atlantico monte, qui inde circuiens Æthiopiam, descendit per Ægyptum, cujus plana irrigat, atque ratione limositatis quam secum trahit terram fœcundat. Et sic, secundum Hieronymum super Amos prophetam, Nilus Dei dispositione totam Ægyptum irrigat. Cumulis enim arenarum claudentibus ostium ejus ne cito in mare magnum descendat, post irrigationem præfatam solutis arenis redit in alveum suum. Et⁷ tandem ad⁸ mare tendens juxta Canopeam et Libyam a mari magno absorbetur. Vult tamen Isidorus, libro tertio decimo, quod Nilus aquilonis⁹ flatibus percussus¹⁰ aquis sic retro luctantibus intumescit.¹¹

¹ *ubi cadit*] cadentis, D.

² *aut Gion*, B.

³ *quamvis*] si, C. ; licet, D.

⁴ *oritur tamen*, C.D.

⁵ *orientali*, D.

⁶ *ad occidentales fines*, B.

⁷ *Et sic*, C.D.

⁸ *in*, B.

⁹ *ab aquilonis*, A.

¹⁰ *percussis*, A.

¹¹ *intumescit*] intumescat, C.D.

i-schape,¹ and in þe west Canopea, þe whiche ilond is þe ende of Egipte and bygynnyng of Libya. Þere is þe moup² of Nilus, for þere Nilus falleþ into þe grete see. *R.* Þey me³ rede in bookes, þat Nilus, þat hatte Gyon also, rennep out of Paradys; 3it it is i-seide þat Nilus springep vp in þe west⁴ ende of Ethiopia nouȝt fer from þe hulle þat hatte Mons Atlas.⁵ And þan Nilus goop forþ aboute Ethiopia and doun into Egipt, and ouerflowep þe pleyne contraies of Egipt, and bycause of slym þat rennep þerwith, he⁶ makeþ þe londe fatte and good to bere good⁷ corne and fruit. So, seiþ Hieronymus vpon þe prophete Amos, by Goddis owne ordenaunce Nilus ouerflowep and watereþ al þe lond of Egipte, for hepes of grauel stoppeþ his cours, þat he may nouȝt anon⁸ falle into þe grete see; but after þat he hap so biþlowe and i-watred þe lond, þe hepes of grauel to schedeþ and to falleþ;⁹ and þan þe water falleþ into þe chanel aȝe, and so¹⁰ rennep into þe grete see. Neuerpeles¹¹ Isidre seiþ, libro tertio decimo, þat Nilus is i-dreue aȝe¹² and i-lette of his cours wiþ þe norþern wynde; and so þe water swelleþ, and¹³ flowep and wexeþ greet; but Beda in libro de

TREVISIA.

diuerse wonders, at the weste parte of whom is a region callede Canopia, whiche yle is the ende of Egipte and the begynnege of Libia, where the durre of the floode callede Nilus is, where hit fallethe in to the grete see. *R.* Nilus or Gyon thauȝhe hit be affermede to haue begynnege from paradise, hit is seyde to haue his originalle in þe weste partes of the end of Ethiop, not ferre from the mownte Atlantike, whiche compassenge Ethioppe descendethe by Egipte, the pleyne cuntres of whom hit dothe watre and makethe the londe plentuous thro slycche that hit drawethe with hit. And so, after seynte Ierom super Amos prophetam, that floode called Nilus thro the disposicion of God, watrethe alle Egipte, the grete hepes of gravelle schuttenge the durre of hit, that hit scholde not descende soone in to the grete see: after the seyde waterenge, the hepes of the gravelle loosedede, hit descendenge nye to Canopea and Libia is receyvede of the grete see. Neuerpelesse Isoder wille, libro 13^o, that Nilus swellethe thro northe wyndes waters makenge grete stryvenge behynde hit; but Beda, de Naturis

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ wrouȝt, a.; shape, Cx.² So a.; and Cx.; money, MS.³ Though men, Cx. (as usual); not a.⁴ est, a. (not Cx.)⁵ Athlas, MS., a., and Cx. (as usual.)⁶ he] it, Cx. (and so often.)⁷ Cx. omits good.⁸ anon] lyghtly, Cx.⁹ departe and befallē, Cx., who prints, however, to shedeth below.¹⁰ so] om. Cx.¹¹ neithales, Cx.¹² dryuen agayn, Cx.¹³ and] om. Cx.

Sed Beda, in libro de naturis rerum, dicit quod Zephyrus flans in mense Maio arenas cumulat quibus¹ Nili ostia præstruuntur. Sicque Nilus, ex repercussione et præstructione² intumescens, plana terræ irrigat, cessante autem vento solutisque arenis redit in alveum, per quem in mare magnum descendit.³

CAP. XVII.

*De Scythia.*⁴

MEMORANDUM est hic quod⁵ Scythia duplex est, superior in Asia, inferior in Europa. Scythia ergo⁶ superior regio magna est⁷ in aquilone, plurimum inhabitabilis propter frigus. Ab ortu Indiæ,⁸ a⁹ septentrione oceano, a meridie Caucasio, ab occasu usque ad Germaniæ principium quondam¹⁰ porrigebatur. Modo vero minor effecta ad sui occasum Hyrcaniæ copulatur. In qua terra sunt montes Hyperborei, griphe immanes, aurum, gemmæ, et smaragdi. *Trogus, libro secundo.*¹¹ Gentis illius agrorum¹² nulli fines distincti neque ex-

¹ *ex quibus*, B.

² So A.; *presticcione*, E. B. omits *et præstructione*.

³ *Sed Beda descendit*] om. C.D.

⁴ Title wanting in the Latin MSS. B. has *Scythia* (Scicia) in margin.

⁵ *Memorandum quod*] om. C.D.

⁶ *ergo*] So A.B.D.E.; *vero*, C.

⁷ *est magna*, A. D. omits *est*.

⁸ *Judeæ*, A.; *Judeam*, B., which has also *oceanum*, and *Caucasum* just afterwards.

⁹ *in*, A.

¹⁰ *quondam*] om. D.

¹¹ *primo*, B. (at length), wrongly. See Justin, lib. ii. capp. 1-5.

¹² *agrorum*] om. C. (not D.)

naturis seip̄ pat̄ pis¹ northerne wynde blowep in May, and stoppep² pe cours of pe water of Nilus wip hepes of grauel; and so pe water ariseþ and ouerfloweth pe londe; but whan pe wynde ceseþ, pe grauel to schedep and pe water falleþ in to pe chanel, and so turneth³ downward in to pe grete⁴ see.

TR EVISA.

De Scythia.⁵ Capitulum septimum decimum.

HERE take hede of tweie londes, eiper hatte⁶ Scythia; pe ouere is in Asia, pe nepere in⁷ Europa; pe ouere Scythia is a grete londe in pe north, and haþ moche wildernes by cause of greet colde and chele, and strecchep⁸ somtyme estward anon to⁹ Inde,¹⁰ northwarde to¹¹ ocean, southward to pe hille Caucasus, westward anon to Germania;¹² but now he is i-made lasse, and endeþ in pe west side to¹³ Hyrcania. In pe whiche londe beþ pe hilles Iperborey, greet grypes, gold and smaragdes, and oþer precious stones. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Pilke men destingeþ nouȝt noþer to

rerum, seyethe in this wise, that the sowthe wynde blawenge in the monethe of May makethe hepes of gravelle, pro whom the durrres of that floode called Nilus be stoppdede, pro whiche stoppunge the pleyne growndes of Egipte be replete with water; that wynde seasenge and the gravelles y-loosed hit returnethe in to his place, by whom hit descendethe in to the grete see.

MS. HARL.
2261.

Capitulum septimum decimum.

HIT is to be attendede that Scythia is duplicate, the superior in Asia, the inferior in Europa. The superior Scythia is a grete region moche inhabitable in the northe parte of hit for coldenesse, copledde of the este parte to Ynde, of the northe to the ocean, of the sowthe the hille called Caucasus, somme tyme porrecte in to the begynnenge of Germanye, now hit is made lesse, and copulate to the region of Hircany to the weste parte of hit. In whiche londe be the hilles Yperboreus, huge griphonnes, golde, gemmes, and smaragdis. *Trogus, libro secundo.* There be noo endes distincte of the

¹ pis] þe, Cx.

² stopped, Cx.

³ turnep] renneth, Cx.

⁴ So Cx.; rede, MS.

⁵ Both MSS., a. and Cx. here and below give Scicia or Sicilia; other proper names are also a little corrupted.

⁶ that eche of hem is named, Cx.

⁷ is in, Cx.

⁸ streizte, a.

⁹ anon to] vnto, Cx., and so below.

¹⁰ So a. and Cx.; þe ende, MS.

¹¹ to] toward, Cx.

¹² Iermania, MS., and a.; but elsewhere (as p. 171) spelt correctly.

¹³ So a., Cx.; of, MS.

culti. Nulla illis¹ domus. Uxores et liberos in plaustris vehunt. Coriis ferinis tecti, laneis vestibibus non utuntur. Lacte et melle pasti, aurum et argentum non curant. Nihil parant quod amittere timent. Nullum apud eos delictum furto gravius. Victores effecti² nihil præter gloriam concupiscunt. Nulli hominum unquam subacti,³ Vesorem⁴ regem Ægypti debellaverunt;⁵ Darium regem Persarum fugarunt; Cyrum regem trucidarunt; Zephironem,⁶ Alexandri magni ducem, cum suis copiis deleverunt, Asiam ter conquisierunt,⁷ quæ eis postmodum per mille quingentos annos⁸ vectigalis mansit.⁹ Viri eorum Parthos et Bactrianos, feminæ eorum Amazonum regna condiderunt. Incertumque est apud illos quis sexus illustrior fuerit. In prima namque expeditione¹⁰ Asiana, post Vesorem regem Ægypti fugatum, in

¹ *illis*] om. A. B has *eis*.

² *effecti*] om. C.D.

³ *subacti*] subjecti, C.D.

⁴ *Vesogem*, C.D. The name of this king is given as *Vexoris* in Grævius' edition of Justin (*u. s.*), where, however, the MSS. differ; Vossius conjectures *Sesosis*. B., by accident, has *victorie* here, but reads *Vesorem* below.

⁵ So E., in full; *debellarunt*, A.B.D.

⁶ *Zephironam*, A.B.C.D. The true form is *Zopyriona*. See Justin, lib. ii. c. 3.

⁷ *conquesierunt*, MSS.

⁸ *annos*] om. E.

⁹ *quæ eis per multos annos vectigalis fuit*, C.D.

¹⁰ *expeditione*] om. A.

sette her feeldes by boundes, noþer by meres;¹ þey hauep TREVISA.
 non house yn for to wonye; her wyfes and here children
 þei ledeþ in cartes; and þey beep i-cloped in wylde bestes
 skynnes. Wollen clopes useþ þey nouȝt;² þey lyueth by
 mekk³ and by hony; þey reccheþ nouȝt of gold, noþer of
 siluer;⁴ þei greipeþ⁵ no þing þat þey dredeþ to lese, þey
 acounteþ no trespas gretter þan robberie; here werrioures⁶
 and victoures desireþ not⁷ but worschippe: þey were neuere
 soget to no man.⁸ Þey ouercome⁹ Vesore þe kyng of Egipte
 in werre and batayle, Darius þe kyng of Pers¹⁰ þey chasede
 and ferede, and made him flee. Cyrus þe kyng þey slowh.
 Also þei destroyed Zephirona and his riches; Zephirona was
 þe greet Alexander his ledere.¹¹ Þries þey conquered Asia,
 and Asia was afterwarde tributarie to hem a powsand ȝere
 and fyue hondred. Þe men of þis peple be¹² by hem selue
 and þe¹³ women by hem self. Also þey made¹⁴ kyngdoms of
 dyuerse londres; þe¹⁵ men made of Parthia and Bactria, and
 þe wommen¹⁶ made of Amazonia kyngdoms myȝty and stronge.
 and so it is among hem vncerteyn and vnknowe wheþer is
 more worþy and more noble in kynde,¹⁷ men or wommen.¹⁶
 In þe firste iourney in Asia after þat þey hadde i-dreue and
 i-chased and i-pursewed Vasore þe kyng of Egipt in to þe¹⁸

feldes of that peple. Thei haue noo howses, caryenge theire MS. HARL.
 wyfes and children in waynes couerede with the skynnes of 2261.
 wilde bestes and not clothes of wolles, fedde with mylke
 and hony, ȝiffenge noo attendance to golde and siluyr, whiche
 ordeyne not eny thyng that thei drede to lose. There is
 noo trespas to theym more grevous than thefte, whiche
 beyng victoures desire no moore but glory; not subiecte to
 eny man, causenge Darius kyng of Persa to take fliȝhte,
 sleenge the kyng callede Cyrus, and Zephirona¹⁹ the nowble
 duke of kyng Alexander with his hoste, conqerenge twyes
 Asia, whiche was tributary to theim by m^l. and v^c. yeres;
 the women of whom made the realmes of Amasonnes; hit
 is incerteine to theym wheþer kynde be more nowble. In
 the firste expedicion Azian,²⁰ after Vesour the kyng of Egipte

¹ *nether marke her felde by boundes, ne by dyches, Cx.*

² *none, Cx.*

³ *melk, a.; mylk, Cx.*

⁴ *selver, a.*

⁵ *make, Cx.*

⁶ *men of warre, Cx.*

⁷ *nothing, Cx.*

⁸ *subget yet to ony man, Cx.*

⁹ *ouercame, Cx. (not a.)*

¹⁰ *Regem Persarum, a.; fered Darius the kyng, Cx., who has sloughe Cyrus below.*

¹¹ *Alysaunders capytayn, Cx.*

¹² *be]* Added from Cx. (absent from a.)

¹³ *om. þe.*

¹⁴ *made]* Added from a. and Cx.

¹⁵ *So Cx.; þat, MS., a.*

¹⁶ *wymmen, Cx. (bis).*

¹⁷ *nature and kynde, Cx.*

¹⁸ *in the, Cx.*

¹⁹ *Sirus and Zephizona, Harl. MS.*

²⁰ *So Harl. MS. (z and ȝ are identical in this MS.)*

redeundo circa Asiam pacandam quindecim annis viri immorati, querelis uxorum tantam moram non ferentium revocantur. In secunda expeditione, viris dolo interfectis, uxores debitam de hostibus ultionem sumpserunt. In tertia vero¹ expeditione, viris per quatuor annos absentibus, nupserunt conjuges serviis propriis ad custodiam pecorum domi relictis, qui simul vincti dominos suos post victoriam reversos bello excipiunt. Quibus vicissim² varia sorte sic bellantibus, monentur domini mutare genus pugnæ, tanquam non cum³ hostibus sed cum servis conflicturi. Unde et depositis armis militaribus, flagella manu ferunt, et sic servos terrent⁴ et abigunt. Qui vero capi poterant, una cum

¹ *vero*] om. B.

² *sic vicissim*, B., which has also the *sic* immediately following.

³ *cum*] om B.; but which has it just afterwards.

⁴ *terunt*, A. apparently.

tornyng aȝe, þey abede¹ fiftene ȝere for to make pees in Asia. But wyfes made grete pleyntes and sorwes² þat hire housbondes were so longe from home,³ and so þe men were of sent⁴ and torned home to⁵ dwelle wip hir wifes. In þe secounde iornay þe men were by traisoun i-slawe, and þe wifes took greet wreche of þe enemyes. In þe þridde iornay⁶ þe men were oute and absent foure ȝere to gidres, and [þe]⁷ wifes wedded hir owne seruantes and bonde men⁸ þat were i-left⁸ at home for kepyng of bestes. But whan here lordes and housbondes had þe victorie and torned home aȝen, þe wyfes and here⁹ newe housbondes gadred hem to gidres and arrayed hem in a greet bataille to fiȝte aȝen hire olde lordes and housbondes þat were comyng home;¹⁰ and whan þey mette to gidres hap¹¹ was vnstable and vnstedefast; ones¹² wip þat oon side, and eft wip þat oper. Panne¹³ þe lordes bypouȝte hem, and toke hem to rede¹⁴ operwise to fiȝte wip hir owne¹⁵ bonde men þan wip¹⁶ enemyes of straunge lordes, and caste away hire owne armure and wepene of knyȝtis, and bere whippes in hir hondes; and so fered þe cherles,¹⁷ and droof hem away, and made hem to fle. And afterward, al þat myȝte be i-take of pilke false cherles and of þe false wifes þat hadde

TREVISA.

y-putte to fiȝhte, taryenge xv. yere to make Asia to their pleasure, were called home ageyne thro the instaunces of their wifes wyllenge not to suffre the taryenge of theyme. In the secunde expedicion, the men sleyne by treason and gyle, their wifes toke dewe vengeance on their enemyes. In the thrydde expedicion, the men beenge absent by iiij. f. 31. a. yere, the wifes of them were maryede to their seruantes lefte at home to kepe bestes, whiche ioinede to gedre receyved their lordes with batelle returnede after peire victory, whiche fiȝhtenge thro diuerse chaunce were movede at the laste to putte awaye their armor of cheuallery, vsenge not to conflicte as with their enemyes but with their seruantes, takenge a flayle in their honde, feringe their seruantes and dryvenge theyme awaye. And somme of the seruantes

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *abode*, Cx.² *sorwe*, a.³ So Cx.; *hire*, MS.⁴ *sente fore*, Cx.⁵ *and dwelled*, a. and Cx.⁶ So a.; *iorday*, MS.⁷ Added from Cx.; absent from a.⁸ *left*, a., Cx.⁹ *the*, Cx.¹⁰ *homeward*, Cx.; *hoom*, a.¹¹ *fortune*, Cx.¹² So a. and Cx.; *unstedfastnesse* wip, MS.¹³ *that*, Cx. (typogr. error ?)¹⁴ *and toke hem to rede*] and concluded, Cx.¹⁵ *owne*] Added from a. and Cx.¹⁶ *with theyr*, Cx.¹⁷ Cx. omits some words which follow down to *false wifes*.

adulteris uxoribus, partim ferro, partim patibulo, sunt perempti. Post hæc apud Scythas pax fuit¹ usque ad tempora² Darii regis Persarum, qui ab illis contritus in redeundo Macedones perdomuit et Athenienses debellavit.³

De Bactria. Bactria, quam primum incoluit Cham,⁴ filius Noe, jacet a mari Caspio usque ad Indum⁵ fluvium protensa, habetque ab occidente montem Caucasum, ab austro Parthos.

De monte Caucaso. Hic autem Caucasus, inter omnes montes orientales prolixior⁶ et formosior,⁷ a finibus Indiæ⁸ usque ad⁹ montem Taurum¹⁰ porrigitur. Unde¹¹ unus atque idem mons Taurus et Caucasus¹² reputatur. Sed volunt quidam¹³ ut¹⁴ occidentalis pars Caucasi versus Armeniam sit Taurus.¹⁵ Habet autem Caucasus ab aquilone Caspium mare et Hyrcaniam,¹⁶ ab austro Parthiam, Assyriam,¹⁷ et Babyloniam.¹⁸ Qui quidem mons pro varietate collimantium¹⁹ regionum variis appellatur nominibus. Itaque²⁰

¹ pax fuit apud Scythas, B.

² tempus, B.

³ In prima namque . . Athenienses debellavit] om. C.D.

⁴ Sham, E.

⁵ Nylum, C., distinctly (not D.); Sulum, B.

⁶ A. and B. add est.

⁷ fumosior, C.D.

⁸ Judeæ, B.

⁹ ad] om. B.

¹⁰ Taurum montem, C.D.

¹¹ Unde et, C.D.

¹² mons cum eodem, C.D.

¹³ quidem, A.

¹⁴ quod, B.

¹⁵ Sed volunt . . Taurus] om. C.D.

¹⁶ Hispaniam, C., distinctly (not D.)

¹⁷ Syriam, B.

¹⁸ Babyloniam et Mesopotumiam tangit, C.D.

¹⁹ Sic A.B.E. ; de proprietate habitantium, C.D.

²⁰ Ita, A.

i-broke spousaille hadde schenful¹ deth; for som were i-slawe with iren, and som were an honged ful hiȝe. After pis phare² was pees in Scythia for to Darij his tyme³ kyng of Persida. Þanne Darius was ouercome of þe Scytes⁴ men of Scythia, and in þe tornynge homward he ouercome Macedones, pat beep men of Macedonia of pat londe, and werede vppon Athenienses men of Athenis.

TREVISA.

Bactria is a lond⁵ pat Cham, Noe⁶ sone, woned first ynne, and streccheþ from þe see Caspius anon to þe ryuer of Inde, and hap in þe west side þe mount Caucasus, and in þe south Parthia. Þis hille Caucasus is lengest of alle þe est hilles, and most famous, and streccheþ from þe endes of Inde anon to þe hille pat hatte Mount Taurus, so pat mont Taurus⁷ and Caucasus is i-conteyned al oon hille; but som men seiþ pat þe westside of Caucasus, pat is toward Armenia, is and hatte mount Taurus. Pat mount Caucasus hap in þe northside þe see pat hatte Caspius and Hyrcania pat londe, and in⁸ þe southside Parthia and Assyria and Babylon.⁹ Pat hil, for dyuerse contrees and londes pat streccheþ and recheþ þerto, hap¹⁰ many and

taken with their wives in advoutery were hongede and somme sleyn with swerde. After that tyme peace was amonge theyme vn to the tyme of Darius kyng of Persa, whiche ouer comen of theyme in returnenge from them hade victory of the men of Macedony and did fiȝhte also ageynes men of Atheynes.

MS. HARL.
2261.

Bactria, whom Cham, sonne of Noe, inhabite firste, lyethe Bactria. from the see Caspy to the floode of Ynde protendede, hauenge of the weste parte to hit the mownte Caucasus, and Mons of the sowthe men of Parthia. This hille callede moste Caucasus. nowble in fame amonge alle other mowntes of the este¹¹ to the mownte of Taurus from the costes of Ynde, where Mons the hille callede Taurus and Caucasus be reputate oon. But Taurus. somme men wille that the hille callede Taurus is made of the weste partes of Caucasus towarde Armenye. This hille Caucasus hathe of the northe to hit the see Caspy and Hircany, of the sowthe Parthia, Assyria, and Babylon, whiche hille is callede in diuerse maneres and name for the diuersite of

¹ *schendeful*, a.; *shameful*, Cx.² *fare*, a.; *iourney*, Cx.³ *unto the tyme of Darius*, Cx.⁴ So Cx.; *Cytes*, MS.; *Cytes*, a.⁵ *and werede . . . a lond*] Added from a. and Cx.⁶ *Noes*, a.⁷ *so pat Mont Taurus*] Added from a. and Cx.⁸ a. adds *in*.⁹ *Babiloun*, MS. and a.¹⁰ *That hille, by cause it stretcheth to dyuerse contreys and londes, hath, &c.*, Cx.¹¹ The verb (= *porrigitur*) is omitted.

versus orientem, ubi in celsiorem surgit¹ verticem, pro candore nivium ibidem jugiter morantium, Caucasus dicitur, quod sonat² candidum. Et, secundum fratrem Albertum, mons iste tantæ est altitudinis,³ quod qui sub eo degunt vident super eum radios solis occidentis per tres horas infra noctem, et itidem⁴ mane⁵ per tres horas ante diem super orientalem partem montis.⁶

De Hyrcania.

Hyrcania regio⁷ habet ab ortu mare Caspium, ab austro Armeniam, a septentrione Albaniam, ab occasu Hiberiam.⁸ Jacet autem⁹ sub jugo Caucasi montis, a sylva Hyrcania sic vocata,¹⁰ regio quædam¹¹ feras fovens, tigrides et pantheras. Regio vasta et lata, habens gentes xlv., quarum quædam¹² terras colunt, quædam de¹³ venatione vivunt, quædam humana carne¹⁴ vescuntur. Ibi sunt aves Hyrcanæ, pennas habentes de nocte lucentes. Hiberia¹⁵ est regio sub monte Tauro jacens, quæ¹⁶ versus occasum et¹⁷ juxta pontum jungitur Armeniæ.

De Albania.

Albania habet¹⁸ ab ortu mare Caspium, descenditque per ora septentrionalis oceani usque ad Mæotides paludes; habetque¹⁹ populum albo²⁰ crine nascentem cum

¹ *exsurgit*, C.

² *quod lingua eorum*, D.

³ *mons . . . altitudinis*] om. A. B. omits *mons iste*.

⁴ So B.E., distinctly; *iterum*, A.

⁵ *de mane*, B.

⁶ *Et, secundum . . . partem montis*] om. C.D. A. and B. have *montis partem*.

⁷ *regio*] om. C.D.

⁸ *Hiberniam*, E.

⁹ *Jacet autem*] *Est itaque regio*, C.D.

¹⁰ *sic vocata*] *nuncupata*, C.D., which omits *regio . . . pantheras*.

¹¹ *quædam*] *quidam*, A.E.; *quidem*, B.

¹² *quidam*, A., and so below (twice).

¹³ *de*] om. A.

¹⁴ *carne humana*, C.D.

¹⁵ E. has for rubric: *De insula Hiberia!*

¹⁶ *quæ*] om. A.

¹⁷ C. and D. omit *quæ* and *et*.

¹⁸ after *ortu* in C.D.

¹⁹ *huncque*, E. (misreading the copy); *habet*, D.

²⁰ *cum albo*, B.

dyuers names. Pat hille is hiȝeste in¹ pe est side, and for whiȝtnesse of snowe pat lieȝ alwey peron he is cleped² Mons Caucasus, pat is to menyng³ a⁴ white hille. Albertus seip pat hil is so hiȝe, pat men pat woneȝ perby seep pe sonne bemes⁴ in pe west side pre houres wip ynne pe⁵ nyȝt, and so meny houres to fore pe day in pe est side of pat⁶ hille.

Hyrkania pat londe hap in pe est side pe see Caspius, in pe south Armenia, in pe north Albania, and in pe west Iberia pat lond; and lieȝ beside⁷ pe mount Caucasus, and hap pe name of pat wode pat hatte Hyrcania. In pat londe beep dyuers wylde bestes and foules, tigris pat beeste,⁸ and pantera also. Pat londe is wyde and large, and hap foure and fourty manere men. Som tilieȝ⁹ lond, and som lyueȝ by huntynge, and som eteȝ manis flesche. Pere beep briddes pat hatte¹⁰ hircane, hire fetheres schyne by nyȝte.

Hiberia pat lond lieȝ¹¹ vnder mont Taurus, and lith westward fast by Pontus, and ioynȝ to Armenye. Albania pat lond hap in pe est side pe see Caspius, and streccheȝ downward by pe mouthes of pe North Occean anon to pe wateres pat hatte Meotides. And pe men of pat lond beep

men inhabitenge hit. For towarde the este, where hit dothe aryse in moste altitude, for the huge whitenesse of men that dwelle there, hit is callede Caucasus, whiche sowndethe whyte. And, after Alberte, hit is of so huge altitude that men lyffenge vnder hit see on hyt the beames of the sonne beenge in the weste by iij. howres with in the nyȝhte, and also in the mornenge iij. howres afore day on the este parte of hit. The region Hircany hathe Hyrcania on the este parte to hit the see of Caspy, on the northe Albania, on the weste Hiberia, beenge subiecte to Caucasus, callede Hyrcania of a woode so namede, whiche is a region noryschenge wylde bestes, tigres, panteres, a waste region and brode, the peple of whom somme tulle erthe, somme lyve by huntenge, somme of theyme do eyte the flesche of man. There be bryddes in that region hauenge fethers schynenge in the nyȝhte. Hiberia is a region vnder that hille Taurus, whiche is Hiberia. ioinede to Armenye towarde the este.

Albania hathe on the este parte to hit the see of Caspy, Albania. descendenge by the regiones of the northe occean to Meotides paludes. That region hathe peple with white f. 31. b.

¹ on, Cx.

² i-cleped, a.

³ the, Cx.

⁴ beme, Cx.

⁵ Cx. omits pe.

⁶ be, a, Cx.

⁷ by the syde of, Cx.; beside of, a.

⁸ beeste.] So Cx.; foul, MS., a.

⁹ tyllen, Cx.

¹⁰ birdes that ben called, Cx., who, however, has heyghte just before.

¹¹ lith, a.

oculis pictis¹ et glaucis, melius de nocte quam de die videntes.² Hujus terræ sunt canes tam immanes et³ feroces ut tauros premant, leones⁴ perimant, e⁵ quibus unus, Alexandro magno missus, triumphavit in stadio de leone, elephante, et apro.

De Gothia. Gothia est regio Scythiæ inferior⁶ versus circium, cui subjacet insula Gothlandia omni mercium genere copiosa. Habet⁷ ab aquilone Daciam et oceanum septentrionalem. Dicitur autem Gothia a Gog filio Japhet,⁸ cujus gentes potius Gothos quam Gogos nominaverunt. Gens quidem⁹ fortis, ingens, terribilis, de quorum¹⁰ stirpe processerunt Daci in Europa, Gætuli in Africa, Amazones in Asia.

De Armenia.

Armenia, quæ alio nomine dicitur Ararath, ab Armenio Jasonis milite¹¹ nuncupata est, qui¹² Armenius, amisso Jasone Thessalo rege suo,¹³ recollecta¹⁴ multitudine militum qui passim vagabantur,¹⁵ Armeniam occupavit¹⁶ et inhabitavit. Quæ quidem¹⁷ regio protenditur

¹ *oculisque pictis* (quid ?), B.

² *adeo ut melius . . . videant*, C.D.

³ *ingentes sunt canes tam f.*, C.D.

⁴ *et leones*, A.

⁵ *e]* de, C.D.

⁶ So A.E.; *inferioris*, B.C.D. C. and D. omit *versus circium*.

⁷ *Habet autem hæc Gothia*, C.D. (the latter has *gens*.)

⁸ *oceanum, a Gog (Goth, D.) filio Japhet sic dicta, &c.*, C.D.

⁹ *quidem]* om. C.D.

¹⁰ *quarum*, D.

¹¹ *milite Jasonis*, C.D.

¹² *hic*, C.D.

¹³ *amisso rege Jasone Thessalo*, C.D.

¹⁴ *collecta*, A.

¹⁵ *vacabantur*, B.; *multitudine ejus quæ passim vagabatur*, C.D.

¹⁶ *cepit*, C.D.

¹⁷ *hæc*, C.D.

i-bore wip white here and wip ȝelowe¹ eyȝen i-peynt, and seep better be nyȝte þan be daye. Þe houndes of þat londe beep so greet, so grym, and stronge þat þey prowep doun boles² and sleep lyouns. Oon of pilke houndes was sent to kyng Alexandre, and fauȝte wipynne lystes wip a leon and an olyfaunt, and wip a wylde bore, and hadde þe maystric. TREVISA.

Gotha is þe neper partie of Scythia toward Circium.³ To þat lond Gothia liep þe ilond Gothlandia; þat ylond hap plente of al manere marchaundise, and hap in þe north side Dacia, and in þe southe syde⁴ ocean, and hatte Gothea of Gos, Iapheth his sone. Þe⁵ men of þat lond beep rediloker⁶ i-cleped Gothy þan Gogi, and beþ wei stronge men and huge,⁷ grym and sterne, and of hem com þe Dacies in Europa, Getuli in Affrica, Amazonas in Asia.

Armenia, þat hatte also Ararath, hap þe name of Armenius, Iasons knyȝt, the whiche Armenius, whan he hadde i-lost Iason,⁸ kyng of Thessalia,⁹ he gadere knyȝtes þat roiled¹⁰ aboute, and toke Armenia, and woned þerynne.

heire, peyntede eien and ȝelowe, seenge better in the nyȝhte than in the daye. The dogges of whiche region be so greet and ferse that thei depresse bulles and peresche lyones, of whome oon was sende to kyng Alexander, whiche hade the victory with in a forlonge of a bulle, an elephaunte, and of a boore. Gothia is a region of Scythia MS. HARL. 2261.

towarde the weste, to whom the yle of Gotlande is subiecte, copious of alle kyndes of marchandise, hauenge on the northe parte to hit Dacia and the northe ocean. That londe was callede Gothia of Gog, the sonne of Iapheth, the peple of whom be callede rather Gothos then Gogos, whiche be nyȝty men and terrible, of whom men of Denmarke, in Europe, come, Getuliones or Getules in Affrike, and the Amasonnes in Asia. Gothia.

Armenia, whiche operwise callede Ararthe, toke the name of hit of Armenius, knyȝhte of Iason, whiche Armenius Iason his kyng loste gedrenge a multitude of knyȝtes, whiche wente abowte as vagabundes, occupiede Armenye and inhabite hit, whiche region is protendede betwene Armenia.

¹ ȝelew, a.

² booles, a.; bulles, Cx.

³ So a. and Cx.; Circion, MS.

⁴ southe syde] So Cx.; norþ, MS. Dacia and þe north ocean, a., which agrees with the Latin, and is probably right.

⁵ So a.; þat, MS.

⁶ reedloker, a.; redlyer, Cx.

⁷ and ben right stronge men, grete, grym, and sturne, Cx.

⁸ a. and Cx. adds his.

⁹ Tessalia, MS., a. (not Cx.)

¹⁰ roiled, a.; royled, Cx.

inter montem Taurum et Caucasum a Caspio mari usque ad Cappadociam. Habet autem in longitudine undecies centum millia passuum, in latitudine vero septingenta¹ millia.² Ibi est mons Ararath,³ ubi arca Noe⁴ consedit post diluvium, et sunt duæ Armeniæ,⁵ major et minor, superior et inferior, sicut duæ Pannoniæ.

CAP. XVIII.

De Cappadocia.

CAPPADOCIA regio⁶ equorum nutritrix ab ortu habet Armeniam, ab occasu Asiam minorem, ab aquilone Amazones, ab austro Taurum⁷ montem, cui subjacet Cilicia, Lycia,⁸ et Isauria, usque ad Cilicium sinum qui prospicit⁹ contra insulam Cyprum. Asia minor ab ortu tangit Cappadociam, a cæteris lateribus clauditur¹⁰ mari magno. Nam a septentrione habet Pontum Euxinum, ab occasu Propontidem, ab austro Ægyptium mare.

De provinciis
Asiæ
minoris.

¹ So E. at length and rightly; *septuaginta*, A. (at length); *lxx*^{1a}, B. The versions also differ.

² *Habet . . . millia*] om. C.D.

³ *Araratha*, B.

⁴ *Noe*] om. C.D.

⁵ C.D. add *sicut Pannoniæ duæ*, omitting the rest. E. omits *sicut*

duæ Pannoniæ. The text agrees with A.B. (which latter has *scilicet* before *major*), and the versions.

⁶ *regio*] om. C.D.

⁷ C.D. add *habet*.

⁸ *Lycia*] om. A.C.D.

⁹ *spectat*, C.D.

¹⁰ D. adds *undique*.

pat londe strecchep by¹ pe mount Taurus and Caucasus TREVISA.
 from pe see Caspius anon to Cappadocia,² and hap in lengþe
 eleuene hondred þowsand paas, and in brede seuene hon-
 dred myle. Pere is pat hille mount Ararath, pere Noe is
 schippe abood³ after Noes flood, and pere is Armenyes
 tweie,⁴ pe more and pe lasse, pe ouer⁵ and pe neþer, and
 so beep tweye Pannonyes also.

De Cappadocia.⁶ Capitulum octauum decimum.

CAPPADOCIA pat londe norischep and fedep many hors,⁷ and
 hap in pe est side Armenia, in pe west side⁸ Asia pe lasse, in
 pe norþ Amazonia, and in pe south mount Taurus. Perto
 be-lyep⁹ Cilicia¹⁰ and Isauria anon to pe see Cilicius pat
 strecchep toward the ilond of Cyprus. pe lasse Asia ioynep to
 Cappadocia in the est side, and is bielipped and i-closed in pe
 oper sides wip pe grete see. For he hap in pe north side pat
 mouth and see pat hatte Euxinus,¹¹ in pe west pe mouth and pe¹²
 see Propontides, and in pe south pe see of Egipte. Dis lasse

the hill Taurus and Caucasus, from the see Caspy vn MS. HARL.
 to Cappadocia. This region hathe in longitude xj. mī of 2261.
 passes, in latitude lxx^{ti} mī. There the mownte of Ararth
 is, where the schippe of Noe remaynede after the floode.
 Also per be ij. Armenyes, the moore and lesse, as per be
 ij. Pannonyes.

Capitulum octauum decimum.

CAPPADOCIA is a region nutrix of horses, hauenge on the Cappadocia.
 este parte to hit Armeny, on the weste the lesse Asia, on
 the northe the Amasones, on the sowthe the hille Taurus, to
 whom Cilicia, Lycia, and Isauria be subacte vn to the water
 of Cilicia, which hathe prospecte ageyne the yle of Ci-
 presse. Asia the lesse towcheth in the este parte Capa- Asia
 docy, on other sides hit is schutte with the grete see. For Minor.
 in the northe parte hit hathe the see Eusyne, and of the
 weste Propontides, on the sowthe parte the see off Egipte,

¹ to, Cx.

² Cappadocia, MS. and Cx., and
 so below.

³ abode, Cx.

⁴ ther be two Armenyes, Cx.

⁵ ouerer, Cx.

⁶ The proper names in this chap-
 ter are more than usually corrupted
 and distorted, in both versions, as

well as in the text. Their false spell-
 ings will not in general be noticed.

⁷ horses, Cx. (not a.)

⁸ Cx. omits side.

⁹ bilieþ, a.; ther by lyeth, Cx.

¹⁰ Scicilia, MS. and Cx., which
 haue Silicus and Sylycus below.

¹¹ Eusynus, MS.

¹² þe omitted in a. and Cx.

Continet autem in se plures provincias. Nam primo
 De Bi- ab aquilone habet Bithyniam in ¹ Ponti exordio Thraciæ
 thynia, sive
 Phrygia adversam, quæ etiam ² dicitur Phrygia major, ejus
 majore.
 De Galatia. metropolis est Nicomedia. Deinde Galatia, a priscis
 Gallorum gentibus per regem Bithyniæ ad bellandum ³
 invitatis sic denominata et occupata. Sed tunc dice-
 batur Gallogræcia, et populi ejus Gallogræci, tanquam
 ex Græcis et Gallis mixti,⁴ qui nunc dicuntur Galatæ,
 quibus Paulus unam scribit epistolam.⁵ Tertio est ⁶
 De Phrygia Phrygia minor, sic dicta a Phrygia, filia Europæ, filiæ
 minore, sive Dar- Agenoris, quæ etiam dicitur Dardania, a Dardano filio
 dania. Jovis. In qua terra est civitas ⁷ Troja,⁸ quæ et Ilium
 dicitur. Dicitur autem Troja a Tros⁹ filio Erichthonii, filii
 Dardani, filii Jovis.¹⁰ Cui regioni ¹¹ ab oriente est Lydia,
 De Lydia. ab occasu Hellespontus. Quarto est Lydia ad orientem
 Phrygiæ minoris,¹² in qua rex ille dives Cræsus¹³ quon-
 dam regnabat, quæ quidem terra dum pro brevitate

¹ in] om. B.² et, B.; dicitur etiam, C.D.; ad-
versamque et dicitur, A.³ bellum, C.D.⁴ et populi . . . mixti] om. C.D.⁵ quibus . . . epistolam] om. C.D.⁶ est] om. C.D., in which the fol-
lowing sentence is slightly altered.⁷ civitas] om. C.D.⁸ Troya, E. not A.B.⁹ So the MSS.¹⁰ Dicitur autem . . . Jovis] om.
C.D..¹¹ regioni] om. C.D.¹² minoris] om. C.D.¹³ Cræsus rex dives, C.D., (which
latter has quondam after Cræsus).

Asia conteyneþ meny prouynces and londes. For firste in þe TREVISA.
 norþ side he conteyneþ Bithynia in þe byggunynge vpon þe
 see aȝenst Thracia, and hatte also þe more Phrygia. Þe chief
 citee of Bithynia hatte Nicomedia. Þanne is Galatia and hap
 þe name of men þat were i-cleped Galli, þat come at þe prayere¹
 of þe kyng of Bithynia to helpe hym in his werres, and woned
 in þat lond Galatia: but þo þat lond hiȝte Gallogrecia and þe
 men of þat lond hiȝte² Gallogreci as men i-melled of Gallis
 and of Grecis; but now þey beþ i-cleped Galate,³ and to
 hem Poule wroot⁴ his pistel ad Galatas. Þe pridde is þe lasse
 Phrygia and hap þe name of Phrygia, Europa his⁵ douȝter,
 Agenore his douȝter. And þat Phrygia hatte Dardania also⁶
 of Dardanus Iupiter⁷ sone. In þat londe is þe citee of Troye,
 þat hatte Ilium also. Troye hatte after Tros,⁸ Erichthonius
 sone, þat was Dardanus sone, þat was Iupiter⁹ sone. Þat
 lond¹⁰ hap in þe est side Lydia, and in þe west þe mouth and
 þe see Hellespontus. Þe fourþe is Lydia, and is in þe est side
 of the lasse¹¹ Phrygia. In þat Lydia regned somtyme þe
 riche kyng Cresus, but whan þat lond was to litel for tweic

conteynenge in hit mony prouynces. For hit hathe firste MS. HARL.
2261.
 in the northe Bithynia, in the begynnege of Pontus
 ageyne Thracia, whiche is callede also Phrygia maior, the
 chiefe cite of whom is Nicomedia, afterwarde callede Ga-
 latia, of peple desirede to fiȝhte by the kyng of Bithynia,
 then callede Gallogrecia, and the peple of hit Gallogreci,
 as peple mixte of Frensche men and of Grekes, whiche
 be callede now Galate,³ to whom Paule did wryte an
 epistole. The thrydde is the lesse Phrygia, callede by that Phrygia
Minor.
 name of Phrygia the doȝhter of Europa, the doȝhter of
 Agenoris, whiche was callede Dardania, of Dardanus the
 son of Iupiter. In whiche londe is the cite of Troye, f. 32. a.
 namede so of Tros, son of Erichthonius, son of Dardanus the Troja.
 son of Iupiter. To whiche region Lydia is in the este
 parte, and Hellespontus of the weste parte. Lydia is at the Lydia.
 este parte of the lesse Phrygia, in whom Cresus, the ryche
 kyng, reignede somme tyme, whiche londe for the litelle
 quantite of hit myȝhte not suffre and suffice to ij. breþer,

¹ *preiere*, a.

² *Gallogrecia* . . . *hiȝte*] added from a. and Cx.

³ *Galathe*, MS., a., and Cx., and so the Harl. MS., as well as all the Latin MSS.

⁴ *wryteth*, Cx.

⁵ *Europaes*, Cx.; and *Agenors* below.

⁶ *also*] added from a.

⁷ *Iupiter his*, a.; *Iupytors*, Cx.

⁸ So a.; *Troos*, MS. and Cx.

⁹ a. adds *his*.

¹⁰ *lond*] added from a. and Cx.

¹¹ *ceste*, Cx.

sui duos reges, fratres, Lydum et Tyrrhenum, ferre non posset,¹ Tyrrhenus, agitante sorte, cum multitudine egressus, locum in superioribus partibus Galliæ² occupavit, quem Tyrrheniam³ nominavit. Ab isto Tyrrheno Tyrrhenum mare videtur denominari, sicut Lydia terra a Lydo, reliquo fratre, cujus metropolis est Smyrna, ad quam Johannes⁴ Evangelista scribit in Apocalypsi. Et principalis fluvius Lydiæ dicitur Pactolus, aureas secundum poetas gignens arenas.⁵ Quinta provincia Asiæ minoris dicitur Pamphylia,⁶ quæ et Isauria, habens metropolim Seleuciam, quam Seleucus Antiochus fundavit.⁷

De Cilicia. Deinde est⁸ Cilicia, in qua continetur Lycia sive Lycæonia, cujus urbes celebres erant Lystra et Derbe,⁹ sicut patet in Actibus Apostolorum, per quas de¹⁰ Syria ad Italiam navigatur. Harum omnium urbs metropolis erat Tharsis¹¹ inferius versus mare.¹²

De Amazonia. Amazonia regio est partim¹³ in Asia, partim¹³ in Europa. Albanæ est vicina, et fuerunt Amazones primo Gothorum uxores, quæ, viris suis dolo¹⁴ interfectis, debitamde hostibus ultionem sumpserunt. Nam spolia acceperunt,¹⁵ masculos occiderunt, feminas reservarunt.

¹ *potuit*, B.

² *Galileæ*, B.

³ *Tiream*, MSS.

⁴ B. prefixes *beatus*.

⁵ *quæ quidem terra . . . arenas*] om. C.D.

⁶ *Quinto est Pamphylia*, C.D.

⁷ *quam . . . fundavit*] om. C.D.

⁸ *est*] om. A.

⁹ *Listris et Derben*, MSS., and similarly both the versions.

¹⁰ *de*] om. A.

¹¹ The MS. reading is here best retained; in fact, Tarsus (not Tarsessus) is most probably the same as Tarshish.

¹² C.D. thus contract the two last periods: *Deinde Cilicia, in qua est Tharsis*.

¹³ B. has *partim est* (twice.)

¹⁴ *dolo*] om. C. (not D.)

¹⁵ *ceperunt*, C.D.

breperen pat were kynges, pat hiȝte Lydus and Tyrrhenus, TREVISA.
 hit by lott happed¹ pat Tyrrhenus went oute wip many men,
 and gat hym a lond in þe ouer partie of Gallia, and cleped his
 lond Tyrrhenia.² Hit semep þat þe see Tyrrhenus hap þe
 name of þis king Tyrrhenus, as þe lond Lydia hap þe name of
 his broþer Lydus. Þe chief cite of Lydia hat Smyrna, to
 pat³ citee Iohan þe euangelist writep in þe Apocalips.⁴ Þe
 chief ryuere of Lydia hatte Pactolus, and bringep forth
 goldene graule, as poetis tellip. The fiftē prouince of þe lasse
 Asia hatte Pamphylia and Isauria also. Þe cheef citee of pat
 lond hatte Seleucia. Pat citee Seleucus Antiochus bulde and
 arerede. Þan is Cilicia and conteyneþ Lycia, and pat hatte
 Lycaonia. Perynne were noble citees Lystra and Derbe,
 as it is i-write in Actibus Apostolorum. By pilke citees me
 seileþ⁵ out of Syria to Italia, but þe cheef citee of alle pese
 was Tharsis downward toward þe see. Amazonia pat lond
 is som in Asia, and som in Europa, and is nyh to Albania.
 Þe firste Amazones were þe wyfes of Gothes, pat took wreche
 of hire housbondes dep þat were traytoursliche i-slawe.⁶
 For pey toke prayes and slowe men and sauē wommen, and

Lydus and Tyrrhenus, ij. kynges. Tyrrhenus enchaunce MS. HARL.
2261.
 movege goenge furthe with a grete multitude occupiede
 a place in the superior parte of Fraunce, whiche londe he
 namede Tyrrhenia,² lyke as that londe Lydia was namede of
 Lydus his brother, the chiefe cite of whom is Smyrna, to
 whom Seynte Iohn Euangeliste wrytethe in his Apoca-
 lypsis: the principalle floode of Lydia is calledē Pactolus
 gendrege gravel of golde. The v^{thē} prouince of the lesse Pamphylia.
 Asia is calledē Pamphylia and Isauria, hauenge Seleucia
 the chiefe cite of hit, whom Seleucus Antiochus causedē to
 be edifiedē. After that is Cilicia, in whom Lycia or Lyca-
 onia is conteynede, the nowble cites of whom were Lystra
 and Derbe, as hit is expressedē in the Actes of thapostles,
 by whom hit is saylede from Syria to Ytaly. The now-
 bleste cite off theyme alle was Tharsis, more inferialle Tharsis
urbs.
 towarde the see.

Amazonia is a region parte in Asia and parte in Europe, Amazonia.
 nye to Albania, and the Amazones were firste the wives
 of Gothes, the husbondes of whom sleynē by gyle, they
 toke dewe vengeance on the cumyēs of theym perfore.
 For thei robbede, sleenge the male childer and reseruege

¹ happened by lotte, Cx.

² Tirea, MS.; Turea, Harl. MS.

³ of Lydia . . . þat citee] Added
 from a. and Cx.

⁴ seynt Iohan euangelyst wryteth in
 thopocalypsis, Cx.

⁵ men saylle, Cx.

⁶ traitourliche i-slawe, a.; traitourly
 slayne, Cx.

Diu sine viris vixerunt. Tandem duas¹ reginas statuerunt, quarum una exercitum extra ducebat, altera rempublicam domi regebat. Per centum fere² annos magnam Asiæ partem perdomuerunt.³ Demum⁴ ex finitimis locis maritos sobolis gratia sumpserunt,⁵ certis temporibus coeuntes et⁶ certis temporibus abstinentes.⁷ Masculinos⁸ fœtus aut mactabant aut certo tempore ablactatos⁹ patribus transmittabant. Fœminas vero¹⁰ reservantes ad venandum, ad sagittandum, ad militandum¹¹ informabant. Et ne mamillarum grossities sagittationem¹² impediret, septimo ætatis anno dextram mammam exurebant. Inde¹³ dictæ sunt Urimammæ vel Amazones, quasi sine mamma. Quarum¹⁴ feritatem primo perdomuit Hercules, deinde Achilles, et¹⁵ tandem Alexander magnus. *Ranulphus*. Et¹⁶ quamvis Isidorus, Etymolog. lib. xiv., dicat Amazones per Alexandrum magnum deletas, historia¹⁷ tamen Alexandri dicit Thalestrem¹⁸ Amazonum reginam Alexandro petenti tributa¹⁹

¹ *Duas tandem*, C.D.

² *ferme*, A.C.D.

³ *m. p. A. subigebant*, C.D.

⁴ *Tandem*, C.D.

⁵ *sumebant*, C.D.

⁶ *et*] om. B.

⁷ *coeuntes et iterum vacantes*, C.D.

⁸ *masculos*, C.D.

⁹ *ablactatos*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *et fœminas*, B.

¹¹ *ad venandum et militandum*, C.D.

¹² *sagittationi*, D.

¹³ *et inde*, C.D.

¹⁴ *Harum*, C.D.

¹⁵ *deinde Achilles et*] om. C.D.

¹⁶ *Et*] om. C.D. This sentence is blundered in B.

¹⁷ *ostia*, A.

¹⁸ *Thalestrem*] om. C.D.

¹⁹ *tributa petenti*, D.

leued longe wip oute housbondes, and afterward made hem TREVISIA.
 tweie queenes; pat oon ladde pe oost and meynteyned the
 werre, and werred faste; pat oper quene was at home, and
 ruled pe lond, and gouernede pe peple at home. And pese
 wommen helde vnder hond a grete deel of Asia aboute an
 hondred yere. And at pe laste¹ pese wommen wolde haue
 children, and toke housbondes of pe next contrayes aboute,
 and certeyn tymes lette [her]² housbondes ligge by hem, and
 certeyne tymes absteyned hem. But pey slow³ alle pe knaue³
 children, oper certeyn tyme i-wened sent hem to pe fadres,
 and saued alle⁴ mayde children, and tauzt hem to schetyng,
 and to⁵ dedes of armes and of chyualrie. And for grete
 brestes schulde nouzt lette hem to schete, of eueriche maide
 of seuen zere olde pey brende of pe rizt brest; and perfore
 pey were cleped Urimammæ, pat is to menynge *brend
 bristes*; and pey were i-hote Amazonas, pat is to menynge
wipoute brest. Hercules was pe firste pat chastised pe
 schrewednesse⁶ of pese wommen, and þan Achilles, and þan
 at pe laste pe grete Alexandre.⁷ R. And þei, Isid. Eth. 14,
 seie pat pe grete Alexander destroyed Amazonas, neuerpeles
 pe storie of Alexander seip, pat whan pe kyng Alexandre
 asked⁸ of hem tribute, Thalestris pe quene of Amazonas

the childer female, lyvenge longe with owte howsebondes. MS. HARL.
2261.
 At the laste thei made ij. qwenes, oon of whom gouernede
 the hoste, that oper kepede residence at home, hauenge vic-
 tory ouer a grete parte of Asia by c. yere. At the laste
 thei toke to theym men of ferre costes for cause of mul-
 tiplicacion, vsenge the acte venerealle in certeyne tymes,
 and absteynenge oper certeyne tymes, auther sleenge the
 male childer other elles sendenge them to the faders after
 a certeyne tyme, reseruenge the female childer, informenge
 þeym to hunte, to schote, and to vse cheuallery, brennenge
 the ryzhte pappe of theyme in the vijth yere of their age,
 leste the grosenes of hit scholde lette theyme to schote.
 Wherefore thei were callede Urimamma, or Amazonas, as f. 32. b.
 with owte a pappe; the cruellenes of whom Hercules did
 mitigate firste, after that Achilles, and at the laste kyng
 Alexander. R. Thauzhe Isidorus, Eth. 14°, seye Ama-
 zones to be destroyed by kyng Alexander, neuerthelesse
 the story of Alexander seythe that Thalestris, qwene of

¹ *atte laste*, Cx.

² Added from Cx., who has *theyr*; absent from a.

³ *men*, Cx., who omits *other* . . . *fadres*.

⁴ *alle*] *the*, Cx.

⁵ *for to shote and to do*, Cx.

⁶ *schrewednesse*] *ylle disposicion*, Cx.

⁷ *and atte laste the grete Alysaun-
 der*, Cx. *Alexander* and *Alexandre*
 are both so written in the MS. and
 a. *at length*.

⁸ *asked*] *arede*, a.; *axed*, Cx.

*Littera missa Alexandro de regina Amazonum.*¹ rescripsisse in hunc modum: "De tua prudentia² mirandum est³ quod cum fœminis congregari voluisti; quia si favente nobis fortuna succumbere⁴ te contingat, merito es confusus, cum a fœminis sis devictus.⁵ Quod si, iratis nobis diis, nos deviceris, parum honoraberis qui⁶ de fœminis triumphasti." Placatus ex his Alexander libertatem illis concessit,⁷ dicens quod⁸ mulieres amore non terrore⁹ forent¹⁰ devincendæ.¹¹ *Trogus, libro secundo.*¹² Hæc autem Thalestris regina, postquam concubitu Alexandri ad sobolem capiendam per quadraginta dies usa fuisset, in regnum reversa, brevi post tempore, cum gente sua, intercidit.¹³

CAP. XIX.

De Africa et ejus provinciis.

*Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.*¹⁴ Omnes historici astruunt quod¹⁵ Africa sit dicta ab Afer,¹⁶ filio Madian, filii Abrahæ ex Cethura progeniti; proceditque¹⁷ a fini-

¹ This is the rubric of E.

² *prudentia tua*, B.

³ *est mirandum*, D.

⁴ *occumbere*, C. (not D.)

⁵ *mulieribus sis dejectus*, C.D. (which latter has *devictus*.)

⁶ *quia*, D.

⁷ *donavit*, C.D.

⁸ *quod*] om. C.D.

⁹ *per amorem non per t.*, C.D.

¹⁰ *sunt*, A.

¹¹ *fore devincendus*, C.D.

¹² A. omits the reference; which,

however, is correct. See Just. lib. ii. c. 4. in fine. B. has *libro primo*.

¹³ *interiit*, B. *Trogus . . . intercidit*, om. C.D.,

¹⁴ 13^o, A. wrongly. Reference omitted in B. See Isid. lib. xiv. c. 5.

¹⁵ *Omnes . . . quod*] om. C.D., which, consequently, alter the construction below.

¹⁶ So A.; *Affer*, B.C.D.E., (but *Afer* below in E.); see also the versions. The Vulgate has *Opher*.

¹⁷ *quia*, A.

Amazones, did wroot to kyng Alexandre in pis manere : "Of TREVISA.
 "py wittes we wonder,¹ pat pou desirest to fize wip wommen ;
 "for 3if fortune fauerip² vs, and pou be ouercome,³ it is⁴
 "grete schame and vilonye, whan pou art ouercome of
 "wommen. Also 3if⁵ oure goddis beep wroop wip vs and
 "pou ouercome vs, for to wynne þe maystrie of wommen
 "pou getest but litel worschippe." Kyng Alexandre was
 i-pledse wip pis, and graunted hem fredom, and seide :
 "Wommen moste be ouercome with fairenesse and loue, and
 "nouzt wip sternesse and drede." *Trogus, libro secundo.*
 Dis quene Thalestris, after þat sche hadde be kyng Alex-
 andre his lemman fourty dayes, sche torned aȝeyn in to
 here owne lond, and afterward in schort tyme fil⁶ yn wip
 here peple.

De Africa et ejus prouinciis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.
Capitulum nonum decimum.

ALLE auctors of stories witnessip pat Affrica hap þe name
 of Affer,⁷ Madians sone, Abrahams sone, þat was geten on

wryte to kynge Alexander in this forme.⁸ "Hyt is to MS. HARL.
2261.
 "meruayle of thy prudence wyllenge to make batayle with
 "women : for if hit happe vs to haue the victory, fortune f. 32 b.
 "schewenge fauor, thou scholde⁹ be confused by merite,
 "sythe that thou was⁹ ouercommen with women ; and thauȝhe
 "thou haue the victory of vs, thou schalle⁹ obteyne but
 "lytelle worschippe, hauenge victory of women." Kynge
 Alexander pleasede grauntede to theyme liberte, seyenge,
 "Women ar to be ouercommen not with feere, but with
 "luffe." *Trogus, libro secundo.* That qwene Thalestris,
 after that sche had vsede the bedde of kynge Alexander by
 xl¹⁰ daies to haue a childe, returnenge to here realme felle
 at variaunce soone after with here peple.

Of Affrike and the prouinces of hyt. Isidorus, libro quarto
decimo. Capitulum nonum decimum.

ALLE scriptores historicalle and croniclers afferme þat
 Affrica toke the name of hit of Affer, son of Madian, the son

¹ *wylte* is *wonder*, a, Cx., which is probably right.

² *faouere*, Cx.

³ So a. and Cx. MS. adds *of wom-*
men.

⁴ *is*] shal be, Cx.

⁵ and *yf*, Cx.

⁶ MS. adds *ful*, seemingly by a clerical error; a. and Cx. have it not.

⁷ The MS. reading of the versions, though rather incorrect, is retained, because Africa is always written *Affrica*, or *Affrike* therein.

⁸ *fforme*, Harl. MS., which commonly uses the *ff* merely as a capital letter.

⁹ So the Harl. MS.

bus Ægypti juxta meridiem per Æthiopiam inferiorem usque ad montem Atlanticum,¹ ab oriente et septentrione mari magno clauditur, ab occasu vero habet oceanum occidentalem. *Ranulphus*.² Iste Afer, secundum Josephum, libro primo, capitulo octavo,³ et secundum Isidorum, Etymolog. libro nono, duxit exercitum versus⁴ Libyam, auxilioque Herculis majoris hostes superans, gentem et patriam ex suo nomine dictam Africam nominavit.⁵ Cujus filiam Etheam Hercules desponsavit, ex qua genuit Dodorim, ex quo Pharon. Hæc regio Africa plures continet provincias, videlicet,⁶ occidentalem partem Æthiopiæ, Libyam,⁷ Tripolim, Gætuliam, Numidiam, Mauritaniam duplicem, de quibus hic per ordinem.⁸

De
Æthiopia.

Æthiopia tres habet partes; prima namque⁹ pars occidentalis montuosa est, quæ ab Atlantico monte celsissimo protenditur usque ad Ægyptum, media pars arenosa est; tertia, quæ orientalis est, pene deserta est.¹⁰ Et illa¹¹ situatur inter australem oceanum et Nilum fluvium, habens ab ortu mare Rubrum. Dicta est Æthiopia a colore populorum, quos solis vicinitas torret.

¹ usque A. montem, C.D.

² Reference added from A.B.

³ The true reference is to *Antiq.* lib. i. c. 15., where the MSS. differ much in the forms of the proper names. Josephus is quoting Alexander Polyhistor, who again derives his account from Malchus.

⁴ adversus, C.

⁵ nuncupavit, D.

⁶ scilicet, C.D.

⁷ Libyam] added from B.C.D.

⁸ duplicem . . . ordinem] om. C.D.

⁹ que, (q̄), B. apparently.

¹⁰ quæ est orientalis, pæne deserta. B.; tertia vero, quæ orientalis, est pæne deserta, C.D., which also slightly alter the following sentence.

¹¹ C. adds autem; B. has que; D. has etiam.

Cethura. Affrica strecchep forþ from þe endes of Egipt by TREVISIA.
 þe south by þe neyper Ethiopia anon to the hille¹ Atlas,
 and is i-closed yn wip þe grete see boþe in þe estside and
 yn þe northside also; and hap in þe west side þe west
 ocean. R. Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo octavo, and
 Isidorus, libro nono, seip þat pis Affer ladde his oost toward
 Libya, and ouercome his enemyes by þe help of þe more
 Hercules; and nempned² þe men and the lond after his owne
 name, Affrica. Hercules wedded Ethea, Affer³ is douȝter,
 and gat on hir Dederym; of Dederym com Pharon. Þis
 Affrica conteynep many prouinces and londes; first he con-
 teyneþ⁴ þe west dele of Ethiopia, þan Libya, Tripolis, Getulia,
 Numidia, and tweie Mauritania. Of alle þese now by ordre
 is oure speche. Ethiopia hap þre parties, þe firste is hilly
 and moutuons, and strecchep from þe mount Atlas anon to⁵
 Egipt; þe myddel partie is ful of grauel; þe pridded, þat is
 þe est partie,⁶ is almost alle wilderness. Þat partie is
 bytwene þe souþe ocean and þat⁷ ryuer Nilus, and hap þe
 Reed see in þe estside, and hatte Ethiopia of þe colour and
 hewe of þe men of þe lond, þat bep blewe⁸ men, and is for⁹

of Abraham, geten of Cethura. Whiche procedeth from the MS. HARL.
2261.
 costes off Egipte, nye the meriden by the inferior Ethiop
 vn to the mownte Atlantyke, schutte of the este parte and
 northe with the grete see, hauenge on the weste to hit the
 westerne ocean. R. This Affer, after Iosephus, libro 2.
 primo, capitulo octavo, and also after Isidor, in his Ethimolog-
 ies, libro nono, hade an hoste, ledenge hit towarde Libya,
 hauenge victory of his enmyes thro helpe of grete Hercules.
 namede that cuntre Affrica, after his name; whiche toke to
 his wife Editha, doȝhter to Hercules, of whom he gate
 Dodoris. This region of Affrike conteynethe mony prou-
 inces, that is to say, the weste parte of Ethioppe, Libya,
 Tripolis, Getulia, Numidia, and tweyne Mauritanyes, of
 whom hit schalle be seyde by ordre. Ethioppe hatte thre Ethiopia.
 partes; the firste parte of it, that is in the weste, is fulle
 of hilles, whiche is protendede from that hie hille Atlantyke
 vn to Egipte. The mydde parte is fulle of gravelle. The
 thrydde parte, that is of the este, is alle moste fulle of
 deserte, whiche is sette between the sowthe ocean and
 the floode of Nilus, hauenge on the este to hit the Redde
 See. Hit is callete Ethiopia, of the colour of peple whom

¹ Cx. adds *of*.² named, Cx.³ Affer, a., Cx.⁴ MS. originally had *many* (clerical repetition).⁵ *anon to*] vnto, Cx. (as usual.)⁶ MS. and a. add *and*.⁷ *þat*] the, Cx. (not a.)⁸ *blac*, Cx.⁹ *for the*, Cx.

Et continet monstruosos populos, videlicet,¹ Garamantes, Troglodytas,² qui cervos cursu prætereunt, quorum aliqui maledicunt soli propter ejus nimium fervorem.³ Aliqui⁴ serpentes comedunt, aliqui⁴ leones et pantheras venantur. Aliqui⁴ specus excavant et inhabitant,⁵ quibus stridor est potius in ore quam vox. Alii incedunt nudi, nullo exercitio occupati. Alii sine capitibus, os et oculos in pectore habent. Apud aliquos eorum quadrupedia nascuntur sine auribus, etiam et elephantes. Aliqui eorum canem habent pro rege, cujus motu augurantur. Aliqui solis locustis vivunt, sole vel fumo induratis. Ibi sunt chamæleon et basiliscus, rhinoceros, cameli, par-di,⁶ et dracones, ex quorum capitibus et cerebro gemmæ extrahuntur. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* In Africa apud Troglodytas⁷ est fons, cujus aqua potata canoras

¹ *scilicet*, B.

² *Trogoditas*, MSS., and similarly the MSS. of the versions.

³ *Dicta . . . fervorem*] Slightly contracted in C.D.

⁴ *Alii*, C.D. (thrice.)

⁵ After this C.D. have; *ignes ibi de nocte videntur. Satyri quoque ac*

pilosi: chamæleon et basiliscus . . . dracones. After which the citation from Isidore.

⁶ So all the MSS. and both versions; but *camelopardi* is in all likelihood the true reading.

⁷ *apud Troglodytas*] om. C.D.

gret brennyng and hete of the sonne, pat is hem¹ ful nyh.² TREVISA.
 In Ethiopia beep meny dyuerse peple grisliche and wonderliche i-schape; som hatte Garamantes and som Troglodyte, and beep³ swifter pan hertes. And som curseþ þe sonne for his grete hete; some eteþ serpentis and addres; som huntþ leouns and panteris. Some diggeþ caues and dennes, and woneþ vnder erpe, and makip hir noyse wip grisbaytyng⁴ and chirkyng of teep more than wip voys of þe þrote. Som goop naked and no werk wircheþ,⁵ some wip oute hedes and haueþ mouþ and yzen in þe⁶ breest. Among som of hem beep foure foted bestes wipoute eren, and olyphantes also. Som of hem hap an hound for hire kyng and deuyne⁷ by meuyng and steryng of hym, som⁸ leueþ onliche⁹ by honysoukels i-dryed wip smoke oper wip þe sonne. Pere beep also camelions and basiliscus, vnycornes, camels, pardes, and dragouns, pat haueþ in here brayn and hedes many precious stones. Camelion is a flekked best in colourliche to a lupard; and so is pardus, and pantera¹⁰ also, and som dele of þe kynde; but pantera is frende to alle manere bestes but to¹¹ þe dragoun al lone; for hym he hateþ as deth. Basiliscus is kyng of serpentis pat wip smyl and siȝt sleep beestes and foules. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* In Affrica amonge þe puple Troglodyte¹² is a welle pat makeþ hem pat

the nyȝhenesse of the sonne dothe brenne, whiche con- MS. HARL.
 teynethe in hit peple to be meruaylede, that is to saye, 2261.
 Garamantes, Troglodytes, which renne and turne hertes and Troglodyte.
 other bestes thro rennenge, somme of whom curse the sonne
 for the grete feruent hete of hit. Somme do eite serpentis, f. 33. a.
 somme men of theyme hunte panteres and lyones. Somme
 of theyme make caves in the erthe, whiche berke rather
 then speke lyke men. Somme men of theyme goe nakede,
 not occupyenge theyme in eny exercise. Somme with owte
 hedes, hauenge their mowthe and eiȝen in the breste.
 Somme of theyme haue a dogge to their kyng, thro
 mouenge of whom thei vse wycchecraftes. There be also
 cocatrice, cameles, cattles of the mownteyne, and dragons
 from the hedes of whom and breyne pannes gemmes be
 extracte. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* There is a welle
 amonge the Troglodytes in Affrike, the water of whom y-

¹ whiche is to hem, Cx.

² nyȝ, a.

³ whiche ben, Cx.

⁴ gruntyng, Cx.

⁵ doo no werke, Cx.

⁶ in þe] So a. and Cx.; wipoute, MS.

⁷ deuyneþ, a., Cx.

⁸ MS. omits som. Added from a.

⁹ So a.; nouȝht, MS.; somme lyue only, Cx.

¹⁰ panthera, Cx., who however has panteris above.

¹¹ sauf to, Cx.

¹² peple that ben called (bat hatte, a.) Trogodyte, Cx.

facit voces. Item apud Garamantes dicunt esse fontem ita algentem de die, ut bibi non possit; ita¹ calentem de nocte, ut² tangi non valeat.

De Libya.³ Libya Cyrenensis habet ab ortu Ægyptum, ab austro Æthiopiam occidentalem, ab occasu Syrtes majores et Troglodytas, a septentrione mare magnum. Est autem Libya dicta vel quia Libs, id est ventus Africus,⁴ inde fiat, secundum Isidorum, libro xv^o, vel a Libya, filia Epaphi, filii Jovis, ibidem regnante. Et gentes ibidem dicuntur Phutei a Phut filio Cham.⁵

De regione Tripolitana. Tripolitana regio habet ab ortu⁶ aras Philænorum inter Syrtes majores et Troglodytas situatas,⁷ ab austro Gætulos et Garamantes, usque ad oceanum Æthiopicum protensos,⁸ ab occasu habet Byzantium usque ad lacum Salinarum, a septentrione habet mare mediterraneum et Syrtes minores.⁹

¹ et ita, C. (not D.)

² quod, A.

³ E. has for rubric, *De Libya insula*.

⁴ So A.B.; *Afrie* (for *Africa* ?), E.

⁵ a septentrione . . . filio Cham] om. C.D.

⁶ habet after *ortu* in A.

⁷ *situatas*] om. C.D. (with other very slight omissions.)

⁸ *protensus*, A.

⁹ *minores*] om. A.B.

drynkep¹ perof to haue good voys, sch[r]ille,² and clere. **TREVISIA.**
 Also among þe opere peple Garamantes is a welle al³ day
 so colde þat no man may perof⁴ drynke, and al³ nyȝt so⁵
 hote þat no man may it⁶ touche. Libya Cyrenensis þat
 lond hap in þe est side Egipt, in þe soup side⁷ Ethiopia, in þe
 west þe perilous place of þe see þat hatte þe more Syrtes,⁸
 and Troglodytas⁹ also, in the norþ þe grete see. Isidorus,
 libro quinto, seiþ þat [Libya hap þe name of þat wynd þat
 hatte Libs, and is þe wynd þat blowep out of Affrica, oper]¹⁰
 Libya hap þe name of Libya, Epaphies douȝter, þat Epaphi
 was Iupiter his sone. Þat womman Libya reigned in þat
 lond Libya, and þe peple of þat lond hitte Phutei¹¹ of Phut,
 Chamys sone. Tripolitana þat regioun hap in þe est side
 aras Philenorum, þe auters and wenedes¹² of þat peple þat
 beep i-sette bytwene þe peple Troglodyte and þe more Syrtes.
 Syrtes maiores beep perilous places faste by þe¹³ see, þat is
 mare Arenosum. And Tripolitana hap in þe south side
 Getulos and Garamantes, þat streccheþ anon to þe ocean of
 Egipt, and hap in þe west side Byzantium anon to þe lake
 þat hatte lacus Salinarum, and in þe norþ side he hap þe
 see of myddel erpe and þe perilous place þat hatte Syrtes
 minores, þe lasse Syrtes. Getulia is þe myddel londe of

drunke yeldethe clere voices. Also thei seye an other welle **MS. HARL.**
 to be amonge the Garamantes, the water of whom is soe 2261.
 colde on the day that hit may not be drunke, and soe hote
 in the nyȝte that hit may not be towchede. Libya Cyre-
 nensis¹⁴ hathe of the este parte to hit Egipte, of the sowthe
 parte the weste Ethioppe, of the weste the more Syrtes and
 Troglodytes, of the northe the grete see. And Libya is
 callede, for libs, the sowthe wynde, blawethe from thens, and
 after Isidorus, libro xv^o, hit is callede of Libya, the doȝhter
 of Epaphus, reignenge per; and peple be namede there
 Phutei of Phut, the son of Cam. The region Tripolitan Tripoli-
 tan. hathe of the este to hit the cuntre of Philenes, sette be-
 twone the grete Syrtes and the Troglodytes, and of the weste
 parte Byzantium¹⁵ vn to the Dedde see, hauenge of þe northe
 to hit the see Mediterrany and the lesse Syrtes. Getulia
 is a litelle region of Affricke. Sothely Getulia toke the

¹ *drunggeb*, a.² So Cx. (*shryll*); *schil*, a.³ Cx. adds *the (bis)*.⁴ *of*, a.; *drynke therof*, Cx.⁵ *so*] *it is so*, Cx.⁶ *it*] om. Cx.⁷ *west*, a.; Cx. omits *side*.⁸ *Cirtes*, MSS. of both versions.⁹ So a. and Cx., but misspelt;*Troglodite*, MS. Trevisa's usage is inconstant, see below.¹⁰ The words in brackets added from a. and Cx.¹¹ *Putei*, a.¹² *wyndes*, Cx.¹³ a. and Cx. add *granely*.¹⁴ *Cretensis*, Harl. MS.¹⁵ *Bisancium*, Harl. MS.

De Gætulia. Gætulia est media regio Africæ, sic denominata a Getis, qui a Gothis¹ processerunt. Et, ut dicit Gregorius in Homilia,² piscatores non habet.³

CAP. XXI.

De Numidia.

NUMIDIA habet ab ortu Syrtes minores, ab austro Æthiopes, ab occasu Mauritaniam, a septentrione mare Siculum. Hæc regio habet in se Rusicadam⁴ et Carthaginem magnam, quæ sic condita fuit secundum auctores.⁵ *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo xiiij.* Phœnices, a Rubro mari profecti, Sidonem et Tyrum in Syria, Uticam in Africa, Thebas in Bœotia,⁶ Gades in fauce occidentalis oceani condiderunt.⁷ Nam mos erat antiquis Phœnicibus mercandi causa a domo longius⁸ proficisci, et cum alienigenarum animos commercio novarum rerum sibi conciliassent,⁹ loca condendis urbibus apta capere.¹⁰ *Trogus, libro octavo decimo.* Ex his profecta

¹ A space left for the word in B.

² *omeliis*, B.

³ C.D. thus (after *Africæ*): *a Gothis qui eam occuparunt denominata; piscatores non habet.*

⁴ *Ruscidam*, MSS.

⁵ *secundum auctores*] om. C.

⁶ C.D. add *duce Cadmo*.

⁷ *et Gades insulam in ultima f. o.* c., C.D.

⁸ *longius*] om. D.

⁹ *reconciliassent*, C.D.

¹⁰ *capere* (*carpere*, C.) *caperunt*, C.D.; *sibi procuraverunt*, B.

Affrica, and hap þe name of Gethes ; þat folk com of Gothes,¹ TREVISA
and in an omelie Seint Gregorie seiþ þat pilke men haueþ
no fisheres.

De Numidia.² Capitulum vicesimum.

NUMIDIA hap in þe est side Syrtes minores, þe lasse
Syrtes, a perilous place,³ in þe southe Ethiopia, in þe
west Mauritania, and in þe norþ þe see Siculus. In þat
lond is Rusicada⁴ and Carthago⁵ þe grete citee, þat was
in þis manere arered and i-buld, as auctors tellip. *Isidorus,*
libro quinto decimo, capitulo tertio decimo. Phenices, men
of Phenicia, þat lond, wente from þe Rede see and bulde⁶
þese citees : first in Syria þei bulde Sidon⁷ and Tyrus,⁸ in
Affrica Utica, in Beotia Thebe, and in þe moup of þe
west ocean Gades ; for in olde tyme þe Phenices were
grete marchaundes, and passed into dyuers londes wip
marchaundise þat þei brouȝte, and feng⁹ perfore londe
and place to bulde on citees and townes. *Trogus, libro*

name of hit of Gothes, of whom Getuliones didde procede, MS. HARL
and, as Seynte Gregory seythe in a¹⁰ omely, that region hath 2261.
no fischers in hit for the wontenge of fisches.

Capitulum vicesimum.

NUMIDIA hath on the este parte to hit the lesse Syrtes, Numidia
of the weste men of Ethiope, on the weste Mauritany,¹¹ and
on the northe parte the see of Sicilia.¹² This region hathe
in hit Rusicada⁴ and Carthago,⁵ whiche was edifiede in this Carthago.
maner after auctores. *Isidorus, libro vicesimo quinto, capi-*
tulo tertio decimo. Men off Phenicia, goenge from the Redde
See, made the cites of Sidon and of Tyrus in Syria, Utica
in Affrike, Thebas in Beotia, Gades in the mowthe of the
ocean. For a consuetude was vsede amonge theyme
somme tyme to goe in to ferre regiones from theire cuntres,
and when thei perceyvede the hertes of straunge peple to
haue theyme in fauour, thro the merchaundise of newe
thynges thei toke places apte to make cites. *Trogus, libro*

¹ folke of the Gothes, Cx.

² Numedia, MS. (not Cx.) Various other unimportant deflections from the classical forms will not be noticed.

³ a. and Cx. add in the see.

⁴ Ruscida, MSS. of both versions and Cx.

⁵ Cartago, MSS. of both versions and Cx., here and below. Cartage

has been retained below, as an English form.

⁶ buylded, Cx. ; who has buyld below.

⁷ Sydown, MS.

⁸ So a. and Cx. ; of Tirus, MS.

⁹ feng] resseyued, Cx.

¹⁰ So the MS.

¹¹ Mauritamy, Harl. MS., and so below.

¹² Silicia, Harl. MS.

Dido, quæ alio nomine Elissa vocabatur, electa secum robustorum juvenum multitudine, Cyprum insulam primo venit, ubi assumptis secum lxxx. virginibus ad sobolem propagandam Africam devenit. Ibique¹ empto loco pro refocillatione navigantium qui corio bovis circumduci² posset, corium in tenue³ filum secari jussit,⁴ locumque emptum⁵ circumduci, quem Byrsam, id est *Corium*, vocavit. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo*. Sive Carthago. Carthadam,⁶ quod sonat *villam novam*. Tandem⁷ verso nomine locus ille Carthago vocabatur. *Trogus, libro octavo decimo*.⁸ Sicque conditur Carthago lxxij. annis ante urbem Romam. *Ranulphus*.⁹ Idem dicit Papias; cum ergo¹⁰ secundum historicos Roma sit fundata quarto anno Achaz regis Juda,¹¹ si isti quatuor anni, et sedecim anni regis Joathæ, et quinquaginta duo anni regis Oziæ,¹² qui regem Achaz præcesserunt, simul numerentur, patebit quod circa primum annum regis Oziæ Carthago fuerit fundata. Veruntamen¹³ Isidorus Etymolog., libro

¹ *Ubi*, C.D.

² *legi*, C.D.

³ *tenuissimum*, C.D.

⁴ *jubet*, C.D.

⁵ C.D. add *eodem*.

⁶ *Cartadam*, MSS.

⁷ *deinde*, C. (not D.)

⁸ The reference added from C.D. See Just., Lib. xviii. c. 6.

⁹ In C.D. the article from *Ranulphus* stands thus: "Verius tamen æstimandum est, quod si (*si*, om. "D.) Carthago condita sit ab illa Didone quam Æneas reliquit, quod (*et quod*, D.) Carthago fundata "sit 570 annis ante urbem Romam.

"Nam tot anni sunt inter Jair judicem et Romulum. Quod autem quidam dicunt Carthaginem fuisse conditam tempore regis David a Carthedone Tyrio, sive a filia (*filio*, C.) ejus Didone, potius puto Carthaginem tunc fuisse ampliatam, et illam Didonem aliam fuisse a prima." After this the paragraph on Mauretania begins.

¹⁰ *igitur*, A.

¹¹ *Juda*, added from A.B., which write *Jude*, though having *Judi* below.

¹² Azariah is intended.

¹³ *Veruntamen*, A.B.E.

octavo decimo. Dido, þat hiȝte Elissa also, went oute of Phenicia wip a grete companye of ȝonglynges i-chose, and seilede first into Cyprus.¹ And þere þis womman Dido toke wip hir foure score maydens for to brynge forþ children, and com into Affrica, and þere fore ese and reste of here men, þat were wery of seillynge, sche bouȝte as moche lond as sche myȝte byclippe wip an oxe hide,² and kutte³ þe hyde into⁴ a pong þat was ful long and ful⁵ smal, and biclipped þerwip a grete place, and cleped hit Byrsa, þat is a *pwong*. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Oper Carthada,⁶ þat was a *neue toun*. After þat þe name was chaunged and þe⁷ place i-cleped Carthago.⁸ And so Carthago was i-buld þre score ȝere and twelue to fore þe citee of Rome. R. Papias seiþ þe same; and⁹ stories telleþ þat Rome was i-bulde þe fourþe ȝere of Achaz, kyng of Iuda. Ðan ȝif we acounte rediliche and putte to gidres foure ȝere of Achaz, xvi. ȝere of Iotham,¹⁰ and two and fifty ȝere of Ozias, þat regned to fore Achaz, hit folweþ þat Carthago was i-founded aboute þe firste ȝere of Ozias þe kyng. Neuerþeles Isidorus, libro quinto Eth., and Magister, in¹¹

TREVISA.

octavo decimo. Dido goenge furthe from theyme, whiche was callede by an other name Elissa, takenge a multitude of yonge men with here, come firste to the yle of Cyprus,¹ and lxxx. virgynes to norysche multiplicacion, come to Affrike, whiche byenge a place þer for noryschenge of men, trauayl-enge as ferre as the skynne of an ox myȝte extende, causede hit to be kytte in as smalle partes, and so the grownde to be compassede abowte, whiche place was callede Byrsa,¹² that is to say, *leder*. *Isidorus, libro xvº.* Or elles that cite was callede Carthada,⁶ and afterwarde Carthago, whiche cite was edifiede lxx^{ti} yere afore the cite of Rome. R. Papias seythe the same, sythe after alle wryters historicalle Rome was made in the iiijth yere of Achaz kyng of the Iewere. If these iiij. yere, and xvi. yere of kyng Ioachim,¹³ and liij^{ti} yere of kyng Ozias, whiche precedede kyng Achaz, be annumerate, hit is expressede that liij^{ti} yere resulte þat Carthago was made in the iiijth yere of Achaz kyng of Iewery. Neuerthelesse Isidorus wille,

MS. HARL.

2261.

f. 33. b.

¹ *Cipres*, MS., a., Harl. MS.; *Cipris*, Cx.

² *oxe hyde*, a.; *oxes hyde*, Cx.

³ *kytte*, Cx.

⁴ *to*, a.; *vnto*, Cx.

⁵ Cx. omits the second *ful*.

⁶ *Cartada*, MSS. of both versions, and Cx.

⁷ So Cx. (*the*); to þe, MS.

⁸ *thus*, Cx.

⁹ *and*] added from a., and Cx.; the latter has *histories*.

¹⁰ *Iothas*, MS., a.; *Ionathas*, Cx.

¹¹ *in*] added from Cx.

¹² *Birisa*, Harl. MS.

¹³ So the Harl. MS., but *Iotham* is intended.

quinto, et Magister in¹ Historiis² Scholasticis, videntur sentire quod fundata sit³ circa xxxiv^m annum regis David. Marianus autem dicit quod circa quartum annum Amasiæ regis Juda. Non ergo poterit ad litteram stare quod⁴ tradit Virgilius, et Phrygius Dares in historia sua de bello Trojano, quod scilicet⁵ Æneas vidit Didonem, cum Æneas obierit ante foundationem Carthaginis, quam Dido fundavit, plus quam trecentis annis; vel erit dare aliam Didonem ab ista antiquiorem, vel quod Carthago prius fuerit⁶ fundata. Proinde dicit Augustinus, primo libro Confessionum in fine, quod docti negabant⁷ Æneam vidisse Carthaginem aut Didonem. Igitur secundum Orosium, libro quarto, Carthago in circuitu murorum habuit xxij. millia passuum. Altitudo muri quadraginta cubitus; latitudo triginta pedes; et tota pene mari cingebatur absque faucibus quæ tria⁸ millia aperiebantur.

De Mauri-
tania.

Mauritania duplex est. Prima Cæsariensis, quæ habet ad orientem Numidiam,⁹ ab austro arenas oceani, ab occasu flumen Maluam,¹⁰ a septentrione fauces maris magni. Mauritania Tingitana¹¹ ultima est provincia Africae, habens ab ortu flumen Maluam, a septentrione

¹ in] om. A.

² So E. at length; A.B. abbreviate the words; the singular would be preferable. See the versions.

³ fuit, A.

⁴ quod] sicut, A.B.

⁵ scilicet] om. A.B.

⁶ So A.B.; fuerat, E.

⁷ negabunt, A.E.

⁸ tria] in mil., B. The text runs awkwardly. See the versions.

⁹ Prima habet ab ortu Numidiam, C.D.

¹⁰ Apparently an error for *Mulucham*. Both versions have likewise *Malua* in all the MSS.

¹¹ Tingitana, MSS.

Historia Scholastica, seip pat¹ it semeþ pat Carthago was TREVISA.
 i-founded aboute þe foure and pritty þere of kyng Daid. —
 Marianus seip pat Carthago was i-bulde aboute þe fourþe
 þere of Amazias, kyng of Iuda. þan it may nouȝt stonde
 pat Virgilius and Phrygius Dares in his storie of þe bataille
 of Troye seip, pat Eneas sih pat womman Dido, for Eneas
 was dede pre hondred þere and more or² Cartage was
 i-founded pat Dido foundede; oper pere was anoper Dido,
 an³ elder þan sche; oper Cartage was raper⁴ i-founded.⁵
 Perfore Seynt Austyn, libro primo Confessionum, seip pat
 wise men denyep pat Eneas siȝ Carthago oper Dido pat
 womman. Perfore Orosius, libro quarto, seip pat Carthago⁶
 is al aboute two and twenty þowsand paas, and euery wal
 is fourty cubites⁷ hiȝe, and pritty foot brood; and þe citee
 is byclypped wiþ þe see wel nyh al aboute, ou[t]⁸ take
 faucibus quæ tria milia aperiebantur.⁹

Mauritania is þe name of twei londes, þe firste Cesariensis,
 pat hap in þe est side Numidia, in þe soup þe grauel of þe
 see¹⁰ ocean, in þe west þe ryuer Malua, and in þe norþ
 þe gewes of þe grete see.

Tingitana is þe laste prouince of Affrica, and hap in
 þe est side þe ryuer Malua, in þe north þe see
 Gaditanus, in þe west þe hulle Atlas, and the see

Ethimolog., libro v^o, and the Maister in his story scholas- MS. HARL.
 ticalle, that Carthago was edifiede abowte the xxxiiij^d yere 2261.
 of kyng Daid; wherefore the seyenge of Virgille and of
 Phrygius Dares in his story of the batelle of Troye, that
 Eneas see Dido; or elles hit is to ȝiffe a more elder Dido
 then this. For Eneas dyede more then iiic yere afore the
 edifenge of Carthago, or elles hit wille folowe that Carthago
 was made a fore. Where of Seynte Austyn seythe in his
 booke of confessiones, libro primo, in the ende, that wyse
 men denye Eneas to have seen Carthago. Therefore after
 Orosius, libro iiij^{to}, Carthago hade with in the circuite of
 the walles, xxij. ml. passes. The altitude of the walle
 was of xl^d cubites, the latitude of xxx^d foote alle moste
 compassede abowte with the water of the see. There be Maurita-
 tweyne Mauritanys, that firste is Mauritany Cesariense, nia.
 whiche hathe at the este of hit Numidia, at the sowthe the
 gravelles of the ocean, at the northe the floode callede
 Malua, of the weste the chekes of the ocean. Mauritania

¹ as, Cx.

² ar, a.; er, Cx.

³ and, Cx.

⁴ raper] added from a.

⁵ i-buld, a. and Cx.

⁶ pat Carthago] added from Cx.

⁷ cubit, a.

⁸ out, a.; oute, Cx. Trevisa and the Harl. translator seem to have been puzzled with the Latin text.

⁹ that iiij. m. were opend, Cx.

¹⁰ Cx. omits see.

fretum Gaditanum, ab occasu montem Atlanticum et oceanum. Dicitur autem Mauritania¹ a *mauron*, quod est *nigrum*, quasi nigrorum patria. In hac Africa est mons Atlas ad occidentem, non longe ab oceano,² ita supra montes alios³ elevatus ut circulum lunarem credatur attingere; ubi de nocte crebri ignes, fauni et satyri videntur, tubæ, fistulæ, et cymbala frequenter audiuntur. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo*.⁴ Atlas fuit astrologus, et⁵ frater Promethei, qui ideo⁶ portare cælum fingitur; a quo et⁷ mons ille Atlas dicitur, quem⁸ propter immensam altitudinem cælum portare vulgus credit. *Hugutio*,⁹ *capitulo Phœnix*. Nota¹⁰ quod Puni, Pœni, Punici, et Punices, dicuntur¹¹ tam Phœnices quam Afri sive Carthaginenses, quia Dido Carthaginensis fuit de terra Phœniciæ adventitia.¹²

CAP. XXII.

De Europa et ejus provinciis.

Ranulphus.¹³ PONIT Isidorus, libro quarto decimo, quod¹⁴ Europa sit dicta ab Europa, filia Agenoris regis

¹ *q. n. p.* after *Mauritania* in C.D., which add: *alia Mauritania dicitur Cæsariensis*.

² *non longe ab oceano*] om. C.D.

³ *alios*] om. C.D.

⁴ i 9, E., wrongly. See Lib. xviii. c. 8. and c. 39. E. also heads the previous paragraph: *Augustinus de Civitate, libro xvij.* likewise wrongly; for the two passages above named, which alone name *Atlas*, do not contain what is here said.

⁵ *astrologus et*] om. C.D.

⁶ *quia idem*, D.

⁷ *et*] om. B.

⁸ *cujus nomine Atlas dicitur mons ille, quem*, C.D.

⁹ *Hugo*, A.B. (a frequent variation).

¹⁰ *Notandum*, D,

¹¹ *quod Punici et Punices dicuntur*, C.

¹² *de civitatibus Ph. veniens*, C.D.

¹³ So E.: the other MSS. omit the name.

¹⁴ *Ponit . . . quod*] om. C.D., which also contract slightly the first two sentences throughout.

ocean. Mauritania hap þe name of *mauron*, þat is *blak*, TREVISA. as it were þe contray of black men. In þis Affrica is þe hulle Atlas in þe west side and ende, nouȝt fer from ocean. And Atlas is so hiȝe ouer þe¹ hulles, þat lewed men wenep þat it rechep to þe mone. Þere is ofte by nyȝte i-seie fire, fauni, and satyri, þat beep spiritus² of þe³ aier dyuersliche i-schewed. Also þere is ofte i-herde tymbers, pipes, and trompes. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavo decimo*. Atlas was an astronomyour, Prometheus broþer; perfore⁴ som men⁵ feynep þat Atlas berep heuene. And of þis man Atlas þe hul hap his name and hatte Atlas also, and⁶ is so hiȝe þat þe lewed peple wenep þat he⁷ berep heuene. Take hede þat Puni, Peni, Punici, and Punices also beep i-cleped Phenices, Afri, and Carthaginienses, as þei were men of Phenicia, of Affrica, oper of Cartage. For þat womman Dido,⁸ þat founded Carthago, was a comlynge, and com of⁹ Phenicia.

De Europa et ejus partibus. Capitulum vicesimum primum.

ISIDORUS, libro quarto, seiþ þat Europa hap the name of Europa, Agenores douȝter, king of Libya; and Iupiter,

takethe the name of hit of *mauron*, that is *blacke*, as the MS. HARL. cuntre of blacke men. In whom is the mownte called Atlas 2261. at the weste, not ferre from the ocean, whiche is so eleuate Mons Atlas. ouer other hilles that is ȝiffen to credence the altitude of hit to towche the cercle of the moone, where claryones and symbales be herde oftetyes in the nyȝhte. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo*. Atlas was an astronomier f. 34 a. and the broder of Prometheus, whiche was feynede to berre heuyn, of whom this hille called Atlas toke the name of hit, whom commune peple suppose to berre heuyn for the huge altitude of hit. Also hit is to be attendede that Puni, Peni, Punici, and Punices be called as welle men of Phenicia of Affrike and of Carthago, for Dido dwellenge in it was of the londe of Phenicia.

Of Europe and of the Provinces of hit. Capitulum 21.

ISIDORUS rehersethe, in his xiiijth boke, that Europa Europa. toke name of Europa, doȝhter of Agenoris, kynge of Libya,

¹ þe] other, Cx.

² spiritis, a.; sprytes, Cx.

³ þe] om. a. (not Cx.)

⁴ for, a.

⁵ Cx. omits men.

⁶ it is, Cx.

⁷ it, Cx. (and so often.)

⁸ Dido, a.

⁹ fro, Cx.

Libyæ, quam Jupiter Cretensis rapuit sibi. Hæc autem Europa, pars mundi tertia, incipiens a flumine Tanai et Mœotide palude, descendit per septentrionalem oceanum usque in fines Hispaniæ apud Gades insulam. Ab oriente et austro mari magno cingitur.¹ Plures continet provincias et insulas, de quibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt tangenda.² Est autem sciendum quod ex parte orbis septentrionalis Mœotides paludes et fluvijs Tanais distinguunt Asiam majorem ab Europa.³

Fluvius
Tanais
unde
dicitur.

Fluvius autem⁴ Tanais dictus est a Thano primo rege Scytharum, qui fluvijs exoriens⁵ a Ripæis montibus⁶ descendens intrat pontum Mediterraneum.

De
Scythia.

Scythia inferior regio⁷ frigida est⁸ valde. Incipit a flumine⁹ Tanai,¹⁰ inter Danubium et oceanum septentrionalem usque Germaniam protenditur. Sed propter barbaras gentes quas continet generaliter Barbaria¹¹ appellatur.¹²

De Alania. Alania,¹³ pars Scythiæ inferioris,¹⁴ declinat a lacu Mœotidis usque Daciam.

De Mœsia. Mœsia¹⁵ ab ortu clauditur ostiis Danubii; ab euro

¹ *jungitur*, D.

² *aliqua . . . tangenda*] om. C.D.

³ *et Europam*, C.D.

⁴ *autem*] om. C.D.

⁵ *S. et exoriens*, C.D.

⁶ *apud R. montes*, C.D.

⁷ *regio*] om. C.D.

⁸ *est*] om. A.B.C.

⁹ *fluvio*, A.D.

¹⁰ *Thanays*, B.

¹¹ So A.C.D.; *barbarica*, B.E.

¹² *vocatur*, D.

¹³ *Albania*, B.E.

¹⁴ *inferioris*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *Misia*, MSS. *Mysia* and *Mœsia* may be dialectical variations of the same name (Smith's *Anc. Geogr.* ii. 389): but to edit *Mysia* would only confuse. A little below A. has *Mesiam*, and this form has been adopted in the versions.

kyng of Creta, raunched Europa, Agenores douzter. But TREVISA.
 pis Europa is pe priddle deel of pis worlde wyde,¹ and
 bygynnep fro pe ryuer Tanais² and pe water Meotides, and
 strecchep downward by pe norþ occean anon to pe endes
 of Spayne at pe³ ylond Gades, and is byclipped by pe⁴
 est and also by pe⁴ soup wip pe grete see. In Europa
 beep many prouinces and ylonde, pe whiche now schal be
 descreeued;⁵ but firste take hede pat in pe north side of
 pe world pe water⁶ Meotides and pe ryuer Tanais departep
 atwynne⁷ pe more Asia and Europa. pe ryuer Tanais
 hap pe name of Thanus, pe firste kyng of Scythia. pat
 ryuer Tanais bygynnep from pe hulles Ripheis, and goop
 down to⁸ pe see of myddel erpe. *Isidorus, libro quarto
 decimo.* pe lower Scythia pat lond is ful colde,⁹ and by-
 gynnep from pe ryuer Tanais, and strecchep bytwene pe
 ryuer Danubius and pe¹⁰ norþ occean anon to¹¹ Germania
 pat contray. Alania is a party of pe lower Scythia, and
 strecchep somdel from pe wateres Meotides toward Daciam.
 Mesia¹² pat lond is i-closed in pe north est wip pe moup
 of Danubius, and ioynep in pe soup est to Thracia,¹³ and

whom Iupiter Cretensis raveschede to hym. That Europe, MS. HARL.
2261.
 the thrydde parte of the worlde, begynnege from the floode
 of Thanay, descendethe by the northe ocean vn to the
 costes of Speyne, compassede abowte with the see at pe yle
 callede Gades, on the este parte and in the sowthe with the
 grete see, conteynenge mony prouinces and yles, of whom
 somme thynges schalle be towchede by ordre.

Hyt is to be attendede that of the northe parte the
 marras of Meotides and the floode of Thanais diuiden
 the lesse Asia from Europe. Floode of Thanais was
 namede firste of Thanus, kyng of Scythia, which floode
 descendenge entrethe in to the see Meditterany. *Isidorus,
 libro quarto decimo.* The inferior Scythia is colde, begyn-
 nenge from the water of Thanus, betwene Danuby and the
 northe occean is protendede to Germanye, which is callede
 Barbarica for the men of Barbre that hit conteynethe.

Alania is a parte of the inferior Scythia declinenge to the Alania.
 water of Meotides vn to Denmarke.¹⁴ Mesia is schutte of Mesia.
 the este parte of it with the dures of Danuby, from the

¹ wyde world, Cx.

² Thanai, MS., a.; Thanay, Cx.

³ at pe] atte, Cx.

⁴ Cx. omits pe (twice).

⁵ descryued, Cx.

⁶ wateris, a.

⁷ a sonder, Cx.

⁸ into, a.

⁹ ful of cold, Cx.

¹⁰ pe] om. a.

¹¹ anon to] vnto the, Cx.

¹² Misia, MSS. of both versions,
and Cx., and so below.

¹³ Tracia, MSS. of both versions,
and Cx.

¹⁴ The medieval use of Dacia
and Daci has here misled the
translator.

Thraciæ, ab austro Macedoniæ, ab occasu Istriæ, ab Africo Dalmatiæ jungitur.¹ Terra frugifera maxime tritici,² unde et eam veteres Cereris horreum nuncupaverunt.

De Sclavia. Sclavia pars est³ Moesiæ, quæ⁴ tamen duplex est, una major quæ proprie dicitur Sclavonia, et continet Dalmatiæ partem et Sarmatas. Feras habet gentes et piraticas. Alia, minor Sclavia, extenditur a Wandalis et Bohemis⁵ usque ad Saxones, quæ gentem habet magis piam.⁶

De Pannonia.

Pannonia, a Penninis Alpibus quibus ab Italia secer nitur sic vocata, duplex est, major quæ in ulteriori Scythia est ultra Mœotides paludes, a qua Huni⁷ primitus venationis gratia exeuntes, per longa paludum spatia cervorum vestigia insectantes,⁸ ut dicit Herodotus,⁹ tandem Pannoniam minorem invenerunt, qui reversi ad propria, collecto agmine, in illam rediere, et, expulsis incolis, nomen patriæ Hungariam indiderunt. Cujus tamen pars Bulgaria dicitur, quæ habet ab oriente Moesiæ, ab euro Istriam, ab Africo¹⁰ Alpes, ab occidente

¹ *jungitur*] om. C.D.

² So A.E. ; *triticea*, C. ; *tritico*, D.

³ *est*] om. A., placing it after *major*; omitted entirely in B.D.

⁴ *quæ*] C.D. contract a little here.

⁵ *Boemiis*, A.E.

⁶ *p'ann*, B., (possibly blundered for *placidam*, which is very likely the true reading).

⁷ So the MSS., which form is

fully as good as *Hunni*, if less common.

⁸ *insequentes*, B.

⁹ *ut dicit Herodotus*] om. C.D. Herodotus never names the Huns; and his remarks on the Scythians can hardly be the origin of this account.

¹⁰ *austro*, B.

in þe south to Macedonia, in þe west to Histria,¹ and in þe south west to Dalmatia. Mesia is a prise² lond of corne and of whete, þerfore þe olde cereris³ cleped hit a berne. Sclauia is a partie of Mesia; þere beþ also two londes, eiper hatte Sclauia. Þe more hatte properliche Sclauonia, and conteynþ som of Dalmatia and Sarmatas, and hap wylde men and sec þeues. Þe lasse Sclauia streccheþ from Wandalia and Bohemia anon to Saxone; and þere ynne beþ more mylde⁴ peple. Pannonia hap þe name of Penninis Alpibus, þat beþ⁵ hulle,⁶ þat beþ i-cleped Alpes, and pilke hilles departeþ Pannonia and Italia: þere is anoper Pannonia be zonde þe wateres Meotides in þe zonder Scythia. Out of þe more Pannonia Hunni⁷ went an huntynge, and passed long by marys and wateres, and folwed þe trace of hertes, ut dicit Herodotus,⁸ and so at þe laste⁹ þei founde þe lasse Pannonia, and torned home aȝen, and fette to¹⁰ hem grete strengþe and com eft¹¹ in to þe lasse Pannonia, and put out þe men þat were þerynne, and cleped þe lond Hungaria.¹² But a partie þerof hatte Bulgaria, and hap in þe est side Mesia, in þe souþ est Histria,¹³ in þe west Alpes, (þe hilles þat so hotep,) in þe west Gallia Belgica, þat is

TREVISIA.

este of Tracia to the sowthe parte of Macedony; a plentuous region, and specially of whete, wherefore olde men namede hit the berne of God of corne. Sclauia is a parte of Mesia, of whom the nowmbre is duplicate, the more and lesse. The more is callede proprely Sclauonia, conteynge a parte of Dalmatia and Sarmatas, hauenge ferse peple and schippemen. The litelle Sclauia is extendede from Wandalinges and men of Boemy vnto the Saxones, the peple of whom is more meke. Also Pannonye is duplicate, the more that is in the ferþer Scythia, ouer the waters of Meotides, from whom Hunes goenge furthe for cause of huntenge by ferre cuntrees folowenge hertes, as Herodotus seythe, at the laste founde the lesse Pannonye, whiche returnenge home, gedrenge a multitude of peple, returnede ageyne to hit, the inhabitatores of hit expulsede thei namede that cuntre Hungary. A parte of whom is callede Bulgaria, hauenge on the este to hit Mesia, of the weste Gallia

MS. HARL.
2261.
Sclavia.Pannonia.
f. 34. b.

Hungaria.

¹ and in þe . . . Histria] added from a. and Cx.

² pris, a.; good, Cx.

³ This absurdity is found also in a. and Cx.

⁴ a. and Cx. add *men and* after *mylde*.

⁵ beþ, a.

⁶ hulle, a.

⁷ Humi, MS.; Hinni, Cx.

⁸ as *Erodotos seyth*, Cx.

⁹ *atte laste*, Cx., and so often.

¹⁰ *toke with*, Cx.

¹¹ *agayn*, Cx.

¹² *Hungeria*, MS.; *Hongaria*, Cx.

¹³ So a. and Cx.; *Historia*, MS.

Galliam Belgicam, a septentrione Danubium seu ¹ Germaniam. Habet hæc terra venas aureas, et montes in quibus effoditur marmor et sal optimum.²

CAP. XXIII.

De Græcia et ejus provinciis.

INUUNT auctores quod Græcia, cum provinciis ³ suis, regnorum sit domina, militiæ nutrix, philosophiæ mater, magistra artium et inventrix; a quodam ⁴ Græco ibidem regnante ⁵ Græcia dicta est, quæ tamen generaliter dicitur Illyricus, cujus populi dicuntur Græci, Graii, Achæi, Achivi, Argivi, Attici, Iones, Ionii, sive Hellenes.⁶ Sed quando Constantinus Magnus sedem Romani imperii in Constantinopolim transtulit, Græcorum gens Romania vocabatur quasi nova Roma, ut dicit Rabanus. Ideo usque hodie Græci ⁷ non se vocant Græcos vulgariter, sed Ramayses,⁸ gens olim bellicosissima, sed regibus subdita.⁹ *Giraldus, distinctione*

¹ *seu*] et, A.

² *Habet... optimum*] om. C.D.

³ *insulis*, C.D.

⁴ *quodam*] om. A.B.

⁵ *regnante ibidem*, B.

⁶ The opening sentence is much contracted in C.D.

⁷ *Græci*] om. B.

⁸ *sed Ramayses*] So E.; *Ramaysos*, A.; *Romanos*, B., which is perhaps right; though more probably the other readings mean to express *Ῥωμαῖοις*. C. and D. omit the clause and all the preceding sentence.

⁹ *gens... subdita*] placed in C. after *Hellenes*.

Fraunce, and in þe norþ þat ryuer Danubius and Germania pat lond. Þis lond Bulgaria hap veynes of golde¹ and hilles in þe whiche me diggeþ marbel and salt goode at þe best. TREVISA.

De Græcia et eius prouinciis. Capitulum vicesimum secundum.

AUCTOURS telleþ þat Grees with þe prouinces² þerof is lady of kyngdoms, norice of knyȝthode and of chiuallrie, moder of filosofie, fynder and mayster of art and sciens,³ and hap þe name of oon Grecus pat reigned pere somtyme. Neuerþeles⁴ pat lond is comounliche i-cleped Illyricus,⁵ þe men þerof bep i-cleped Greci, Graii, Achei, Achivi, Argivi, Attici, Iones, Ionii, and⁶ Hellenes. But whan þe grete Constantyn made⁷ Constantinopolim þe cheef sete of þe emperour⁸ of Rome, þan were þe Grees⁹ i-cleped Romanij,¹⁰ as it were men of newe Rome, so seiþ Rabanus. And anon to þis day þe Grees clepeþ nouȝt hem self Grees, but Romayses,¹¹ and were somtyme stalworpe and orped and best men of armes, and neuerþeles sugett¹² to lawes. *Isidorus*,¹³

Belgica, of the northe Danuby or Almayne. That londe MS. HARL. hathe veynes of golde, and hilles in whom marbole is 2261. diggede and goode salte.

Of Grece, and of the prouinces of hit. Capitulum vicesimum secundum.

AUCTORES remembre and reherse that Grece is lady Grecia. of other londes with his provinces, nutrix of cheuallery, the moder of philosophy, maistresse of artes, callede Grecia of a man named Grecus reignenge there, whiche is callede generally Illyricus, þe peple of whom be callede Greci, Graii, Achei, Achivi, Argivi, Attici, Iones, Ionii, or Hellenes. But when grete Constantyne transferrede the seete of the Roman ympyre to Constantinople, the men of Grewe were callede as newe Romanes, as Rabanus seythe; where fore men of that cuntre vn to this tyme calle not theyme Grekes, but Ramoyeses, somme tyme peple mooste victorious but subjecte to lawes. *Gir. de papa, ca-*

¹ So a. and Cx.; *colde*, MS.

² *prouince*, MS. (not Cx.)

³ *of science*, Cx.

⁴ *Netheles*, Cx. (and so often.)

⁵ *Iliricus*, MS.

⁶ and] So Cx.; *et*, MS.

⁷ *Constantyn made*] added from a. and Cx.

⁸ *þe empere*, a.; *thempyre*, Cx. This is nearer the Latin.

⁹ *Grekes*, Cx., and so below.

¹⁰ So MS., a., and Cx.

¹¹ *the Grekes be but Romayses*, Cx.

¹² *natheles subget*, Cx.

¹³ Seemingly a clerical error for *Giraldus*. Cf. *Pref. Dist.* 1. p. 6. (Ed. Brewer.) But the reference is uncertain.

*secunda, capitulo nono decimo.*¹ In hac terra quondam Palladis et Minervæ studia musæ et militiæ² castra junctis dextris firmatisque foederibus sese comitabantur, ideoque respublica tunc prosperabatur; item multa Graii veteres et armis aggressi et studiis assecuti sunt. Sed virtus illa refriguit in posteris, et in orbem Latinum migravit, ut qui ante fontes fuerant³ nunc rivuli, vel potius alvei arentes et exhausti. Virtutum siquidem successor nullus,⁴ scelerum omnes. Namque Sinonis figmenta, Ulixis fallaciam, Atrei atrocitatem retinent. Arte non armis dimicant. Hæc itaque regio Græcia juxta mare magnum sita plures in se continet⁵ provincias, quæ sunt Thracia, Lacedæmonia, Macedonia, Achaia, Arcadia, Thessalia, Helladia,⁶ Bœotia.⁷

De
Thracia.

Thracia, quæ et Epirus, terra⁸ quondam Epirotarum, habet ab austro Ægeum mare, ab occasu Macedoniam, quam quondam inhabitabant Massagetæ, Sarmatæ, Gothi. *Isidorus, libro xv.*⁹ In hac terra est fons extinguens faces accensas et iterum extinctas reaccen-

¹ So written at length (but as one word) in E. Higden or his scribes seem to have avoided the form *undevicesimus*.

² *militiæ*] om. C.D.

³ *fuerunt*, A.

⁴ *æmulus*, B.

⁵ *continet in se*, B.

⁶ *Elladia* or *Elladea*, MSS.; Cal-

ladia, B.; *Hellas* is of course intended.

⁷ *Hæc itaque ... Bœotia*] Slightly contracted in C.D. (the names excepted), which place the sentence before *Giraldus*; A. has *et Achaia* and *et Arcadia*.

⁸ *tota*, B. (apparently).

⁹ The true reference is to lib. xiii. c. 13.

libro primo, capitulo septimo decimo. In pis lond was som-
tyme þe studie and þe scole of Pallas and Minerua, of grettest
art and sciens of knyȝthode and of chivalrie, and þe clergie
and the chivalrie hilde¹ so to giders þat in þe comyn profiȝt
was all way good spede. Also þe olde Graii auntrede²
and gat many pinges by clergie and dedes of armes, but þat
vertue keled³ and wip drowe ynne ham þat com⁴ afterward,
and passede from þe Grees to þe Latyns, so þat þe raper welles
beep⁵ now but lakes,⁶ oper more vereyliche dreye chanelis wip
oute watir. For now þey holdep Sinonis⁷ feynynge, Vlifix⁸
gile, Atræus cruelnesse, and fitep wip sleipe and wip cauteles
and nouȝt wip armoure and wepoun. Þis lond Grecia is
faste by þe grete see, and conteyneþ many prouinces, þat
beep Thracia,⁹ Lacedemonia, Macedonia, Achaia, Arcadia,
Thessalia, Helladia, Beotia.¹⁰ Thracia hadde Epirus also, for¹¹
Epirote woned perynne somtyme, and hap in þe soup side þe
see Egeus,¹² in þe west Macedonia. In Macedonia woned
somtyme dyuers men þat hiȝte Massagete, Sarmate, and
Gothi. *Isidorus, libro quinto.*¹³ In pis lond is a welle þat
quencheþ brennyng brondes, and tendeþ brondes þat beep a

TREVISA.

pitulo septimo decimo. In whiche londe somme tyme
were libraryes, studies, muses, and companyes of cheuallery,
where fore the londe stode that tyme in prosperite. But
that vertu in theyme was refusede after and wente to
the cuntre of men of Latyn, and thei that were somme tyme
the nowble welles now be¹⁴ as ryueres with owte water and
consumede; noo folower of vertu per, but alle off vices. For
thei reteyne to them the figmentes of Sinonis, the fallace
of Vlifix, fiȝhtenge by arte and not by armes. That region
of Grece, sette nye the grete see, hadde mony prouinces in
hit, whiche be Thracia,⁹ Lacedemonia, Macedonia, Achaia,
Arcadia, Thessalia, Helladia, Beotia.¹⁰ Thracia, or Egiptus,¹⁵
somme tyme the londe Epiratores, hauenge on the este to
hit the see of Ege, of the weste Macedony, where the Mas-
sagetes inhabite somme tyme. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.*
There is a welle in that londe qwenchenge brennenge brondes f. 35. a.
of fire and liȝhtenge theyme ageyne. The chiefe cite of

MS. HARL.

2261.

¹ helde, Cx.² aventured, Cx.³ So a. and Cx.; kelep, MS.⁴ cam, a. and Cx.⁵ So a.; is, MS.⁶ so that to fore where welles were,
ben now but lakes, Cx.⁷ Synonis, MS.⁸ So a.; Vlifix, MS.; Vlifix, Cx.⁹ þat beep Thracia] Added from a.
and Cx. The MSS. have Tracia, asusual; but Thessalia is correctly
written in MS. (not Harl. MS.)¹⁰ Boecia, MSS. of both versions,
and Cx.¹¹ for] added from Cx.¹² Egedeus, MS.¹³ 15, a., Cx.¹⁴ thei be, MS., but thei erased.¹⁵ This is of course for Epirus;
but the sentence is otherwise cor-
rupt.

dens.¹ Hujus provinciæ metropolis est Constantinopolis² in orientali parte patens inter Ponticum mare et Propontidem, terræ marique pervia, caput quondam orientis, sicut Roma occidentis; et quondam vocabatur Byzantium.³ De qua loquitur sic Willielmus de Regibus, libro quarto: ⁴ Hanc⁵ urbem Constantius magnus constituit æquam Romæ, decernens imperatorem non debere Romæ principari, ubi principabantur apostoli coronati. Invenit quoque illuc innumeras Sanctorum reliquias, qui possent⁶ contra hostium insultus⁷ suffragari. Statuas etiam deorum et tripodes Delphicos ad ludibrium intuentium adduxit, gratum æstimans ibi urbem imperialem condere ubi esset soli ubertas⁸ et cœli temperies, juxta regionem Mysiam⁹ frugum feracem. Patet quoque undecumque¹⁰ adnavigantibus ab Asia et Europa, undique pene mari magno cincta, ambitu murorum juxta situm pelagi angulosi¹¹ viginti millia¹² passuum muro complexa. Quapropter rupium molibus

¹ *accendens*, B.

² *Constantinopolim*, E.

³ *Thracia . . . Byzantium*] Much altered and transposed in C.D., which omit all that follows till the section on *Lacedæmon*.

⁴ *in libro quarto Regum*, A.

⁵ *Quapropter hanc*, A.

⁶ *possunt*, A.

⁷ *insidias*, B.

⁸ *libertas*, E.

⁹ *Mesiam*, A.; but *Mysia* is most probably intended.

¹⁰ *undique*, B.

¹¹ *angulosa*, B.E.

¹² *millibus*, B.

queynt.¹ Þe chief cite of þis lond is Constantinopolis in þe est side, openliche i-seie by twene þe tweie sees Ponticus and Propontides, and opounliche i-seie out of water and of lond, and was somtyme þe cheef citee of þe Est; riȝt as Rome was of þe West, and hiȝte som tyme Byzantium.² Of þis citee Willielmus, libro quarto Regum, spekep in þis manere: Þe grete Constantinus bulde and made þis citee euene and pere to Rome³ and demed pat þe Emperour schulde nouȝt be chief pere; þe Apostles were cheef, and nameliche i-crowned. And he brouȝt pider also meny relikes of holy seyntes, pat myȝte hem helpe aȝenst her enemyes. Ymages of false goddes and tripodes Delphicos pat were Apolynes ymages he brouȝte to byskorne⁴ and bysmere⁵ to hem pat byhelde hem and say.⁶ So þis Emperour vouched sauf to bulde þe chief citee of þe empere in good corn contray, where pere is good temperure of heuene and of wedir, besides þe londe Mysia,⁷ pat hap grete plente of corn and of fruyt. Þe⁸ citee is i-seiȝe and i-schewed to alle schipmen pat seilleȝ pider ward out of what lond pat þey come of Asia and⁹ Europa, and is wel nyȝ byclipped al aboute wip þe grete see, and is cornered wipynne þe clippynge of þe walles faste by þe see side, and is¹⁰ byclipped wip a wal of twenty þowsand paas. Pere wip hupes of stones¹¹ and of grauel, i-caste

TREVISIA.

that cuntre is Constantinople,¹² in the este part of hit, MS. HARL. 2261. betwene the see Pontyke and Propontides, the hede of alle the este, as Rome is of the weste, somme tyme callede Byzantium;² of whom Willielmus, libro iiij¹⁰, de Regibus, spekethe: Constantine made that cite egalle to Rome, seyenge hit was not conueniente an Emperoure to kepe residence²¹ where thapostles crowneȝ kepede the principate, bryngenge thider innumerable relikes of Seyntes whiche myȝhte schewe socoure to the cite ageyne the sawtes of theire enmyes, thenkenge hit fre to hym to make a cite imperialle where was the pleasure and liberte of grownde, temperaunce of heuyn, nye to the region callede Mysia,⁷ plentuous of whete. Whiche is patente on euery syde to men sayleng from Asia and Europa, compassede alle moste with the grete see. The

¹ *acquenchyd*, Cx.

² *Bisancium*, MSS.

³ Rome] So a. and Cx.; London, MS.

⁴ *by skorne*, MS., and similarly often.

⁵ *busmere*, a.

⁶ he brought to be scorned and spyght to them that behelde hem and saue, Cx.

⁷ *Misia*, MSS. (of both versions).

⁸ *That*, Cx.

⁹ and of, Cx.

¹⁰ *I is*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

¹¹ *ther with heepes and huppels of stones*, Cx.

¹² *Propontides Constantinople*, MS., but *Propontides* erased.

et arenarum cumulis juxta urbem profundo injectis tellus dilatatur; Danubius etiam¹ fluvius (qui et Hister) occultis sub terra canalibus influit; urbi diebus constitutis, ablato pessulo, inductus centum plateas inundat. In qua urbe Constantinus erexit duas ecclesias famosas, sed Justinianus² postmodum literis et bellis egregius addidit tertiam ecclesiam in honorem Divinæ Sophiæ, id est³ Domini Christi, quem “hagiam⁴ sophiam” vocavit; opus, ut ferunt, omnibus per orbem ædificiis magnificentius, ita ut verba referentium vincat. Ibi per Helenam allatum fuit lignum dominicæ crucis. Ibi quiescunt apostoli Andreas, Jacobus frater Domini, Matthias, prophetæ quoque Heliseus, Samuel, Daniel. Item Lucas Evangelista et martyres quamplures. Item confessores Johannes Chrysostomus, Basilius, Gregorius Nazianzenus. Item virgines Agatha et Lucia.

De Lacedæmonia.

Isidorus, libro quintodecimo. Lacedæmonia sive Spartania provincia est Græciæ juxta Thraciam, cujus incolæ vocantur Lacedæmones a Lacedæmone filio

¹ *etiam*] So A.B. ; *et*, E.

² A. adds *imperator*.

³ A. repeats *in honorem*.

⁴ Trevisa's MS. must have had *Agia*, to judge by his translation.

into þe see besides þe citee, þe lond i-serched¹ and i-made more. Also þe ryuer Danubius, þat hatte Hister also, is i-lete and i-ladde in to dyuerse places of þe cite by goteres vnder erþe in þis manere. Whan þe water schal torne² in to þe citee men takeþ out a barre, þat þe water is i-stopped wip, and letteþ þe water renne, and stoppeþ whan hem likeþ. And so Danubius fyndeþ water i-now to an hondred stretis. In þis citee Constantinus arered and bulde tweie famous chirches; but Iustinianus þe Emperour bulde afterward þe priddyde chirche in worschippe of Diuina Sophia, þat is, oure Lord Crist, þat³ Agia clepeþ Diuina Sophia, in⁴ Engliasse, þe Wisdom of God. And men telleþ þat þe werk passeþ al þe buldyng of þe worlde, and is more noble þan men konne⁵ telle. Þeder Seint Eleyne⁶ brouȝte þe holy crosse þat oure Lorde Crist deied on; þere restep þe apostles Andrewe and Iames, þat is i-cleped Frater Domini;⁷ þere restep Mathias and prophetes also, Heliseus, Samuel, and Daniel; and also Luke þe euangeliste, and martires ful many; also confessours, Iohan wip þe gilden⁸ mouth, Basilius, and Gregorius Nazianzenus; and virgines, Agatha and Lucia.

TREVISA.

Lacedemonia, þat hat Spartania⁹ also, is a prouince of of Grecia faste byside Thracia. Men of þat prouince beep i-cleped Lacedemones of Lacedemon, Semelis¹⁰ sone, and

flooded Danubius flowethe in to the cite in condettes vnder the erthe; in dayes ordeynede, a barre take a way, that water clensethe cl. weyes in that cite. In whom grete Constantine erecte ij. famose chirches; but Iustinian the Emperoure, instructe in letters and in armes, addede the chirche in the worschippe of oure Lorde Criste, moste nowble in worke of alle oper chirches in the worlde. The crosse of oure Lorde was brouȝhte pider by Elene, where Seynte Andrewe, Seynte Iames broþer of oure Lorde, Mathias, Eliseus, Samuel, and Daniel reste. Also Lucas the Euangeliste, and mony other martires. Also Iohn Crisostom, Basilius, Gregory Nazanzene. Also Agatha and Lucia, virgines. Lacedemonia is a prouince of Grece, nye Thracia. The inhabitatores of whom be callede Lacedemones. Men of that

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ eched, Cx.² renne, Cx.³ þa, MS. (not a.)⁴ an, a.⁵ kun, a.; can, Cx.⁶ Helene, Cx.⁷ Cx. adds: in Engliasse, oure lordes broder.⁸ golden, Cx. (not a.)⁹ Spartaniu] So a. and Cx.; Speratoniū, MS.¹⁰ So Cx.; Samuelis, MS.; Samelis, a.

Semeles. Dicuntur etiam¹ Spartani.² *Trogus, libro tertio, capitulo secundo.* Hi aliquando³ circa obsidionem Messenes⁴ civitatis in Apulia per decennium immorati,⁵ querelis uxorum fatigabantur, timentesque⁶ ne diuturnitate praelii spem prolis amitterent, statuerunt ut eorum virgines cum juvenibus domi relictis promiscue concumberent, arbitantes per hoc sobolem maturiorem provenire si singulæ mulieres plures viros experirentur. Ex quibus nati, ob notam⁷ materni pudoris, Spartani vocabantur. Qui cum tricesimum annum attigissent, metu inopiæ, cum nullum certum patrem haberent,⁸ duce Phalantho filio Araci,⁹ insalutatis matribus, per varios casus jactati tandem Italiam devenerunt, expulsisque veteribus incolis, sedem apud Tarentum statuerunt.

De Macedonia.

Macedonia, a Macedone¹⁰ Deucalionis nepote sic dicta, quondam Emathia a rege Emathio vocabatur.¹¹ Ab ortu habet Ægeum mare, ab austro Achaiam, ab occasu Dalmatiam, a septentrione Mœsiam.¹²

¹ et, A.B.

² *Dicuntur etiam Spartani*] sive Spartani, C.D.

³ *aliquando*] om. C.D.

⁴ *Messene*, MSS.

⁵ *x. annos morati*, B.

⁶ A. and B. omit *que*.

⁷ *notam*, A.D. ; *naturam*, C.

⁸ *haberent patrem*, A.B.D.

⁹ Both the Latin and English MSS. have the form *Aracius*.

¹⁰ *Macedo*, MS.

¹¹ *dicebatur*, C.

¹² *Misiam*, MSS.

beep i-cleped Spartani also. *Trogus, libro tertio.* Þese men TREVISA.
somytyme bysegged þe citee Messina ten zere to gidres, and
were wery and i-greued¹ of pleyntes and grucching of
her wyfes, and dradde also þat longe abidyng from home
in werre and in bataille schulde make hem childrenlese²
at hom, and ordeyned perfore þat þe³ maydenes of her
londe schulde take zongelynges þat were i-left at home ; so þat
euery mayde schulde take many zongelynges,⁴ euerich after
oper ; for þey hoped to haue þe strengier childeren, zif
eueriche womman assayed many men. But for þe schameful
doyng of the modres þe children þat were i-gete and i-brouzt
forþ in þat manere were i-cleped Spartani, and whan þey were
pritty wynter⁵ olde þey dredde sore of nede and of mes-
cheef ; for non of hem wiste who was his owne sire.⁶ Perfore
þey toke hem a ledere and a chifteyn⁷ Phalanthus, Aracus⁸
his sone, and toke no leue of hire modres, but wente forþ
and were i-cast hider and pider by dyuers happes,⁹ and
at þe laste cam in to Italia, and dryue¹⁰ oute þe men þat
woned þere, and made þe cheef sede¹¹ at Tarentum.

Macedonia hap þe name of Macedo, Deucalions neuew,
and hiȝt somtyme Emathia of Emathius the kyng, and
hap in þe est side þe see Egeus, in þe souþe Achaia,¹² in
þe west Dalmatia, and in þe norþ Mesia.¹³ In pis prouince

prouince taryenge abowte the sege of a cite called Messene MS. HARL.
in Apulia, wexede feynte thro compleyntes of theire wives, 2261.
dredenge to lose multiplicacion off childer by diuturnite of
batelle, ordeynede that the childer of theyme lefte at home
scholde folowe the luste of the flesche to gedre, supposingo
the more multiplicacion to encrease; but the women experte
the knowlege of diuerse men, the childer of whom were
called Spartani. Whiche childer atteynge the age of
xxx^u yere, not knowenge their faders in certitude, takenge
to theyme a duke called Phalax, sonne of Aracus, come
to Ytaly, expellenge the olde inhabitatores of hit, made a
mansion and a seete to theyme at Tarentum. Macedonia,
called by that name of Macedo, neuewe to Deucalion, some
tyme [was] called Emathia of kyng Emathius, hauenge on
the este to hit the see of Egee, on the sowthe Achaia, of
the weste Dalmatia, on the northe parte Mesia. The hille f. 35. b.

¹ agreued, Cx.

² children, Cx. (typogr. error).

³ þe] om. Cx.

⁴ þat were . . . zongelynges] om. Cx.

⁵ yere, Cx.

⁶ fader, Cx.

⁷ capytayne, Cx.

⁸ Phalantis Aracius, MS.

⁹ fortunes, Cx.

¹⁰ droof, Cx.

¹¹ cyle, Cx. (not a.), which is probably right.

¹² Achaie, MS.

¹³ Misia, MSS. of both versions ; and so below.

De monte Olympo. In hac provincia est¹ mons Olympus, qui dividit Thraciam et Macedoniam.² *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo septimo.* Mons quidem nubes excedens, in cujus vertice nec nubes nec venti nec pluviae sentiuntur, super quem litterae inscriptae in pulvere³ post annum repertae sunt illibatae; ubi etiam pro nimia aeris raritate nec aves vivere queunt,⁴ nec philosophi ibidem⁵ ascendentes ad discendum cursum stellarum absque spongiis adaquatis manere potuerunt,⁶ quas naribus suis apponentes⁷ aerem trahebant crassiorem.

De monte Atho. Est ibi etiam⁸ mons Athos nubes pertingens, cujus umbra usque⁹ ad Lemnum insulam¹⁰ extenditur,¹¹ quae distat illo monte lxxvi. miliaribus.

De Dalmatia. Dalmatia ab ortu habet Macedoniam, ab occasu Istriam, a septentrione Moesiam, ab austro Adriaticum sinum.

De Achaia. Achaia, ab Achæo rege sic dicta, tota paene¹² est insula. Nam ab ortu habet Tyrrhenum mare, ab euro¹³ Creticum mare, a meridie¹⁴ mare Ionium, a solo¹⁵ sep-

¹ *In ea est*, C.D.

² *et Macedoniam]* a Macedonia, A.B.C.D.; C. and D. omit the title of the following extract from *Petrus*.

³ *scriptae in pulverem*, B.

⁴ *possunt*, C. (not D.)

⁵ *ibi*, B.; om. D.

⁶ *potuerant*, A.

⁷ *apponentes suis*, B.; *suis* is omittit in D.

⁸ *etiam ibidem*, A.B.D.

⁹ *usque]* om. B.

¹⁰ *in L. insulam*, C.; *in L. insula* D.

¹¹ *protenditur*, A.

¹² *paene]* fere, C.D.

¹³ *austro*, B.

¹⁴ *ab occasu*, B.

¹⁵ *solo]* om. B. The other MSS. have *sola*.

is þe hil mons Olympus, and to delep¹ tweio londes, Thracia TREVISA.
and Macedonia. *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo septimo.* Þe hul
passeþ þe clowdes, in þe cop² of þat hil comeþ no clowdes,
wynd, noþer reyn;³ vppon þat hulle lettres⁴ þat were
i-write in poudre were i-founde wip oute wem⁵ at þe ȝeres
ende. Also foules⁶ mowe not lyue⁷ þere; for þe aier is
to clere. And filosofres mowe not⁸ dwelle þere to lerne
þe course of sterres⁹ wip oute sponges i-watred and i-holde
at hir nostrilles¹⁰ to make pikker þe ayer, þat þey drawep
to kele¹¹ wip here herte. Þere is also þe hille¹² mons
Athos, þat reccheþ to þe clowdes; þe schadewe of þat hille
arecheþ to the ilond Lemnum. Þat ilond is from þe¹³ hul
pre score myle and sixtene.¹⁴

Dalmatia þat lond hap in þe est side Macedonia, in þe
west Histria, in þe norþ Mesia, and in þe soup þe see
Adriaticus.

Achaia hap þe name of Acheus þe kyng, and is wel nyh
an ylonde i-closed in þe see: for he¹⁵ hap in þe est side þe
see Tyrrhenus, and in þe norþ þe see Creticus, in þe soup þe

called Olimpus is in that province whiche diuidethe Thracia MS. HARL.
2261.
from Macedony. *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo septimo.* That
mownte is of suche altitude that the toppe off hit excedethe
clowdes, where clowdes be not perceyvede, neither wyndes,
neither reynes, in whom letters wryten were founde vnde-
filede at the end of the yere, where bryddes may not lyve
for rarite of the aier, neiper philosophres myȝte ascende
to hit to knowe the courses of the sterres with owte sponges,
whiche, puttenge theyme to theire noose, attracte more
thicker aier to theyme. There is also an hille callede
Athon, towchenge the clowdes, the schado of whom is
protendede to the yle callede Lemnus, which is from that
hille lxxvj. [myle]. Dalmatia hathe on the este parte to hit
Macedony, of the weste Histria, of the northe Mesia, of the
sowthe parte the see Adriatike. Achaia takenge the name
of hit of a kynge callede Acheus,¹⁶ is allemoste alle an yle.
For on the este parte to hit hit hathe the see Tirene, of the
weste the see Cretike, on the sowthe the see Ionius, of the

¹ departeth, Cx.

² vppriat, Cx.

³ reine ne wynde, Cx.

⁴ So Cx.; lettre, MS.

⁵ hurtynge or wemme, Cx.

⁶ So fowles, Cx.

⁷ nouȝt libbe, a.

⁸ nouȝt, a.

⁹ the sterres, Cx.

¹⁰ her nose thirles, Cx.; nosetrils, a.

¹¹ cole, Cx.

¹² Cx. omits þe hille.

¹³ that, Cx.

¹⁴ lxx. myle, Cx.

¹⁵ it, Cx.

¹⁶ Echius, Harl. MS.

tentrione Macedoniæ et Atticæ jungitur. Hujus metropolis est Corinthus, ubi Alexander magnus¹ collegit exercitum, quando proposuit² expugnare orbem terrarum; quibus et Paulus scripsit.³

De Arcadia.

Arcadia, quæ et⁴ Sicyonia, ab Arcade filio Jovis sic dicta, sinus est Achaia; inter mare Ionium et Ægeum velut⁵ platani folium jacet.

De lapide Asbesto.

Hæc gignit Asbeston⁶ lapidem,⁷ qui semel accensus nunquam extinguitur. Gignit etiam⁸ candidas merulas, cum tamen apud nos merulæ sint⁹ nigræ.¹⁰

De Thessalia.

Thessalia ad austrum Macedoniæ jungitur, patria quondam Achillis et Lapitharum origo, qui primum equos frænis domuerunt et dorsis eorum insederunt, propter quod unum corpus cum equis quibus insidebant¹¹ a vulgo indocto¹² putabantur. Et inde centum

Centauri. equites Thessalorum dicti sunt Centauri a centum

¹ magnus Alexander, A.B.D.

² disposuit, D.

³ duas scripsit epistolas, C.D.

⁴ et] est, D.

⁵ velut] quasi, C.D.

⁶ albeston, A.B. ; albesten. C.D.E.

⁷ lapidem] om. C. (not D.)

⁸ etiam] et, C. (not D.)

⁹ sint] sunt, A.

¹⁰ cum apud nos omnes sint nigræ, C.D.

¹¹ quibus insidebant] om. C.D.

¹² indocto] ignaro, C.D.

see Ionius, and onliche in þe norþ he¹ ioyneth² to Mace- TREVISA.
donia and to Attica. Þe cheef citee of pat lond hatte
Corinthus; pere kyng Alexandre³ gadrede his oost for to
wynne al þe world; peder Poul⁴ wroot his pistil ad
Corinthios.

Arcadia, pat hatte Sicyonia also, hap þe name of Arcas,⁵
Iupiter is sone, and is an angul (pat is,⁶ a corner) of Achaia,
and liep bytwene þe twele sees Ionius and Egeus, and is
i-schape as is⁷ a plane leef. Pere ynne is Asbeston⁸ pat
wil neuere quenche, be it ones i-tend; pere beep also white
wesels.⁹ Þe¹⁰ wesels⁹ be blak among vs; pere þey beep
white.

Thessalia ioynep in þe soup side to Macedonia, and was
somytyme Achilles contray, and pere bygonne Lapiþe;¹¹ pilke
men chastisede¹² and temede¹³ hors firste wip bridels, and
sette¹⁴ on hire bakkes; perfore þe lewed peple wende¹⁵ pat
it were¹⁶ alle on¹⁷ body, man and hors pat þey sitte¹⁸ on.
And perfore an hondred horsmen of Thessalia were i-cleped
centaury. Pat name is i-gadered of tweyne, of *centum*, pat
is, *an hondred*, and of *aura*, pat is, *þe wynde*. And so pat
name was to hem i-schappe *Centaury*, as it were an hundred

northe oonly Macedony, ioynede to Attica. The chiefe MS. HARL.
cite of whom is Corinthus, where kyng Alexander gedrede 2261.
his hoste, intendenge to expugne alle the worlde, to whom
Seynte Paule did wryte. Arcadia, whiche [is] operwise
callede Sicyonia, was so namede of Arcas,⁵ son of Iupiter,
the bosom of Achaia, betwene the see Ionine and the see of
Egee, lyenge lyke to the leef of a tree. In this cuntre is
a ston callede Asbeston,¹⁹ whiche accendede oonys is neuer
extincte, and oper diuerse precious stones. Thessalia, at
the sowthe parte of hit, is ioynede to Macedony, somme tyme
the cuntre of Achilles, and the originalle of men callede
Laphites, whiche made tame firste horses with bridelles, and
rydenge on the backes off theyme, whiche were trawede to
be of oon body with þe horses on whom thei did ryde of
the commune peple, where fore a c. horse men of that

¹ it, Cx.

² So Cx.; ioyned, MS.

³ Alysander, Cx.

⁴ Paule, Cx.

⁵ Archas, Cx.; Archades, MSS.
of both versions.

⁶ pat is] or, Cx.

⁷ is] om. a. and Cx.

⁸ Albeston, MS., a., Cx.

⁹ ousels, Cx. (twice).

¹⁰ þei, a.; though, Cx., which seems
right.

¹¹ Laphite, MS., Cx.

¹² chastede, a.

¹³ tamed, Cx.

¹⁴ sette, Cx.

¹⁵ supposed, Cx.

¹⁶ had be, Cx.

¹⁷ oon, a.; one, Cx.

¹⁸ sete, a.; sette, Cx.

¹⁹ Albestes, Harl. MS.

et aura quam agitabant sic equitando.¹ *Trogus, libro Parnassus. xxiv.*² In hac³ provincia est mons Parnassus apud poetas famosus et celebris, saxo bicipiti dependens; in cujus vertice templum Delphici Apollinis situatur; et in anfractu planitiei mediæ puteus existit, ubi responsa dari solebant,⁴ mentesque philosophantiam inspirari. Quamobrem si hominum aut tubarum sonitus in medio convallis personet, correspondentibus inter se rupibus multiplex echo resonabit.⁵ *Isidorus, libro tertiodécimo.* In hac provincia duo sunt flumina, ex quorum uno bibentes oves efficiuntur nigræ, ex altero albæ, ex utroque fonte bibentes fiunt coloris varii.⁶

Fons. *Ranulphus.* In hac quoque terra sunt loca illa delectabilia ad spatiandum accommoda quæ dicuntur apud philosophos et poetas⁷ Tempe florida, de quibus Ovidius et Theodosius⁸ scribunt.⁹ In hac quoque terra contigit illud tertium diluvium particulare¹⁰ tempore Deucalionis ibidem principantis, qui confugientes ad eum¹¹ in rati-bus salvabat, propter quod fingunt poetæ ipsum cum conjuge sua Pyrrha jactis lapidibus homines creasse.¹²

¹ *quam equitando sic agitabant,* C.; also D., omitting *sic*.

² 14, B.; 34, C.D. The text is correct. See Just. xxiv. 6.

³ *hac quoque,* C. (not D.)

⁴ *solent,* C.D.

⁵ *personabit,* C.D.

⁶ *ex utroque vero bibentes vario colore fiunt,* C.D.

⁷ *apud . . . poetas]* om. C.D.

⁸ *Theodolus,* A.B.D. Perhaps Herodotus (see vii. 173) is intended.

⁹ *scribunt]* mentionem faciunt, C. D.

¹⁰ *particulare diluvium,* A.

¹¹ *ad eum]* om. C.D.

¹² The two last sentences are transposed in B.

wynde wagers: for þey wagged wel¹ þe wynde faste in TREVISA.
 hir ridynge. *Trogus, libro vicesimo quarto.*² In þis prouince is þe hille Parnassus; (poetis accountep þat hil noble and famous;) and hongep with tweie copped stones. In þe cop³ þerof is the temple of Delphicus Apollo;⁴ and in þe wyndynge⁵ of þe myddel playn is a pitte, oute of þat pitte filosofres were enspired; and dyuers answeres were i-ȝeue out of þat pitte. Perfore ȝif noyse of men oper of trompes sownep in þe⁶ valey, þe stones answerep euerich oper, and dyuers ecco sownep. Ecco is þe reboundynge of noyse. *Isidorus, libro tertidecimo.* In þis prouince beep tweie ryueres; scheepe þat drynkep of þat oon schulle worpe⁷ blak, and schepe þat drynkep of þat oper schul worpe⁷ whyte; and ȝif þey drynken of bope, þey schulle worpe⁷ spekked⁸ of dyuers colour. Also in þis prouince beep pilke likynge places to walke ynne þat filosofres and poetes clepep *tempe*⁹ *florida*, þat is, *likynge place wip floures*. Of þis place writep Theodolus and Ouidius. Also in þis¹⁰ prouince of þat lond¹¹ was þe pridde particuler flood, and ful¹² in Deucalions tyme, prince of þat lond. Þat prince sauede men þat fleigh to hym in schippes and bootes; perfore poetes feynede þat he and his wif Pyrrha cast stones and

cuntre were callede centauri. *Trogus, libro secundo.* The MS. HARL.
2261.
 hille callede Parnassus is in that prouince, a nowble mownte, and of grete fame after poetes, dependenge¹³ by a dowble ston, in the toppe of whom a temple is sette lyke to the temple of Apollo Delphicus; and in the pleyne þer of is a pitte where thei ȝafe to viuificate the myndes of filosofres, *Isidorus, libro 13^o*. There be ij. waters in that f. 36. a.
 prouince, of that oon of whom schepe drynkenge be made blacke, of that other white, and schepe drynkenge of bothe waters be made of diuerse coloures. Also in that londe be places delectable, of whom Ouidius and Theodolus doe wryte. In that londe happede a particuler floode, in the tyme of Deucalion beyng prince there, whiche saluede men commenge to hym in schippes, wherefore poetes feyne hym, with Pyrrha his wife, to haue create men of stones. Helladia

¹ wel] om. Cx.; placed before faste in a., which seems right.

² 14, Cx.

³ toppe, Cx.

⁴ Appolyn, MS.; Appollyn, Cx.

⁵ wendynge, Cx.

⁶ þe] a, Cx.

⁷ were, Cx. (thrice).

⁸ splekked, a. and Cx.

⁹ tempore, Cx.

¹⁰ So a. and Cx.; his, MS.

¹¹ of þat lond] om. Cx.

¹² fille, Cx. (not a.)

¹³ portes depengenge, Harl. MS.

De Hel-
ladia.

Helladia,¹ a rege Hellene, Deucalionis et Pyrrhæ filio, sic dicta, a quo Græci Hellenes dicti sunt. Ipsa quoque est Attica terra, ab Atthide² filia Cranai³ sic dicta, inter Macedoniam et Achaiam⁴ jacet media, a septentrione jungitur Arcadiæ. Ipsa est vera Græcia, cujus duæ sunt partes, Bœotia et Peloponnesus, quarum metropolis est Athenæ,⁵ ubi quondam vigeabat studium litterarum; nationumque cunctarum⁶ ad discendum⁷ confluebat copia, quæ tali modo condita fuit. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo.* Ea tempestate qua Ægyptus percussa est plagis sub manu Moysis,⁸ quidam Ægyptii⁹ timentes¹⁰ Ægyptum perituram egressi sunt.¹¹ Unde et¹² Cecrops egressus apud Græciam¹³ urbem Acten condidit, quæ postmodum dicta est Athenæ. Isto modo secundum Varronem, cum apud Acten urbem subito apparuisset oliva, et aqua alibi repente erupisset, consuluit

¹ *Ellana*, A.; *Ellanda*, C. The MSS. generally omit the aspirate.

² *Athis*, MSS.

³ *Grani*, MSS.

⁴ *A. et M.*, B.

⁵ *Athenas*, MSS.

⁶ *et ecclesiarum*, C., which omits *cunctarum* (not D.).

⁷ *a discendi*, B. (without sense.)

⁸ *Moyesi*, MSS.

⁹ *Ægyptiorum*, C.D.

¹⁰ *tunc timentes*, A.

¹¹ *fugerunt*, C. (not D.)

¹² *et*] om. B.

¹³ *apud Græciam*] *adveniensque Græciam*, C.D., which have other slight alterations.

made men. Helladia pat londe hap þe name of Hellen¹ þe TREVISA.
 kyng, pat was Deucaliouns sone, and Pyrrha also. Of þis
 Hellen þe Grees hatte Hellenes. Þis lond hatte Attica
 also, of Atthis, pat was Cranaus² his douȝter; and liep
 by twene Macedonia and Achaia and ioynep in þe north
 side to Arcadia. Þis londe is verrey Grecia, and hap tweie
 parties; Beotia³ is pat oon, and Peloponnesus⁴ pat oper.
 Þe chief citee of þis lond hatte Athene:⁵ þere was somtyme
 a grete studie of lettrure⁶ and of clergie, and men of all
 naciouns and londes come pider forto lerne. Athene pat
 citee was i-bulde in þis manere. *Augustinus de Civitate,*
libro octavodecimo. Pat tyme pat Egipt was i-amyte wip
 God all myȝties wrethe vnder Moyses hond, som seiȝe⁷
 Egipt schulde be lost, and flowe oute of Egipt in to⁸ oper
 londes. And so Cecrops⁹ fleigh¹⁰ out of Egipt into Grecia,
 and þere he bulde þe citee Atthen, pat was i-cleped after-
 ward Athene. In þis manere, as Varro¹¹ seiȝ, an olyue
 was sodeynliche i-seie in pat citee Atthen, and a water brak
 oute sodeynliche in anoper place. Þanne Cecrops axede

toke the name of hit of Hellen,¹² son of Deucalion and of MS. HARL.
 Pyrra, of whome Grekes be callede Elenas. That is the londe 2261.
 callede Attica, of Atthis, doȝhter of Graius, lyenge betwene
 Macedony and Achaia, as in the myddes, ioynede to Arcadia
 in the northe: that is verrey Grece, of whom be ij. partes,
 Beotia³ and Peloponense, the chiefe cite of whom is Athenas,
 where study was somme tyme multiplicat, to whiche cite
 grete multitude of peple made confluence for cause of eru-
 dicion from diuerse regiones. *Augustinus, De civitate Dei,*
libro octavodecimo. Somme Egypciannes dredenge Egipte
 to peresche in that grete tempeste, what tyme hit was gre-
 vede with mony diseases vnder the powere of Moises, wente
 furthe from hit. Wherefore Cecrops, goen furthe to Grece,
 made a cite, namenge hit Athen, whiche was callede after
 Athenas. After Varro, hit was made in this maner, when
 at that city callede Athen an oliue apperede sodenly, and
 the water brake vp also sodenly in an other place, Cecrops

¹ Ellena, MS., a., Cx.

² Gramys, MS., a.; Grauius, Cx.

³ Boecia, MSS. (as usual).

⁴ Pelopenensia, MS.

⁵ Athenes, Cx., and so below.

⁶ lecture, Cx.

⁷ som Egipcians dredde lest, a.;
 somme Egypciens dradde leste, Cx.

⁸ in to] to, Cx.

⁹ Sicrops, MS.; Cicrops and Sy-
 crops below. Similarly the rest,
 nearly.

¹⁰ fledde, Cx.

¹¹ So Cx.; Pharro, MS., and a.

¹² Ellanda, Harl. MS.

Cecrops Apollinem¹ Delphicum in² monte Parnasso, quid de hac re foret accitandum.³ Ille respondit quod oliva deam Minervam significaret, unda vero⁴ Neptunum. Et quod esset⁵ in civium potestate ex cujus nomine duorum deorum civitatem vellent denominare.⁶ Hinc cives omnes utriusque sexus conveniunt, sicut mos erat tunc, ita foeminas sicut mares publicis consultationibus interesse; mares igitur pro Neptuno, foeminae⁷ pro Minerva tulerunt sententiam. Et quia una plus inventa est foeminarum quam virorum⁸ vicit Minerva, ita ut civitas nomine ejus vocaretur Athenæ. Nam⁹ Minerva Græce dicitur Athena.¹⁰ Tunc Neptunus iratus terras Atheniensium marinis fluctibus operuit, quod non est difficile dæmonibus facere. Cujus ut iracundia facilius placaretur, foeminae dupliciter sunt afflictæ; ita ut nulla deinceps foeminarum publicis consultationibus interesset,

¹ *misit rex Cecrops ad Ap., D.*

² *in] de, A.*

³ *Sic A.E.; accidendum, B.; agendum, C.D.*

⁴ *vero added from C.D.*

⁵ *esset after potestate in B.*

⁶ *Et quod . . . denominare] In C. thus: "Tunc facta est dissensio in*

"civitate ex cujus nomine duorum deorum civitas potius vocaretur." D. agrees with C. in the last three words only.

⁷ *B. adds vero.*

⁸ *quam virorum] om. D.*

⁹ *Nam] om. B.*

¹⁰ *Nam . . . Athena] om. C.D.*

counsaille of Appolyn¹ Delphicus, pat maumet, in pe hil TREVISA.
 mount Parnassus, and axede what pese pinges schulde be to
 menyng;² and he answerde and seide pat pe olyue bytokened
 pe Goddes Minerua³ and pe water bytokened Neptunus;
 and seide pat it was in power and choys of pe citeceyns after
 wheper of pe tweie goddes pe citee schulde hote.⁴ Perfore pe
 citee,⁵ bope men and wommen [gadred hem to gyders, as it
 was the manere that tyme; that bothe men and wymmen]⁶
 schulde come to comoun counsaile; panne in pat counsail⁷
 men 3af pe dome for Neptunus and wommen for Minerua;
 and for pere was o⁸ womman more⁹ pan were men, Minerua
 hadde pe maistrie, and pe citee was i-cleped by here name
 Athene;¹⁰ for Minerua in pe speche of Grewe hatte Athena.
 Pan was Neptunus wood wroop,¹¹ and made pe flodes of pe
 see arise¹² and ouerflowe and hele pe londes of pe men of
 pat citee Athena,¹³ as deueles mowe liȝtliche doo suche
 chekkes. Pan for to plesse Neptunus and for to abathe his
 wreppe and his anger wommen were i-punsched with double
 payne; pat oon was pat no womman schulde aftirward come

takege cownselle of Apollo Delphicus what scholde be MS. HARL.
 doen in that matere, he 3afe an ansuere that the oliue 2261.
 signifiede that goddesse Minerua and the water Neptunus,
 and that cause was after the name of whom of theyme the
 cite scholde have name. Then the citesynnes of either
 kynde were gedrede to gedre as the consuetude was in that
 tyme women to be at cownselles amonge the men. The
 women 3afe sentence for Minerua, and men for Neptunus,
 and for cause the nowmbre was moore in women then in
 men by oon person, Minerua hade the victory, in so moche
 that the cite scholde be namede aftere here Athena, for
 Minerva in Grewe is callede Athena. Then Neptunus
 beenge wrothe, couerede the growndes of men of Atheynes
 with waters, whiche thyng is not harde to deueldes to per-
 forme and to do. The women of whiche cite were afflicte
 in ij. maneres, that Neptunus myȝhte rather take pleasure,
 soe that a woman scholde not be at cownesailes afterwarde,

¹ So MS. Trevisa seems to have considered this the nominative of *Apollinis*.

² mene, a., Cx.

³ *Mynerua*, MS.; but *Minerua* below.

⁴ hoote, a.

⁵ citezeins, a., Cx.

⁶ Words in brackets added from Cx. They are absent from a.

⁷ panne . . . counsail] Added from a., Cx.

⁸ one, Cx. (not a.)

⁹ moo, a., Cx.

¹⁰ *Athene*, MS., and so below.

¹¹ wroth wode, Cx.

¹² tarise (i. e. to arise), Cx.

¹³ londes of them of *Athens*, Cx.

et ut nullus nascentium maternum nomen contraheret.¹ Huic provinciae Helladiae subjacet Hellespontus, sinus maris magni,² sic dictus ab Helle sorore Phrixi, quæ fugiens insidias novercales submersa est in illo mari, a quo casu mare et terra adjacens denominationem accepit. Juxta quem locum dicit Varro aliquos esse homines quorum tactus et saliva medentur contra ictus serpentum. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Primi Athenienses lanificii, vini, et olei usum habuerunt; arare, serere, glandibusque³ vesci docuerunt; literis, facundia civili, disciplina primo floruerunt. Cujus primus rex fuit Cecrops, post quem Cranus seu Cranaus,⁴ cujus filius Atthis nomen regioni dedit. Post quem Amphictyon,⁵ cujus tempore factum est diluvium in Thessalia. Deinde successive regnum descendit ad Erichthonium, post quem Ægeus,⁶ post quem Theseus filius ejus, deinde Demo-

¹ *traheret*, C.D.

² *maris magni*.] C.D. end the section here, beginning the next sentence with, *Bæotia, a bove, &c.*, and omitting Isidore's name as the source of the information.

³ A.B. omit *que*.

⁴ Both words are written with a G in the MSS. In Trevisa they vary. Here and elsewhere it is impossible to deal with proper names

in any manner satisfactorily. To correct the orthography in such authors as Higden and his translators is to re-write them. The MSS. of the text, however, have been more freely corrected than those of the versions.

⁵ *Amphigionides*, A.E. *Alphigeonides*, B.

⁶ *post quem Ægeus*] om. B.

to¹ comyn counseil, pat oper payne was pat no childe schulde
 afftirward bere his moder² name. To pat prouince Helladia
 lyep³ Hellespontus, pat greet mouth of⁴ pe grete see, and
 hap pe name of Helle, Phrixus⁵ his suster, pat fleiþ⁶ pe
 malice and pursuet⁷ of here stepdame, and was adraynt⁸ in
 pat mouth and see; and for pat hap pe⁹ see and pe lond aboute
 hatte after Helle Hellespontus. Varro¹⁰ scip pat faste bysides
 pat place beep men pat heleþ smytynge of serpentes wip
 touche or¹¹ wip spotel. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Athenienses,
 men of Athene, vsed first craft of wolle and¹² of wyn and of
 oylle, and tauþte eryl¹³ and sowe and ete acharns;¹⁴ þei flori-
 schid first in lore of clergie and of lawe. Þe firste kyng of
 pat lond hiþte Cecrops, after hym come Granus þat heet
 Cranaus also; þan his sone Atthis ȝaf his name to pe lond
 and cleped it after hymself Atheniensis. Þan after Atthis
 regned Amphigionides.¹⁵ In his tyme was pe grete flood in
 Thessalia. Þanne afftirwarde the kyngdom discendede to Erich-
 thonius.¹⁶ After hym regnede Egeus, and after hym his sone
 Theseus; pat Theseus sone Demophon,¹⁷ he halp¹⁸ pe Grees

TREVISA.

and also that theire childer scholde not take name in eny MS. HARL.
 wyse after theyme. Hellespontus, bosom of the grete see, 2261.
 is subiecte to the prouince of Helladia, takenge the name
 of hit of Helle sustyr to Phrixus,⁵ whiche fleenge the wacches
 of here steppe moder, was drowned in that see, by whiche
 chaunce that londe and see adiecte to hit toke hit name.
 Nye to whiche place Varro seythe there be men the towche
 or spatelle of whom is medicinable ageyne serpentes and
 styngenge of theyme. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Men of
 Atheynes began firste the vse of wyne and oyle, techenge to
 eiere and sawe, and floreschenge fyrste with ciuile discipline,
 the firste kyng of whom was Cecrops, after whom Graius,
 other Granaus, Atthis the son of whom ȝafe name to that
 region. After whom Amphigionides, in whose tyme was a
 floode in Thessalia. After that the realme discendede
 successiuely to Erichthonius. Then reignede Egeus. After
 whom Theseus his sonne. After that the son of Demophon,

f. 35. b.

¹ in, a., Cx.² moders, Cx. (not a.)³ lyep] Added from Cx. (lyeth).⁴ Four words added from a. and Cx.⁵ Frizus, MSS. of both versions.⁶ fledde, Cx.⁷ þe pursuyt, a.⁸ drowned, Cx.⁹ pat, a.¹⁰ So Cx.; Barro, MS., a.¹¹ and, a. and Cx.¹² and] om. a.¹³ to eere, Cx.¹⁴ acornes, Cx.¹⁵ So MSS. of both versions, for *Amphictyon*.¹⁶ Euritonius, MS.; *Erichtonius*, a. and Cx.¹⁷ So Cx.; *Demoson*, MSS. of both versions.¹⁸ helpe, Cx.

phon ejus filius, qui Græcis opem tulit contra Trojanos.

De Bæotia. *Isidorus, libro nonodecimo.*¹ Bæotia a bove denominata est; dum² enim Cadmus filius Agenoris Europam sororem suam a Jove raptam ex præcepto patris quæreret, nec reperiret;³ patris iram formidans confirmato animo exilium elegit,⁴ et dum casu bovis conspectæ⁵ sequeretur vestigium, locum ubi bos decubuit Bæotiam nominavit.⁶ Ubi et⁷ postmodum Thebas construxit: in qua olim bella civilia detonuerunt.⁸ Ibique nati sunt Apollo et Hercules ille major Thebanus. In hac terra est lacus quidam furialis, de quo qui biberit furore libidinis inardescet.⁹ Sunt et alii duo fontes, quorum unus memoriam, alter oblivionem inducit. *Petrus, xij^o.* Et nota quod a Thebis Ægyptiorum dicuntur Thebæi, a Thebis Græcorum Thebani, a Thebis Judæorum¹⁰ Thebitæ.

¹ 9, B.; 14, A., but altered to 18.
The true reference is to lib. xiv. c.

4. § 10.

² *dum*] *cum*, C.D.

³ *nec reperiret*] *om.* A.

⁴ *petit*, E.

⁵ *conspectæ*] *conscripti*, C.D.

⁶ *denominavit*, B.D.

⁷ *ibique*, B.

⁸ *detenuerunt*, B.D.

⁹ *inardescit*, D.

¹⁰ *Indorum*, B.

aʒenst þe Troians. Beotia, oxe-lond, hap þe name of *bos*, þat is an oxe. Whan Cadmus, Agenores sone, at his fader¹ heste souʒt his suster Europa, þat Iupiter hadde i-rauished, and myʒte nouʒt here fynde, he dradde his fader wraþe, and² koupe non oþer reed but fleiʒ³ as an outlawe; hit happed⁴ þat he folwed þe fore⁵ of an oxe, and fondo þe place þat þe oxe lay inne, and cleped it Beotia, and bulde þere þe citee Thebe, in⁶ þat citee bella civilia detonuerunt.⁷ And þere was Apollo⁸ i-bore and Hercules,⁹ in pilke more Thebanus also.¹⁰ In þat lond is a lake wonderful and wood, for who þat drynkep þerof he¹¹ schal brenne in woodnesse of leccherie. Þere beep also tweie welles in þat lond; who þat drynkep of þat oon, he schal be forʒetful; and who þat drinketh of þat oþer, he schal haue good mynde. *Petrus*. Take hede þat men of Thebe, þat is in Egipt, hatte Thebey; men of Thebe, þat is in Grecia, hat Thebany; and þe men of Thebe, þat is in Iudea, hatte Thebite.¹²

TREVISA.

whiche schewede helpe to Grekes ageyne the Troianes. Boetia toke name of this worde, *bos*. When Cadmus, son Agenoris, sekenge Europa his sustyr, by commaundement of his fader, whiche was rapte by Iupiter,¹³ whiche not fyndenge here, dredenge also the wraþe of his fader, chosedo to lyve in exile, whiche folowenge the stappes of an ox, namede that place Boetia, where the oxe did lye downe and dye, where he made a cite called Thebas, in whom they did holde somme tymes ciuile batayles, where Apollo and Hercules were borne. In that prouince is a water of whom if a man drynke he schalle be inflamed with woodenesse of lecchery. There be oþer ij. welles also, of whom oon inducethe memory, that other obliuion.

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ *faders*, Cx. (who often has similar variations).

² *he conthe, a.; he coude*, Cx.

³ *fledde*, Cx.

⁴ *hapned*, Cx.

⁵ *foote*, Cx.

⁶ *in*] Added from Cx.

⁷ *detenuerunt*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)

⁸ *Appollo*, MS.

⁹ *Ercules*, MS.

¹⁰ Probably in before *pilke* should be cancelled; or Trevisa may have misunderstood the text.

¹¹ *he*] om. Cx.

¹² The sentence is slightly compressed in Cx.

¹³ *Iubiter*, Harl. MS.

CAP. XXIII.

De Italia.

Italia
diversa
habet
nomina.¹

*Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.*² Legitur in historiis quod³ Italia, a Græcis quondam⁴ occupata, Magna Græcia dicebatur. Dicta⁵ est etiam Hesperia, ab Hespero⁶ stella, qui direxit⁷ Græcos illuc⁸ navigantes. Deinde a Saturno eam incolente dicta est Saturnia; sed et⁹ ab eodem, propter metum filii sui Jovis ibidem latitante, dicta est Latium, quasi a latebra Saturni.¹⁰ Postmodum¹¹ ab Ausonio¹² filio Ulixis dicta est Ausonia. Tandem ab Italo Siculorum rege dicta est Italia, totius Europæ insignior provincia, quæ ab aquilone clauditur sinu Adriatico, ab ortu mari magno,¹³ ab euro Sicilia et mare Tyrrheno, ab occasu Alpium jugis, ex quibus¹⁴ oriuntur tria nobilissima Europæ flumina, Rhenus, Danubius, Rhodanus.¹⁵ *Isidorus, libro*

¹ Marginal summary varied slightly from A.

² *nono*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiv. c. iv. § 18.

³ *Legitur . . . quod* om. C.D.

⁴ *quondam* after *Italia* in B.

⁵ *Et dicta*, B.

⁶ So B. *Hespera*, A.C.D.E. and the versions, (having *quæ* below).

⁷ *ducebat*, C.D.

⁸ *ibidem*, B.

⁹ *et* etiam, A.

¹⁰ *Deinde . . . Saturni*] Much abbreviated in C.D.

¹¹ *post hæc*, D.

¹² *Ausonio*] Anselmo, C. (not D.)

¹³ *magno mari*, B.

¹⁴ *quibus*] quo, C.

¹⁵ *et Rhodanus*, B.

Capitulum vicesimum tertium.
Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.

TREVISA.

Wz redeþ in stories þat Grees¹ wonede somtyme in² Italia,³ an cleped þe lond þe Grete Grecia; þat lond hiȝte somtyme Hesperia, of Hespera, þe sterre þat ladde þe Grees whan þey seilled pider, and was her loode sterre, Hespera,⁴ þat is Venus. Afterward þat lond hiȝte Saturnia of Saturnus þat wonede pere, for⁵ Saturnus hid hymself⁶ in þat lond for drede of his owne sone Iupiter, and cleped þe lond Latium, þat is Saturnus huydels.⁷ After þat þat lond hiȝte Ausonia of Ausonius,⁸ Vlixus sone; but at þe laste þat londe hiȝte Italia of Italus, rege Siculorum, kyng of Sicilia,⁹ and is þe noblest prouince of al Europa, and is i-closed in þe norþ side wip þe moup and see þat hatte Adriaticus, in þe est wip þe grete see, in þe soup wip Sicilia, and wip þe see Tyrrenus, and in þe west wip þe sides of þe hilles þat hatte Alpes.¹⁰ Out of pilke hil[les]¹¹ springeþ þre þe noblest ryueres of al Europa, þat beep i-cleped þe Ryne,¹² Danubius, and Rone. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.*

Capitulum vicesimum tertium.

Hyt is redde in storyes that Ytaly somme tyme occupyede MS. HARL. 2261.
of the Grekes, was callede the grete londe off Grece. Also hit was callede Hespera, after a sterre callede Hespera, whiche directe the Grekes sayleng to hit. After that hit was namede Saturnia of Saturnus inhabitenge hit, afterwarde callede Latium, for the drede of Iouis his son lyenge there priuely; whiche was callede afterwarde Ausonia, of Ausonius son of Vlixes. Afterwarde hit was namede Ytaly of Ytalus kyng of Siculynes, the moste nowble prouince of alle Europe, whiche is schutte on the northe parte to hit with the see Adriatike, on the este with the grete see, of the sowthe with Sicille and with the see Tyrene. From whom iij. nowble and famose floodes of Europe take theire originale, whiche be callede Renus, Danubius, and Rodanus. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo centesimo sexto.* In this prouince is

¹ Grekes, Cx. (as usual).

² in] om. MS.

³ So a. and Cx.; *Hesperia*, MS.

⁴ *Hespera*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

⁵ for] So Cx.; but þe, MS., a.

⁶ Cx. adds there.

⁷ huydles, Cx.

⁸ *Eusonia*, *Eusonius*, MS., a., Cx.

⁹ *Scicilia*, MS., Cx.

¹⁰ The previous sentence is much blundered in Cx.

¹¹ hilles, a.; hylles, Cx.

¹² ryuer, Cx.

tertio decimo. In hac Italia est fons Cithæronis,¹ oculorum vulnera curans. Est et in ea Clitorius lacus, ex quo bibens² vini³ tædium habebit. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo centesimo sexto.*⁴ Juxta Alpes Appenninos fluvius Novanus⁵ est, qui circa⁶ solstitium æstivale torret et inundat, circa brumam vero⁷ desiccatur. *Paulus, libro secundo.*⁸ Hujus Italiæ plures sunt provinciæ, quæ sunt⁹ Calabria, Apulia, Campania, Beneventana, Tuscia, Herulia, Liguria, Lombardia.¹⁰

De Apulia. Apulia pars est Italiæ maritima ad eorum situata,¹¹ ab insula Siciliæ marino brachio separata, a Græcis primitus ædificata, cujus metropolis est Brundisium, sic dicta a *brunta*,¹² Græce, quod est, *caput cervi*, eo quod formam capitis cervini in sui figuratione teneat,¹³ inde versus Terram Sanctam, ut communiter navigatur. Habet quoque hæc terra fontes calidos et salubres.

De Campania major et minore.

Campania major est regio, media inter Romanum territorium et Apuliam, cujus metropolis civitas est Capua, a capacitate sufficientiæ sic dicta. Post duas famosissimas civitates, Romam¹⁴ et Carthaginem, tertia

¹ *Othonis*, B.; *Citheronis*, E.; *Cithar*, C. In Isidore (xiii. 13) we have *Ciceron*. Perhaps *Cithæron* in Attica may be intended by him as well as by Higden.

² *bibens*] qui bibit, C.; qui *biberit*, D.

³ *nix*, B.

⁴ *libro* 1^o. c. 108, B.; *li.* 2. c. 96, A. The text is correct.

⁵ *Novacius*, B., and the versions, wrongly.

⁶ *circa*] *citra*, C. (not D.)

⁷ *vero*] om. C.D.

⁸ *primo*, B., wrongly. See lib. ii. c. 15.

⁹ *quæ sunt*] scilicet, D.E.

¹⁰ *Lumbardia*, MSS., Latin and English; Trevisa once writes it *Lombardia*.

¹¹ *desituata*, A.

¹² The Messapian word was probably *ῥέινδον*. See Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.*, s.v.

¹³ *tacet*, A.

¹⁴ B. adds *scilicet*.

In pis Italia is Cithero his welle, pat helep wel sore eizen. TREVISIA.
 Pere is also pe lake Clitorius ; who pat drynkep of pat lake,
 no wyne schal hym greue. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo*
*decimo.*¹ Faste by pe hilles pat hatte Alpes Appennini is
 pat welle Novacius, pat wellep and springep in pe hote somer
 and drye, and fordriep in colde wynter and wete. *Trevisa.*
 Alpes Appennini pat beep Penitus his hilles. Hanibal was
 a grete duke and hiȝte Penitus also, and wente by Alpes to
 Rome ; perfore of pe tweie names Alpes and Penitus is pat oon
 name schortliche i-made Appennini,² and so beep meny lettres
 i-left of pe tweyne. *Paulus, libro secundo.* In pis Italia
 beep many prouinces and londes, pat beep cleped Calabria,
 Apulia, Campania, Beneuentana, Tuscia, Emilia, Liguria,
 Lombardia. Apulia is a party of Italia, and liep estward
 vppon pe see, and is departed from pe ilond Sicilia wip an
 arme of pe see. Grees were pe firste pat bulde perynne ;
 pe chief citee perof is Brundusium, and hap pe name of
 pa[t]³ worde of Grew *brunta*, pat is, *an hertes hede*, for pe
 citee is i-schape as an hertes hede. Fro pennes me⁴ seillep
 to pe Holy Lond. In pis lond Apulia beep hote welles
 and holsum. Pe more Campania is a lond in pe myddel
 bitwene pe demeynnes of Rome and Apulia ; pe cheef cite
 perof is Capua, and hap pe name of *Capacitas*, pat is,
ableness to fonge and to take. For pat citee fongeþ and
 takeþ i-now of all plente, and is acounted⁵ pe pridde citee

the welle of Cithonis healenge the woundes of eien. MS. HARL. 2261.
Isidorus libro tertio decimo. Also there is a welle callede
 Novacius nye to the hilles of Alpes, whiche floethe ouer with
 watere abowte the solstice of somer, and is drye in wynter.
Paulus, libro secundo. There be mony prouinces of this
 Ytaly, whiche be Calabria, Apulia, Campania, Beneuentana,
 Tuscia, Emilia, Liguria, Lombardia. Apulia is a coste of
 the see of Ytaly, sette at the sowthe of hit, departede from
 Sicille by an arme of the see, byldede and edifiede firste by
 Grekes. The chiefe cite of whom is callede Brundusium,
 takenge the name of hit of this worde *brunda* in Grewc,
 pat is *the hede of an herte*, in that hit holdethe in the
 figuracion of hit the similitude of the hede of an herte.
 Campania is a moore region betwene the territory of Rome
 and Apulia. The chiefe cite of whom is callede Capua,
 namede so of the capacite of sufficiunce, callede the thrydde

¹ *octodecimo* (sic), Cx.

² So a. and Cx. ; *Appentimii*, MS.
 In many proper names below, a., or
 Cx., or both, give the true form.
 which is edited without noticing MS.

³ *bat*, a.

⁴ *me*] So a. ; *ne*, MS. ; *men*, Cx.
 (as usual).

⁵ *counted*, Cx.

nominata. In qua terra sunt Neapolis et Puteoli¹ urbes famosæ, ubi balnea Virgilio quondam in honore habebantur. Sed est alia² Campania Minor in Gallia Senonensi,³ cujus metropolis est urbs Trecas, seu Trecensis.⁴ *Ranulphus*. Hæc autem Italia a variis vicissim possessa est gentibus, utpote a Græcis, a Jano,⁵ a Saturno, ab Italo, ab Ænea et ejus posteris. Post hæc a Gallis Senonensibus sub duce Brenno, deinde circa annum gratiæ cccc^{um}⁶ occupata est a Gothis, Hunis, Vandalis,⁷ postremo a Longobardis sub anno Domini dlxviii^o, tempore Justini principis per Narsem chartularium invitatis,⁸ a quorum nomine citerior⁹ pars Italiæ ab Alpibus pene¹⁰ usque¹¹ ad urbem Romam adhuc¹² Lombardia¹³ nominatur.¹⁴ *Ranulphus*. De Longobardorum¹⁵ ortu et progressu Paulus Romanus diaconus, in primo libro historiarum Longobardorum,¹⁶ refert in hunc modum.

¹ *Puteolus*, B.

² *Sed est alia*] omitted in E.

³ *Senonensi*] om. A.

⁴ C.D. omit the whole of the paragraph relating to Apulia and Calabria; i.e. from *Apulia pars est . . . Trecas, seu Trecensis*. For *Trecas* Higden should rather have written *Tricassium*. See Smith, Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr., s. v. *Tricasses*.

⁵ For a *Jano*, C. (not D.) has *Mercurio*.

⁶ *circa annum Domini 100*, C.

⁷ *a Gothis, deinde a Wandalis*, C.; *Hunis et Wandalis*, D.

⁸ *invitatis*] *veritatis* (sic !), C.D.

⁹ *exterior*, B.

¹⁰ *pene*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *usque*] om. B.

¹² *adhuc*] om. B.

¹³ *Lumbardia*, MSS.

¹⁴ *nominatur*] *dicitur*, C.

¹⁵ D. adds *autem*.

¹⁶ C. adds *autem* after *Longobardorum*.

after þe most famous citees Rome and Carthago. In TREVIS.
 þat lond beþ noble citees and famous Neopolis and
 Puteoli.¹ Þere beþ Virgiles bathas² þat were somtyme
 in greet worschipe. But þere is anoþer lasse Campania
 in Gallia Senonensi,³ þat is Frauns, þe chief citee of
 þat Campania hatte Trecas and Trecensis also, þat is
 Troys⁴ in Champayn. *R.*⁵ In þis Italia were somtyme
 dyuers lordes euerich after oþer þat were Grees, Ianus,
 Saturnus, Italus, Eneas and his ospringe.⁶ And after-
 ward Galli Senonenses, þat beþ Frensche men, vnder
 duke Brennus. Þan aftirward, aboute þe 3ere of grace
 fyue hondred þre score and eiȝte, in to þe⁷ princes tyme
 Iustinus, Narsen⁸ Cartularius prayed Longobardy for to come
 in to Italia; and of þe Longobardy, for to come in to⁹ þis
 day, þe hider side of Italia from Alpes wel nygh to Rome
 hatte Lombardia.¹⁰ How Longobardy come a place¹¹ Paulus¹²
 Romanus diaconus in primo libro historiæ Longobardorum¹³

nowble cite to Rome and to Carthago. In whiche londe be MS. HARL.
 cites callede Neapolis and Puteoli, where the bathes of 2261.
 Virgille were hade somme tyme in worschipe. There is
 also an oþer Campania more litel, the chiefe cite of whom
 is callede Cretas or the cite Cretense.¹⁴ *R.* That cuntre of
 Ytaly hathe be possessede of diuerse peple and naciones, as
 of Grekes, of Iano, [of] Saturno, of Ytalo, and of Enea. After
 that of Frenche men Senonense vnder Duke Brennus.
 Also hit was occupiede of Gothis, Hunes, and Wandalynges
 abowte the yere of our Lorde cccc. and laste occupiede
 off Longobardes, abowte the year of oure Lorde vlxviiij.,
 in the tyme of Iustinian prynce, of the name of whom
 the forther parte of Ytaly from Alpes alle moste to the
 cite of Rome is named ȝitte Lumbardy. Of the begynnenge
 of Longobardes, and of the progresse of theym, Paulus
 Diacon of Rome rehersethe in his firste boke of the story of

¹ *Puteolis*, MSS. of both versions, and Cx.

² *bathes*, a., Cx.

³ *Senocenci*, MS. and a.; but correctly below.

⁴ So Cx.; *Tros*, MS., a.

⁵ Added from a. and Cx.

⁶ *offsprynge*, Cx.

⁷ in *pe*, a.

⁸ *Narsen*] This is not a clerical error, but one of many proofs of the slovenliness of Trevisa, who did not care to discover the nominative of the word. Below, where the text

has the nominative, he has written it correctly.

⁹ *for to come in to*] yet to, Cx.

¹⁰ The preceding sentence is much blundered in Cx.

¹¹ *a place*] to that name, Cx.

¹² *Poulus*, MS. (not a.)

¹³ *Longobardi*, MS.; abbreviated in a.

¹⁴ The similarity of *c* and *t* in MSS. has misled the translator, who probably had no notion where the place was.

De Wynnulis et Longobardis.

Wynnuli,¹ qui et Longobardi, a longis barbis quas fovebant sic dicti, de aquilonali² insula Germaniæ Scandinavia sorte primitus sunt egressi sub ducibus Ibor³ et Ajone⁴ cum matre eorum Gambara prudentissima. Hæc autem Scandinavia dicta est insula non quod in mari sit,⁵ sed quia in planitie marginum⁶ undis jugiter circumlambitur.⁷ Inde Winnuli⁸ Scoringam regionem⁹ sunt aggressi, ubi et Wandalos devicerunt. Mortuis¹⁰ autem Ibor et Ajone, constituerunt sibi regem¹¹ Agelmundum,¹² filium Ajonis, qui¹³ regnavit super eos triginta tribus annis, cujus diebus meretrix quædam enixa est unico partu septem liberos, sicut inferius¹⁴ dicetur; quorum unus, Lamissio¹⁵ nomine, postquam Agelmundus rex nimia securitate¹⁶ torpens a Bulgaris nocte fuerat¹⁷ occisus, regnum¹⁸ super Longobardos secundus tenuit. Post quem tertius Lethen quadraginta¹⁹ annis²⁰ regnavit. Post quem quartus Hildehok.²¹ Post quem quintus Gudehok²² tempore Odoacris Italici²³ regnavit, qui gentem suam²⁴ ad terram Rugorum duxit. Post quem sextus Claffo.²⁵ Post quem septimus Cato, quem²⁶ Waco²⁷ filius germani sui occidit, filiumque Catonis²⁸

¹ Wynnuli] Winuli, A.D.; Wintili, C., which adds *igitur*, as does D.

² aquilonari, C.D.

³ Ibo, B.E.; Ybor, C. (not D.)

⁴ Arione, E.

⁵ sita, D.

⁶ marinis, B.

⁷ circumlambitur] circumlabitur, C.D.

⁸ Winnuli] om. C.D.

⁹ regionem] provinciam, C.

¹⁰ Mortuo, D.

¹¹ B.C.D. add *primum*.

¹² Agilmundum, A., and so below.

¹³ qui] et, C.D.

¹⁴ infra, D.

¹⁵ Lassimio, D. The text is right. See Paul. *Hist. Long.*, lib. i. c. 17.

¹⁶ satietate, C. (not D.)

¹⁷ fuerat] est, C.D.; a Vulgaris voce fuerat, E

¹⁸ regnum] qui regnum, C. (not D.)

¹⁹ quatuordecim, C.D.

²⁰ The sense requires *annos*. But here and twice below all the MSS. have *annis*.

²¹ Hildehoc, B.C.

²² Gudehoc, C.; Undehoc, B.

²³ Italici] om. C.D.

²⁴ suam] om. C. (not D.)

²⁵ Classo, C.

²⁶ quem] post quem, E.

²⁷ Wacho, A.

²⁸ Catonis] ejus Catonis, C.D.

seip in pis manere : Winuli, pat hatte Longobardi also, and haueþ the name of her longe berdes, went wip tweie dukes, Ibor and Aion, and here moder Gambara, pat was ful redy and wys, out of Scandinavia, an ylond of Germania in þe norþ side. Þis Scandinavia is i-cleped an ilond, not for he is in þe see, but for in þe pleyn of þe brinkes he is alwey i-wasche wip wawes. Out pereof went Winuli and werred in Scoringa¹ and ouer com þe Wandales; þan deied þe Wandales, Iborn and Aion, and þei made hem a kyng Agelmundus, Aions sone, þe whiche reigned ouer hem pritty ȝere and pre. In his tyme an hore² hadde seuene children at oon birpen, as it is ynner more clere-liche i-schewed. Oon of hem, pat hiȝte Lauissius was þe secunde kyng of Longobardes, and regned after Agelmundus, whanne³ Agelmundus þe kyng was to bolde on his trist,⁴ and þe Bulgaris com vpon hym in a nyȝt and slowe hym stan deed.⁵ After hym Lethen regned and was [þe pridde]⁶ kyng of Longobardes⁷ and was⁸ regnyng fourty ȝere. After hym Hildehoc⁹ regned,¹⁰ after hym þe fife¹¹ Godehoc regnede in Odoacres tyme, pat was Italicus, and ladde his men to þe lond of Rugorum. After hym þe sixte Claffo. After hym þe seueneþe Cato. Þan¹² Wacho slow Cato and outlawed his sone [for evere more; Wacho was Cato his broþer sonne].¹³

TREVISA.

Longobardes, in this maner, Winuli or Longobardes takenge that name of the longe berdes whom thei noryschede, wente furthe from the northe partes of Allemeyne under Ibor and Aione the gouernoures of theyme, with prudente Gambara moder to theyme, from Scandinavia.¹⁴ This Scandinavia¹⁴ is callede an yle not in that hit is in the see, but for cause that is compassede abowte with waters in the pleynes of the brynkes of hit. Winuli goenge furthe entrede a region f. 37. b. namede Scoringa, where the Wandalynge were devicte. Ibor and Aione, the dukes and gouernoures of theym dedde, they made Agelmundus kyng, son of Aio, xxxiiij. yere hauenge his gouernaile and reigne ouer theyme. In the tyme of whom a woman hade vij. childer at oon childenge. After whom Lethen reignede xlith yere, after hym Hildehog. After whom Gloffo, after hym Cato. After whom, Waco

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Scormyga*, Cx.² *hore*] comyn woman, Cx.³ *Agelmundus, whanne*] Added from a. and Cx.⁴ *owen truste*, Cx.⁵ *standyng*, Cx.⁶ Added from a.⁷ *the L.*, Cx.⁸ *regnede*, a., Cx.⁹ *Hildecoc*, Cx.¹⁰ a. and Cx. om. *regnede*.¹¹ So a., Cx.; *firste*, MS.¹² *that*, Cx.¹³ Added from a. and Cx.¹⁴ *Scandimauia*, Harl. MS. twice.

perpetuo exilio damnavit. Idecirco mortuo Wachone, Waltharicus¹ filius ejus super Longobardos octavus regnavit vij. annis.² Post quem nonus Audoenus,³ qui Longobardos primus⁴ in Pannoniam adduxit. Post quem Albuinus filius ejus super Longobardos regnavit decimus,⁵ quem cum sua gente invitavit Narses patricius ad possidendam⁶ Italiam tempore Justini imperatoris, anno Domini quingentesimo sexagesimo⁷ octavo, postquam Longobardi quadraginta duobus annis⁸ in Pannonia fuissent demorati.⁹ *Ranulphus.* De conquæstu hujus¹⁰ Albuini et exitu mirabili quære infra loco suo, circa annum Domini quingentesimum septuagesimum.¹¹

CAP. XXV.

De Urbe Roma.

Ranulphus. Auctores tradunt quod in Tuscia, quæ pars est¹² Italiæ, situata est urbs Romana, de cujus¹³ fundatione et regimine multa et¹⁴ varia scripserunt auctores, potissime tamen frater Martinus de conditione ejus, magister vero Gregorius de urbis mirabilibus perstrinxit¹⁵

¹ *Waltharicus*, A.C.D.² *annis*] So A.B.C.D.E.³ *Audenus*, B.⁴ *primus* before *adduxit* in C.D.⁵ So A.B.C.D.; *decimus* before *regnavit* in E.⁶ *possidendum*, F.⁷ *sexagesimo*] xl., B.⁸ *annis*] So A.B.C.D.E.⁹ *demorassent*, D.¹⁰ *hujus*] om. A.¹¹ C. and D. omit this extract from *Ranulphus*.¹² *est pars*, A.¹³ *cujus*] civitatis, B.¹⁴ *et*] om. A.¹⁵ *perstrinxit*] *perstrinxerunt*, C.

And so whan Wacho was ded, his sone Waltaricus was pe eiȝte kyng of Longobardy,¹ and regned seuen ȝere. After hym pe nynȝe Audoenus, pat ladde firste pe Longobardes in to Pannonia. After hym his sone Albuinus was pe tenȝe kyng of Longobardy.² Narses³ patricius prayed pis kyng Albuinus to come wip his men and haue⁴ Italia, pat was in Iustinis tyme pe Emperour,⁵ pe ȝere of our Lorde fyue hondred pre score and eiȝte, and pat was after pat Longobardis hadde i-woned in Pannonia two and fourty ȝere. Of pis Albuinus conquest and of his wonder⁶ ende seche wipynne⁷ in his place, aboute pe ȝere of oure Lord fyue hondred pre score and ten.

TREVISA.

De vrbe Romana. Capitulum vicesimum quartum.

AUCTOURS tellep and writep⁸ pat pe citee of Rome is i-bulde in Tuscia, pat is a party of Italia. Of pe fundacioun perof and gouernynge auctoures writep⁹ meny dyuers doynȝes; and specialliche Frater Martinus de conditione ejus; Magister¹⁰ vero Gregorius of pe wondres of pe citee

destroyede, Walcarius his son reignede on the Longobardes vij. yere. After whom Audoenus reignede, whiche ledde the Longobardes firste in to Pannony.¹¹ After whom Albinus his son reignede, whiche desirede Narses Patricius to inhabite Ytaly, in the tyme of Iustinus themperoure, the yere of oure Lorde v^cxlviijth, after that Longobardes hade taryede in Pannony by xliijth yere. Of the conqueste of Albinus, and of his meruellous goenge furthe, hit schalle be expressede abowte the yere of grace v^c and lxxth.

MS. HARL.
2261.

Of the Cite of Rome. Capitulum vicesimum quartum.

AUCTORES expresse that the cite of Rome is sette in Tuscia, whiche is a parte of Ytaly, of pe fundacion and gouernaile of whom auctores wryte diuerse thynges, specially Martinus, of the makenge of hit, but Maister Gregory

¹ Longobardys, Cx.

² the Longobardes, Cx.

³ So Cx.; Narses, MS.

⁴ take, Cx.

⁵ in Justinus themperours time, Cx.

⁶ wonderful, Cx.

⁷ within forth, Cx.

⁸ writep and tellep, a.; wryten and tellen, Cx.

⁹ Cx. here, contrary to his custom, has wryte.

¹⁰ de . . . Magister] Added from a.

¹¹ Ytaly Pannony, MS., but Ytaly erased.

digna memoratu.¹ *Martinus*. Circa locum Romæ plures leguntur regnasse. Nam secundum Estodium,² post turrim confusionis constructam,³ Noe cum aliquibus ratem ingressus Italiam venit; ædificataque urbe nomine⁴ sui, ibi⁵ vitæ terminum dedit.⁶ Janus vero cum Jano filio Japhet nepote suo trans Tiberim Janiculum condidit, ubi⁷ modo est ecclesia Sancti Johannis ad Janiculum.⁸ Circa illud⁹ tempus Nemproth, qui et Saturnus, a Jove filio suo eunuchatus, ad prædicti Jani regnum veniens, urbem, ubi nunc est Capitolium, construxit. Illis quoque diebus rex Italus cum Siculis adveniens¹⁰ ad Janum et Saturnum urbem juxta Albulam fluvium, qui postmodum dictus est Tiberis,¹¹ construxit. Hercules quoque, filius Itali, fecit urbem¹² Galeriam sub Capitolio. Post hæc rex Tiberis de oriente et rex¹³ Evander de Arcadia venerunt et urbes fecerunt, unde Virgilius :

Tunc pater Evander, Romanæ conditor arcis.¹⁴

Quorum omnium urbes Romulus postmodum in

¹ This extract from *Ranulphus* is likewise partly omitted in C.D., which commence the chapter thus : *In hac insula* (sic) *in principio situatur urbs Roma, de cujus fundatione et regimine*, &c., down to memoratu. For memoratu B. has memorata.

² *Eustodium*, C. (not D.) See *Fabric. Bibl. Med. et Inf. Lat.*, s.v. *Estodius*.

³ *constructam*] ædificatam, C.D.

⁴ *nomine*] nominis, B.C.D.

⁵ *ibi*] om. B.

⁶ *dedit*] suscepit, C.D.

⁷ *ubi . . . Janiculum*] om. E.

⁸ C. and D. have *ubi mons est etiam Sancti Johannis ad Janiculum*.

⁹ *illud*] idem, B.C.D.

¹⁰ *adveniens*] veniens, B.C.

¹¹ *qui . . . Tiberis*] After *construxit* in C. (not in D.)

¹² *urbem*] civitatem, C.D.

¹³ *rex*] om. B.

¹⁴ *Virg. Æn.*, viii. 313, where, however, *Tum rex Evandrus* is the common reading.

writen schortliche meny pinges pat beep worpy to be kept in mynde. *Martinus*. It is i-write pat many kynges regned aboute pe place of Rome. For Eustodius seip pat after pat tour Babel was i-bulde and men bygonne to speke dyuerse langage and tonges,¹ Noe wip certeyne men took a schip and seilled into Italia, and bulde a citee of his name and ended pere his lyf. Pan Ianus, Iaphet his sone, pat was Noes sone, bulde Ianiculum by zonde pe ryuer Tiberis; pere is now a cherche of Seynt Iohan, pat hatte Seint Iones chirche ad Ianiculum. Aboute pat tyme Nemprot, pat hiȝt Saturnus also, i-gilded² of his owne sone Ioue,³ come to the forsaide Ianus kyngdom, and bulde a citee; pere pe Capytal is now. Also pat tyme Italus pe kyng wip Siculis⁴ men of Sicilia come to Ianus and to Saturnus, and bulde a citee faste by pe ryuer Albula; pat ryuer hiȝte afterward and now hatte Tyber, and is a ryuer of Rome. Also Hercules, Italus his sone, bulde a citee Galeria by nepe pe Capitol. After pat Tiberi[n]us⁵ pe kyng com out of pe est, and Euander pe kyng out of Arcadia, and bulde citees. Virgilius accordeþ and seip: Panne pe fader Euander at Rome was maker of toures. Panne afterwarde come Romulus and closed wip ynnne oon

TREVISIA.

towchethe mony thynges worthy to be hade in remembrance of the meruayles of that cyte. *Martinus*. Many men be redde to haue reignede in the cyte of Rome. For after Estodius, after the towre of confusion made, Noe takege a schippe with other men come to Ytaly, whiche makenge a cite there endede his lyfe in hit. Ianus with Iano the son of Iapheth made a cite callede Ianiculus ouer the water of Tiber, where a chirche is nowe callede Sti. Iohannis ad Ianiculum. Abowte that tyme Nemproth, oper wise callede Saturnus, expulsede of Iupiter his son, commenge to the realme of Ianus, made a cite where the chiefe place of the cite is now. In those dayes kynge Ytalus commenge with Siculynes to Ianus and Saturnus made a cite nye the floode callede Albula, whiche was namede afterwarde Tiber. After that Hercules, the son of Italus, made a cite of Galerius vnder the Capitoly. After that kynge Tiberis and Euander commenge from Arcadia made that cite of Rome. After that Romulus redacte alle the cites in to oon causenge the

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *tonges and langages*, Cx.² *whiche was gelded*, Cx.³ *Iupiter*, Cx.⁴ So *a.* and Cx.; *Siculus*, MS.⁵ *Tiberis*, Cx.; *Tyberis*, *a.*; *Tyberius*, MS.

unam civitatem muratam redegit,¹ ac nobiliores de Italia cum uxoribus suis inhabitare fecit. *Titus Livius*.² Qua urbe tempore paupertatis suæ nullus locus sanctior nec bonis exemplis ditior; sed postmodum divitiæ avaritiam et luxuriam auxerunt. *Martinus*.³ Roma igitur condita est in monte Palatino a gemellis fratribus Remo et Romulo xj. kalend. Maii, Olympiade vij^a incipiente, quarto anno Achaz regis Juda,⁴ post Trojam captam anno cccc^oliiij^o. *Ranulphus*.⁴ Sed verius secundum Solinum cccc^oxxxiiij^o. *Martinus*.⁵ Quæ urbs processu temporis muris, turribus, portis, templis, palatiis, artificiiis⁶ mirabiliter insignita.⁷ Habuit turres murorum ccclxj., in cujus circuitu sunt milliaria viginti duo, præter trans Tiberim et urbem Leoninam, cum quibus dicitur habere in circuitu milliaria quadraginta duo.

¹ *muratam* after *redegit* in B.

² Title of both extracts omitted in C.D.

³ So C.; *Judæa*, B.; *Jude*, D.E.

⁴ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

⁵ Reference added from A.B.

⁶ *artificies*, C.

⁷ *insignitur*, C.; *insignitus*, D.

wal alle pilke citees¹ aboute, and made oon grete citee of alle i-closed in oon: and brouzte gentil men and noble out of Italia wip here wifes for to wone perynne. *Titus, libro secundo.* While pat citee was pore, was no place more holy no per richere of good ensample; but afterward richesse gadered and eched to gidres couetise and leccherie.² *Marcus.* Tweie brepren pat were twynnes,³ Remus and Romulus, bulde Rome in pe hul Palatinus, and was i-bulde in pe enleuene⁴ kalandes of Maij: po bigan pe seuene Olimpiades,⁵ pat is pe seuene tyme of iustes and torne-mentes pat Grees made at pe foot of mont Olympus, pe⁶ was pe firste zere of Achaz kyng of Iuda and foure hondred zere and foure and fifty after pe takyng of Troye. But more vereiliche, as Solinus seip, foure hondred and⁷ foure and pritti zere after pe takyng of Troye. pe⁸ whiche citee of⁹ Rome was afterward wonderliche i-hizt wip walles, wip toures, wip zates, wip templis, wip paleys, and wip diuers and wonderful werkes; and hadde on pe walles pre hondred toures¹⁰ and¹¹ pre score and oon, and conteyne aboute two and twenty myle, wipoute pat pat¹² is byzonde Tybre and pe citee Leonina. But, as me seip, per wip he¹³ conteyne al aboute two and fourty myle, and

TREVISIA.

nowble men of Ytaly to inhabite hyt with their wyfes. *Titus* MS. HARL. *Livius.* Whiche cite beenge in pouerte was noo cite moore 2261. holy neiper more ryche in goode exemples, but afterwarde rychesse enereasede lecchery and auarice. *Martinus.* Rome f. 38. a. was made of ij. breper, Remus and Romulus, in the mownte Of pe meruayles of Rome. Palatyne pe xj. kalendes of Maij, in the vijth Olimpias, the iiijth yere of the reigne of Achaz kyng of the Iewery begynnege, in the iiij^c yere liiiij. after the takenge of the cite of Troye. R. But after Solinus cccc. and xxxiiij^u yere. *Martinus.* Whiche cite made nowble in processe with towres, walles, temples, zates, and palice, hauenge towres of the walles ccc.lxj. within the circuite of whom be myles xxij^u, excepte the edifienge ouer Tiber and the cite Leonine, with whom hit is seyde to conteyne in circuite xliij^u myles. In

¹ citetes, MS.; txt, Cx.

² gadred and encreased, and syn they haue ben coueytous and lecherous, Cx.

³ born at one burthou, Cx.

⁴ MS. adds zere (not a. or Cx.)

⁵ Olympus, Cx., who omits the remainder of the sentence.

⁶ that, Cx. (not a.)

⁷ a. om. and.

⁸ Cx. prefixes *Marcus*; a. has in margin *Marcus* or *Martinus* (Mæc3).

⁹ of] om. a.

¹⁰ MS. has some repetitions here.

¹¹ and] om. a.

¹² The second *pat* added from a.; absent from MS. and Cx.

¹³ men seyn it, Cx.

Habuit etiam portas principales sexdecim in universo, videlicet citra Tiberim decem : portam Capenam,¹ portam Appiam, portam Latinam, portam Asinariam, portam Metronii, portam Lavicanam, portam Numentanam, portam Salariam,² portam Princianam, portam Collinam.³ Item trans Tiberim portas tres, et in urbe Leonina portas tres. *Gregorius*. Inter urbis⁴ hujus mirabilia, arte magica seu⁵ opere humano⁶ constructa, quorum adhuc restant vestigia miranda, sunt tot promunctoria turrium, tot ædificia palatiorum. ⁷*Ranulphus*. Etiam nunc veri sint versus illi Hildeberti Cenomannensis episcopi, quos ponit Willielmus Malmesburiensis in libro suo de regibus.

Versus de
Romæ.

Par tibi Roma nihil, cum sis fere⁸ tota ruina ;
Fracta docere potes, integra quanta fores.

De palatiis
Romæ.

Gregorius. Fuerunt et⁹ palatia egregia in¹⁰ honorem imperatorum aliorumque illustrium virorum constructa, inter quæ¹¹ erat palatium majus in medio urbis in

¹ *Capuana*, B.C.D.; *Capuena*, A.E. (See versions.) These gates are all accusatives in B.; in other MSS. they are in the nominative. The reader must take the orthography of the versions *taliter qualiter*. In the text *Lavicana* stands for *Labicana*; and *Princiana* for *Pinciana*; *Metronii* is more correctly written *Metronis*. See Smith's Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr., s. v. *Roma*.

² *portam Salariam*] om. C. (not D.)

³ *Collania*, C.

⁴ *urbis*] om. C. (not D.)

⁵ *sive*, B.

⁶ *humano*] om. C.D.

⁷ *Ran.* to *Versus de Roma*, abbreviated in C. and D. thus: *ut jam verum sit, Par tibi, &c.* B. omits the two lines following *Hildeberti*, and grievously corrupts both the verses.

⁸ *pene*, MSS.

⁹ *que*, B.; *ibi*, C.; *etiam*, D.

¹⁰ *ad*, B.

¹¹ *de quibus*, C.D.; *in qua*, A.

had in all sixtene principal *zates*; ¹ ten on pis half Tiber, TREVISA.
 pat were i-cleped port Capuena, port Apia, port Latina, port
 Asinaria, port Matronii, port Levicana, ² port Numentana,
 port Salaria, port Princiana, port Colina. Also by³onde
 Tyberis beep pre *zates*, and pre in pe citee Leonina. *Gregorius*. Among pe wondres of pis citee pat *zit* beep i-sene,
 it is greet ⁴ wonder of so many defensable toures and so
 many buldynges of palays, where ⁵ it were i-doo by wyche-
 craft oper by manis dede. So pat now beep ferified ⁶ pe
 vers pat Hildebertus ⁷ Episcopus Cenomannensis made, and
 Willielmus Malmesburiensis putteþ hem in his book of
 kynges: ⁸

Rome, no þing is pere to þe,
 þey⁹ þou nygh all fallynge be;
 On alle ⁹ þou schewest þy bounde,
 How grete þou were, ¹⁰ when þow were ¹⁰ sounde.

Pere were meny paleys real ¹¹ and noble i-bulde in Rome De palatiis
 in worschippe of emperours and of opere noble men also. Roma.
 Among pe whiche pe gretteste and most paly of alle was
 in pe myddel of pe citee, in tokene of oon principalte of

that cite were xvj. principalle *zates*, x. abowte Tiber, Porta MS. HARL.
 Capuana, Porta Apia, Porta Latina, Porta Asinaria, Porta 2261.
 Metronii, Porta Lauicana, Porta Numentana, Porta Salaria,
 Porta Prinopana, Porta Collina. Also there were iij. *zates*
 ouer Tiber and iij. in the Cite Leonine. *Gregorius*. Vn
 to this tyme presente remayne many signes in hit to be
 meruayles as edifienges and palice, that the versus of Hilde-
 berte, bischop Cenomacense may be verifiende of hit whom
 William Malmesbury puttethe in his boke of kynges seyenge
 in this wyse: O Rome, þer is noon oper cite egalle to the
 nowe beenge in ruyne. Thou may teche nowe in confusion
 howe nowble thow was a fore. *De Palatiis*. In that Of þe
 cite were nowble palice made in honor of emperoures, and palices.
 of other nowble men amonge whom oon palice was made
 in the myddes of the cite in the signe of the monarchy of

¹ *yates*, Cx.

² So a. and Cx.; *Eluicana*, MS.

³ a grete, Cx.

⁴ *toures of so many buyldynges of*
palayces, whether, Cx.

⁵ i-doo] om. Cx.

⁶ So MS. and a.

⁷ So Cx.; *Hildebertus*, MS.

⁸ as here foloweth, Cx.

⁹ So Cx.; *anaiite*, MS.; *analle*, a.

¹⁰ So MS. and a. See Harl. MS.

¹¹ *ryal*, Cx.

signum monarchiæ orbis; item¹ palatium Pacis, ubi Romulus posuit statuam suam auream, dicens, "Non cadet,² donec virgo pariat;" quod et³ cecidit Christo nascente.⁴ Palatium Diocletiani columnas habet ad jactum lapilli tam altas, et tam⁵ magnas quod a centum viris per totum annum operantibus vix una earum secari possit. Item fuit ibi quoddam palatium sexaginta imperatorum, cujus hodie partem residuam tota Roma destruere non potest.

De templis
Romæ.

Apud templum Pantheon, quod fuit⁶ omnium deorum,⁷ modo est ecclesia omnium sanctorum, et autonomastice⁸ dicitur Sancta Maria Rotunda, et habet in latitudine spatium ducentorum sexaginta pedum. Prope illud templum est arcus triumphalis Augusti Cæsaris marmoreus, in quo gesta ipsius describuntur.⁹ Ibi quoque¹⁰ est arcus Scipionis, qui devicit Hannibalem. Item ad Sanctum Stephanum in piscina¹¹ fuit templum¹² holovitreum, totum de crystallo et auro factum, ubi erat astronomia insculpta cum signis coeli et stellis, quod

¹ *inter*, B.

² D. adds *hæc*.

³ *et*] tamen, B.

⁴ *quod . . . nascente*] om. C.D.

⁵ *tam*] om. C. (not D.)

⁶ A. adds *ecclesia*.

⁷ *dæmoniorum*, B.

⁸ *autonomastice*, D.

⁹ *scribuntur*, A.; *conscribuntur*, B.

¹⁰ *Et juxta id*, C.D. (which latter has *illud*.)

¹¹ *pasonia*, B.

¹² *templum*] om. C.D.

all þe world wide. Also þe paleys of pees; þerynne TREVISIA.
 Romulus dede¹ his owne ymage of golde, and seide: "It
 "schal neuere falle, or² a mayde bere a childe;" and pat
 ymage fel³ whan Crist was i-bore. Diocletianus⁴ paleys
 hap pilers as hiȝ as a stones⁵ cast, and so grete aboute pat
 an hondred men al a ȝere worchyng schulde vnnepe
 hewe oon of pilke pylers. Also pere was a paleys of
 sixty emperours, and ȝit stondeþ a party⁶ perof pat al
 Rome may nouȝt destroye it. Pere, as⁷ Pantheon þe temple De templis.
 of all mawmetrie was, is now a chirche of al halwen,⁸ and
 for⁹ oure Lady is after Crist cheef halwe¹⁰ of al mankynde,
 pat chirche hap þe name of oure Lady, and hatte Sancta
 Maria Rotunda, pat is þe Rounde Chirche of oure Lady,
 and hap in brede þe space of two hondred feet and
 sixty. Fast by pat temple is an arche of marbel, and is
 þe arche of Augustus Cesar his victories and grete dedes.
 In pat arche beþ al Augustus Cesar his dedes¹¹ descryued.
 Pere is also Scipions arche; he ouercom Hanibal. At Seint
 Steuene in Piscina was þe temple Olouitreum, pat was made
 al¹² of cristal and of golde; pere was astronomie i-graued
 and i-peyntwip sterres and signes of heuen. Seint Sebastian¹³

the worlde. Also thei made a palice of peace, where in MS. HARL.
 Romulus put an ymage of golde, seyenge, this ymage schalle 2261.
 not falle tylle that a mayde haue a childe, whiche ymage
 felle down in the natiuite off Criste. The palice of Dioclitian
 hathe pyllers soe hie as a man may caste with a stonne, and
 soe grete that vnnethe oon off theyme may be kytted and
 putte down by a c. men laborenge dayly in hyt by a yere.
 Also per was a palice of lx. emperoures the residu of
 whom alle Rome can not destroye. *Of þe temples.* Now
 the chirche of alle Seyntes is in Rome, where the temple
 of alle goddes was before, namede Panteon, hauenge in
 latitude the space of ij^c. and lx. foote, nye to whom is an
 arche made of marbole, in whom the gestes of Augustus
 Cesar be wryten. Also per is an arche of Scipio whiche
 ouercome Hanibal. Also there was a temple made of
 cristalle and golde, where in astronomy was graven with
 the signes of heuyn and sterres, whom Seynte Sebastian

¹ *dyde do*, Cx.² *tel*, Cx.³ *fylle*, Cx.⁴ *Dyoclicianus*, MS.⁵ *astoon*, a.⁶ *a part*, Cx.; *another party*, MS.⁷ *as*] Added from Cx. (not in a.)⁸ *halowen*, Cx.; *halewen*, a.⁹ *by cause*, Cx.¹⁰ *chyef and holyest*, Cx.¹¹ *ben alle his grete actes*, Cx.¹² *al*] om. Cx.¹³ *Sebastian*, MS. (not Cx.)

Sanctus Sebastianus destruxit.¹ Item in Capitolio, quod erat altis muris vitro et auro coopertis, quasi speculum mundi sublimiter erectum, ubi consules² et senatores mundum regebant, erat templum Jovis in quo statua Jovis aurea in throno aureo erat sedens.³ *Ranulphus*.⁴ Hic advertendum est quod in Roma tria tantum templa fuerunt quæ flamines habuerunt, id est, pontifices idolorum, sic dicti quasi *filamines* a *filo* quod⁵ ligabant sibi in capite, quando non poterant præ calvitate diebus festivis pileum deferre. Nam in templo Jovis ministrabat flamen dialis, quia Jupiter vocabatur Diespiter, id est, dici pater. Item in templo fuit flamen Martialis, in templo Romuli flamen Quirinalis, nam Romulus dicebatur Quirinus.⁴

De domibus Romæ.

Romæ fuit domus quædam consecrata pene⁶ tota aurea lapidibus pretiosis ornata, quæ dicebatur valere pene tertiam partem mundi, cujus cryptæ⁶ parietum adhuc apparent horrendæ et inaccessibiles; in qua etiam⁷ domo statuæ omnium provinciarum⁸ poneban-

¹ *astronomia ... destruxit*] Slightly different in C. and D.

² *ad consulendum*, C.

³ The latter part of the sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.

⁴ *Ran. to Quirinus*] om. in A.B. C.D.

⁵ *quem*, E. The solecism is probably due to the scribe.

⁶ *pene . . . cryptæ*] Abbreviated in A.B.C.D.

⁷ *etiam*] Added from C.D.

⁸ *Romæ subjectarum after provinciarum* in D.; *statuæ after provinciarum* in B.

destroyed pat temple. Also¹ pe Capitol was arrayed² wip TREVISIA.
 hiȝe walles i-heled wip glas and wip gold, as it were pe
 mirroure of al pe world aboute. Pere consuls³ and senatours
 gouernede and rulede al⁴ pe world, as moche as was in here
 power; and pere was Iupiters⁵ temple, and in pe temple
 was Iupiters ymage of golde,⁶ sittynge in a trone. R.⁷
 Here take hede pat onliche pre temples were somtyme in
 Rome pat hadde flamines, [pat were bisshops to serve false
 goddis and mawmetrie, and heet flamines,]⁸ as it were *fla-*
mines, of *filo*, pat is *a prede*, pat pey bonde aboute hire
 heed, whan pei myȝte nouȝt in pe holy day suffre on hire
 piliouns and here cappes for hete. In Iupiter his temple
 seruede flamen dialis, pat is, pe day bisshop; for Iupiter
 was i-cleped Diespiter, pat is, *pe fader of pe day*: also in
 Mars his temple was flamen Martialis, pat is, Mars is⁹
 bisshop, and in Romulus temple was flamen Quirinalis, pat
 is, Quirinus¹⁰ bisshop; for Romulus was i-cleped Quirinus
 also.

In Rome was an hous i-made wel nyh al of gold and De domi-
 i-hiȝt¹¹ wip precious stones; me seide pat hous was worp^{bus.}
 wel nyȝ pe bridde deel¹² of all pe world. In pat hous
 eueriche londe and prouince hadde an ymage i-sette by

destroyede. R. Hyt is to be aduertisede that in Rome MS. HARL.
2261.
 were oonly thre temples whom the byschoppes of ydoles
 hade in possession callede flamines, as filamines, of threde
 whom thei bounde in theire hedes when thei myȝhte not
 were a cappe in holy dayes for hete. The byschop Dialle¹³
 ministrede in the temple of Iupiter, for he was callede
 Diespiter, that is to say, fader of pe day. The byschop
 Martiale was in the temple of Mars. And the byschoppe
 Quirinalle in the temple of Romulus, for Romulus was
 callede Quirinus. *Of howses.* In Rome was an howse
 consecrate onornede allemoste alle with golde and precious
 stones, whiche was scyde to be worthe the thrydde parte
 of the worlde, whiche place apperethe ȝitte as ferefulle
 and inaccessible, in whiche place the ymages of alle pro-

¹ MS. and a. (not Cx.) add in.

² Cx. omits the four following words.

³ the consuls, Cx.

⁴ of al, a.

⁵ Iubiter, MS., and so below.

⁶ fyn golde, Cx.

⁷ R.] Added from a. and Cx.

⁸ The words in brackets added from a.

⁹ Cx. here and above prints only

Mars.

¹⁰ his, added in a., which has often similar variations.

¹¹ besette, Cx.

¹² part, Cx.

¹³ Diall., Harl. MS.; similarly Martial below.

tur arte magica,¹ quarum quælibet nomen provinciæ suæ in se² gerebat scriptum in pectore, et nolam argenteam circa collum; quæ, si qua gens contra Romam insurgeret,³ statim imago⁴ illius vertebat dorsum ad imaginem Romæ, et tintinnabulum illius imaginis insonabat.⁴ Unde et sacerdotes Gentiles domum illam alternis vicibus custodientes nomen imaginis illius principibus nunciabant.⁵ Erat etiam⁶ in tecto domus illius eques quidam æneus concordans mobiliter motui illius imaginis,⁷ lanceamque contra gentem illam sic insurgentem⁸ dirigebat. Unde et Romani⁹ facile hostes suos inpræmeditados occupabant. In qua etiam domo tradunt ignem fuisse inextinguibilem, cujus artifex requisitus quamdiu duraret, respondit, "Donec virgo pariat." Unde divulgatum est quod¹⁰ nocte Dominicæ nativitatis eques ille cum domo corruit, et ignis ille extinctus.¹¹ Item Beaneus¹² Apollo confectionem¹³ quandam sulphuris¹⁴

¹ Slightly transposed in C.D.

² *in se*] om. C.

³ *insurgere proponeret*, C.D.

⁴ *imago . . . insonabat*] Abbreviated to *sonum dabat* in C.D.; A.B. have only *statim sonabat*, after *insurgeret*. (A. reads *sonaret*.) Both versions agree with the text.

⁵ The sentence transposed and abbreviated in C.D.

⁶ *et*, B.

⁷ *ipsius imaginis*, A.; *imaginis illius*, B.

⁸ *sic insurgentem*] om. C.D.

⁹ *Roma*, C. (not D.)

¹⁰ *quod*] om. E.

¹¹ *In qua . . . extinctus*] Transposed and abbreviated in C.; B. has *est* after *extinctus*.

¹² *Baneus*, A. It is possible that Higden intends Apollonius Tyaneus; but, if so, the story seems not to be found in Philostratus.

¹³ *confossionem*, C. (not D.)

¹⁴ *sulphure*, A.

wicche craft;¹ eueriche of pilke ymages bare his owne lordes name i-write on² his brest and a cokebelle³ of siluer i-honged aboute his nekke; so ȝat⁴ ȝif eny londe arise aȝen Rome, anon þe ymage of þat londe torned his bak toward þe ymage of Rome, and þe belle aboute his nekke anon schulde rynge, and þe preostes þat kepte þat hous euerich by his cours warnede þe princes of þat doynges. Þere was also an horsman of bras an⁵ hiȝe on þe cop of þat hous, and moued⁶ also wip a spere in his hond, and torned þe poynt of his spere to ward þat londe þat so wolde arise; and so þe Romayns myȝte liȝtliche come vppon here enemyes vnwarned.⁷ In þat hous also was a fuyre þat no man myȝte aquenche,⁸ and men askede⁹ of þe craftesman þat it made how longe it schulde dure,¹⁰ and he answerde and seide: þat¹¹ it schulde dure for euermore for to¹² þat a mayde bere a childe. And in¹³ þe same nyȝt þat Crist was i-bore þat hous fil doun, and þe fuyre was aqueynt also þe same¹⁴ nyȝt and tyme. Also Beaneus Apollo þat

TREVISA.

uinces were putte by wycche crafte, euery ymage hauenge written in the breste of hit the name of the prouince, and a belle of golde abowte the nekke of hit. And if eny peple made insurreccion ageyne thempire of Rome, the ymage of that prouince turnede the backe of hit to the ymage of Rome, and ronge his belle; the gentile priestes hauenge kepenge of the ymages schewede those thynges to the princes of thempire. In the hier partes of whiche place was an horse man made of brasse corespondente to the ymage of that prouince, hauenge a spere directe towarde the peple makenge þat insurreccion. Where fore the Romanes hade victory of theier enmyes, takenge theyme as sodenly. In whiche place men affermede fire to haue bene inextinguible; þe maker of hit requirede how longe hit scholde dure, answered and seyde, tyl a mayde scholde be delyuerede of a childe. Wherefore hit was expressede that the man made of brasse felle down with the howse in the natiuite of Criste, and that fyre was extincte. *Of Craftes*

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *nigromancie*, Cx.² *and on*, Cx. (typ. error?)³ *cockerbelle*, Cx.⁴ So the MS.; but seemingly a mere clerical error; *a.* has *þat*.⁵ *and*, *a.*; *on*, Cx.⁶ *meouede*, *a.*; *meued*, Cx.⁷ *on ware*, Cx.⁸ *quenche*, Cx.⁹ *ared*, Cx.¹⁰ *endure*, Cx., and so below.¹¹ Cx. omits *þat*.¹² *for to*] *vnto*, Cx.¹³ *a.* and Cx. omit *in*.¹⁴ *quenched that same*, Cx.

et nigri salis inclusit in vase æneo, quam candela consecrata incendit, et balneum ibi¹ fecit cum thermis perpetuo² calentibus.³ Erat quoque⁴ in domo quadam⁵ ferreum simulacrum Bellerophontis pondere quindecim millia⁶ librarum, in aere cum equo suo suspensum, nulla catena superius aut stipite inferius sustentatum; sed lapides magnetes in arcubus⁷ testudinum sive fornicibus⁸ arcuatis circumquaque ponebantur, et hinc⁹ inde proportionali¹⁰ attractione simulacrum in medio servabant, ita ut nullicubi¹¹ posset dissilire.¹²

De artificijs
Romæ.

Est ibi theatrum in Heraclea de ipso monte marmoreo ita¹³ sculptum, ut cellulæ mansionum et sedilia per gyrum,¹⁴ exitus, et antra¹⁵ ex uno solido lapide sint¹⁶ sculpta, poniturque hoc totum¹⁷ opus super sex caneros ex ipso etiam monte sculptos, ubi nullus tam secrete aut¹⁸ secum aut cum alio loqui poterit¹⁹ quin in circuitu audiat.²⁰ Item²¹ juxta palatium Augusti est murus coctilis descendens per portam Asinariam a summis montibus, qui immensis fornicibus aquæductum sustentat; per quem amnis a²² montanis fontibus per spatium unius diætæ urbi illabitur, qui æreis fistulis postmodum divisus²³ universis palatiis Romæ²⁴ quondam influebat. Fluvius namque Tiberis equis est salubris,²⁵

¹ *ibidem*, B.

² *in perpetuo*, A.

³ *Et balneum calentibus*] Varies verbally in C.D.

⁴ *etiam*, C.D.

⁵ *ibi quoddam*, C.; *ibi quadam*, D.; *domo quodam*, B.

⁶ *milium*, C.D.

⁷ *fornicibus*, C.D.

⁸ *sive fornicibus*] om. C.D.; in *fornicibus*, A.E.

⁹ D. adds *et*.

¹⁰ *proportionabili*, B.

¹¹ *nullibi*, B.

¹² *desilire*, B. The sentence ends thus in C.D. after *attractione*: con-

sistens quasi sub equilibrata mensura sic manebat.

¹³ *quasi*, C. (not D.)

¹⁴ C. and D. add *et*; B. adds *mansionum* after *gyrum*.

¹⁵ *aura*, C.

¹⁶ *sic*, C.

¹⁷ *totum*] om. A.B.

¹⁸ *aut*] om. C.D.

¹⁹ *poterat*, D.

²⁰ *quin omnes qui in circuitu erant audirent*, C.D.

²¹ *Item*] om. C.D.

²² *et*, E. (clerical error.)

²³ *divisis*, B.

²⁴ *Romæ*] om. C.D.

²⁵ *utilis*, C.D.

man closede a confeccioun of brymston and of blak salt in a vessel of bras, and sette hit on pe fire¹ wip a candel pat he hadde made on his manere,² and made pere a bath wip bapinge places pat all wey were hote. Pere was also on³ an hous an ymage of yren, and was [namyd]⁴ Bellefrontes ymage, and⁵ weyed xv. powsand pound wip his hors pat he satte on, and hyng⁶ in pe ayer wip no post ne pyler bynepe vnder sette, nopere⁷ i-holde wip chayne aboue; but adamant stoness pat were in pe fot⁸ and in pe arches aboute drowe euen pe yren eueriche to his side, so pat pe yren ymage myzt nouzt downward noper vpward ne toward neyther side,⁹ but hyng alwey euene amydde.

TREVISA.

Pere is a place at Rome in Heraclea and hatte theatrum; De arti-
pat is a place to stonde oper sitte ynne for to loke wel
aboute. Perynne is wonderliche i-graue cabans and dennes,
dyuers oute goynges, benches, and seges all aboute, and is
hool and sound, al oon marbel ston: [and pis work is
i-sett uppon sixe crabbes i-hewe of hard marbilston];¹⁰
in pat place may no man so priuely speke, noper by¹¹ hem-
self noper by¹¹ anoper man, but al pat he seip be herde
al aboute. Faste by Augustus Cesar his place¹² is a wal
i-made of b[r]ent¹³ tile and streccheþ downward oute of pe
hiþe hulles by pe þate, port Asinaria. Pat wal is i-made
vppon grete arches and heug; pat wal streccheþ a dayes
iornay from Rome yn a greet condyt; vppon pat wal pe
wates and pe¹⁴ stremes of pe¹⁵ welles of pe mounteyns
renneþ ynto Rome; and þan is¹⁶ departed in dyuers condites
and pipes of bras, and so ran somtyme in to euery paleys
of Rome: for pe water [of]¹⁷ Tyber is holsom and good for

and Edifenges. There is a place made in Heraclea graven MS. HARL.
so of marbole in that hille, that the mansiones of hit and 2261.
setes of hit were graven of oon ston, where a man can not
speke so secretely with hymselfe or with eny other, but hit
schal be herde in alle the circuite. The water of Tiber is

¹ *it a fyre*, Cx.; *hit on fire*, a.² *i-halewed in his manere*, a., Cx.³ *in*, a., Cx.⁴ Added from Cx.⁵ *whiche*, Cx.⁶ *heng*, a. and Cx., and so Cx. (not a.) below.⁷ *ne*, Cx.⁸ *rawte*, Cx.⁹ So Cx.; *newere aside*, MS., a.¹⁰ The words in brackets added from a. and Cx.¹¹ *to*, Cx. (twice).¹² *palays*, Cx. (not a.)¹³ *welle i-made of brend*, a.; *walle made of brente*, Cx.¹⁴ a. and Cx. omit *pe*.¹⁵ So a. and Cx.; *þat*, MS.¹⁶ *it is*, Cx.¹⁷ Added from Cx. (not in a.)

sed hominibus noxius;¹ quamobrem a quatuor urbis partibus per artificiosos meatus Romani veteres aquas recentes venire fecerunt; quibus, dum res publica floruit, quicquid² libuit consummare licuit. Juxta hunc murum aquæductus³ est illud⁴ balneum Beanei, de quo supra dicitur. In albisterio, quod dicitur mutatorium Cæsaris, ubi fiebant albæ stolæ imperatorum, fuit⁵ candelabrum factum de lapide albeste, qui semel accensus et sub divo positus nulla arte potuit extinguui.⁶

De Pallante gigante.

Ranulphus. Juxta hunc modum potuit contingere quod de Pallante gigante legitur infra circa annum domini millesimum quadragesimum, quo anno repertum est Romæ corpus giganteæ staturæ tumultatum et⁷ incorruptum, cujus vulneris hiatus quatuor pedes longitudinis⁸ et semis continebat. Longitudo corporis altitudinem muri vincebat; lucerna continue ardens ad caput ejus reperta⁹ est, quæ nec flatu nec humore extinguui poterat,

¹ est noxius, D.

² after *floruit*, thus: *aquæductus fiebant ut libuit et licuit*, C.; *quicquid libuit, licuit*, D.

³ *aquæductus*] om. C. (not D.)

⁴ *illud*] om. D.

⁵ *ibi fuit*, B.

⁶ C. and D. omitted from *Juxta hunc* &c. down to *jacet hic*.

⁷ *et*] om. B.

⁸ So B.; *pedum longitudinis*, A.; *pedum longitudine*, E.

⁹ *inventa*, A.

hors, and for men yuel¹ and vnholosom.² Perfore pe olde TREVISA
 Romaynes made fresche water come oute of foure parties
 of pe citee by weies craftliche i-made, and perof men myzte
 take al pat pey wolde, [whyle]³ pe comynge⁴ of Rome were
 in her floures. By pat wall is pe bath Byaneus made, of pe
 whiche bap was raper a speche.⁵ In Albist[e]rio⁶ a place
 pat heet also Mutatorium Cesaris were i-made white stolis
 for emperours. Also pere was a candelstikke i-made of a
 stoon pat hatte Alboston; whan it was ones i-tend⁷ and
 i-sette per oute,⁸ pere coupe no man it aquenche⁹ wip no
 craft pat me koupe deuise. [R.]¹⁰ In pis manere hit mizte
 be of¹¹ pe geaunt Pallas aboute pe zere of oure Lord a
 powsand and fourty; pat zere was i-founde in Rome a geantis
 body i-buried all¹² hool and sounde; pe chene¹³ of his
 wounde was foure foot longe and an half; pe lengpe of his
 body passed the heihte of pe walles; at his heed was founde
 a lanterne brennyng alway, pat no man couthe quenche wip
 blast noþer¹⁴ wip water noþer¹⁴ wip oper craft, or¹⁵ pere were

wholsom for horses, but not for men, wherefore the Romanes MS. HARL.
2261.
 made labor that fresche waters myzte comme in to the cite
 in iiij. partes of hit. In Albisterio was a candelstickke
 where the emperoures were wonte to be chaungede, where
 the white stoles of emperoures were made also, whiche was
 made of a precious ston callede Albestes, whiche accendede
 and putte furthe in the aiere wylle not be extincte by eny
 crafte. R. In lyke wyse that thyng myzhte happe that
 is redde of Pallas, pe gigante abowte the yere of our Lorde
 God mxl^{ti}, in which yere a body was founde of pe stature
 of a gigante beryede at Rome and incorrupte, the wounde
 of whom conteynede in longitude iiij. foote and a halfe. The
 longitude of that body excedede the altitude of the walles
 of that cite: fyndenge also a lampe brennenge at the feete off
 hit continually, whiche cowthe not be extincte pro blawenge

¹ *euel, a.*
² *and vnholosome and euyl for men,*
 Cx.
³ *Added from Cx. (not in a.)*
⁴ *comins, Cx.*
⁵ *was spoken to fore, Cx.*
⁶ *Albisterio, a., Cx.*
⁷ *gyteyned, Cx., who adds and sette*
a fyre.

⁸ *without, Cx.*
⁹ *quenche it, Cx.; hit quenche, a.*
¹⁰ [R.] *Reference added from a.*
 and Cx.
¹¹ *of] that, Cx.*
¹² *all] om Cx.*
¹³ *space, Cx.*
¹⁴ *ne, Cx., twice; (as frequently.)*
¹⁵ *ar, a.*

donec subtili foramine subter¹ flammam² facto aer foret introductus. Hunc Pallantem Turnus dicitur occidisse, quando³ pugnavit pro Lavinia. Hujus⁴ gigantis tale erat epitaphium.

Epitaphium
gigantis
Romæ.

Filius Evandri Pallas, quem lancea Turni
Militis occidit more suo, jacet hic.

De statu
et signis
Romæ.

Fuit apud⁵ Romam taurus æneus in speciem⁶ Jovis transformati, qui mugienti et gesticulanti⁷ similimus videbatur. Fuit⁸ et imago Veneris eo modo⁹ quo quondam nudo corpore Paridi se ostendebat, ita artificiose composita ut in niveo imaginis ore sanguis recens¹⁰ natere videretur. Est etiam¹¹ ibi¹² pyramis Romuli, ubi speliebatur juxta¹³ ecclesiam beati Petri; quam peregrini, qui semper¹⁴ frivolis¹⁵ abundant, dicunt fuisse acervum segetis beati Petri, quem cum Nero rapuisset in lapideum collem pristinae quantitatis ferunt fuisse¹⁶ conversum. Inter omnes pyramides mira-

¹ *super*, B.

² *flamma*, A. (but looks more like *flamine*.)

³ A. adds *Æneas*.

⁴ *Cujus*, B.

⁵ *in Roma*, C.D.

⁶ *specie*, C.D.

⁷ *tubanti*, B. ; *moventi*, C.D.

⁸ *Item fuit*, C.D.

⁹ *eo modo*] om. C.D., which have *quæ* following.

¹⁰ *recens*] om. B.

¹¹ *etiam*] om. C.D.

¹² *ibidem*, B.

¹³ *prope*, C.D.

¹⁴ *frivolis semper habundantes*, C.D.

¹⁵ *suis* *frivolis*, B.

¹⁶ *fuisse*] *fore*, A.E.

i-made an hole¹ vnder þe lyzt by neþe, þat þe ayer myzte TREVIS. entre. Me seiþ þat Turnus slow þis geaunt Pallas, whan Eneas fauhte for Lauin[i]a þat was Eneas his wyf. Þis² geauntes epitaphium,³ þat is,⁴ þe writynge of mynde of hym þat lay pere, was suche :⁵

Pallas Euander his sone lieþ here :
Hym Turnus þe knyzt wiþ his spere
Slowe in his manere.

De statu et signis. Pere was at Rome a bole⁶ of bras in þe schap of Iupiter ouercast and schape to men þat loked peron ; þat boole semed lowynge and startlinge. Pere was also þe ymage of Venus al naked in þe same manere as Venus schewed hir self to þat man Paris⁷ somtyme,⁸ and was so craftliche made þat in þe mouþe and lippes, þat were as white as eny⁹ snow, semede fresche blood and newe. Pere is also at Rome a wonder copped pilour, and is Romulus pyler. Pere Romulus was i-buried faste by Seynt Petres chirche. Þat piler pilgrims and palmers, þat faste con¹⁰ liþe, clepeþ it¹¹ seint Petris corn hepe,¹² and seiþ þat whan Nero þe emperour hadde i-rauisched it, it¹³ turned into an hil of stoon as grete as it was raper, whiles it was corn.¹⁴ Among þe¹⁵ pilers

or eny other humor, tylle they made a subtile hoole vnder MS. HARL. hit with a nelde,¹⁶ where thro the aier commenge thro hyt 2261. causede hit to be extincte : whom a knyghte called Turnus did flee, when Eneas did fihte for Lauin[i]a. *Of the Ymages at Rome.* There was an ymage of Venus made in Rome, in that similitude as sche apperede to Parides, whiche was made so subtilly that a man myhte see in that ymage as bloode decurrente. Also another off brasse transformede in to the similitude of Iupiter. Also there is the grave of Romulus, where he was beryede, nye to þe chirche of Seynte Petre, whom the commune peple calle the hepe of corne of Seynte Petre, whom Nero takenge aweye was restorede in to the state of hit a fore. Amonge the beryalles of whom

¹ unto the tyme that there was made a lytil hoole, Cx.

² So Cx. (This) ; þese, MS., a.

³ epytaphium, Cx. ; ephitafium, MS., a.

⁴ is this, Cx. (without sense).

⁵ suche] this, Cx.

⁶ bulle, Cx.

⁷ So Cx. ; Pares, MS., a.

⁸ Cx. adds of Troye.

⁹ ony, Cx.

¹⁰ can, Cx.

¹¹ a (not Cx.) omits it.

¹² corn hupple, Cx.

¹³ it] hit, Cx. (perhaps considering the aspirated form the stronger).

¹⁴ as grete as it was byfore of corne, Cx.

¹⁵ alle, a., Cx.

¹⁶ So Harl. MS.

bilior est pyramis Julii Cæsaris, habens in altitudine¹ ducentos quinquaginta pedes, in cujus summo fuit² sphæra ænea cineres et ossa Julii continens.³ De quo colosseo⁴ quidam metricus⁵ sic ait :

Versus de
pyramide
Julii
Cæsaris.

Si lapis est unus, dic qua fuit arte levatus :

Si lapides plures, dic ubi contigui.

Hanc autem pyramidem super quatuor leones⁶ fundatam peregrini mendosi⁷ acum beati Petri appellant, mentiunturque illum fore⁸ mundum a peccatis⁹ qui sub saxo illo liberius potuerit reperire.¹⁰ Sunt etiam in

De caballis
marmoreis.

Roma duo magni equi marmorei quorum talis redditur ratio. Tempore Tiberii imperatoris, duo juvenes philosophi, Praxitellus et Fibia,¹¹ venerunt Romam, quos cum Cæsar interrogasset cur nudi incederent, dixerunt, " Quia omnia reliquimus, et quia omnia nobis sunt nuda " et aperta ; etiam¹² quæ dixeris, Cæsar, vel clam feceris,

¹ *latitudine*, C. (not D.)

² *est*, C.D.

³ *continentes*, C.D.

⁴ *colosseo*] om. C.D.

⁵ *metricus*] om. C.D.

⁶ *æneos* added in C.D.

⁷ *mendosi*] om. C.D.

⁸ *mundum esse*, C.D.

⁹ *penitentiamque perfectam egisse*, added in C.D.

¹⁰ Slightly altered in C.D.

¹¹ *Fibius*, C. (not D.) It seems that in this monstrous legend the persons intended are the sculptors Phidias and Praxiteles. See Gregorovius, *Geschichte der Stadt Rom*. vol. iii. pp. 404, 405. (Stuttgart, 1860.)

¹² *etiam* sqq.] Slightly altered in C.D.

Iulius Cesar his piler is most wonderful and hap in heiþe two hundred feete¹ and fifty; in þe coppe þerof [in]² a rounde ping of bras, wher on³ beþ Iulius Cesar his askes and his bones.⁴ Of þat piler in an⁵ arche beþ vers i-write,⁶ þat beþ þus to menyng, and nameliche of þe ouermest stone:

TREVISA.

ȝif þe stone is oon, telle what craft brouȝt hym vppon;
ȝif meny st[on]es,⁷ telle where þey ioyne⁸ attones.⁹

Þis arche and piler is i-founded and y-sette vppon foure lyouns. Pilgryms ful of lesynges clepeþ þis arche and piler Seynt Petres nedle, and lieþ and seiþ þat þat¹⁰ man is clene of dedely¹¹ synne þat may crepe vnder þat stoon. Þere beþ also in Rome tweie grete horse of marbilston: for in Tiberius þe emperoures¹² tyme twei ȝonge filosofres, Praxitellus and Fibia, come to Rome, and ȝede all naked; and whan þe emperour axed hem¹³ why and wher fore þey ȝede¹⁴ so naked, þei answerde and seide: "For we haueþ all ping " for sake; ¹⁵ and for all ping is to vs naked and bare and " openliche i-knowe; ȝe, sire emperoure, and all þat þow " spekest in counsail and in priuete we knoweþ at þe¹⁶ beste." *Trevisa.* Þe firste poynt of þis doynge and answerde techep

the beryalle of Iulius Cesar dothe excede, conteynenge in altitude cc. and lⁱ foote, in the hiȝhte of whom is a spere of brasse conteynenge the bones of Iulius Cesar, of whom hit is seyde in metre,—If that ston be oon say in what wyse and by what arte hit was elevate; if there be mony stones say where they be contiguate or ioynede to gedre. Mony pilgremes calle that beryalle of Iulius sette on iiij. lyones made of brasse, the nelde of Seynte Petre. Also in Rome be ij. grete horses made off marbole, whiche were made for this cause folowenge. In the tyme of Tiberius themperoure, ij. yonge filosofres, Praxitellus and Fibia, come to Rome. Tiberius inquirenge of theyme why they wente bare, they seyde, For we haue refusede alle thynges, and alle thynges be to vs bare and open that thow seyes

MS. HARL.
2261.
Of the
Collose.

¹ foot, a., Cx.

² Added from a. and Cx. Probably is the true reading.

³ wher on] om. Cx.

⁴ So MS. and a.; Iulius Cezars bones and ashes, Cx.

⁵ in an] and, a, Cx.

⁶ made, a., Cx.

⁷ stones, a.; And yf they be many stones, Cx. (which is better metre).

⁸ joyneb, a.

⁹ at ones, Cx.

¹⁰ thylk, Cx.

¹¹ dedely] om. Cx.

¹² þe emperoures] om. Cx.

¹³ hym, Cx.

¹⁴ wente, Cx., who, however, has yeden just before.

¹⁵ forsaken al thyng, Cx.

¹⁶ þe] om. Cx.

"nobis patent." Quod cum Cæsar verum comperisset, ipsis hoc petentibus, fecit hoc¹ memoriale, duos scilicet caballos marmoreos. Est et aliud signum ante palatium domini Papæ, equus æneus et sessor ejus manu dextra quasi populo² loquens, sinistraque quasi³ frenum regens, habens avem cuculam inter aures equi et nanum quasi moribundum,⁴ sub pedibus,⁵ quem peregrini Theodoricum vocant, vulgus Constantinum, sed clerici curiæ Marcum seu Quintum Curtium appellant.⁶ Hoc signum antiquitus sub quatuor⁷ columnas æreas ante aram Jovis in Capitolio stabat, sed Beatus Gregorius equitem et equum dejecit, et columnas in ecclesia Lateranensi posuit, Romani vero⁸ equitem et equum ante palatium papæ⁹ posuerunt. Qui Marcum illum¹⁰

¹ *id*, C. ; *illud*, D.

² *populis*, C.D.

³ *quasi*] om. B.

⁴ So A.B. ; *morbidum*, C.D.E.

⁵ *ejus* added in B.D.

⁶ The previous sentence is slightly altered in C.D.

⁷ *super decem*, C.D.

⁸ *sed Romani*, B.

⁹ *domini papæ*, D.

¹⁰ *illud*, C.

pat who¹ forsakeþ all þyng forsakeþ all his clopes; and so **TREVISIA.**
 it foloweþ pat þey pat beep wel i-cloped and goop aboute
 and beggeþ and gadereþ money and corn and catel of
 oper men² forsakeþ nouȝt al þing.³ Þe emperour assaied
 and founde soop all pat þey seide, and at here prayer⁴
 made in mynde of hem tweie greet hors⁵ of marbel. Þere
 is anopere signe and tokene to fore⁶ þe popes paleys; an
 hors of bras and a man sittynge peron and halt his⁷
 riȝt hond as pouȝ he spake⁸ to þe peple;⁹ and halt his⁷
 bridel in his lift hand, and haþ a cukkow by twene his hors
 eres and a seek¹⁰ dwerf vnder his horse¹¹ feet. Pilgrims
 clepeþ pat man Theodoricus, and þe comouns clepeþ hym
 Constantinus. But clerkes of þe court clepeþ hym Marcus
 and Quintus Curtius also. Þis signe stood somtyme to fore
 Iupiters auȝter¹² in þe Capitol vpon foure¹³ pilers of bras;
 but Seynt Gregorie prewe down hors and man and sette¹⁴
 þe pilers in Seint Iones chirche þe Lateranensis. But þe
 Romainys toke hors and man and sette hem to fore þe popes
 paleys. Þey pat clepeþ hym Marcus telleþ þis skile and¹⁵

or dose priuely. Themperoure knowenge that to be trewe **MS. HARL.**
 at the desire of theyme made that memorialle for theyme, **2261.**
 that is to say, ij. bare horses of marbole. Also there was
 an other signe a fore the palice of the pope, whiche is
 an horse made of brasse, and the sitter on hit as spekenge
 to the peple by the signe of the ryȝhte honde, and gouernenge
 the horse as with the lyfte honde, hauenge a brydde called
 a cukkowe made betwene the eeres of the horse, and Nanus
 lyke to dye vnder his feete, whom pilgremes calle Theodoricus, the commune peple Constantyne, but clerkes of the
 cownte calle hit Marcus or Quintus Curtius. That signe
 stode somme tyme on iiij. pyllers of brasse a fore the awter
 of Iupiter in the Capitoly or chiefe place of Rome. But
 Seynte Gregory put downe the horse man and that horse,
 and putte the pillars in the chirche Lateranense. The
 Romanes toke the horse man and the horse, and sette hit
 before the palyce of the pope. Men callenge hyt Marcus **f. 39 b.**

¹ *pat who pat, a.*

² *þing before men* in MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)

³ Reference to B. added in Cx.

⁴ *owen prayer*, Cx.

⁵ *horses*, Cx.

⁶ *byfore*, Cx.

⁷ *holdeth*, Cx. (twice.)

⁸ *speke*, *a.*

⁹ *ple*, MS.

¹⁰ *sike*, *a.*

¹¹ *horse*] om. Cx.

¹² *awtter*, Cx.

¹³ *the four*, Cx.

¹⁴ Cx. omits the seventeen words following.

¹⁵ *skile and*] om. Cx.

appellant hanc causam assignant. Ex genere Messenorum corpore quidam nanus sed arte nigromanticus, cum finitimos sibi reges subjugasset, Romanos aggressus est, quibus¹ virtutem ferendi² ademit. Unde³ et ipsos in urbe conclusos diu obsedit.⁴ Nanus⁵ nempe ille quotidie ante solis occasum⁶ extra castra egrediens artem suam in agro⁷ excercuit.⁸ Quo⁹ comperto Romani strenuo militi Marco urbis dominium et¹⁰ memoriale perpetuum promiserunt, si urbem liberaret. At ille muro urbis ex illa parte perforato, qua nanus solebat præstigiari,¹¹ de¹² nocte¹³ exiens mane¹⁴ expectabat¹⁵ quod et¹⁶ cuculus avis¹² denunciabat¹⁷ voce sua. Arreptum nanum, quem armis non poterat, manu in urbem deportabat; et ne, si fandi copiam haberet,

¹ *qui virtute*, C. ; *qui virtutem*, D.

² *et artem secandi arte sua penitus*, added in C.D.

³ *Unde*] om. A.

⁴ Transposed in C.D.

⁵ *Denique magus ille*, C.D.

⁶ *ortum*, C.; *occasum solis*, A.

⁷ *in agro*] *magicam*, B.

⁸ The previous sentence slightly altered in C.D.

⁹ *Hoc*, D.

¹⁰ *et*] in, A.

¹¹ *præstigiari*, B.

¹² *de . . . avis*] *expectatoque . .*

B.

¹³ *nocteque*, C. ; *noctez* (quid ?) D

¹⁴ *maneque*, C.D.

¹⁵ *expectato*, A.C.D.

¹⁶ *et*] om. C.D.

¹⁷ *denunciavit*, C. (not D.)

¹⁸ *nocte*, added in C.D.

resoun. Pere was a dwerf¹ of pe kynrede of Mesenis; TREVISA.
 his craft was nigremansi.² Whan he hadde so conquered
 kynges pat woned hym nyh,³ and made hem soget to hym,
 pan he wente to Rome to werre wip Romayns,⁴ and wip
 his craft he byname pe Romays⁵ power and myzt for to
 smyte, and so⁶ byseged hem long tyme i-closed wipynne pe
 citee. Dis dwerf zede⁷ eche day to fore pe sonne risynge
 in to pe feld for to doo his craft. Whanne pe Romaynes
 had aspied⁸ pat manere doynge of pat dwerf, pey speke
 to Marcus a noble knyzt, and byhiht hym lordschippe of
 pe citee and a memoryall⁹ in mynde for euermore, 3if it
 were his wille to helpe hem and saue¹⁰ pe citee. Pan
 Marcus made¹¹ an hole porwe pe wal toward pe place;
 pere¹² pe dwerf was woned to worche and vse pe sotilte
 of his craft. And Marcus rod oute at pat place porw pe
 wal, longe or it were day, for to abyde his tyme to cacche
 pe dwerf, anon as it were day. And whan it was tyme, pe
 kukkow song and warnede hym of pe day. Pan Marcus¹³
 resede too, and for¹⁴ he myzte nouzt hitte pe dwerf wip
 wepoun, he kauzte hym wip his honde, and bare hym in to
 pe citee. And for drede lest he wolde¹⁵ helpe hymself wip

assigne this cause. A man callede Nanus, erudite in the MS. HARL.
 arte of nigromancy, whiche subduenge to hym mony kynges 2261.
 and realmes wente to the Romanes, takenge a weye from
 theyme the vertu of smytynge and kyttenge, segede theyme
 longe schutte with in the cite. This Nanus wente from his
 felowschippe erly in the mornenge afore the rysenge of the
 sonne, and put his arte in exercise; whiche thyng percey-
 vede, the Romanes made promise to Marcus, a nowble knyghte,
 that he scholde haue predominy of the cite, and a per-
 petuall memory if he cowthe delyuer that cite. Marcus
 pereschenge the walle of the cite on that parte where Nanus
 vsede the arte of nigromancye goenge furthe on the nyghte
 taryede for Nanus vntylle the morowe, whom a brydde
 callede a cuckowe schewede by here voyce; whiche takenge
 hym brouzhte hym in to the cite, whiche fallenge down amonge

¹ dwarf, Cx.² nigromancy, a.; *nygromancie*, Cx.³ dwellyd nygh him, Cx.⁴ the Romayns, a., Cx.⁵ Romayns, a., Cx.⁶ so] om. Cx.⁷ wente, Cx.⁸ espied, Cx.⁹ memory all, MS.; *memorial*, Cx.;
 a agrees apparently with MS.¹⁰ if he wolde defende hem and saue,
 Cx.¹¹ So Cx.; *at*, MS.¹² Probably we should read
where. Cx. has large omissions
 here.¹³ Markus, MS.¹⁴ bycause, Cx.¹⁵ sholde, Cx.

arte sua se forsan¹ liberaret, statim sub pedibus equi sui² contrivit; unde et³ tale memoriale promeruit.⁴ Qui vero Quintum Curtium illud vocant hoc assignant, quod hiatus quidam in media urbe⁵ patuit sulphurea exhalatione multos perimens; in quem, responso Phoebi⁶ accepto, Quintus Curtius, ut urbem⁷ liberaret, armatus se dejecit; et statim cuculus avis⁸ de hiatu illo⁹ exivit, et terra se conclusit. Aliud signum est¹⁰ imago Colossei quam statuam Solis aut ipsius¹¹ Romæ dicunt, de quo mirandum est quomodo tanta moles fundi¹² potuit aut erigi, cum longitudo ejus sit centum viginti sex pedum. Fuit itaque¹³ hæc statua aliquando¹⁴ in insula Rhodi¹⁵ quindecim pedibus altior eminentioribus locis Romæ. Hæc statua sphæram¹⁶ in¹⁷ specie mundi¹⁸ manu dextra, et gladium sub specie virtutis bellicæ¹⁸ manu sinistra gerebat, in signum quod minoris vir-

¹ *forsitan*, B.; *si forsan*, A.

² *sui*] om. C.D.

³ *et*] om. C.D.

⁴ *meruit*, C.D.

⁵ So B.; *in urbe*, C.D.; *urbe* omitted in E.

⁶ *plebi*, B.

⁷ *plebem*, C. (not D.)

⁸ *cuculus avis*] hiatus in B., filled up in pencil by a modern hand.

⁹ *de hiatu illo*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *est*] om. B.

¹¹ *ipsius*] *ipsi*, B.

¹² *infundi*, C. (not D.)

¹³ *itaque*] So B.; *aliquando*, C.D.; *ita*, E.

¹⁴ *aliquando*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *Horedii*, B.; *Herodii*, A.C.D.E.

¹⁶ *speram*, MSS.

¹⁷ *sub*, C.D.

¹⁸ *in manu*, B.C.D. (twice.)

his craft, and he moste¹ speke, he threw hym vndir his² hors feet, and þe hors all to trade hym. And herefore pat image was i-made in mynde³ of þis dede. Þey pat clep þat signe an⁴ ymage Quintus Curtius, telleþ þis skille and resoun: Þere was somtyme in þe myddel of Rome a greet chene⁵ in þe erpe; out of þat chene⁶ come smoke⁷ and brymston, and slow⁸ many man.⁹ Þanne Quintus Curtius took counseil of Phebus, and armed hym, and auntede hym hym in to þe chene;⁶ þanne anon fleigh a cukkow out of þat¹⁰ chene.⁶ Þan þe erpe closed to gidres, and so þe chene⁶ was i-stopped. Anoper signe is Colossus¹¹ ymage, pat is i-cleped also þe ymage of þe Sonne, oper of Rome. Þere is grete wonder how it myȝte be i-ȝote¹² oper arered, þe ymage is so grete. Þe lengþ þerof is sixe score foot and sixe. Þis ymage was somtyme in þe ylond Rhodus,¹³ fiftene foot hiȝere þan þe hiȝest place of¹⁴ Rome. Þis ymage bare in his riȝt hond a spere¹⁵ al round i-schape as þe world, and in his lift hand a swerd pat tokenep¹⁶ myȝt of bataille; in

TREVISA.

the feete of the horses supposede to have delyuerede hym by his arte; wherefore Marcus hade that memorialle. Men that calle hit Quintus Curtius¹⁷ assigne this reason, seyenge that there was a place open in the myddes of the cite pereschenge mony men as with a brethe of sulphure, an answer ȝiffen to the peple that hit wolde not be schutte vn tylle that a man felle in to hit voluntarily. Then Quintus Curtius¹⁷ armenge hym felle in to hit to delyuer the cite; that doen, a cukko did flye owte from that pytte, and the erthe was closed anon. An other signe is an ymage of Colossus,¹¹ whom they seye to be the ymage of the sonne or elles of the cite of Rome, of whom hit is to be meruaylede how that so hevy a thyng myȝhte be soe erecte, sythe hit is in longitude of c. foote and xxvi^u; whiche ymage was somme tyme in the yle of Rhodus,¹³ whiche was more hie in altitude by xv. foote then eny place of the cite. That ymage hade in the ryȝhte honde of hit a rownde thyng after the similitude of þe worlde, and a swerde in the signe of batelle in the lifte honde, in token that hit is lesse f. 40. a.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *yf he myght*, Cx.² *the*, Cx.³ *remembraunce*, Cx.⁴ *and*, a., Cx.⁵ *clifte or hoole*, Cx.⁶ *hoole*, Cx., and so below.⁷ *smook*, Cx.⁸ *slewe*, Cx.⁹ *men*, a.¹⁰ *þe*, a.¹¹ *Colloseus*, MSS. and Cx.¹² *ȝoten*, Cx.¹³ *Herodius*, MSS. and Cx.¹⁴ *in*, Cx.¹⁵ So the MSS. and Cx. for *sphere*.¹⁶ *bytokeneth*, Cx.¹⁷ *Cursius*, Harl. MS. (twice.)

tutis est quærere quam quæsitâ tueri. Hæc quidem¹ statua ærea, sed imperiali auro deaurata, per tenebras radiabat continuo,² et æquali motu cum sole circumferebatur, semper solari corpori³ faciem gerens oppositam, quam⁴ cuncti Romani advenientes⁵ in signum subjectionis adorabant. Hanc⁶ Beatus Gregorius,⁷ cum viribus non posset, igne supposito destruxit;⁸ ex quo solummodo caput cum manu dextra sphæram tenente incendio superfuit, quæ nunc⁹ ante palatium domini Papæ super¹⁰ duas columnas marmoreas visuntur.¹¹ Miro¹² quoque modo ars fusilis adhuc in ære rigido molles mentitur capillos, et os loquenti¹³ simillimum præfert.¹⁴ *Pol., libro secundo.*¹⁵ Ad venustandam urbis¹⁶ majestatem muliebrem formam, quæ orbem dextra¹⁷ contineret, in æris materia fieri fecerant;¹⁸ qua perfecta quidam solas tibias tantæ moli perferendæ insufficientes sunt¹⁹ causati, quibus faber statuæ

¹ quidem] om. C.D.

² continue, B.

³ speræ, C. (not D.)

⁴ hanc, C.D.

⁵ venientes flexis genibus adorabant, C.D.

⁶ postmodum, added in C.D.

⁷ Papa, added in C.D.

⁸ combussit, C.D.

⁹ etiam nunc, D.

¹⁰ inter, C. (not D.)

¹¹ vinciuntur, B.

¹² Miroque, A.C.D.

¹³ loquentis, C. (not D.)

¹⁴ profert, C.D.

¹⁵ So A.; *Plinius, libro sec.*, E.; *Poli., libro 1º*, B. The true reference is to Johan. Saresb. *Polycrat.* lib. ii. c. 15. Reference omitted in C.D.

¹⁶ orbis, C. (not D.)

¹⁷ dextra orbem, B.

¹⁸ The previous clause slightly altered and transposed in C.D.

¹⁹ insufficientes causabant, quibus faber respondit, C.D.

tokeynge¹ pat pis² is lasse maistrie, to wynne and to conquere, þan it is to kepe and to saue þat þat is conquered and i-wonne. Dis ymage was of bras; but it was so rialliche ouer gilt, þat it schoon³ in derknes, and ʒaf grete bemes of⁴ liȝt; also it moued⁵ aboute wip þe sonne in suche a manere þat alway his face was toward þe sonne. Alle þe Romaines þat come pereby worschipped þat ymage in wey⁶ of subieccioun and of praldom. Seynt Gregorie destroyed þat ymage wip fuyre, for he myȝte nouȝt destroye it wip strengþe. Of þat ymage is onliche i-left þe hede and the riȝt hond holdyng þe spere, þat is þe roundenesse and þe liknesse of þe world; for of al þat ymage lefte⁷ namore vnbrend. But⁸ þat hede and þat hond beep now to fore þe popes palays vpon þe⁹ tweie pilers of marbil; and wonderliche by craft of ȝetyng¹⁰ þat bras is i-ȝote, þat þe heer semeþ nesche¹¹ to a manis siȝt, and þe moup as þey it were spekyng. *Policr.*,¹² *libro secundo*. For to hiȝte þe noblete of þe¹³ citee þe Romaines made a wommans ymage in bras; þat ymage helde in his¹⁴ hond a spere þe schap¹⁵ of þe world wyde. And whan þe ymage was made, hem semede þat þe legges were to feble for to bere suche an ymage; it was so grete and so huge.

TREVISA.

vertu to gete then to kepe thynges y-geþen. That ymage MS. HARL. 2261.
was made of brasse, but hit was ouer gilte with golde imperialle, schynenge contynually in derkenesse, mouenge egally with the son in his circumference, hade the face of hit contrarious alleweyes to the body of the sonne; whom alle Romanes worschippede in a signe of subieccion, whom Seynte Gregory destroyede with fyre; of whiche ymage the hede and ryȝhte honde remaynede, whiche be sette now afore the palice off the pope on ij. pyllers of marbole. *Policronicon, libro 2º*. The Romanes made an ymage of a woman, to make feire the maieste of the cite, in brasse; whiche performede, mony men seyde the legges of that ymage to be insufficiencie to bere suche a burdon. To whom the smythe that made hit

¹ token, a., Cx.
² hit, a., Cx.
³ shone, Cx.
⁴ of] Added from a. and Cx.
⁵ meouede, a.; meued, Cx.
⁶ tokene, a., Cx.
⁷ is, or rather was, must be inserted before *lefte*.
⁸ But] om. a., Cx.

⁹ þe] om. a.
¹⁰ milting, Cx.
¹¹ softe, Cx.
¹² *Policr.*, a.
¹³ this, Cx.
¹⁴ hir, Cx.; but perhaps his own correction.
¹⁵ So a. and Cx.; *scharpest*, MS. (not understanding *spere*).

respondit eas¹ usque quaque sufficere² donec virgo³ pareret. Quod et factum est in Christi nativitate.⁴ *Gregorius*.⁵ Juxta palatium Vespasiani, ubi sus⁶ alba de Pario lapide cum triginta porcellis aquam abluendis præbet, est⁷ tabula ænea peccatum prohibens, ubi scripta sunt potiora legis præcepta; et scribuntur⁸ ibi quasi aphorismi metrici, quorum⁹ sententiæ supplementum pene subintelligitur. *Versus* :¹⁰

Gallus ibi quanquam¹¹ per noetem tinnipet omnem,
Sed sua vox nulli¹² jure¹³ placere potest.

Dulce pelora sonat, quam dicunt nomine troscam,¹⁴
Sed fugiente die illa quieta manet.

Et merulus¹⁵ modulans tam pulchris zinzitat¹⁶ odis,
Nocte ruente timet, cantica nulla canit.

Vere calente novo componit acredula cantus,
Matutinali tempore ruricolans.

¹ *illas*, C.D.

² *sufficeres*, E.

³ *virgo*] om. B.

⁴ *nam tunc corrui*, added in C.D.

⁵ *Gregorius*] om. B.

⁶ *versus albam*, C. (not D.)

⁷ *ibi*, C. (not D.)

⁸ *Scribuntur etiam*, C.; *scribuntur autem*, D.

⁹ *omnia fere verba subintelliguntur*, C.D.

¹⁰ *Versus*] om. B.

¹¹ So B.; *quemquam*, A.C.D.E. and Trevisa.

¹² *ulli*, C. (not D.)

¹³ *viro*, B.

¹⁴ *quodam*, C. (not D.)

¹⁵ *morulis*, B.

¹⁶ *incitat*, B.; *zinzalat* is perhaps the true reading. See Du Cange.

Bot þe craftes men, þat it made, answered and seide : þe TREVISA.
 legges schal dure alway, and bere þe ymage at þe beste,
 and neuere faille, for to¹ a mayde bere a childe. But þe
 legges faillede, and þe ymage fel² down, whan Crist was
 i-bore. Faste by Vespasianus his paleys is a stone þat
 hatte Parius, [and is whyȝte marbil; and hatte Parius]³ for
 suche a stoon is i-digged in þe ilond þat hatte Paros. In
 þat⁴ stoon is i-corne a⁵ white sowe wip pritty pigges, þat
 fyndeþ⁶ water to hem þat wol wasche.⁷ Þere is also a
 table of bras þat forbedeþ synne; þerynne beþ i-write þe
 chief poyntes of þe lawe; þere beþ i-write as þere were
 rules in metre. Þe menyng þerof is vnderstonde in þis
 writynge, þat folweþ next :

Euerich nyȝt, þere⁸ a cok
 Wakeþ som man, or it dawē;
 All his song in a flok
 May like no man by þe lawe.

Whan somer⁹ is hote
 Þrostel¹⁰ syngē wip mery note.
 Whan þe day goþ away,
 Þe brid¹¹ is stille, and leueþ his lay.

In towne, as it longes,
 Þe osul twytēþ mery songes.
 At nyȝt for drede
 Truly no song doþ he grede.

Whan floures¹² springē on rote,
 Þe nyȝtyngale in his note
 Twytēþ wel fawnyng
 Wip full swete song in þe dawenyng.

ȝafe answerē and seyde, that the ymage scholde stonde MS. HARL.
 tyllē that a mayde scholde be delyuerede of a childe, whiche 2261.
 felle down in the natiuite of Criste. Nye to the place and
 palyce of Vespasian, where a whyte sowe made of ston with
 xxxⁱⁱ pygges ȝiffe the water to thynges to be waschen, is
 a table of brasse prohibetenge synne, where the myȝhty
 preceptes of the lawe bene wryten.

¹ unto, Cx.

² fil, a.

³ Words in brackets added from
 a.; absent from Cx., who has other
 omissions.

⁴ þat] Added from a. and Cx.

⁵ So a. and Cx.; i corne white, MS.

⁶ giue, Cx.

⁷ Cx. adds there.

⁸ where, Cx.

⁹ So a.; some, MS.

¹⁰ the throstle, Cx.

¹¹ birde, Cx.

¹² floure, Cx.

Cum turdus¹ tritulat,² sturnus tunc pausitat ore;
Sed³ quod⁴ mane canunt vespere non recolunt.

CAP. XXV.

De quibusdam Romanorum⁵ institutis.

Isidorus, libro octavo decimo, capitulo de triumphis,⁶ et Hugutio, capitulo Tris.⁷ Venienti⁸ duci, regi, consuli, sive imperatori post insignem victoriam ad urbem Romam⁹ triumphus parabatur, id est, honor triplex triumphanti¹⁰ exhibebatur. Nam totus populus cum exultatione varia exhibat¹¹ obviam victori. Captivi quoque¹² sequebantur currum ejus¹³ ligatis post terga manibus, et ipse victor induebatur tunica Jovis in¹⁴ curru sedens, quem trahebant quatuor equi albi usque¹⁵ ad Capitolium: unde Ovidius:

Quatuor in niveis, Cæsar, abibis¹⁶ equis.

Hanc tamen ferebat¹⁷ molestiam sic honoratus, ne¹⁸ sui ipsius oblivisceretur, quia cum eo ponebatur servus

¹ *timidus truculat*, B.

² *titulat*, C.; *tritulat*, D.

³ *Et*, C.D.

⁴ *quæ*, B.; *q*, A.

⁵ *observantiis et*, added in C.; *observantiis* in place of *institutis*, D.

⁶ *capitulo de triumphis*] om. B.

⁷ *de tris*, C.D. The title of Hugutio's section is *tres vel tris*.

⁸ *Venienti*] om. C.D.

⁹ *redeunti*, added in C.D.

¹⁰ *triumphanti*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *exibant*, C.

¹² *etiam*, C.D.

¹³ *victoris*, C.D.

¹⁴ *in*] om. B.

¹⁵ *et sic ducebatur ad*, C.D.

¹⁶ *abibit*, C.; *abibat*, B. The true reading is *aureus ibis*. (Ovid. l *Am.* 214.)

¹⁷ *patiebatur*, C.D.

¹⁸ *Hanc . . . ferebat*] Attamen molestia, B.

¹⁹ *nam aliquis servilis conditionis sedens in curru jugiter colaphizabat triumphantem, sic dicens, Nothisseltos, &c.*, C.D.

Dra makip his fare,
 Wip mouth þan chetereþ¹ þe stare.
 Of morwe song kynde
 Þey haueth at eue no mynde.

TREVISA.

*Capitulum vicesimum quintum.**De quibusdam Romanorum institutis et obseruantis.*

Isidorus, Etym., libro octavo decimo, cap. de triumphis, et Hugutio, cap. Tris. Whan duke, kyng, consul, oper emperour hadde i-doo greet viage² and victorie, and come into Rome, at his comynge he schulde wip³ þre manere worshippe be vnderfonge.⁴ Al þe peple schulde come aʒenst hym wip all þe solempne⁵ merþe, comforte, and ioye þat þey koupe make; alle þe prisoneres schulde folwe þe⁶ chaar wip hire hondes i-bounde byhynde her bakkes; þis victor hym self schulde were on Iupiter his cote and sitte in⁷ a chaar þat fyue white hors schulde drawe anon to⁸ þe Capitol. Perof spekeþ Ouidius:

Wip foure hors all snowe white
 Þou schalt, sire Emperour, wende.

ʒit among all þis worschippe, for he schulde not forʒete hym self, þis onnuy⁹ he hadde: a cherle was wip hym in

Of somme institutes and obseruaunces of the Romanes. MS. HARL.

Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro octavo decimo, capitulo Triumphus, et Hugutio, capitulo Tris. Capitulum vicesimum quintum. 2261.

A triplicate honor was ʒiffen to a kynge, duke, consul, or emperoure hauenge victory, in his commenge to the cite of Rome; for the peple wente furthe to mete the victor with variable gladdenesse, the charyette of whom men putte in captiuite folowede, theire hondes bownde behynde the backes of theyme. Also the victor was induede with the coote of Iupiter, syttenge in a charyette whom iiij. white horses didde drawe to þe Capitoly.¹⁰ A victor thus hade in honor suffrede an oper grevaunce, þat he scholde not forgete hym selfe, in the charyette of whom a seruaunte of vile con-

¹ chiterith, Cx.² don ony grete voyage, Cx.³ re before þre in MS. (not a.)⁴ receyued, Cx.⁵ solempne, a.⁶ his, Cx.⁷ on, a., Cx.⁸ vnto, Cx.⁹ So MS. and a.; this one annoy, Cx.¹⁰ to þe Capitoly, added in the margin, apparently by the original scribe.

in eodem curru, qui jugiter colaphizaret triumphantem; et hoc duplici de causa, ne scilicet triumphans nimis¹ ex tali gloria superbiret, et etiam² ut daretur spes cuique³ probo perveniendi ad consimilem honorem, si probitas sua hoc promereretur. Colaphizans vero sæpius dicebat triumphanti “Γνώθι σεαυτόν,”⁴ id est, *nosce teipsum*, quasi diceret, “Noli superbire de tanto honore.”⁵ Et eo⁶ die licuit⁷ unicuique de populo dicere victori⁸ impune quicquid vellet. Unde et Julio⁹ triumphanti multæ dicebantur contumeliæ,¹⁰ nulla tamen¹¹ ultione subsequente. Nam a quodam dicebatur, “Salve, calve;” et ab alio, “Ave, Rex et “Regina.” *Ranulphus*. Vide infra de Julio Cæsare. *In vita Johannis Eleemosynarii*.¹² Quando imperatores coronabantur, venerunt ad eos ædificatores monumentorum, inquirentes¹³ de quali metallo¹⁴ seu lapide Cæsar vellet suum monumentum fieri, quasi diceret, “Corruptibilis es, “pie regnum dispone.” *Hugutio, capitulo Clarus*. Quando Romani bellum¹⁵ indicere volebant, accedebat aliquis

¹ nimis after gloria, B.

² etiam] om. B.

³ cuicumque, B.E.

⁴ Nothissilitos, A.; Nothiselites, B.; Nothisselitos, C.D.; Nichoeselitos, E.

⁵ C.D. thus: *Hoc autem duplici fiebat de causa, ne videlicet triumphans sui ipsius oblivisceretur, et ut daretur spes cuicumque probo similem honorem consequendi.*

⁶ illo, B.

⁷ licuit after populo, B.

⁸ triumphanti, C.D.

⁹ Cæsari aliquotiens sic, added in C.D.

¹⁰ multa dicebantur convitia, C.D.

¹¹ absque ulla, C.D.

¹² § . . . *Eleemosinarii*] om. C.D. which have, in place of it, *Valerius*. The text is correct. See Jac. de Vorag. *Leg. Aur.* c. 27. (p. 130. ed. Lips. 1850.)

¹³ dicentes, C.

¹⁴ seu marmore jubet vestra dominatio monumentum fieri, C.D.

¹⁵ cuiquam provinciæ, C.D.

his chare, and smote hym all wey in pe nekke; and pat for tweye skilles; pat oon was, for he schulde nouȝt be proude of pat greet worschippe; pat oper skile was, for euerich man schulde hope to come to pat worschippe, ȝif he made hym self worȝy by his dedes. While pe cherle smoot pe victor, he schulde ofte seie to hym in pis manere: Nothisselitos,¹ pat is to menyng, *Knowe pyself*; as who seip, Be nouȝt to proude of pis worschippe. And also pat day euerich man hadde leue to seie to pe victor what euere he wolde, and no blame schulde take.² And so were meny dispitous worde³ i-seide to Iulius Cesar [and he took perof no maner wreche. On seide to Iulius Cesar]⁴ at suche⁵ a tyme: "Salue, calue;" pat is, "*Hail, ballard*;" and anoper seide: "Heile, kyng and quene." R. Loke wip ynne Iulius Cesar. *In vita Iohannis Eleemosynarii*. Whan pe emperoures of Rome were i-crowned, come⁶ to hem craftes men pat made tombes, and axed⁷ of hem of what manere stoon oper metal pey schulde make her tombes; as who seip, "ȝow schalt deye;"⁸ gouerne myldeliche ȝy peple." *Hugutio, capit. Clarus*. When pe Romaynes wolde werry in eny lond, schulde oon goo to pe endes of pat lond and clere-

TREVISA.

dicion was putte, whiche scholde bobbe besily the victor, MS. HARL. and that for two causes. Oon was, That pe victor scholde 2261. not be ouer prowde of suche glory; an other was, And also in token that euery man myȝhte comme to the same honor if his manhode extendede labor to that merite. And the seruante bobbenge hym seyde ofte tymes, "Knowe thy selfe;" as if he scholde saye, "Be not prowde of this victory." In f. 40 b. whiche day hyt was lawefulle to euery man and woman to saye to pe victor after their pleasure with owte eny payne. Of somme men hit was saide, "Haile, ballede man;" of somme, "Hayle, kyng." R. Beholde in this processe how thei seyde to Iulius Cesar. *In vita Iohannis Eleemosynarii*. When emperoures were crownede, makers of graves come to theyme inquirenge of what metalle he wolde his berialle to be made, as if he scholde say, "Thow arte corruptible, dispose the empire mekely." *Hugutio, capit. Clarus*. When the Romanes intendede to ȝiffe batelle to eny cuntre, oon of theyme scholde goe to the costes of their enemyes and

¹ So MS. and a.; *Notho solitos*, Cx.² *sholde he take therefore*, Cx.³ *wordes*, Cx.⁴ The words in brackets added from a. and Cx.⁵ *siche*, Cx.⁶ *sholde come*, Cx.⁷ *are*, Cx.⁸ *deye*] Added from Cx.

ad fines hostium et clara voce causas belli exponebat. Et talis expositio vocabatur clarigatio.¹ Et tunc hasta defixa in finibus hostium principium pugnae denunciabat. *Isidorus, libro nono decimo, capitulo vicesimo secundo.*² Tempore consulum milites Romani pridie quam pugnarent³ rosea veste⁴ induebantur, quod⁵ fiebat ad celandum sanguinem,⁶ ne viso sanguine⁷ corda militum⁸ trepidarent. Inde et⁹ rosati dicebantur. *Ranulphus.* Nota¹⁰ hic, secundum Papiam et Hugutionem, quod Virgilius poeta vocat gentem Romanam *togatam*, quia veste toga utebantur. Erat autem triplex toga, videlicet, prætextata, palmata, candidata. Prætextata utebantur filii nobilium usque ad tertium decimum ætatis annum, et postmodum toga. Secunda toga utebantur victores. Tertia toga utebantur magistratus in re publica.¹⁰ *Hugutio, capitulo Fastus.* Dies quibus bene contigit Romanis vocabantur fasti, eo quod fas erat¹¹ in illis exercere causas et negotia.¹² Dies vero in¹³ quibus male contingebat illis¹⁴ vocabantur nefasti, quasi non fasti;¹⁵ et illos dies malos colebant,¹⁶ non

¹ quæ quidem expositio clarigatio dicebatur, C.D.

² So A.D., rightly; *lib. nono, E. cap. xxi.*, B.

³ *dimicaturi essent*, C.D.

⁴ *seu purpurea*, added in C.D.

⁵ *hoc autem*, C.D.

⁶ *si forsan vulnerentur*, added in C.D.

⁷ *viso sanguine*] om. B.

⁸ *militum*] om. B.C.D.

⁹ *et*] om. A.B.C. (not D.)

¹⁰ *Ranulphus. Nota . . . publica*] om. A.B.C.D.

¹¹ *esset*, B.C.D.

¹² Transposed, C.D. Partly repeated in B. by error of the scribe.

¹³ *in*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *illis*] om. A.C.D.

¹⁵ *quasi non fasti*] om. C.D.

¹⁶ *et celebrabant*, added in C.D.

liche declare and schewe þe matire and cause of the werre, and þat declaracioun was i-cleped clarigatio.¹ Þanne a spere i-pyzt in þe ende of þe londe warned þat þe Romayns wolde werre. *Isidorus, libro nono decimo, cap. vicesimo secundo.* While consuls ruled Rome, þe knyžtes of Rome schulde were rede cloyes þe day to fore þat þey schulde fize. Þat was i-do for þey schulde not knowe and be abashed, whan þey say þe reed blood renne on hir cloyes; and suche knyžtes were i-cleped Rosati, as it were i-cloped in roses. B. Take hede þat² Papy seith, Virgil clepeþ the Romayns togati; þat beþ men i-cloped in gownes. Þre manere gownes þey vsede and were i-hote, Pretextata,³ Palmata, Candidata. Þe firste manere gowne, Pretextata, gentil men⁴ children vsede for to þey were⁵ fouretene þere olde; þe secounde manere, Palmata, vsede victoris for here noble dedes; þe þridde manere gowne, Candidata, vsed lordes and maistres⁶ of þe lawe. *Hugutio, cap. Fastus.* Þe dayes þat þe Romayns wel spedde heet fasti, þat is, *leful*, for it was⁷ leful to hem pylk⁸ dayes to vse dyuers doynge and dedes. Dayes⁹ þat þe Romaynes mysspedde were i-hote nefasti, as it were *nouzt leful*, and [þey] byhelde¹⁰ pilke dayes and wrouzt nouzt pilke dayes,¹¹ but nouzt for loue and¹² deuocioun, but

TREVISA.

expresse with a clere voice the causes of batelle, and suche an expression was callede a clarigacion. Then the spere of the messengere defixede in to the erthe schewede a pre-nosticacion and as a begynnenge of fizhte. *Isidorus, libro nono decimo, capitulo vicesimo secundo.* What tyme the consules were reignenge in Rome the knyžhtes of the Romanes [wente]¹³ in clothege of redde in the day a fore they scholde fize, that theire hertes scholde not be in fray or feere to beholde bloode. Wherefore the Romanes were callede Rosati, as clothe in redde. *Hugutio, capitulo Fastus.* The dayes in whom the Romans hade victory and spedde welle were callede fasti, in so moche that hit was lawefulle to theyme in those daies to exercise theire causes and erneddes. And the dayes in whom hit happede ylle to theyme were callede nefasti, in whom thei worschippede ylle thynges, not for cause of deuocion or of luffe but

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ clarigacion, Cx.² what, Cx.³ Pretaxata, MS. and Cx.⁴ gentilmens, Cx.⁵ for to were of xiiij., Cx.⁶ maystres rulers, Cx.⁷ Four words preceding wanting in MS.⁸ So Cx.; bat, MS.⁹ þat dayes, a.; the dayes, Cx.¹⁰ and they heelde, Cx.¹¹ pilke dayes] om. Cx.¹² and] ne, Cx.¹³ This or some similar word is omitted.

causa devotionis et amoris sed timore¹ infortunii. *Hugutio, capitulo Quinque.*² Unde et quinquatria dicuntur illi³ quinque atri dies, sive festum illorum dierum quos Romani sustinuerunt⁴ obsessi a Gallis et ab Hannibale; quibus diebus nullus Romanus audebat egredi urbem.⁵ *Hugutio, capitulo Classis.* Cum instituisset Romulus⁶ rem publicam, divisit populum in duas partes, majores scilicet⁷ et minores, et utramque partem vocavit classem a quibusdam classicis, id est, sonis vel signis, quæ⁸ inter se distincta habebant. Unde et⁹ nobiles dicebantur prima classis, in quorum honorem instituit mensem Maium,¹⁰ id est, Majorum. Inferiores dicebantur secunda classis, in quorum honorem instituit mensem¹⁰ Junium, quasi Juniorum. Postmodum Romani divisi sunt¹¹ in quatuor partes, in quarum prima¹² erant consules, dictatores, qui¹³ summos tenebant¹⁴ honores. In secunda classi erant¹⁵ tribuni, et qui minores tenebant¹⁶ dignitates. In tertia classe fuerant¹⁷ liberi, in quarta servi.

¹ *consimilis*, added in C.D.

² 5, C. The versions have the same error.

³ *illi*] om. B.D.

⁴ *sustinuerunt Romani*, A.B.

⁵ *ausus fuit*, A.; *urbem egredi*, A.B. The sentence abbreviated and clauses transposed in C.D.

⁶ Transposed in A.C.D.

⁷ *scilicet*] om. A.

⁸ *per quem*, C. (not D.)

⁹ *distincta erat*. (sic.) *Nobiles*,

C.D. The readings of A. are blundered in the four lines following.

¹⁰ *Maium . . . mensem*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *dividebantur*, C.D.

¹² *In prima classe erant*, C.D.

¹³ *qui*] *et qui*, A.D.

¹⁴ *habebant*, C.D.

¹⁵ *erant*] om. A.B.C.D.

¹⁶ *habebant*, C.

¹⁷ *classe fuerant*] om. B.C.D.; *fuerant* only omitted in A.

for drede of euel happes. *Hugutio, cap. quinto.* Þe feste of pilke dayes is i-cleped *Quinquatria*, þat is, þe fyue bl[a]k¹ dayes, for þe sorwe and þe² bitternesse þat þe Romayns mysspedde³ whan þe Frensche men and Hannibal⁴ bysegged hem all aboute. For þan no Romayn dorste ones goo out of towne.⁵ *Hugutio, cap. Classis.* Whan Romulus hadde ordeyned for the comoun profiȝt, he departed atwynne⁶ þe grete and þe mene, and cleped eiper partie *Classis*,⁷ for certeyne noyse and signes þat þey were by departed, þat we[re] i-cleped *classica*. And so þe gentil⁸ men and noble were i-cleped first þe firste *classis*. In worschippe of hem⁹ he ordeyned a monthe and cleped hym *Maius*, þat is, þe monpe of þe grete men. Þe mene¹⁰ men were i-cleped þe secunde *classis*, and in worschipe of hem he ordeyned a monpe, and cleped hym *Iunius*, þat is, þe monpe of ȝonge¹¹ men. Afterward þe Romaynes were departed in foure parties. In þe firste partie were consuls and doctoures; in þe secunde *classis* were tribuni and men of lasse dignite; in þe pridde were fre men; and in þe fourpe

TREVISA.

for drede of infortuny. *Hugutio, capitulo quinto.* Of whom *MS. HARL.* *quinquatria* were namede v. blacke daies, or the feste of those daies in whom the Romanes, besegede of Frenche men and of Hannibal,⁴ susteynede mony thynges, in whiche dayes noo Roman hade audacite to go furthe of that cite. *Hugutio, capitulo Classis.* When Romulus hade institute the commune vtilite he diuidede the peple in to tweyne parties, into the moore nowble men and lesse nowble, callenge either parte of theyme *classis* of sowndes and signes whom thei hade distincte amonge theyme selfe. Wherefore the nowble men were callede *Prima Classis*, the firste companye. In the honor of whom he ordeynede the monethe of Maij, that is, of grete men. The other inferior parte was callede the secunde companye, in the honor of whom he ordeynede the monethe of Iunius, that is to saye, of yonger men. Afterwarde the Romanes were diuidede in to iiij. partes. In the firste parte of whom were consules and men of grete honor. In the secunde parte were tribunes and men of lesse dignite. In the thrydde parte free men; and in

2261.

Menses
Maii et
Junii in-
stituuntur.¹ black, Cx.; blake, a.² þe] om. a. and Cx.³ mysspedde] had, Cx.⁴ Hanybal or Hanibal, MSS. and Cx.⁵ the toun, Cx.⁶ a sondre, Cx.⁷ Cx. has large omissions here.⁸ jantil, a.⁹ MS. repeats in worschippe after hem.¹⁰ So a. and Cx.; merie, MS.¹¹ ȝongere, a. and Cx.

*Hugutio, capitulo Calon.*¹ Consuetum fuit apud Romanos² ut in³ quolibet mense nundinas celebrarent, quæ inciperent⁴ prima die nonarum et durarent⁵ usque ad primum diem Iduum. Idus namque idem est quod divisio, quia tunc dividebantur a nundinis; verum⁶ quia venturi⁷ ad nundinas ignorabant frequenter principia⁸ mensium, ideo semper prima die mensis (quæ vocabatur pluraliter kalendæ a *calo-las*,⁹ quod est *vocare*,) ascendebat præco turrim et totiens clamabat *Calo*,¹⁰ (id est, Voco vos ad nundinas,) quot restabant dies usque¹¹ ad inceptionem nundinarum; ¹² ut, si in quarto die inciperent nundinæ, quater dicebat *Calo*. Inde est quod aliquis mensis in¹³ kalendario habet tantum¹⁴ quatuor nonas, aliquis mensis¹⁵ sex nonas. Quod ideo fiebat ut latrones insidiantes mercatoribus in silvis absconsi¹⁶ nescirent, quando forum inciperet. *Hugutio, capitulo Mereor.* Milites¹⁷ Romani¹⁸ post sexagesimum ætatis¹⁹ annum non cogeantur militare, sed dabatur illis²⁰

¹ *cason*, B. The text is correct. Hugut. MS. Cambr. Univ. Libr. has: *Calon* Græce: Latine *lignum*: soon after which follows Higden's extract.

² *Romanis*, C.D.

³ *in*] om. C.D.; *in qualibet*, A. Similar errors of gender occur elsewhere, and are not always recorded.

⁴ *incipiebant*, B.C.D. (not A.)

⁵ *durabant*, A.B.C.D.

⁶ *et*, C.D.; *at*, A.B.

⁷ *venientes*, B.

⁸ *principium mensis*, A.B.C.D., which last have other very slight variations, just below.

⁹ *calo, calas*, C.D.

¹⁰ *Calo*, badly repeated in B.C.D.; *calo-las*, A., which is worse.

¹¹ *usque*] om. C.

¹² *fori*, A.B.C.D.

¹³ *sex nonas habet*, C.D., omitting the rest.

¹⁴ *tantum habet*, B.

¹⁵ *mensis*] vero, B.

¹⁶ *absconditi*, C.; *latitantes*, D.

¹⁷ *quondam*, added in A.B.C.D.

¹⁸ *Romani*] om. A.

¹⁹ *ætatis*] om. A.B.C.

²⁰ *tunc eis*, C.; *eis tunc*, D.

were bonde men. Tribunus is he pat fongep¹ tribute, and payep knyȝtes, and a ledere² of a powsand knyȝtes hatte tribunus. *Hugutio, cap. Calen.* Þe Romayns vsed somtyme in eueriche monþe to make a faire, and þe faire bygan þe firste day of þe Nonis,³ and durede to þe firste day of Idus. Idus is to menyng⁴ delynge and departyng; for þan þe feire was departed. Also for þe begynnynge of the monthe was ofte tyme vnknewe of⁵ marchaundes and to chapmen, perfore the firste day of þe monþe pat⁶ hatte *Kalende*, of *calo*, *calas*, pat is, to clepe and crie. A cryour schulde stonde vppon a toure, and as meny dayes as were from pat day to þe bygynnynge of the feire, he schulde crie, "Calo:" perfore it is pat som⁷ monþe in þe kalendere hap but foure Nonas, and som hap sixe. And pat was i-doo, for peffes (pat were⁸ i-hud⁹ in woodes for to aspye chapmen) schulde not knowe¹⁰ whan þe faire schulde bygnne. *Hugutio, cap. Mereor.* Som tyme knyȝtes after þey were sixty wynter¹¹ olde were noȝt compelled forto do deedes of armes; but me¹² ȝaf hem felde oper townes oper somewhat

TREVISIA.

the iiijthe parte seruauntes. *Hugutio, capitulo Calen.* The Romanes vsede to have feires in euery monethe whiche began in the firste day of Nones durenge vn to the firste day of the Idus. Idus is nouȝte elles but a diuision; for then men were diuidede from the feires. And for cause men commenge to the feires were ignoraunte ofte tymes of the begynnenge of the monethe, therfore a bydelle, or the crier of the cite ascendede in to a towre in to the markethe, and seyde so many tymes, "Calo, calo," (that is to seye, "y calle yow to the feires,") as were dayes vn to the begynnenge of hit; as and if the feires scholde begynne in the iiijthe day, he scholde saye iiij. tymes calo. Therefore hit is that somme monethe in the calendary hathe iiij. nones oonly; somme monethe vj., whiche was ordeynede for this cause that thefes ȝiffenge wacches to marchauntes lyngge priuely in woodes scholde not knowe when the feires scholde begynne. *Hugutio, capitulo Mereor.* Somme tyme knyȝhtes in Rome were not constreynede to exercise the actes of cheuallery after the age of lx. yere; but lyvelode was ȝiffen

MS. HARL.

2261.

¹ fangeth, a.; receyuet, Cx., as usual.

² Cx. adda, or capitain.

³ Nonas, Cx.

⁴ is as moche to saye as, Cx.

⁵ to, a., Cx.; the latter omits of the monthe, just above.

⁶ þet, Cx.

⁷ in somme, Cx. (typ. error.)

⁸ So a. and Cx.; we, MS.

⁹ hidde, Cx.

¹⁰ i-knowe, MS. (not Cx.)

¹¹ yere, Cx.

¹² men, Cx.

villa vel ager vel aliquid¹ de re publica unde viverent, et tunc vocabatur miles emeritus,² vel emeritæ militiæ,³ quasi positus extra meritum militiæ.^{4 5} *Ranulphus*.⁶ Inde quædam taberna trans Tiberim vocabatur⁷ Emeritoria, quia ibi milites emeriti⁸ symbola sua expendebant.⁹ *Hugutio*,¹⁰ *capitulo Nea*.¹¹ Consuetum fuit apud Romanos¹² ut usque ad horam nonam cives de commodo rei publicæ tractarent,¹³ nec alteri delectationi vacarent; unde et meretrices Romanæ vocabantur nonariæ, quia ante horam nonam non licuit eis egredi prostibula sua, ne forte¹⁴ impedirent juvenes ab utilitate rei publicæ. *Hugutio*, *capitulo Nepa*.¹⁵ Olim pueri Romani non tradebantur patribus propriis ad erudiendum seu nutriendum, quia præsumebatur quod præ nimia affectione eos non verberarent;¹⁶ nec etiam tradebantur magistris omnino ignotis,¹⁶ eo quod extra-

¹ *quippiam*, added in C.D.

² *dicebantur milites emeriti*, C.D.

³ *vel emeritæ militiæ*] om. C.D.

⁴ Transposed in A.B.C.D.

⁵ *quia nil postea ex militia merebantur*, added in C.D.

⁶ *Ranulphus*] om. C. (not D.)

⁷ *dicebatur*, A.; *videtur dici*, D.

⁸ *emeriti*] om. B.

⁹ So A.B.; transposed in E.; slightly altered in C.D.

¹⁰ *Hugutio . . . Nepa*] om. C. (not D.)

¹¹ *Stea*, A.B.; *Sta*, D. The text is correct. Hugutio's section begins: *Nea Græci dicunt novem*;

soon after which follows Higden's extract.

¹² *apud Romanos*] om. A.B.

¹³ *disputarent*, A.B.; *tractare et disputare*, D. (omitting *ut*), which proceeds thus: *nec licebat quenquam ante illam horam delectationibus vacare*; unde et, &c.

¹⁴ *forsan*, D.

¹⁵ *dilectione nollent filios verberare*, C.D. (with other very slight alterations.) The readings of C.D. agree more nearly with Hugutio's text (cap. *Nepa*).

¹⁶ *omnino extraneis magistris*, C.D.; *extraneis*, A.B.

elles of ¹ þe comyn tresorie, wherby þei schulde leue. And þan suche a knyȝt was i-cleped *Emeritus* (oþer Emeryte) *militie*, as it were a knyȝt i-sett out of þe myddel ² dedes of chyualrie. *R.* Þerfore Achanarii ³ þat is by-ȝonde Tyber heet Emeritoria; for ⁴ knyȝtes spende ⁵ þare what þey hadde raper ⁶ i-gadered and i-wonne. *Hugutio, cap. Sita.* ⁷ Hit was vsage in Rome þat þe citezeyns schulde doo nouȝt ⁸ elles to fore none but despute of þe comyn profit: ⁹ þerfore comyn wommen of Rome were i-cleped *Nonarie*, for þey schulde nouȝt to fore none goon oute of ¹⁰ here comoun place, leste þey schulde lette ȝonge men from the comyn profiȝte. *Hugutio, cap. Nepa.* Somtyme in Rome fader and moder schulde nouȝt norische and teche hire owne children; for me supposed ¹¹ þat he ¹² wolde be to tendre of hem ¹³ and nouȝt chast ¹⁴ hem and bete hem to sore. ¹⁵ [Neyther maystres that were al straunge and out of the kynne shold teche childeren of Rome, lest they wold

TREVISA.

to theyme, or somme goodes of thynges commune whereby thei myȝhte lyffe, and then the knyȝhte was callede *Emeritus*, as putte with owte the merite of cheuallery. *R.* Wherefore a tauerne ouer Tiber was callede Emeritoria, where knyȝhtes put with owte merite of cheuallery spende their goodes. *Hugutio, capitulo Scea.* Also a consuetude was amonge Romanes that the citesynnes scholde dispute of the commune profette vn tylle none: and not attende to eny other delectacion. Wherefore the harlottes at Rome were callede *nonaria*, for hit was not lawefulle to theyme to passe their places, leste they scholde lette yonge men from the commune vtilite. *Hugutio, capitulo Nepa.* Somme tyme children in Rome were not taken to their faders to lerne or to be noryschede, for hit was presumede that the faders wolde not chastise their children for the grete luffe that they wolde schewe to theyme; neither thei wyllde not their children to be taken to maistres that were not of their kynrede, for a

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ of] So a. and Cx.; for, MS.

² medful, a.; nedeful, Cx.

³ Anatarij, Cx.

⁴ for suche, Cx.

⁵ spende, a.

⁶ to fore gotten, Cx.

⁷ lita, Cx.

⁸ not, Cx.

⁹ profiȝt, a.

¹⁰ of] to, Cx.

¹¹ for it was supposed, Cx.

¹² they, Cx.

¹³ of hem] om. Cx.

¹⁴ chastyse, Cx. (omitting hem.)

¹⁵ to sore] om. Cx.

neus parum curat de extraneo.¹ Sed tradebantur patris,² qui non nimis propinqui nec nimis remoti erant.³ *Hugutio, capitulo Proles.* Erant in urbe proletarii, qui causa gignendæ prolis⁴ semper in urbe morabantur, nec exire ad arma cogebantur.⁵ *Ranulphus.* Tempore tamen Hannibalis cogebantur tales exire ad arma propter militum penuriam.⁶ *Valerius, libro secundo.*⁷ Ab urbe condita usque ad centesimum sexagesimum annum divortium nullum⁸ inter conjuges fuerat.⁹ Primus tamen Carbilus Spurius¹⁰ uxorem suam¹¹ duntaxat¹² causa sterilitatis dimisit; qui, quamvis ratione motus videretur, reprehensione tamen non caruit, quia cupiditatem liberorum fidei conjugali præposuit. *Isidorus,*¹³ *libro sexto.* Quamvis Græci primum cum stylis ferreis in cera scripserunt, Romani tamen statuerunt¹⁴ ut nullus stylo ferreo sed tantum¹⁵ osseo scriberet. *Pol.,*¹⁶ *libro secundo.* Siquis¹⁷ ab initio urbis¹⁸ con-

¹ quia extranei parum curant de extraneis, C.D.

² C.D. add *et avunculis.*

³ Slightly altered in C.D. For non A. has nec.

⁴ gignendorum liberorum, C.B.

⁵ Transposed in A.B.C.D.

⁶ coacti sunt ad bellum exire, C.D.; coacti sunt exire propter penuriam militum, A.B.

⁷ primo, B.; quarto, D. The text is correct. See Val. Max., lib. ii. c. 1. § 4.

⁸ nullum divortium, B.

⁹ fuit, A.; virum et mulierem fuit, C.D. (with other very slight alterations.)

¹⁰ autem Spurius Carbilus, C.D., more correctly.

¹¹ suam] om. A.B.

¹² duntaxat] om. C.D. (with slight alterations just afterwards); transposed in A.B.

¹³ Etymologia, added in C.D.

¹⁴ interdixerunt, C.D. (with slight alterations just before.)

¹⁵ tantum] om. C.D.

¹⁶ So A.B.; Plinius, C.D.; Valerius, E. The true reference is to Johan. Sarisb. Polycrat., lib. ii. c. 15.

¹⁷ Si qui, C.D.

¹⁸ urbis totam, A.

recche to lytel of the childeren, and bete hem to sore].¹ TREVISA.
 Perfore maistres schulde teche þe children of Rome þat
 were nouȝt to nyȝ, oper² to fer of hire own kin. *Hugutio*,
cap. Proles. Þere were som tyme men³ in Rome þat serued
 of nouȝt elles but for to gete⁴ children and dwelle⁵ all
 wey in þe citee, and were nouȝt compelled to doo dedes
 of armes. And suche men were i-cleped *proletarii*, þat is
 geteris⁶ of children. B.⁷ Neuerþeles in Hannibals tyme
 þey were i-constreyned for to goo out of⁸ skarsnesse of
 knyȝtes. *Valerie, libro secundo.* An hundred ȝere and
 sixti after þat þe citee was i-buld was no deuors i-made
 bytwene a man and his wyf. Neuerþeles Carbilius, a
 bastard, was þe firste þat lifte⁹ his wif, onliche for þe
 womman was bareyne. Þei he semed i-meued of resoun, ȝit
 he was nouȝt al blameles: for he putte couetise of children
 to fore þe fey¹⁰ of wedlock. *Isidorus, libro sexto.* Þey þe
 Grees write first yn wex wip poynteles of yren, the Ro-
 mayns ordeyned þat no man schulde write wip poynteles
 of yren but wip poyntels of boon. *Pol., libro secundo.*
 Who þat wil¹¹ loke bookes of stories among all men þat

straungeour ȝiffe the litelle attendaunce of an other straun- MS. HARL.
 geour; but thei were of theire kynne, as vncles to theyme, 2261.
 whiche were not ouer nye to theyme neiper ouer ferre f. 41 b.
 from theyme. *Hugutio, capitulo Proles.* There were men
 in the cite of Rome whiche taryede in the cite for multi-
 plicacion of childer, and were not coacte to goe furthe to
 batelles. B. Neuerthelesse they were coacte in the tyme of
 Hannibal for pennury of knyȝhtes. *Valerius, libro secundo.*
 From the cite made unto clx. yere folowenge was movede
 noo diuorce. The firste man inducenge hit was callede
 Carbilius,¹² a bastarde, whiche departede from his wife be
 cause that sche hade not childer, whiche hade schame and
 reprove ynowe for hit, whiche sette before the luffe of
 childre to the luffe of matrimony. *Isidorus, libro sexto.*
 Thauȝhe the Grekes did wryte firste in wexes with poyntelles,
 neuerthelesse the Romanes ordeynede that noo man scholde
 wryte with an instrument of irne, but made of boon. *Poli-
 cronicon,*¹³ *libro secundo.* If a man reuolve in his mynde

¹ The sentence in brackets added from Cx., whose orthography is retained. It is omitted in a.

² *noper*, a.; *ne*, Cx.

³ *men*] om. Cx.

⁴ So a. and Cx.; *geten*, MS.

⁵ *dwellyd*, Cx.

⁶ *geters*, a., Cx.

⁷ B.] Added from Cx.

⁸ *for*, a.

⁹ *lefte*, a., Cx.

¹⁰ *feyth*, Cx.

¹¹ *wole*, a.

¹² *Scarbilius*, Harl. MS.

¹³ So written at length in Harl. MS., for *Polycraticon*; the same confusion occurs in the title of Higden's work.

ditæ totam revolvat historiam, inveniet¹ Romanos præ cæteris gentibus ambitione et avaritia laborasse, seditionibus et plagis totum orbem concussisse,² in tantum ut vix quisquam principum suorum ad exitum vitæ natura ducente pervenerit.³ Præterea Romanus omnis aut adulatione corrumpit aut corrumpitur.⁴ Certe si non verbis possunt⁵ tamen fraudulentis muneribus expugnari, et quos⁶ munuscula non dejiciunt honoribus certe captivantur. *Pol., libro quinto, capitulo undecimo.* Italiæ urbes, dum pacem diligunt, justitiam colunt, et a perjuriis abstinere, gaudio⁸ perfruuntur; cum vero prolabantur ad fraudes et schismata, statim vel fastum Romanorum⁹ vel furorem Teutonicorum¹⁰ aliudve Domini flagellum persentiunt, donec per poenitentiam conterantur. Merita namque¹¹ populi illius aut¹² evacuant omnem principatum, aut principem faciunt mitiorem.

¹ *inveniet* after *laborasse*, B.; before it, A.D.

² *convixisse*, B.

³ So A.B.; *pervenit*, E.; slightly transposed in C.

⁴ Verbs transposed in C.D.

⁵ *possint*, B.; *tamen* omitted in A.

⁶ *et quos*] *ex quo*, B.

⁷ *Item*, added in C.D. The true reference is to the *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury, lib. iv. c. 11.

⁸ *gl'a* (*gloria*), C.; *gladio*, D. (for *gaudio*?)

⁹ *statum Romanum*, C.; *fastum Romanum*, D.

¹⁰ *Theutonicum*, C.; *Teutonicum*, D.

¹¹ *nam*, A.

¹² *illius aut*] *juste vel*, C.; *illius vel*, D.

were sippe Rome was first sette,¹ he schal fynde pat pe Romayns were most couetous and proude, he schal fynde also pat pe maistrie² pat pey hadde in pe world aboute pey gete³ it by punyschyng of peple⁴ by false wiles and by gile so fer forp pat vnnepe eny of hir princes leuede his lyf kyndeliche to pe⁵ ende. Perfore eueryche Romayn ouercomep⁶ oper is ouercome wip flatteryng and wip⁷ faire wordes; and 3if wordes faillep, 3iftes⁸ schal hym awelde; 3if 3iftes faillep, worschip makep hym prisoner. *Pol., libro septimo, capitulo undecimo.* While pe citees of Italia louep pees and worschipp⁹ ri3twisnesse and leueth false opes, pan pey hauep¹⁰ likyng and welpe in here owne lond. But whan pey 3euep¹¹ hem to falshede and to stryf, anon pe pride of¹² Romayns, oper pe woodnesse of Duches¹³ men, oper som oper wrecche of God all my3ti¹⁴ fallep vppon hem for to pey¹⁵ amende her lyf¹⁶ by penaunce of¹⁷ contricioun. For trespas of pat peple puttep away al principalte, oper makep here prynce more mylde.

TREVISA.

alle the storrye from the begynnege of Rome, he schal fynde the Romanes and other peple to have laborede in ambicion and auarice, in so moche in that noo prince of pe empire lyvede vnnethe after the naturalle course of his life, but thei were destroyede by f3hte. *Policronicon, libro septimo, capitulo septuagesimo primo.*¹⁸ While the men of Italy lyve in peace, thei luffe ry3hteuousenes and absteyne from periury. But when they falle to fraudes and diuision they fele other the pride off the Romanes or cruelnesse of men of Allemeyne, or somme other peyne or punyschenge of God, tyll thei be contrite by penaunce. For other that peple avoide euery principate, other elles thei make the prynce moore meke.

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ made, Cx.
² maistry, a.
³ gate, Cx.
⁴ puple, a.
⁵ his, a., Cx.
⁶ that ouercometh, Cx.
⁷ wip] om. a. (not Cx.)
⁸ yestes, Cx.
⁹ worschepep, a.; worshipped, Cx., more correctly, who has also loued, and leued.

¹⁰ had, Cx.
¹¹ yeue, Cx.
¹² of the, Cx.
¹³ Duche, Cx.
¹⁴ almy3ti, a.
¹⁵ vnto the tyme they, Cx.
¹⁶ her lyf] om. Cx.
¹⁷ of] and, Cx.
¹⁸ The reference given thus at length in Harl. MS.

CAP. XXVI.

*De Germania et ejus partibus.*¹

ISIDORUS tradit quod² Germania proprie dicta habet³ ab ortu ostium Danubii fluminis, ab austro Rhenum fluvium, a septentrione et occasu oceanum. Est autem⁴ duplex Germania; superior,⁵ quæ se extendit ad Alpes juxta⁶ sinum maris mediterranei,⁷ quod Adriaticum dicitur, ubi mare sistitur in Aquileiæ partibus per paludes; alia⁸ Germania, inferior, versus occidentem sistit⁹ circa Rhenum,¹⁰ quæ¹¹ communiter Alemania sive¹² Teutonia¹³ dicitur. Multi namque¹⁴ in utraque Germania sunt populi et provinciæ, utpote Boemia, Westfalia, Bavaria,¹⁵ Thuringia, Suevia, Saxonia, Franconia, Lotharingia,¹⁶ Frisia, Selandia. *Paulus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.*¹⁷ Verum quia septentrionalis¹⁸ plaga quanto ab æstu solis fit¹⁹ remotior, tanto propagandis nutriendisque²⁰ populis salubrior; sicut e contra meridiana plaga²¹ quanto soli vicinior, tanto²²

¹ *Isidorus, libro 19, A.; 9º, B.C.* (not D.) The true reference is to lib. xiv. c. 4.

² *Isidorus . . . quod*] om. B.D.

³ *Germania proprie sumpta ab ortu, C.D.* (with other slight variations.)

⁴ *Et est, C.D.*

⁵ *scilicet, added in A.B.*

⁶ *juxta Alpes usque ad sinum, B.C.D.; and so A., omitting usque.*

⁷ *magni, A.B.*

⁸ *est added in B.*

⁹ *sistitur, C. (not D.)*

¹⁰ *Thenum, C.; Renum, B.*

¹¹ *qui, C.D.*

¹² *seu, B.C.*

¹³ *Teutonica, B.*

¹⁴ *namque*] om. C.; nempe, A.B.

¹⁵ *Gavarria, C.; Bavaria, E.* Some of the names following are written with slight variations in the MSS.

¹⁶ *Lotharingia, MSS.*

¹⁷ *Paulus...quinto*] om. C.; *capitulo quinto*, om. A.B.D. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 1., which is copied almost verbatim as far as *alere sufficiat*.

¹⁸ *etiam added in C. (not D.)*

¹⁹ *est, C. (not D.)*

²⁰ *et nutriendis, C. (not D.)*

²¹ *regio, C.D. (and Paulus.)*

²² *enim after tanto in E.; not in A.B.C.D.*

De Germania et eius prouinciis. Capitulum vicesimum TREVISA.
sextum.

Isid. Eth. quarto decimo. Ysidre¹ seip pat verray Germania hap in pe est side pe mouth of pe ryuer Danubius, in pe south pe Ryne² pat ryuer, and in pe north and in pe west pe see of Ocean. Pere beep tweie londes, eiper hatte Germania; pe ouer Germania³ strecchep by sides Alpes to pat moup and coost of pe grete see pat hatte Adriaticus; pere pe see⁴ is as it were lakes yn pe contrayes of Aquila.⁵ Pe oper Germania is lower, toward pe west about the Reyne,⁶ and is comounliche i-cleped Almania oper Teutonia. In eiper Germania beep many prouinces and londes, pat beep Boemia, Westfalia, Bauarra, Thuringia, Sueuia, Saxonia, Franconia, Lothoringia, Frisia, Selandia. *Paulus, libro primo.* Pe north contrey is fer from pe hete of pe⁷ sonne, and holsom for men to wone⁸ yn, and able to brynge forp children. Perfore it is pat pere is more multiplicacioun and encrease of men and children in pe norp contray pan in pe south, pat is ful nyh pe

Of Allemeyne or Germany and of pe provinces of hit. MS. HARL. 2261.
Capitulum vicesimum sextum. Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro nono.

ISIDORUS rehersethe that Germany, or Allemeyne properly seyde, hathe on the este to hit the durre of the floode callede Danubius, on the sowthe the floode callede Renus, of the northe and the weste the ocean. There be ij. Germanyes; the superior whiche extendethe vn to Alpes to the bosom of the grete see that is callede the see Adriatike. And the inferior Germany, towarde the weste, is abowte the floode callede Renus, whiche is callede comunely Almayne. There be many peple in either Germany, and prouinces, as Aleman-Boemia, Westefalia, Bauarra, Turingea, Sveuia, Saxonia, Franconia, Lothoringia, Frisia, Selandia. *Paulus, libro quinto.* For the northerne plage, in as moch as hit is more removede from hete, in so moche hit is more hollesome for childer to be gendrede and to be noryschede. Hyt is in contrary wise of the plage meridian; for in as moche

¹ *Isidorus, Cx.*

² *ryuer, MS.; Ryn, Cx.*

³ *pe ouer Germania] om. MS.*

⁴ *se, a.*

⁵ *Aquyia, Cx.*

⁶ *Ryne, a., Cx.*

⁷ *hete of pe] om. Cx.*

⁸ *a. adds, and dwelle.*

languoribus obnoxior. Inde fit ut tantæ¹ populorum multitudines arctico² sub axe oriantur, ut non³ immerito omnis illa regio a Tanai⁴ usque ad occiduum,⁵ quamvis⁶ propriis⁷ singula loca vocentur⁸ nominibus, generaliter tamen Germania vocatur, quia tot germinat populos quot vix alere sufficiat. Inde est quod totiens ab ea parte mundi gentes sunt egressæ, aut videlicet sorte emissæ aut non sponte captivatæ, aut⁹ ad cæteras nationes subigendas ultro progressæ, sicut patuit aliquando¹⁰ de Hunis, Gothis, Wandalis, Saxonibus, Wynnulis,¹¹ Longobardis.

De Boemia. Boemia, prima orientalis Germaniæ¹² provincia, habet ab oriente¹³ Moesiam et Alanos, a meridie Danubium et Pannoniam, ab occidente Bavariam et Thuringiam, a septentrionali circio¹⁴ Saxones. Fere undique circumsepta est montibus et silvis; abundat quoque herbis pascualibus et aromaticis,¹⁵ necnon¹⁶ feris et¹⁷ bestiis, inter quas est quoddam animal cornibus et corpore bovi valde persimile,¹⁸ quod lingua Boemica¹⁹ *leoz*²⁰ vocatur; ²¹ suis tamen cornibus²² se non defendit, sed in amplo folliculo quod sub mento gestat²³ aquam colli-

¹ *tantæ*] So A.B.C.D.; *tantum*, E.

² *arcto*, C.D. (*arctoo*, Paulus.)

³ *non*] om. C. (not D.)

⁴ *fluvio* added in C.D.

⁵ *oceanum*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *licet*, C.D.

⁷ *ad* added in C.D.

⁸ *nuncupentur*, C.; *nuncupantur*, D.; *loca vocentur*, B.

⁹ *quod* added in A.C.D.

¹⁰ *quondam*, C.D.; om. A.B.

¹¹ *sive* added in C.D.

¹² *Germania orientalis*, A.B.

¹³ *ortu*, C.D.

¹⁴ So E. *septentrione*. *Circio Saxanes* (sic), A.; *septentrione circio*,

D. Perhaps *septentrione et circio* is the true reading. See Trevisa.

¹⁵ Transposed in B.

¹⁶ *ac*, B.; *nec feris nec*, A., absurdly.

¹⁷ *et*] om. C.

¹⁸ *simile bovi*, C.D.

¹⁹ *Boemetica*, B.

²⁰ So E.D.; *Leor*, C.; *Boez*, B. *Loz*, A. The text is perhaps corrupt. The modern Polish name of the Aueroch (*Bison Europæus*), which appears to be intended, is *Zubr*, or *Subr*. See Penny Cycl., s.v. Ox.

²¹ *dicitur*, C.D.

²² *cum insectatur*, added in C.D.

²³ *gerit*, B.

sonne, and vnholsum and siklewe for men to wonye TREVISA.
 ynne. And so pey eueriche londe and contray haue his
 owne propre name, nopeles¹ al pe contray and lond from
 the ryuer Tanais anon to pe west hatte Germania; for
 he gendrep and bryngeth forth mo² men and children pan
 pey³ may wel susteyne. Perfore hit is pat so ofte gop
 dyuers men out of pat side of pe world ynto oper londes,
 oper⁴ by lot, oper azenst hir wille, oper by here good
 wille for to wynne and⁵ gete opere londes. So dede Gothy,
 Wandaly, Saxones, Wynuly, and Longobardi. Boemya is
 pe firste prouince of pat⁶ ester⁷ Germania, and hap in pe
 est side Mesia⁸ and Alania, in pe soup pe ryuer Danubius
 and Pannonia, in pe west Bauaria and Thuringia,⁹ and in
 pe north and northwest Saxonia, and is i-closed al most
 all¹⁰ aboute wip hilles and wodes, and hap grete¹¹ plente of
 lese and of gras pat¹² smellep ful swete, and of dyuerse
 wylde bestes, among pe whiche is oo¹³ beste, and hatte
 boz in pe langage of Boemia, but he deffendep nouzt hym-
 self with his hornes, but he hap a large ryuel, as it were
 a bagge, vnder pe chynne; peryn he gadereth water and

as hit is more nye to the son, in so moche hit is more nyous MS. HARL.
 to nature. Wherefore alle that region from Thanay unto 2261.
 pe weste, thauzhe euery place be namede by theire propre
 names, generally thei be callede Germany, for that londe
 gendrethe so many peple that hit may vnnethe suffise to
 norysche theyme. That causede so many peple to haue
 goen from hit, as Hunes, Gothes, Wandalynges, Saxones,
 Winuli and Longobardes. Boemia is the firste prouince of
 esturne Germanye, hauenge on the este parte to hit Mesia,⁸
 of the weste Danuby and Pannony, of the meriden Bauarria
 and Thuringia, of the northe weste Saxones, allemoste com-
 passede abowte with hilles and wodes, beyng habundante
 in yerbes and pastures and many wilde bestes. Amonge
 whom is a beste like to an oxe in body and in hornes, whiche
 is callede in their langage loz, whiche defendethe hym not with
 his hornes, but gedrethe water in a grete voide place vnder

¹ *netheles*, Cx.² *moo*, a.³ *it*, Cx.⁴ *oper*] om. Cx., who has or be-
low.⁵ *wynne and*] om. Cx.⁶ *pe*, a., Cx.⁷ *este*, Cx.⁸ *Misia*, MSS. (as usual.)⁹ *Thurynga*, MS., here and be-
low (not so always a. or Cx.)¹⁰ *all*] om. Cx.¹¹ *agreete*, a.¹² So Cx. (*that*); and, MS., a.¹³ o beste, a.; bestes, MS.; one
beeste, Cx.

git,¹ quam currendo multum² calefacit, et super in-
sequentes venatores³ et canes projicit, sicque approxi-
mantes sibi mirabiliter depilat et exurit.⁴

De Thu-
ringia.

Thuringia habet ab ortu Boemiam, ab occidente
Franconiam, a septentrione Westfaliam, ab austro Da-
nubium fluvium.⁵

De Fran-
conia.

Franconia est quasi⁶ media Germaniæ provincia, habet-
que ad ortum⁷ sui⁸ Thuringiam, ad occasum⁹ Sue-
viam, ad aquilonem partem Westfaliæ, ad austrum¹⁰
Bavariam et Danubium.

De Ba-
varia.

Bavaria habet ad ortum¹¹ Danubium,¹² ad occidentem
Sueviam, ad aquilonem Franconiam, ad austrum partem
Danubli et Rhæticam.¹³

De West-
falia.

Westfalia habet ad ortum Saxones,¹⁴ ad occasum
Frisiam, ad aquilonem oceanum, ad austrum partem
Franconiæ et Sueviæ.

De Suevia.

Suevia habet ad ortum sui¹⁵ Bavariam, ad occiden-
tem Rhenum fluvium,¹⁶ ab aquilone¹⁷ partem Franconiæ,
ad austrum Rhæticam et¹⁸ Alpes.

De
Saxonia.

Saxonia habet ab ortu Alanos,¹⁹ ab occasu²⁰ West-
faliam, a septentrione²¹ oceanum, ab austro Thuringiam,
Isidorus,²² libro quarto decimo, Saxonum gens
ad septentrionales fines oceani constituta virtute et

¹ recolligit, A.C.D.

² valde, B.C.D.

³ venatores] Added from B.C.D.

⁴ So A.B.; *depilat atque urit*, C.
D; *depilat et*, om. E.

⁵ *fluvium*] om. A.B.C.D.

⁶ *quædam*, D.

⁷ *ab ortu*, C.D.

⁸ *sui*] om. C.D.

⁹ *ab occasu*, B.C. (not D.)

¹⁰ *ab austro*, C.D.

¹¹ *ab ortu*, C.D.

¹² *Bavaria . . . Danubium*] om. B.

(by error of scribe.) The readings of
A. are blundered through omissions.

¹³ *et Rhæticam*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *ab ortu Saxoniam*, B.

¹⁵ *sui*] om. C.D.

¹⁶ *fluvium*] om. B.C.D.

¹⁷ *ad aquilonem*, C.D.

¹⁸ *Rhæticam et*] om. C.D.

¹⁹ *Slavos*, B.

²⁰ *occidente*, D.

²¹ *septentrionale parte*, B.

²² *Etymol.*, added in C. (not D.)

hetep it in his rennynges schadeng¹ hoot, and prowep it TREVISA.
 vppon hunteres and houndes pat pursewep hym, and scaldep
 of pe heere of hem² and brennep hem ful sore. Thuryngia³
 hap in pe est side Boemia, in pe west Franconia, in pe
 norp Westfalia, and in pe soup pe ryuer Danubius. Fran-
 conia is, as it were, pe myddel prouynce of Germania, and
 hap in pe est side Thuryngia,³ in pe west Sueuia, in pe
 norp a party⁴ of Westfalia, and in pe soup Bauaria and
 pe ryuer Danubius. Bauaria hap in pe est pe ryuer Da-
 nubius⁵ and Retica.⁶ Westfalia hap in pe est side Saxonia,
 in pe west Frisia, in pe norp ocean, in pe soup a party of
 Fraunce⁷ and of Sueuia. Sueuia hap in pe est Bauaria, in
 pe west pe ryuere pat hatte pe Ryne, in pe north a party
 of Franconia, and in pe south Retica and Alpes. Saxonia
 hap in pe est Alania, yn pe west Westfalia, in pe north
 ocean, and in pe soup Thuringia.⁸ *Isidorus, libro quarto*
decimo. Men of Saxonia wonep toward pe norp endes
 of ocean, and beep bope lizter⁹ and strengre pan oper

his chynne, whiche makenge the water hoot, in rennenge MS. HARL.
 castethe¹⁰ hyt on hunters and on dogges folowenge hit, 2261.
 hurtenge theyme soore with that water. Thuringia hathe on
 the este to hit Boemia, on the weste Franconia, on the
 northe Westefalia, on the sowthe Danubius. Franconia is
 as the myddelle prouynce of Germaine, hauenge on the este
 to hit Thuringia, at the weste Sweuia, at the northe parte
 of Westefalia, at the sowthe Bauarria and Danubius.
 Bauarria hathe on the este to hit Danubius, at the weste
 Sweuia, at the northe Franconia, at the sowthe parte of
 Danuby and Rethica. Westefalia hathe on the este to hit
 Saxones, at the weste Frisia, at the northe the ocean, and
 at the sowthe parte of Franconia and of Sueuia. Sueuia
 hathe at the este of hit Bauarria, at the weste Renum, at
 the northe parte of Franconia, at the sowthe Rethica and
 Alpes. Saxonia hathe on the weste to hit Westfalia, on
 the northe the ocean, on pe sowthe Thuringia. *Isidorus,*
libro quarto decimo. The peple of Saxones whiche be
 moore nowble in vertu and agilite not oonly on londe, but f. 42. b.

¹ *scald*, a; *skalding*, Ox., which
 is probably alone right.

² So Cx.; *hym*, MS.

³ *Thurynga*, MS., here and below
 (not so always a. or Cx.).

⁴ So Cx.; *of a party*, MS. and a.

⁵ Eight words preceding wanting
 in MS.

⁶ So a. and Cx.; *Ratica*, MS.;
Rethica below.

⁷ Some words repeated in MS.

⁸ Cx. omits the last clause of the
 foregoing, and much of the following
 sentence.

⁹ *ben more lighter*, Cx.

¹⁰ *castetethe*, Harl. MS.

agilitate præstantior quam cæteri piratæ, non solum per terras, sed etiam per maria, suis hostibus est infesta; unde et Saxones, quasi saxeï et duri ac¹ importabiles sunt vocati;² in quorum montanis³ omnia pene metallorum genera excepto stanno⁴ sunt effossa.⁵ Germania⁶ etiam fontes habet⁷ salsos, ex quibus sal albissimum conficitur, et⁸ juxta illum⁹ montem ubi cuprum effoditur est mons magnus, cujus lapides redolent sicut violæ.¹⁰ Et juxta cenobium Sancti Michaelis invenitur marmor pulcherrimum.⁶ *Beda, libro quarto, cap. vicesimo quinto.*¹¹ Antiqui Saxones ducem non habent,¹² sed satrapas plurimos genti suæ præpositos, qui ingruente belli articulo¹³ mittunt æqualiter sortes, et¹⁴ quemcunque¹⁵ sors ostenderit¹⁶ hunc tempore belli¹⁷ ducem sequuntur,¹⁸ peractoque bello rursus æqualis potestatis omnes satrapæ fiunt.¹⁹

De Frisia. Frisia,²⁰ secundum Plinium, est²¹ regio super littus²² occidentalis oceani sita; ab austro incipit a²³ Rheno

¹ *saxeï duri et*, C.D. (with other very slight variations above); *et*, A.B.

² *dicti sunt*, C.D.

³ *montana*, B.

⁴ *stagnò*, MSS.

⁵ *effossa*] om. E.; *effodiuntur*, C.D.; *genera*, om. B.

⁶ *Germania . . . pulcherrimum*, om. C.D.

⁷ *habet fontes*, B.

⁸ *et*] om. A.B.

⁹ *illum*] om. A.B.

¹⁰ *sicut violæ*] So A.B.; *violæ sicut*, E.

¹¹ The true reference is to lib. v. c. 10. D. has no reference.

¹² *non habent regem*, A.B.C. (and Bede.)

¹³ *bello*, B.

¹⁴ *ut*, C. (not D.)

¹⁵ *cuiuscunque*, B.

¹⁶ *evenerit*, B.

¹⁷ *omnes*, added in C.D., and in Bede's text.

¹⁸ *sequuntur*, A.

¹⁹ *sunt omnes satrapæ*, B.

²⁰ *Plinius* prefixed in A.B.; *Plinius, libro 5º*, C. No reference in D., which has *Frigia*.

²¹ *secundum Plinium est*] om. B. C.D.

²² *sub litus*, B.

²³ *a*] om. A.

skýmours¹ of pe see, and purseweþ her enemyes ful hard boþe by water and by lond, and hatte Saxones of saxum,² þat is, a *stoon*, for þey beþ hard as stones and vnesy to fare wip. In pe hulle of Saxonia is wel nyȝ all manere metal i-digged, outakyn³ tyn. In Germania beþ salt welles, of pe whiche wellis is salt i-made as white⁴ as any⁵ snowe. Fast by pe⁶ hille þat coper is i-digged ynne is a greet hille of stones; of þat hille [the stones]⁷ smelleþ swete as violet. Also faste by pe mynystre⁸ of Seint Michel is marbil i-founde pe fairest þat may be. *Beda, libro [quinto], capitulo vicesimo quinto*. Pe olde Saxones haue no kyng, but meny knyȝtes of here owne ruleþ hem;⁹ but in tyme of bataille þei castep lott whiche of here knyȝtes schal be ledere and cheveteyn, and folweþ him þat is so i-chose by lott¹⁰ as cheef lorde and maister durynge pe bataille; but whan pe bataille¹¹ is i-doo, þan schal he be as he was raper,¹² he and opere knyȝtes al i-liche¹³ greet of power and of myȝt. *Plinius, libro quinto*. Frisia is a lond vppon pe clyue¹⁴ of pe west ocean, and bygynnep

TREVISIA.

also on the see, is moche contrarious to there enemyes. *MS. HARL. 2261.* Wherefore thei be callede Saxones, as importable and harde as a ston. In the hilles or mownteynes of whom allemoste alle kyndes of metalles be founde, tynne excepte. Also Germayne hathe salte welles, of whom white salte is made. Also nye to the hille where copur is geten is a grete hille, the stones of whom smelle lyke violetes. Also feire marbole is founde in the hille nye to the Abbay of Seynte Michael. *Beda, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo quinto*. The olde Saxones vsede not a kyng but other men in worschippe; which perceyvenge batelle to be inducede made a gouernoure to theyme after as the chaunce scholde falle, whom thei folowede in tyme of batelle. The batelle doen, alle the nowble men werc of egalle honor. *Plinius, libro quinto*. Frisia is a region sette on the brynke of the weste ocean, takenge begynnenge of

¹ *scommers or theuys*, Cx.² *saxon*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)³ *outake*, a.; *founden*, *reserued* tyn, Cx.⁴ *whiȝt*, a.⁵ *ony*, Cx. (and so often.)⁶ *that*, Cx.⁷ Added from Cx., who varies the sentence a little.⁸ *monasterye*, Cx.⁹ *hem*] om. Cx.¹⁰ *whiche of . . . lott*] Added from a. and Cx.¹¹ Four words omitted in MS.¹² *byfore*; *that is to wete*, he, &c., Cx.¹³ *allé lyche*, Cx., who omits *knyȝtes*.¹⁴ *coste*, Cx.

fluvio,¹ et mari Danico terminatur, cujus viri circulariter tonduntur, et quanto nobiliores sunt, tanto celsius tonsorantur. Gens quidem fortis,² proceri corporis, animi ferocis, lanceis utens pro sagittis; libertatem summe zelat;³ ideo nullum qui eis dominetur in militem erigi sinunt. Judicibus tamen⁴ subsunt, quos annuatim de seipsis eligunt; pudicitiam⁵ zelant; liberos suos⁶ diligenter custodiunt;⁷ quos⁸ non ante vicesimum quartum annum nubere permittunt; unde et⁹ contingit robustam sobolem procreari. Lignis carent, proinde¹⁰ glebas et cespites ad ignem ponunt.¹¹

De
Selandia.

Selandia, terra modica et maritima, instar insulæ marinis brachiis circumdata, ad ortum habet Hollandiam, ad septentrionem Frisiam, ad occasum oceanum, ad austrum Flandriam. Cincta est aggeribus in cir-

¹ *fluvio*] om. A.B.C.D.

² *fortis*] om. A.

³ *zelant*, C.D., which is perhaps better.

⁴ *tamen judicibus*, A.

⁵ *prudenciam*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *et suos*, A.

⁷ *custoditos*, A.B.C.D.

⁸ *quos*] om. A.B.C.D.

⁹ *et*] om. A.C.D.

¹⁰ *iccirco*, C.D. ; *et proinde*, A.

¹¹ *incendunt*, A.B.C.D.

in þe soup side from þe Ryne, and endep at þe see of Denmark.¹ Men of Frisia beep i-schore² aboute, and euir³ þe more gentil man and noble þe hiȝer he is i-schore. Þe men bep faire of body and cruel and bolde of herte, and vsed⁴ speres in stede⁵ of arwes, and louep fredom most of eny þing. Perfore þey suffrep no man be a knyȝt pat wil be her lorde. Neuerpeles þey beep gouerned and ruled by domesmen and iuges, and euerich ȝere þey⁶ chesep of hem self her owne iuges. Þey louep wel chastite, and kepeþ besiliche here children, and suffreth hem nouȝt to wyfe⁷ wip yune⁸ foure and twenty ȝere.⁹ Perfore þey haueþ stalworpe¹⁰ children and stronge; þey haueþ none wodes,¹¹ perfore þey makeþ hem fuyre of torues.¹² Selandia is a litel lond vppon þe see, [whiche renneth thurgh the londe and causeþ xviij. ilondes, and about eueryche a shippe saylle,]¹³ and hap in þe est side Holandia, in þe north Frisia, in þe west ocean, in¹⁴ þe soup Flandria, and is by clipped aboute as an ilond wip armes of

TREVISA.

the sowthe parte from the floode callede Rhenus, and is endede with the see of Danes. The men of that londe be rowndede in the maner of a cercle, as moche as men be of moore nobilite, in so moche thei be rowndede more hyc. That peple is stronge and of semely stature, bolde in herte, vsenge speres for arowes, luffenge moche liberte. Wherefore thei wyll not suffre a knyȝhte to haue predominy in theyme. They be obediende to iugges, whom thei make yerely; luffenge clenness and chastite; kepenge theire childer with grete diligence, not suffrege theyme to be maryede tylle they atteyne to xxiiijth yere in age. Wherefore thei gette myȝhty childer. Whiche wontonge woode brenne turfes made of the erthe. Selandia is a litelle londe, and in the costes of the see, compassede abowte as an yle with armes of the see, hauenge at the este to hit Holande, at the northe Frisia, at the weste the ocean, at the sowthe Flandres; hauenge grete hepes

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ Denmark, a.² ben high shauen, Cx.³ euere, a.⁴ vse, Cx., which is better.⁵ So a. and Cx.; dede, MS.⁶ he, a.⁷ marie, Cx.⁸ wip yune] til they be, Cx.⁹ yere old, Cx.¹⁰ stronge and stelwoorth childeren, Cx.¹¹ no wodes, a.¹² turues, Cx.¹³ The words in brackets added from Cx. After see MS. and a have by-clipped aboute as an ilond wip armes of þe see, which occurs below.¹⁴ and in, a.

cuitu contra impetum maris, cujus gleba frugum ferax,
sed arborum¹ rara; non enim poterit ibi arbor²
radicem profundare propter soli salsuginem. Gens
ejus³ magnæ est⁴ staturæ, fortis corpore, pia mente.⁵

De Scribo-
niis [vel
Scritobi-
nis], et de
septem
viris diu
soporatis.

Paulus,⁶ libro primo. In circionali occiduo Germaniæ
sunt populi dicti Scribonii,⁷ qui etiam æstatis tempore
nivibus non carent, crudis animalium carnibus ves-
cuntur, de quorum hirtis pellibus indumenta sibi co-
aptant. Apud quos circa solstitium æstivale radii
solares aliquibus⁸ noctibus continue apparent; et rursum
circa solstitium brumale, quamvis lux diei adsit, sol
tamen non videtur. Item⁹ *Paulus*, libro primo,¹⁰
capitulo quarto. Juxta eosdem Scribonios¹¹ in ipso
oceani littore antrum sub eminenti rupe conspicitur,
ubi septem viri jam diu soporati quiescunt ita illæsis
corporibus et vestibus,¹² ut etiam apud indoctos barba-
ros magnæ venerationi habeantur. Hi quoque,¹³ quan-
tum ad habitum spectat, Romani putantur;¹⁴ e quibus
unum dum aliquis¹⁵ cupiditate stimulatus vellet exuere,

¹ *arborum*] So B.; *arbore*, A.E.

² *arbor ibidem*, B.; *arbor ibi*, A.

³ *et* added in B.

⁴ *est*] om. B.

⁵ *Selandia . . . mente*] The whole paragraph omitted in C.D.

⁶ *Plinius*, C.D.

⁷ *Stricobini*, (or perhaps *Scritobini*,) C.D. *Paulus Diaconus* (lib. i. c. 51, ed. 1603) has *Scritobini*, which may be correct.

⁸ *aliquibus*] om. B.

⁹ *Item*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *quinto*, B. wrongly. The text is correct.

¹¹ *Stricobinos*, C.D.

¹² *vestimentis*, C.D. (and *Paulus*.)

¹³ *denique*, C.D. (and *Paulus*.)

¹⁴ *esse cernuntur*, C.D. (and *Paulus*.)

¹⁵ *quidam*, C.D. (and *Paulus*.)

pe see and floodes.¹ Pere is good corn londe and scarsete of trees, for pe rootes mowe not take depnesse and² fatnesse for saltnesse of pe erpe. Pe men beep grete of body and mylde of herte. *Paulus, libro primo.* In pe norpwest³ side of Germania is a peple pat hiȝte Scribonius, pat hath snow al pe somer tyme, and etep rawe flesch, and beep i-cloped in goot bukkes⁴ skynnes. In hire contray, whan pe nyȝt is schort, me may all nyȝt see⁵ pe sonne bemes; and eft⁶ in the wynter, when pe day is schort, pey may see pe liȝt of pe sonne, pey⁷ me seep noȝt pe sonne.⁸ *Item Paulus, libro primo, cap. quarto.*⁹ Fast byside pat peple Scribonius, vndir pe clif of ocean, is a den vndir an hiȝe stoon; perynne slepeȝ seuen men and haueȝ longe i-slepe, and beep hool and sound in body and clopinge, and al wip oute wem.¹⁰ So pat vntauȝt men and straunge haueȝ hem¹¹ in gret worshippe.¹² Pey beep i-holde Romaynes, as pei semeȝ by hire clopinge.¹³ Pere was a man som tyme pat for couetise wolde stripe on of hem, and haue his cloping. But anone his

TREVISA.

in hit in a circuite for cause of the see; in whiche londe be fewe trees, for a tree may not take per roote for saltene of the erthe. The peple of hit is of grete stature, stronge off body, meke in mynde. *Paulus, libro primo.* Also in the sowthe weste of Germayne be peple callede Scribonij, whiche haue plente of snawe in the tyme of somer, and eite rawe flesche of bestes, hauenge clothes of the ruȝhe skynnes of bestes; where the beames of the sonne be seen contynually, somme nyȝhtes abowte the solstice of somer; and also abowte the solstice of wynter, thauȝhe lizhte appere in the day, the son is not seene. *Item, libro primo, capitulo quarto.* A denne is seen nye to men of that cuntre vnder an hie hille, where vij. men slepenge haue lyen longe, the clothes and bodies of theym incorrupte, whiche be supposede to be Romanes, as after their habite; whom a man movede thro auaryce willenge to

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ Cx. thus: and is enuironed with water and highe bankes to holde out the rysynge of the see and floodes.

² ne, Cx.

³ west, Cx.

⁴ bukke, a., Cx. (buk.)

⁵ see alle the nyght, Cx.

⁶ after, Cx.

⁷ beȝ] om. a.

⁸ Cx. thus: though men see the

light of the sonne, yet the sonne is not seen.

⁹ Cx., omitting the reference, thus: *Item fast, &c.*

¹⁰ wemme, a., Cx.

¹¹ For which cause the comyn peple have hem, Cx.

¹² worship and reuerence, Cx.

¹³ They ar supposed Romaines by her clothing, Cx.

mox ejus brachia aruerunt. Fortassis ad hunc proventum eos Deus servat¹ illæsos,² ut barbaræ gentes per eos aliquando³ convertantur.

CAP. XXV.

*De Francia sive Gallia.*⁴

TRADUNT⁵ historiæ quod Gallia, quæ et Francia, a⁶ candore populi sit dicta.⁷ *Gala* enim Græce *lao* dicitur Latine; idcirco eos Gallos,⁸ id est, candidos, Sibylla⁹ vocat, dicens:

tunc lactea colla

Auro humectentur.¹⁰

Hugutio, capitulo Gala. Nam secundum diversitatem coeli, colores facierum, quantitates corporum,¹¹ qualitates animorum existunt. Inde Roma graves, Græcia leves, Africa versipelles, Gallia ingeniosos generat. *Ranulphus.* Hic autem est notandum, sicut tangit Augustinus De Civitate, libro secundo, capitulo quinto, quod Galli uno modo dicti fuerunt sacerdotes in templo

¹ *servaverit Dominus*, C.D.; *Dominus servaverit*, B.

² *illæsos*] om. C.D.; *ille*, A. (clerical error.)

³ *quandoque*, C.D.

⁴ *De Gallia seu Francia*, A.B.

⁵ *Tradunt . . . septimo decimo* (next page)] om. C.D.

⁶ *a*] om. B.

⁷ *denominata*, A.B.

⁸ *et ideo Gallos eos*, A.B.

⁹ *sub illa*, B.

¹⁰ The reference is to Virg. *Æn.* viii. 660, where however *innectuntur* is the true reading. The Sibyl is not speaking, but the words are part of a description of Vulcan's shield.

¹¹ *et* added in B.

armes driede and wax al drye.¹ Hit may be pat God TREVISA.
kepep² hem so hool and sounde, for mysbyleued men in
tyme to comynge schulde þorw³ hem be conuerted and i-
torned to good byleue.

De Gallia sive Francia.

Capitulum vicesimum septimum.

R. Hit is i-write in stories pat Gallia, pat³ is Francia, hap
pat name Gallia of whitenes of þe⁴ peple. *Gala* is Grew,⁵
lac in Latyn, *mylk*⁶ in Englissh. Þerfore Sibylla clepeþ
hem Gallos, pat is, white, and seiþ "Þan⁷ þe mylky nekkes
"beep i-wasche wiþ gold." *Hugutio, cap. Gala.* By þe dyuer-
site of heuene is dyuersite of coloures of face, of quantite
and gretnes of body, of maneres and of witt; þerfore in
Rome beep heuy men, yn Grees lyzt, in Affrica gileful, in
Gallia witty men and wys. R. Here take hede, as Augus-
tinus toucheþ, *De Civitate Dei*, libro [secundo, cap.]⁸ quinto,
pat Gally in oon manere speche were þe preostes, pat were

vnclothe anoon his armes wexede drye. Perauenture God MS. HARL.
preserueth theyme incorrupte for that entente, that men 2261.
of Barbre may be conuertede to the feithe by theyme.

Of Fraunce. Capitulum vicesimum septimum.

R. Storyes expresse that Gallia or Fraunce hathe denomi-
nacion of the whitenesse of peple; for thys worde "galla" in
Grew is seyde "mylke" in Latyne, wherefore Sibille callethe
Frenche me,⁹ white, seyenge, "Then the white neckes schalle
"be humectate or made weiete with golde." *Hugutio, capi-
tulo Gala.* For the coloures of faces, quantites of bodies,
qualites of sawles, haue their existence in man after the
diuer site of heuyn. Þerfore Rome gendrethe hevy men,
Grece lyzhte men, and Fraunce wytty men. R. Hit is also
to be aduertisede after the seyenge of Seynte Austin, *De
Civitate Dei*, libro tertio, capitulo quinto, that men callede
Galli in oon maner were prestes in the temple of a godesse

¹ forwith his arme waxed al dreye,
Cx.

² list to kepe, Cx.

³ þat] Added from a.; which, Cx.

⁴ þe] om. a. and Cx.

⁵ a worde in Grew, and is lac,
Cx.

⁶ and mylke, Cx.

⁷ that, Cx.

⁸ The words in brackets added
from Cx. This is the true reference,
and the text agrees; the Harl. MS.
is wrong.

⁹ me] So Harl. MS.

Cybelis, non a Gallia provincia, sed a Gallo fluvio Phrygiæ sic dicti; a quo potantes fiebant insani, et omnes castrabantur in memoriam pueri Attis¹ quem amavit Dea Cybele. Hic nempe Attis, propter fraudem quam Deæ fecerat, versus est in insaniam, in qua castravit se, secundum Ovidium de Fastis.² Sed de Gallis qui sunt Franci, sic³ dicit Eutropius, libro secundo: Gallorum animi feroces erant et corpora plusquam humana; sed experimento deprehensum,⁴ quod sicut Gallorum virtus primo impetu major est quam virorum, ita sequens virtus minor est quam fœminarum. Alpina namque corpora humenti cœlo educata quiddam simile suis habent nivibus quæ pugnæ calore in sudore resoluta quasi radio solari laxantur.⁵ *Giraldus, Dist. prima, cap. septimo decimo.* Gallia⁶ igitur⁷ cum partibus suis⁸ a septentrione habet Germaniam, ab ortu Rhenum, ab Euro Alpes, ab occasu oceanum Britannicum,⁹ ad austrum¹⁰ fretum mediterraneum, quod præterfluit¹¹ provinciam Narbonensem.¹² Gallia quon-

¹ *Athis*, MSS.

² *Hic autem . . . Fastis*] om. A.B.

³ So B.; *sicut*, E.

⁴ *De Gallis sic dicit Eutropius in historia Romana; experimento deprehensum est*, A.B.

⁵ *Alpina . . . laxantur*] om. A.B.

⁶ C.D. begin the chapter here.

⁷ *Gallia, quæ et Francia*, C.D.

⁸ *suis partibus*, B.

⁹ *seu Gallicum*, added in A.B.C.D.

¹⁰ *ab austro*, B.

¹¹ *præterfluit*, B.

¹² Abbreviated in C.D.

in þe temple of þat goddes þat hiȝte Cybele,¹ and hadde TREVISA.
 the name² nouȝt of þat lond Gallia but of þat³ ryuer
 Gallus þat is in Phrygia.⁴ Alle þat drank of þat ryuer
 schulde worþe wood, and were alle i-gilded in mynde⁵ of
 þat child Attis,⁶ þat pilke goddes Cybele loued wip all her
 myȝt. Þe⁷ childe worþe⁸ wood, and gilded hymself, for
 fraude and gile þat he hadde i-doo to þat goddes Cybele,
 [so sayth]⁹ Ovidius de Fastis. But of¹⁰ Galli þat beep
 Franci, and Frensche men, Eutropius, libro secundo, seip,
 Galli beep wel hasty, and here body passeþ þe comune sta-
 ture of oper men. But it is i-founde by assay þat as¹¹ Galli
 beþ wel hasty þan strong in þe firste rees,¹² soo afterward
 þey beþ¹³ in fiȝtyng more feble þan wommen. For as þey
 beþ liche Alpes in gretnes of body, so þey beþ liche¹⁴ to
 the snowe þat lieþ vpon Alpes¹⁵ þat brekeþ out on sweet,
 and melteþ wip hete of fyȝtyng as snow doop wip hete of
 þe sonne. *Girald., Dist. [i.], cap. septimo decimo.* Þanne Gallia
 wip his parties al hole haþ in þe north side Germania, in þe est
 þe Ryne, in þe soupest¹⁶ Alpes, in þe west þe see of¹⁷ ocean
 þat hatte boþe Britannicus and Gallicus, þat is, Engliſshe
 and Frensche,¹⁸ for it departeþ boþe Engeland and Fraunce,
 in þe souþ þe see of myddel erþe þat wascheþ aboute by þe

called Cybele,¹ not namede of Gallia, that is Fraunce, but MS. HARL.
 of a floode called Gallus in Frigia, of whiche water men 2261.
 drykenge were made madde, and were geldede, in to the
 memory of a childe called Attis,⁶ whom that godesse
 called Cybele¹ luffedde. Whiche childe, after Ouide De
 Fastis, for the fraude that he hade doen to the godesse was
 turnede to maddenesse, in whiche maddenesse he did gelde
 hym selfe. *Giraldus, Dist. prima, cap. septimo decimo.*
 Therefore Fraunce with his partes hathe on the northe to
 hyt Germaine, on the este the floode called Rhenus, on
 the weste the ocean of Britayne, at the sowthe the grete
 see whiche flowethe to the cuntre of Narbonense. Somme

¹ Cibeles or Sibeles, MSS. and Cx.

² haue that name, Cx.

³ the, Cx.

⁴ Frigia, MSS. and Cx.

⁵ their mynde, Cx.

⁶ Athis, MSS. and Cx.

⁷ That, Cx.

⁸ waxe, Cx.

⁹ Added from Cx.

¹⁰ þe] Added in a.

¹¹ a. and Cx. add þe.

¹² rese or brout, Cx.

¹³ they ben after fyȝtyng, in Cx.

¹⁴ be somewhat like, Cx. (and a.)

¹⁵ the Alpes, Cx., and so below.

¹⁶ So a. and Cx.; south est, MS.

¹⁷ of] om. Cx.

¹⁸ So Cx.; Frensche in Engliſshe, MS., a.

dam apud Julium Cæsarem fuerat¹ tripartita, modo vero propter² varios rerum eventus a Rheno fluvio usque³ Sequanam,⁴ Gallia Belgica sive⁵ Francia proprie dicitur. Inde⁶ usque ad⁷ Ligerim fluvium dicitur Gallia Lugdunensis, quæ nunc superius vocatur⁸ Burgundia, inferius vero⁹ Neustria dicitur.¹⁰ A Ligere vero usque ad Garonnam fluvium Gallia Aquitanica dicitur, quæ ab orientali sibi Rhodano usque ad occidentalem oceanum porrigitur; cujus pars superior a celsitudine montium, qua præminet, Celtica dicitur.¹¹ A Garonna autem¹² fluvio¹³ usque ad fretum mediterraneum seu Pyrenæos montes Gallia Narbonensis dicitur, quæ etiam¹⁴ nunc¹⁵ partim Gothia partim Vasconia dicitur. Et¹⁶ sic Gallia universa¹⁷ cingitur tribus nobilibus fluminibus,¹⁸ Rheno ad septentrionem, Rhodano ad orientem, oceano Britannico ad occasum. Gallia itaque lapides¹⁹ habet nobiles; potissime solum Parisiorum²⁰ abundat²¹ gypso, quod album plastrum vocant,

¹ *fuit*, B.C.D.

² *ob*, A.B.C.D.

³ *ad* added in B.C.D.

⁴ So B.; *usque ad*, A.; *Secanam*, E.

⁵ *seu*, C.D.

⁶ *vero* added in C.D.

⁷ *ad*] om. A.C.D.

⁸ *vocatur*] om. A.B.

⁹ *vero*] om. A.

¹⁰ Slightly abbreviated and transposed in C.D.

¹¹ Slightly varied in C.D.

¹² *autem*] om. A.B.; *vero*, C.D.

¹³ *fluvio*] om C.D.

¹⁴ *etiam*] om. A.B.

¹⁵ *etiam nunc*] om. C. All after *dicatur* omitted in D.

¹⁶ *Et sic . . . quondam in Grecia*] Thus abridged in C.D.: *In omni præteritis Gallia sexdecim sunt provinciarum, quarum omnium est felicitior Aquitania.*

¹⁷ *universaliter*, B.

¹⁸ *aquis*, A.B.

¹⁹ *lapidicinas*, A.B.

²⁰ *Pariscus*, B.; *Pariseorum*, A.E.

²¹ *abundans nobili*, B.; *abundat nobili*, A.

prouynce of Narbon. In Iulius Cesar his tyme Gallia was departed on pre ; but for dyuers happes pat byfel afterward in pat lond pe contray and lond pat strecchep from pe Ryne to Seyne, from pe oon ryuer to pat oper, hatte now Gallia Belgica, pat is verray Fraunce ; and pat contray pat¹ strecchep from pens to pe ryuer of Leyre, hatte Gallia Lugdumensis. Pe ouer partie perof hatte Burgundia, and pe nepere hatte Neustria ; and pe contray pat strecchep fram pe ryuer of Leyre to pe water pat hatte² Garonna hatte Gallia Aquitania, pat is Gyan, and strecchep out of pe est from pe ryuer of Rone anon to pe West ocean. Pe ouer party perof hatte Celica,³ pat is, heuenliche and hiȝe, for hiȝe mountaignes pat beep perynne. From pe ryuer of Garonna to pe see of myddel erpe and to pe mountaignes pat beep montes Pyrenel, greet hilles of Spayne, is i-cleped Gallia Narbonensis, and now som perof hatte Gothia, and som Vasconia, pat is Gasquyne. And so Gallia al hool is i-closed aboute wip pre noble wateres, wip pe Reyne⁴ in pe norþ side, wip pe Rone in pe est, and wip pe Bruttische⁵ ocean in pe west side. In Gallia beþ many good quarers and noble for to digge stoon ;⁶ and bysides Parys is greet plente of a manere stoon pat hatte gypsus, and is i-cleped white plaistre also ; whan pat stoon is i-temprede wip water

TREVISA.

tyme Fraunce was partede in thre, after Iulius Cesar ; but nowe hit is callede Gallia Belgica, or Fraunce properly from that floode callede Renus, vn to Segunna. And from thens to a floode callede Ligeris hit is calledde Fraunce f. 43 b. Lugdunense. And from that water Ligeris vn to the floode callede Garona hit is callede Aquitany or Gyon, which is protendede vn to the esturne floode callede Rodanus, and to the weste ocean, the superior parte of whom is callede Celtica, of the altitude of hilles in hit. And hit is callede nowe also Fraunce Narbonense, from that floode callede Garona vn to the grete see, whiche is nowe in parte Gothia in parte Gascuyn. And so alle Fraunce is cincte with thre nowble waters ; with the water callede Rhenus at the northe, with the flood callede Rodanus at the este, and at the weste with the ocean of Briteyne. This Fraunce is habundante in white stones whiche is callede white playster, whiche brente in the fyre and temprede with water makethe

2261.

¹ pat] Added from Cx.² pat hatte] of, a., Cx.³ Selica, a.⁴ Ryne, a.⁵ So also Cx. (*Bruttysk.*)⁶ digge yn stanes, a., Cx.

quod quidem igne exustum et aqua temperatum vertitur in cæmentum, unde fiunt parietes, testudines, et pavimenta indissolubilia. Ibi¹ floret civitas Parisius, nutrix morum, pincerna literarum, ita² refulgens in Europa sicut Athenæ quondam in Græcia.³ Gens etiam⁴ Francorum, sicut pleræque gentes Europæ, a Trojanis originem duxit; Antenor namque post captam Trojam cum suis profugus per Mæotides paludes perque⁵ fluvium⁶ Tanaim⁷ Pannoniam tenuit, in qua urbem Sicambram fundavit, a qua et ipse et sui poster⁸ Sicambri dicti sunt. Post cujus mortem constituti sunt⁹ duces super eos Trogotus et Franco, a quo Franci vocati,¹⁰ sive, ut Turpinus inter gesta¹¹ Caroli,¹² scribit,¹³ postquam Carolus subjugata Hispania Parisium remeasset, volens honorare Beatum Jacobum et Sanctum Dionysium manumisit¹⁴ omnes servos per Galliam cujuscunque fuissent¹⁵ domini, qui annuatim quatuor nummos ad fabricam ecclesiæ¹⁷ Beati Dionysii offerrent; et sic franci, id est liberi, Beati Dionysii

¹ *et ibi*, B.

² *ita*] om. A.B.

³ See previous page.

⁴ *etiam*] om. C.D.; *igitur*, A.B.

⁵ *per quæ*, B.

⁶ *flumen*, A.

⁷ *Thanay*, MSS.

⁸ *ipse et sui poster*] om. C.D.; *ejus sequaces*, A.B.

⁹ *Post . . . sunt*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *sunt* added in A.B.D.

¹¹ *de gestis*, A.B.C.D.

¹² *Karoli*, MSS., and similarly below.

¹³ *dicit*, C.D.

¹⁴ Slightly transposed in C.

¹⁵ *essent*, A.B.

¹⁶ Slightly altered in C.D.

¹⁷ *ecclesiæ*] Added from A.B.D.

and tórned to playstre.¹ Panne me makeþ perof ymagez, TREVISA.
 walles and chambres, pamentes and dyuerse manere of²
 workes, þat dureþ longe i-now. Pere is þe faire flour þe
 citee of Parys, norice³ of þewes, botiller of lettres, schyn-
 nyng in Europa as Athene⁴ somtyme in Grecia. *Girald.*
Dist. prima. Þe Frensche men, þat hatte Franci also, and
 many oper men þe strengest of Europa come of⁵ Troians;
 ffor aftir þat Troye was i-take, Antenor wip his men fliz⁶
 away by þe⁷ watres þat hatte paludes Meotides, and by þe
 ryuer Tanais, and wonede in Pannonia, and bulde pere
 a citee, and cleped it Sicambria. Of þat citee he and
 alle hise were aftirward i-cleped Sicambri. After Antenore
 his deep þey ordeyned hem tweie lederes, Trogotus and
 Franco, and of pilke Franco þei were after i-cleped Franci.
 Turpinus, de gestis Karoli, seip þat whanne⁸ kyng Charles
 had i-made Spayne soget, and was i-come home to Parys
 aȝen, he made alle þe bonde men of Gallia fre⁹
 in worschippe of Seint Iame¹⁰ and of Seynt Denys; but
 þey schulde euery ȝere offre foure pans¹¹ to þe chirche
 work of Seynt Denys. And so þey were i-cleped Franci

cemente as indissoluble. The cite callede Parisius flory- MS. HARL.
 schethe there the nutrix of vertu, the pantry of letters, 2261.
 whiche schynethe now in Europe as Atheynes floryschede
 somme tyme in Grece. *Gir. Dist. prima.* The peple of
 Fraunce, as many other peple, toke theire begynnenge of the
 Troianes. For Antenor, after the takege of Troye, fleenge
 with his feloweschippe by the floode of Thanay, come to
 Pannony, in whom he made a cite called Sicambria,¹² where-
 fore he and his folowers were callede Sicambri.¹² After
 the dethe of whom ij. dukes and gouernoures were ordeynede
 to governe theyme. Which were Trogotus and Francus, off
 whom Frenche men toke theire name. But as Turpinus
 seyethe of the gestes of Charls, after that kyng Charles
 subduenge to hym Spayne hade comen to Parise, wyllenge to
 worschippe Seynte Iames and Seynte Dionise, he ȝafe manu-
 mission to all his seruantes thro Fraunce of what so euer
 lordeschippe that thei were, whiche scholde offre yerely
 iiij. d. to the chirche of Seynte Dionise; and so Frenche

¹ into plaster, a., Cx.

² of] om. Cx.

³ which is norryce, Cx.

⁴ Athenes, Cx.

⁵ a. and Cx. add þe.

⁶ fled, Cx.

⁷ þe] om. Cx.

⁸ So a.; what, MS. (first hand); altered to whan.

⁹ So a. and Cx.; fre before of Gallia in MS.

¹⁰ Iames, Cx.

¹¹ panes, a.; pens, Cx.

¹² Cicambria and Cicambri, Harl. MS.

ubique vocabantur.¹ Ex tunc inolevit quod Gallia Francia vocaretur.² Dicunt alii³ quod Valentinianus imperator lingua Attica vocavit Francos, quasi ferancos, a feritate animi.⁴ Nam usque ad tempora ejusdem⁵ Valentiniani⁶ Sicambri longævis temporibus tributarii fuerant Romanorum.⁷ Illud autem tributum, ut⁸ contra Alanos⁹ Romanis infestos¹⁰ bellum susciperent, decennio remissum est. Quo¹¹ decurso, Alanisque¹² detritis,¹³ solitum exacti tributum solvere renuerunt. Quamobrem Valentinianus, ingenti coacto exercitu, Sicambros appetiit¹⁴ et devicit. Quo infortunio Sicambri¹⁵ efferati terras Romanorum Romanisque subjectorum crudeliter invaserunt.¹⁶ Hinc eatenus Sicambri, a Franco

¹ *Et sic Franci Dionysii et liberi ubique vocantur*, C.D.

² A.B.C. add *ab illa libertate*.

³ *autem quidam*, C.D.

⁴ Slightly transposed in C.; *a feritate animi lingua Attica vocant eos Francos*, A.B.D.

⁵ *ejusdem*] om. C.D.

⁶ *Imperatoris*] added in C.D.

⁷ *fuerunt Romanis*, C.D.

⁸ *ut*] om. C.; *aut*, A.

⁹ *Slavos*, B.

¹⁰ *infestos cum*, C. (not D.)

¹¹ *Quo decennio*, A.B.C.D.

¹² *Slavisque*, B.

¹³ *contritis*, A.B.C.D.

¹⁴ *petiit*, B.

¹⁵ *Sicambri*] om. A.B.C.D.

¹⁶ *subjectas invadere inceperunt*, B.; *subjectas invadere ceperunt*, A.C.D.

Beati¹ Dionysii, pat is Seint Denys his fre men. And so it come² aboute pat Gallia was i-cleped Francia, by cause of pat fredom. Oper men telleþ pat Valentinianus³ pe emperour cleped hem Francos as it were Ferancos, pat is steorne and wither, in pe langage of Attica, pat is Grecia. For Sicambri, pat beep Frensche men, were tributarii to Rome longe tyme to fore Valentinianus is tyme also. But whan Alani, men of Alania, were enemyes to Rome, Sicambri hadde hire tribute forþeue for ten ðere for to werre aʒenst Alani, men⁴ of Alania; and whan pe ten ðere were i-doo and Alani ouercome, pe Romaynes asked her tribute; and Sicambri werned it and wolde none paye. Perfore Valentinianus pe emperour werred vppon hem wip a grete oost, and hadde pe victorie; þan for pat myshap Sicambry were wood wroop,⁵ and werred⁶ in pe londes of Rome [and also on the londes that were subgett to Rome]⁷ also. Perfore Sicambri were afterward i-cleped Franci, as it were feranci, pat is wither and sterne,⁸ and of pat duke Franco þey were i-cleped Franci, as it were Franco his men. Also of hir fredom pat kyng Charles ʒaf hem þey beep i-cleped Franci, pat is fre men so⁹ for to mene. *Trevisa.* But how er þey come to pat name, Franci beep Frensche men, and hatte boþe Sicambri and Galli. And so

TREVISA.

men were callede the fre men of Seynte Dionise. And so that londe was namede Fraunce for cause of that liberte. Other men say that Valentinianus themperoure callede theyme Francos, as ferancos. For Sicambri¹⁰ were tributaries to thempyre of Rome vn to the tyme of Valentinian, whiche tribute was remittede to theyme by x. yere that they scholde make batelle ageyn men of Almayne, whiche were contrarious to thempyre of Rome that tyme y-paste; and the men of Almayne deuicte, they refusede to pay theire tribute to Rome. Wherefore Valentinianus, gedrenge a grete hoste, entrede theire costes and hade victory of theyme; wherefore thei wente afterwarde and destroyede moche of the cuntre of Romanes; and therefore thei were callede Frenche men of Francus theire gouernoure or elles of

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Sancti*, Cx.² *cam*, Cx.³ So Cx.—MS. and a. have *his tyme also*, after *Val.*; but this seems a mere clerical error. See below.⁴ *ayenst the men*, Cx.⁵ *sore wroth*, Cx.⁶ *warred*, Cx.⁷ Words in brackets added from Cx.⁸ *wiper and steerne*, a.⁹ *so*] om. Cx.¹⁰ *Cicambri*, Harl. MS., and so below.

De successione Regum Francorum. duce sive a feritate animorum¹ dicti Franci,² Feramundum filium Marcomiri regem sibi³ creaverunt, et terram a Sicambria usque ad Rhenum fluvium protensam⁴ subegerunt.⁵ *Willielmus⁶ de Regibus, libro primo.*⁷ Defuncto⁸ autem Feramundo filium ejus Clodionem sive Clodium crinitum sibi præfecerunt, a quo reges Francorum criniti postmodum vocabantur. Post Clodium Meroveum nepotem ejus erexerunt, a quo succedentes reges usque ad Pipinum Merovingi vocabantur. Eodem modo⁹ filii regum Angliæ a patribus patronymica sumpserunt; ut filius Edgari Edgaring,¹⁰ filius Edmundi Edmundryng vocetur.¹¹ Communiter autem Adelingi vocantur qui de regio sanguine descendunt. *Giraldus, Distinctione prima.* Itaque¹² post Meroveum regnavit Childericus filius ejus, qui genuit Clodoveum, quem Sanctus Remigius baptizavit. Qui Gothos Arianos suasu Romanorum ab Aquitania expulit. Quo mortuo Childebertus¹³ filius ejus cum tribus fratribus suis, Theodorico,¹⁴

¹ animorum] om. A.B.D.

² a feritate dicti sunt Franci, C.

³ Regem sibi before Feramundum in A.B.D.

⁴ protensam] om. B.D.

⁵ Transposed in C.

⁶ *Willielmus*, at length, here and below, E.

⁷ C.D. om. title of quotation.

⁸ Defuncto . . . expulit] *Quo defuncto Clodoveum filium ejus substituerunt. Post hæc Rhenum trans-euntes a Rheno usque Lygerim cunctam terram a Romanis abstulerunt. Post hæc prædicante beato Remigio Clodoveus Christianus factus, Gothos Arianos de Aquitania jussu Romanorum ibi existentes depulit*, D.; and so C., but having *hoc* for *hæc* twice, and *ab* for *de*, and omitting *est*.

Quo defuncto Meroveum nepotem ejus in regem sibi creaverunt, a quo

post eum reges Francorum usque ad Pepinum Merovingi sunt vocati, A.B., which agree in the rest with E., as far as descendunt.

⁹ *et* added in A.B.

¹⁰ *Edgaringes*, A.; *Edgaringus*, B.

¹¹ *Edmundingis*, A.; *Edmundryngus* vocentur, A.B.

¹² Itaque . . . expulit] *Itaque post Meroveum Clodonem filium ejus erexerunt, sub quo Rhenum fluvium trans-euntes totam terram inter Rhenum et Ligerim a Romanis abstulerunt. Postmodum Clodoveus rex eorum, prædicante beato Remigio, Christianus effectus, Gothos Arianos jussu Romanorum ab Aquitania expulit*, B. And so A., but having *Clodionem*, and *Clodoveus*.

¹³ *Agildebertus*, C.

¹⁴ *Theoderico*, E.

it is alle oon peple, Sicambri, Galli, and ¹ Franci, and Frensche TREVISA.
men. R.² Franci made hem a kyng pat hiȝte³ Fera-
mundus, Marcomiris⁴ sone, and made alle þe lond sogett,
ffrom⁵ Sicambria anon to þe Ryne. *Willielmus de Regibus,*
libro primo. Whan Feramundus was dede, þey made his
sone kyng, þat hadde pre names, and heet Clodion, Clodius,
and Crinitus; and of hym kynges of Fraunce were aftir-
ward i-cleped Criniti.⁶ After Clodius þey made his
sone kyng, þat hadde pre names,⁷ and hiȝte Meroucus;
and after hym kynges of Fraunce were i-cleped Merouyngi
anon to Pypinus his tyme. In þe same manere kynges
sones of Engeland hadde names i-schape by hir fader names
and so⁸ Edgarus his sone hiȝte Edgaryngus,⁹ and Edmun-
dus his sone heet Edmundyngus. Comounliche he þat
comeþ of¹⁰ kynges blood is i-cleped Adelyngus. *Girald.,*
Dist. prima. After Meroueus regned his sone Childericus;
hym folwede¹¹ Remigius. Þis Childericus at þe prayere¹² of
þe Romayns put þat peple Gothi Arriani out of Gyan.¹³
Whan he was dede his sone Childeburtus helde þe kyng-
dom wiþ his pre breperen Theodoricus, Clodomirus,¹⁴ and Clo-

cruellness, makenge kyng amonge theyme Feramundus MS. HARL.
the son of Marcomirus, makenge subiecte to theym the 2261.
cuntre from Sicambria vn to that floode callede Renus.
Willielmus de Pontificibus, libro primo. Whiche Fera-
mundus dedde thei made Clodoueus his son kyng. And
after Clodoueus, Merouius his newewe was electe in to the
kyng, after whom alle kynges of Fraunce vn to Pipinus were
callede Merouingi. In lyke wyse the sonnes of kynges of
Englounde toke their names after their faders. As the son
of Edgare was callede Edgarynge, the son of Edmunde,
Edmundenge. *Gir., Dist. prima.* Also after Merouius,
Childericus his son reignede, whiche gatte Clodoueus whom
Remigius baptisede. This Clodoueus at the instaunce and
preier of the Romanes expelled from the cuntre of Gyon
the Gothes infecte with the heresy of Arrianus. Whiche
dedde, Childericus his son occupyede the realme with his thre
brether, Theodoricus, Clodomirus, and Clotarius; in whiche

¹ a. om. and.

² R.] Added from a. and Cx.

³ heet, a.

⁴ Marcomirus his, a.; Marconurus, Cx.

⁵ ffram, a.

⁶ Criniti] So a. and Cx.; Cirini Sirini, MS.

⁷ Cx. omits this clause, which seems repeated by a clerical error.

⁸ had names after the names of their fader, as, Cx.

⁹ So a. and Cx.; Edgaryndus, MS.

¹⁰ of þe, a.

¹¹ cristned, Cx.

¹² atte prayere, Cx.

¹³ Guyan, Cx.

¹⁴ Added from a. and Cx.

Clodomiro,¹ et Clothario,² eo scilicet³ tempore quo Gregorius Magnus⁴ floruit, regnum tenuit. Post quem Clotharius frater ejus, qui beatam Radegundam desponsavit. Et post eum Childericus filius ejus regnavit cum tribus fratribus suis, Cariberto, Gundano,⁵ Sigeberto.⁶ Post Childericum Clotharius filius ejus regnavit, qui genuit Dagobertum et Batildem sororem ejus. Sub isto Dagoberto fuit Pipinus major domus regiae⁷ temporibus Heraclii imperatoris. Post Dagobertum filius ejus Clodoveus regnavit,⁸ cujus tempore corpus Sancti⁹ Benedicti de provincia Beneventana usque in Franciam delatum est.¹⁰ Post Clodoveum regnavit filius ejus Clotharius, post quem frater ejus Theodoricus, sub quo Ebroinus¹¹ major domus regiae beatum¹² Leodegarium afflixit.¹³ Post quem Clodoveus. Post quem frater ejus Childeburtus. Post quem filius suus Dagobertus.¹⁴ Post quem regale genus defecit.¹⁵ Nam post eum regnavit Daniel clericus, quem¹⁶ Franci mutato nomine vocave-

¹ *Clodemiro*, A. ; *Glodomiro*, C.D.

² *Clotario*, A., and similarly below ; *Glotario*, D., but *Clotarius* below.

³ *eo scilicet*] om. C.D. ; *scilicet* om. A.B.

⁴ *Magnus*] om. C. ; *magnus Papa Gregorius*, A.B. ; *Papa Gregorius*, D.

⁵ *Gundiano*, B.C.D.

⁶ *et Sigeberto*, C.D.

⁷ *reginæ*, B.

⁸ *regnavit*] om. B.

⁹ *beati*, C.D.

¹⁰ *translatum est*, A. ; *de Benevento translatum est*, C.D.

¹¹ *Eliomus*, B.

¹² *beatum*] om. B.

¹³ Varied slightly in C.D.

¹⁴ *Post . . . Dagobertus*] cui Childeburtus frater ejus junior successit, cui filius suus (ejus, A.) Dagobertus junior, A.B.

¹⁵ The foregoing clauses slightly varied in C.D.

¹⁶ *frater quem*, C.D. ; *frater ejus, quem*, A.B.

tarius. Dis was in þe popes tyme þe Grete Gregory.¹ Afte þis TREVISA.
 Childebertus² regned his broþer Clotarius: he wedded Seynt
 Radagund. And after hym regned his sone, Childericus,
 wip his þre breþeren Carbertus, Gundianus, and Sigesbertus.
 After Childericus reigned his sone Clotarius: he bygat
 Dagobertus and his suster Batildys.³ Vnder þis Dagobertus
 Pypinus was þe grettest man of þe kynges hous; and þat
 was in Heraclius þe emperoures tyme.⁴ After Dagobertus
 regned his sone Clodoueus. In his tyme seynt Benet his body
 was translated and i-bore out of þe prouince Beneuentana in
 to Fraunce. After Clodoueus regned his sone Clotarius;
 after⁵ hym his broþer Theodoricus. In his tyme Ebroynus,⁶
 þat was þe grettest of þe kynges hous, pursuede Seint Leode-
 garius and dede hym moche woo and tene, and martired hym
 at þe laste.⁷ After Theodoricus regned Clodouius; and
 after hym his 3onge⁸ broþer Childebertus; [after him his
 3onger⁹ sone Dagobertus;]¹⁰ and after hym þe kynges lynage
 faillede. For after hym reigned his broþer Daniel, þat was
 a clerk. But Franci chaunged Daniel his name, and

tyme Grete Gregory floryschede. Afther whom Clotarius MS. HARL.
 his brother reignede, whiche toke to his wyfe Seynte Rade- 2261.
 gunde. After whom Childericus his son reignede, with
 Garibertus, Gundianus, and Sigelbertus, his brether. After
 Childericus Clotarius his son reignede, which gate Dagoberte
 and Batildis his sustyr. Vnder this Dagoberte, Pipinus
 was as the gouernoure of the kynges house, in the tymes
 of Heraclius themperoure. After Dagoberte, Clodoueus
 his son reignede, in the tyme of whom the body of Seynte
 Benedicte was translate from the prouince Beneuentan vn
 to Fraunce. After Clodoueus, Clotarius his son reignede.
 After him his brother Theodoricus, vnder whom Ebronius
 was the gouernoure of the kynges howse, whiche punyschede
 Seynte Leodegary. After whom Clodoueus, and after hym
 Childebertus his yongeste brother reignede, whom Dagoberte
 his yongeste son succedede, and after hym the stokke of
 kynges faillede. For after hym Daniel a clerke reignede,
 whiche was his brother; whom Frenche men callede Child-

¹ time of the grete pope Gregory,
 Cx.

² So *a.*; *Chilbertus*, MS.

³ So Cx.; *Batildus*, MS., *a.*

⁴ in the tyme of Eraclius thempe-
 rour, Cx.

⁵ and after, Cx.

⁶ *Ebronius*, *a.*, Cx.

⁷ *atte laste*, Cx.

⁸ *3onger*, *a.*, Cx.

⁹ *yong*, Cx.

¹⁰ Words in brackets added from
a. and Cx.

runt Childericum.¹ Post quem Theodoricus propinquus ejus. Post quem² Hildericus frater ejus,³ qui ob inertiam nimiam⁴ depositus et clericus factus in monasterio private vixit.⁵ Sicque⁶ defecit linea prosapiae Ferramundi⁷ per viros, sed mansit per Batildem⁸ sororem Dagoberti isto⁹ modo.¹⁰ Batildis nupsit Ansberto, de quo¹¹ genuit Arnaldum, cujus filius Arnulphus duxit filiam Pipini ducis ac¹² majoris in domo regia¹³ Dagoberti fratris¹⁴ ejusdem Batildis. Sed isto¹⁵ Arnulpho Metensi postmodum¹⁶ episcopo facto,¹⁷ Ansegisilus filius ejus genuit Pipinum, qui vetulus seu brevis dictus est. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo.*¹⁸ Qui Pipinus genuit Carolum Tutidem¹⁹ seu Martellum nominatum,²⁰ eo quod tyrannos per Franciam emergentes contuderit,²¹ Sarracenos quoque Galliam infestantes egregie depulerit.

¹ *Childericum vocaverunt*, A.D. ; *Ethidericum vocaverunt*, B.

² *cui successit*, A.B. ; *illique successit Childericus*, D.

³ *frater ejus*] om. A.

⁴ *nimiam inertiam*, A.B.

⁵ Abbreviated in C.D.

⁶ *Sic ergo*, C.D.

⁷ *Faramundi*, A.

⁸ So B. ; *Batildam*, E. (clerical error ?)

⁹ *hoc*, C.D.

¹⁰ *isto modo*] *ipsa vero*, B.

¹¹ *qua*, A., more correctly.

¹² *et*, C. (not D.)

¹³ *regis*, C.D. ; om. B.

¹⁴ *fratrisque*, A.C.D.

¹⁵ *Isto quoque*, A.B.

¹⁶ *postmodum Metensi*, A.B.

¹⁷ *effecto*, A. ; abbreviated slightly in C.D.

¹⁸ Reference omitted in C.D.

¹⁹ So MSS., but *Tudites* seems to be the correct title, and so Malmesbury, *Gest. Reg. Angl.*, lib. i. § 68 (vol. i. p. 98, ed. Hardy). See Duncange, *s. v.*

²⁰ *nominatum . . . Iste*] om. C., and so D., except the word *nominatum*.

²¹ *conquievit*, B.

cleped hym¹ Childericus. After hym reigned oon of his kyn put heet Theodoricus; and after hym his brother Hildericus. He was i-putte doun for grete nysete and i-made a clerk, and leued as a monk in an abbay; and panne faillede pe lynage in men of Feramundus blood. But 3it it laste² and durede in a womman pat was Batildis, Dagobertus his suster. In pis manere Batildis³ was i-wedded to Ansebertus, and hadde by hym a sone pat heet Arnold. Pan pis Arnolde sone heet Arnulphe.⁴ Pat Arnulphe⁴ wedded duke Pypinis douzter. Pypinus was grettest of king⁵ Dagobertus his hous. Kyng Dagobertus was Batildis broper. Pis Arnulph⁴ was afterward i-made bisshop, Metensis episcopus.⁶ Pan his sone Ansegilus gat Pipinus, pat hadde tweie oþer names, Vetulus and Bremys.⁷ *Willielmus⁸ de Regibus, libro primo.* Pis Pypinus gat Charles pat heet Tutidis,⁹ [and Martellus also, and had pat name Tutidis]¹⁰ of *tu[n]dere*, pat is *bete and bounse*.¹¹ For he beet¹² out of Fraunce alle pe tyrauntes and Sarazynes¹³ pat werrede perynne, and destourbed¹⁴ pe lond and pe¹⁵ peple. Pis Charles folwed pe

TREVISA.

ricus. After whom Theodoricus nyc of his kynrede; after whom Hildericus his brother succedede, whiche deposede for his slawthe, and made a clerke, lyvede priuately in a monastery. Soe the lineallo descense of the prosapy or kynrede of Feramundus faylede by men, but hyt remaynede in Batildis, sustyr to Dagoberte. The seyde Batildis was maryede to Ansebertus, whiche gate of here a childe callede Arnaldus, whose childe callede Arnulpus was maryede to the dozhter of Pipinus, duke of the howse of kyng Dagoberte, brother to the seide Batildis. Whiche Arnulphus afterwarde beenge byschop Metense, Ansegilus his son gate Pipinus, whiche was callede olde Pipinus, or schorte. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo.* Whiche Pipinus gate Charles, or other wise namede Martellus, in so moche that he depressede tirauntes in Fraunce, and Saracenes makege insurrecciones ageyne the londe of Fraunce. This man

MS. HARL.

2261.

f. 44. b.

¹ *hym*] om. a.² *lasted*, Cx.³ *Batildus*, MS. (not Cx.)⁴ *Arnulphus*, Cx. (thrice.)⁵ *the grettest of the kyng*, Cx.⁶ *episcopus*] om. Cx.⁷ *Bremys*, a. and Cx.⁸ *Willielmus*, Cx., here and elsewhere.⁹ So a. and Cx.; *Tutidus*, MS. (not so below.)¹⁰ Words in brackets added from a. and Cx.¹¹ *beten and bounsed*, Cx.¹² *he beet*] *abent*, a.¹³ *Sarzines*, a.¹⁴ *destroubled*, Cx.¹⁵ *be*] om. Cx.

Hic nempe paternæ sententiæ sequax reges Franciæ tenuit in clientela sua, ipse comitis nomine contentatus.¹ *Giraldus, Distinctione prima.* Iste² Carolus genuit Pipinum secundum et Carolomannum postea monachum. Hic itaque³ Pipinus⁴ ex Batilde prædicta regium genus ducens, post depositionem Hilderici⁵ regis voto totius militiæ auctoritateque Stephani⁶ Papæ successoris Zachariæ⁷ rex Francorum effectus,⁸ genuit Carolum Magnum, qui post obitum patris sui,⁹ anno Domini¹⁰ DCC^o.LX^o.IX^o. in regem erigitur. Deinde¹¹ advocatus Petri et patricius in imperatorem est erectus; a quo tempore imperium Constantinopolitanum defecit a Romanis et transiit ad Francos,¹² eo¹³ quod Græci nullam opem ferrent Romanis contra sævitiam Longobardorum. Hic Carolus Lodowicum¹⁴ imperatorem, qui Carolum tertium Calvum nuncupatum progenuit, qui Lodowicum secundum, qui Carolum quartum et Simplicem dictum pro-

¹ *contentus*, A.B.

² *Qui*, C.D.

³ *igitur*, A.B.C.D.

⁴ *Pipinus secundus*, A.B.C.D.

⁵ *Childerici*, C.D.

⁶ *totius militiæ auctoritate atque*, B.

⁷ *auctoritateque Zachariæ Papæ*, C.D.

⁸ *est qui* added in A.B.; *est qui et* added in C.D.

⁹ *sui*] om. A.B.C.D.

¹⁰ *Domini*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *deinde... Conquestoris*] Abbreviated in B., as follows: "Quem postmodum Romani ob ejus egre-

gios actus advocatum beati Petri elegerunt, deinde patricium, imperatorem deinde Augustum; a quo tempore imperium Constantinopolis defecit a Romanis et transiit ad Francos, eo quod nullam opem ecclesiæ Romanæ ferrent contra sævitiam Longobardorum tunc Romanos infestantium." And so A. very nearly.

¹² *Deinde... Francos*] Abbreviated and transposed in C.D.

¹³ *eo quod... reportaret* (next page)] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *Lodowicum*, E., here and sometimes below

sentens of his forme fadres,¹ and helde þe kynges of Fraunce TREVISA.
 in his retenue. And he hym self was i-cleped an erle, and
 hilde hym a payed² in³ þat name. *Giraldus*. Þis Charles
 gatte þe secounde Pypinus⁴ and Charles þe Grete þat was
 aftirwarde a monk. Þis secounde Pipinus was of þe kynges
 kynde: for he com of Batildis, þat we speke of rapere.⁵
 And perfore he was i-made kyng of Fraunce by assent of
 alle þe chyualrie and by auctorite of pope Steuene þat was
 next pope⁶ after Zacharie. Þis Pipinus gat Charles þe Grete;
 þis Charles was i-made kyng after his fader⁷ deef, þe 3ere
 of oure Lorde seuene hundred þre score and nyne. For his
 noble dedes þe Romayns chees⁸ hym afterwardes for to be
 Seynt Petres aduokett,⁹ aftirward patricius, and þan þe em-
 perour and Augustus. And from þat tyme þe empere of
 Constantinopolis¹⁰ tornede from the Romaynes to þe Frensche
 men; for þey wolde not¹¹ helpe þe chirche of Rome aȝen
 þe Longebardes þat werred aȝenst þe Romayns. Þis
 Charles gat Lewes,¹² þat was aftirward emperoure. Þis
 Lewis gat þe Balled Charles, þat was emperour also. Þe
 Balled Charles gat Lewes; Lewes gat Charles þe Sym-

folowenge the steppes of his fader, kepede the kynges of MS. HARL.
 Fraunce in his seruyce, contente with the name of a duke. 2261.
Gir., Dist. prima. This Charls gate Pipinus the secunde,
 and Karolomannus afterwarde a monke. This Pipinus the
 secunde, commenge of the stokke of the seide Batildis, after
 the deposicion of kyng Hildericus was made kyng of
 Fraunce thro the desire of alle the cheuallery, and by the
 auctorite of Pope Steven the successor off Zacharye. Whiche
 gate Grete Charles. Whiche was erecte to the kyngedome
 of Fraunce after the dethe of his fader in þe yere of our
 Lorde Godde dcc. lx. and ix., whom the Romanes electe to
 be the aduocate of Seynte Petre for the nowble actes that
 he did; after that thei made hym emperoure and Augustus.
 From whiche tyme the empire of Constantinople wente from
 þe Romanes and wente to Frenche men, in that thei
 helpe not the chirche of Rome ageyne Longobardes,
 kepenge werre ageyne the Romanes. This Charles gate
 Lodowicus. This Lodowicus gate Symple Charles, whiche

¹ *fjorfaders*, Cx.² *paid and content*, Cx.³ *wib*, a., Cx.⁴ *Pipinus*, Cx. (but not uni-
 formly).⁵ *bifore*, Cx.⁶ *pope neyt* (for next), Cx.⁷ *faders*, Cx. (and so often.)⁸ *chose*, Cx.⁹ *aduocate*, Cx.¹⁰ *Constantinople*, Cx.¹¹ *nouȝt*, a. (not, Cx. uniformly.)¹² *Lowys*, Cx. (and so below.)

genuit, qui Lodowicum tertium, qui Lotharium primum, qui Lodowicum quartum, hujus prosapiæ regem ultimum. Quo mortuo Franci statuerunt super se Hugonem Capet, ducem Burgundiæ, qui genuit Robertum, qui Henricum, qui Philippum primum, qui Lodowicum quintum, qui regnavit tempore Henrici primi regis Angliæ filii Conquestoris. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo*. Sicque successores Caroli Magni imperaverunt¹ in Italia et Alemannia usque² ad annum Domini non-gentesimum duodecesimum, quando Conradus rex³ Teutonicorum imperium sibi arripuit. *Ranulphus*. Diu postmodum, ut fert fama, regina quædam Francorum, ad quam regnum Franciæ descenderat,⁴ videns quemdam macellarium elegantem, sumpsit eum in virum; ob cujus facti detestationem, Franci apud se legem⁵ sanxerunt⁶ ut nulla mulier deinceps⁷ regnum Franciæ reportaret.⁸ *Giraldus, Distinctione prima*.⁹ Galliam

¹ *Sicque . . . imperaverunt*] Ex hujus Karoli genere regnaverunt successores in Francia usque ad Hugonem cognomento Capet, de quo cæteri descenderunt quemadmodum inferius in suo loco dicitur; ex cujus progenie regnaverunt, &c., A.B. and the versions. This is more like Malmesbury's text. See lib. i. § 68 (vol. i. pp. 100, 101, cd. Hardy). The same

may be said of the readings of A.B. in the notes to p. 276; compare Malmesbury, p. 96.

² *usque*] om. A.

³ *rex*] om. B.

⁴ *hereditarie descenderat*, A.B.

⁵ *legem*] om. A.B.

⁶ *statuerunt*, A.B.

⁷ *deinceps*] Added from A.B.

⁸ See previous page.

⁹ *Distinctione prima*] om. C.D.; the latter has *Girardus*.

ple. Charles þe Simple gat Lewes;¹ Lewes gat Lotharius; Lotharius gat Lewes, þe laste kyng of þis lynage. Whan þis Lewes was dede, Franci took Huwe² duke of Burgoyne, and made hym here kyng. Þis Hewe gat Robert; Robert gat Henry;³ Henry gat Phelip; Philip gat Lewes. Lewes regnede in Henry Clerkes⁴ tyme, þe Conquerours sone. Þe Grete Charles his⁵ osprynge reguede in Fraunce anon to Hughe is tyme, þat hiȝt Capet by his surname. Of hym come oper kynges of Fraunce, as it is wipynne in his place openliche declared; kynges of his ofsprynge regued in Italia and in Almanian anone to þe ȝere of oure Lord nyne hondred and twelue, whan Conradus,⁶ kyng of Duches⁷ men, toke þe empere to hymself. R. Longe aftirward, as comyn⁸ fame telleþ, a woman þat was quene of Fraunce by eritage wedded a bocher for his fairenesse; perfore in þe repreef⁹ of þat dede Frensche men ordeyned among hemself þat no womman schulde aftirwarde be eyre of þe reigne¹⁰ of Fraunce. *Giraldus*. Þe Romayns were som-

TREVISA.

gate Lodowicus. That Lodowicus gate Lotharius, whiche gate Lodowicus the laste kyng of that kynrede. After the dethe of whom the Romanes ordeynede Hugo duke off Burguyne to theire gouernoure, whiche gate Robert. That Robert gate Henry, whiche gate Philippe. Þat Philippe gate Lodowicus, whiche reignede in the tyme of Henry Clerke, son of the Conquerour. Kynges reignede in Fraunce of the stocke of Grete Charles vn til that Hewe Capet reignede in Fraunce, from whom other descendenge reignede there, as hit schalle be seyde in his propre place, of the stocke of whom somme reignede in Ytaly, somme in Almayne, vn to the yere of oure lorde ix^c. and xii., when kyng Conradus toke to hym thempyre of Almayne. R. Longe afterwarde, after the commune fame, a qwene of Fraunce to whom the realme descended by trewe inheritaunce, whiche seenge a bochor, a semely man of stature, toke hym to here howsebonde; for the detestacion of that dede, the Frenche men made a statute that noo woman after here scholde reioyce the realme of Fraunce. *Giraldus*. Nowble

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ Cx. omits both clauses relating to Charles the Simple.

² *Hugh*, Cx.

³ *Harry*, Cx.

⁴ *clerk his*, a.

⁵ *his*] So a.; of, MS.

⁶ So a. and Cx.; *Conradus*, MS.

⁷ *Duche*, Cx.

⁸ *the comyn*, Cx.

⁹ *reproof*, Cx.

¹⁰ *royame*, Cx.

dudum tenuerunt fortes coloni, qui ¹ Romanos sæpius ² protriverunt. Tandem Gallia, sub Julio ³ Cæsare subacta, ⁴ per quadringentos circiter annos usque ad ultima Valentiniani tempora ⁵ per Romanos occupata est. ⁶ Deinde ⁷ Wandali et Huni, post quos ⁸ Suevi et Burgundi, post quos Gothi et Sicambri, post quos ⁹ Norwagenses et Dani sedes sibi in ea fecerunt. ¹⁰ Sunt itaque in Gallia sive Francia ¹¹ hæ provinciæ, Brabantia, ¹² Flandria, Picardia, Normannia, Britannia Minor, Pictavia, Aquitania, ¹³ Andegavia, Vasconia, Burgundia, Alvernia, ¹⁴ Salina, Provincia, Campania Minor. ¹⁵

¹ *qui totius urbis (sic) victores, A.; qui totius orbis luctatores, C.D.*

² *multipli bello pene, A.C.D.*

³ *Gaio Julio, C.D.*

⁴ *subacta est, et sic occupata per Romanos, A.D.*

⁵ *A.C.D. add: "quando externæ ex diversis orbis terræ partibus gentes eam invaserunt."*

⁶ *Sentence otherwise very slightly altered in C.D.*

⁷ *Deinde] Primo namque, C.D.*

⁸ *dein, C.; deinde, D.*

⁹ *post modum, A.; postremo, C.D.*

¹⁰ *sibi sumpserunt, A.*

¹¹ *itaque in ea, C.D.*

¹² *Brabantia, E.*

¹³ *Aquitania, E.: it and other MSS. below have often Aquitannia, which is interesting, as showing the passage to the modern Guienne.*

¹⁴ *Alicervia, C.*

¹⁵ *The proper names slightly transposed in A.C.D. The account of Brabant is placed at the end of this chapter in A. and the Harl. version, but incongruously and inconsistently with the heading of the following chapter. The object in placing it here was to get a word beginning with F. as the initial letter of the following chapter. See the Introduction.*

tyme victours of alle þe worlde; but stalworpe men and wight,¹ þat wonede in Fraunce, ouercome hem in many batailles; but at þe² laste in Gaius Iulius Cesar his tyme Gallia, þat is Fraunce, was i-made soget, and so occupied by Romaynes aboute a foure hondred zere anon to þe laste tyme of Valentinianus þe emperour, whan dyuers men of straunge londes werred in Gallia. For first Wandali and Huni, þanne Sweui and Burgundi, þat beep of Sweuia, a lond of Almania,³ þat is⁴ Almayne. Þanne Gothi and Sicambri, þau Norpways⁵ and Danes made hem⁶ cheef citees in Gallia. In Gallia, þat is Fraunce, beep many prouinces and londes þat beep Braban, Flaundres, Pycardie, Normandye, þe lasse Britayne, Peyto, Gyan, Angeoye, Gasquyn,⁷ Burgoyne,⁸ Salina, Prouincia, Campania þe lasse, þat is⁹ Champayn. And Aluarn also is in Fraunce. Flan-

TREVISA.

men occupyede late Fraunce, whiche allemoste contriuede the Romanes and victores of this worlde with mouy batelles. At the laste Fraunce was subacte to Iulius Cesar, and occupyede by Romanes by cccc. yere, vn to the laste tymes of Valentinian themperoure, when straunge peple of diuerse partes of the worlde entrede in to hit. Firste Wandalinges and Hunes, after that men of Sveuia and of Burguyne, after whom Gothi and Sicambri, after theyme men of Norwegia and Danes, and toke theire places in hit. In whiche Fraunce be these prouinces, Braban, Flandres, Pikardy, Normandy, Breteyne the lesse, Gyon, Pictaui, Gascuyn, Burguyn, Aluerne, Salina, Prouince the lesse, Campanye. Brabancia is sette at the sowthe este off Flandres, a copious londe, and habundant in marchaundise, and specially in colourenge wolles in diuerse coloures, whiche they receyve from Englonde, and sende the clothes in to diuerse prouinces. Thauþe Englonde haue the beste wolles, neuertheless hit hathe not suche waters to make colores with as is in Flandres or in Brabayn. At London is a welle, and a determinate place in the ryuer that is abowte Lincolne, thro helpe of whom nowble scarlet is made.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ wight, a.² Cx., as usual, omits þe.³ So a., Cx.; *Alemanii*, MS.⁴ is] Added from Cx.⁵ So a., Cx.; *Norwaye*, MS.⁶ hem self, Cx., who omits cheef.⁷ Gascoign, Cx.⁸ Burgun, a.⁹ is] Added from a.

CAP. XXVIII.¹*De Provinciis Franciæ.*

De Brabantia.

BRABANTIA ad Eurum Flandriæ situatur, terra mercibus copiosa, potissime lanis ordiendis instar Flandriæ indulget, quo fit ut lanas quas de Anglia recipit in pannos multicolores convertit, multisque provinciis refundit. Quamvis enim Anglia lanas optimas producat, aquas tamen tincturæ tam accommodas sicut Flandria, vel Brabantia, non habet. Est tamen apud Londonium fons quidam, et apud Lincolniam determinatus locus in rivulo per transversum urbis decurrente, quorum ope optimum scarletum efficitur.²

De Flandria.

Flandria provincia Galliæ Belgiæ juxta litus oceani constituta, a septentrione habet Frisiam, ab ortu Germaniam, a meridie Picardiam, ab occasu oceanum et borealem partem Angliæ; et licet Flandria situ sit parva, multis tamen commoditatibus est referta,³ utpote pascuis, armentis, mercimoniis, amnibus,⁴ portubus marinis et urbibus inclita.⁵ Gens ejus elegans, fortis, facunda,⁶ locuples,⁷ ad domesticos pacifica, ad extraneos fida,⁸ opere lanifico præclara, quo toti pene Europæ subministrat. Terra quidem plana, sed⁹ silvis rara; quarum vicem suppleant glebæ de locis ejus palustribus effossæ, viliores¹⁰ quidem quam ligna quoad¹¹ cinerem et¹² graviore ad odorem.

¹ Cap. 28 does not appear in C., but the following chapter is numbered 29. Instead of cap. 28, the following occurs: "De Gallia dicit "Entropius experimento deprehensum esse, quod sicut eorum virtus "primo impetu majorem quam virorum, ita sequens minor est quam "fœminarum. Burgundia dicta," &c. Here follows the piece about Burgundy at the end of cap. 28, slightly altered, and after that the piece about a well in Brittany, &c. (see p. 292), also slightly altered. So also D., except that the chapters are not numbered.

² The description of Brabant, which Higden evidently intended to write, is given in A. only, and in the versions.

³ *refecta*, B.

⁴ *amnibus*] om. A.

⁵ *inclitis*, B.

⁶ So B.; *secunda*, A.F., and the versions.

⁷ *locuplex*, A.F.

⁸ *fida*] Added from A B.

⁹ *et*] *sed et*, E.

¹⁰ *viliozem*, E. (clerical error.)

¹¹ *ad*, B.

¹² *sed*, B.

dria, pat is Flaundres, a prouince of Gallia Belgica,¹ and Trevisa. is vppon pe brynke² of pe see of ocean, and hap in pe north side Frisia, in pe est Germania, in pe soupe Pycardie, in pe west ocean, in³ pe norþ a party of Engeloud. And pey³ Flaundres be a litel lond, it is ful plenteuous of meny profitable pinges, and⁴ of richesse of pasture, of bestes, of marchaundise, of ryueres, of hauenes of pe see, and of good townes. Pe men of Flaundres beep faire, stronge, and riche; and bringep forth meny children, and beep pesible⁵ to hir neighebores, trewe⁶ to straungeres, noble craftes⁷ men, and greet makeres of cloþ pat pey sendep⁸ aboute wel ny³, al⁹ Europa. Pe lond is pleyne and skarse of wode; perfore in stede of wode pey brennep torfes, pat smellep wors pan wode, and makep fouler askes.¹⁰ Braban is by south est Flaundres, and is plenteuous of marchaundise and of¹¹ makynge of clooth. For of wolfe,¹² pat pey hauep out of Engelond pey¹³ makep cloop of dyuers coloures and sendep in to opere¹⁴ prouinces and londes, as Flaundres doop. For pey Engelonde haue wolfe at pe beste, he¹⁵ hap nouȝt so grete plente of good water for dyuers coloures and hewes as Flaundres hap and Braban. Neuerpeles at Londoun is oon welle pat helpep¹⁶ wel to make good scarlet, and so is at Lyncolne in¹⁷ certeyne place in pe brook pat

Of Flandres. Capitulum vicesimum octavum.

FLANDRIA is a prouince of Fraunce callede Francia Bel-
gica, sette nye to the side of the ocean, hauenge on the
northe to hit Friselonde, on the este Almayne, on the sowthe
Pikardy, and on the weste parte to hit the ocean and the
northe parte of Englonde. And thauȝhe Flandres be lytelle in
quantite, neuerpelesse hit is replete with mony commodites, as
with pastures, bestes, marchandise, waters, hauenes or portes
of the see, and nowble in cites. The peple of hit be semely
in stature, myȝhty, plentuus, and ryche, kepenge peace to
men of theire cuntre, feitheful to straungeors, and excel-
lente in worchynge and laborenge in wolfe that serueth
allemoste alle Europe. That londe is playne, hauenge fewe
woodes, whiche gete turfes of the marras grownde to fulle-
fille the stede of woode, whiche be more vile then woode

MS. HARL.
2261.

f. 46.

¹ So a.; *Bellica*, MS.

² *coste*, Cx.

³ a. and Cx. add *and*.

⁴ *and*] om. Cx.

⁵ *pesibel*, a.

⁶ *and trewe*, a., Cx.

⁷ *crafty men*, Cx.

⁸ *whiche is sante*, Cx.

⁹ *in al*, a. and Cx.

VOL. I.

¹⁰ *ashes*, Cx. (as usual.)

¹¹ *of*] om. Cx.

¹² *the wulle*, Cx.

¹³ *pey*] added from Cx. (*they*.)

¹⁴ So a. and Cx.; *dyuers*, MS.

¹⁵ *it*, Cx.; *bei*, a.

¹⁶ So a. and Cx.; *clepeþ*, MS.

¹⁷ *in*] *one*, Cx.

De Picar-
dia.

Picardia Galliae provincia, ab oppido Pontico quod nunc Phiten dicitur¹ sic vocata,² ut vult Herodotus,³ nobilia habet castra; scilicet Ambianum, Belgis, sive Belvacum, Attrabatum, Tornacum.⁴ Jacet⁵ inter Flandriam ab aquilone et Normanniam ad⁶ austrum, habens ad occasum fretum Gallicum et australem Angliæ partem. Est autem duplex Picardia, superior quæ Galliae magis est⁷ propinqua, alia inferior quæ Flandriæ est contigua et Brabantiae finibus, cujus gens astuta est et⁸ grossioris linguae quam aliae partes Franciæ.

De Nor-
mannia.

Normannia, quæ et Neustria a Noricis, id est Norvagenis,⁹ proprie est dicta, qui navigantes a¹⁰ Dacia et Norvegia¹¹ litus¹² Gallici oceani obtinuerunt et partem illam Normanniam vocaverunt. Cujus metropolis est Rothomagus, super ostium Sequanæ fluminis ubi cadit in oceanum situs; habet ad austrum sui Britanniam minorem, ad occasum oceanum Gallicum, ad circium australem partem Angliæ.

De Bri-
tannia
minore,

Britannia minor denominata est a Britonibus bis

¹ nunc . . . dicitur] Space left in B.

² vocat, B.

³ *Erodotus*, MSS. Some other author is doubtless intended, and so below.

⁴ *Attrehant, Tornant*, A.B.

⁵ *ab aquilone* before *inter* in B.

⁶ *ad*] om. B.

⁷ *est magis*, B.

⁸ *et*] om. B.

⁹ *Norvagenis*, B.

¹⁰ *a*] So B.; *et*, A.E.

¹¹ *Norguegia*, A.

¹² *litora*, B.

passep by pe toun. Pycardie is a prouince of Gallia, and hap pat name of pe toun pat hatte Ponticus, and hat now Phiten; so seip Herodotus. Pycardie hap many noble castelles and townes, pat beep Ambyans,¹ Belgis, oper Beluacus, Attrebat,² Tornat; and liep bytwene Flaundres in pe north side and Normandye in pe soup side, and hap in pe west side the see and pe south side³ of Engelond. Pere beep tweie Picardies, pe ouer⁴ is nere Fraunce; and pe neper⁵ ioynep⁶ to pe endes of Flaundres and of Braban. Pe men pere of beep boistous men of dedes, and gretter⁷ speche hap⁸ pan oper men of Fraunce. Normandie, pat hatte⁹ Neustria also, hap¹⁰ pe name of Norwayes pat seilled¹¹ out of Norway and of Denmark, and gatt a contrey vppon pe clyues of ocean yn Gallia and cleped it Normandie. Pe cheef citee perof is Rowan vppon pe mouth of pe ryuere of Seyne;¹² pere Seyne torneþ into pe see of ocean. Normandye hap in pe soup [the lasse Brytayn, in the weste the Frensshe ocean, and in the north west the south syde of Englonde].¹³ Pe lasse Bretagne hap pe name of Britoons¹⁴

TREVISA.

as vn to esches, and more tedious to the odoure. Picardy MS. HARL. 2261. is a prouince of Fraunce, hauenge nowble castelles and hie, lyenge betwene Flandres at pe northe and Normandy at the sowthe, hauenge on the weste to hit the see of Fraunce and the sowthe parte of Englonde. There be tweyne Picardyes; the hier that is more nye to Fraunce, and the lawer that is contiguate to Flandres and to the costes of Braban. The peple of this Picardy is more wyle and of more grosse langage then other partes of Fraunce. Normannia or Neustria, callede Normandy, toke the name of hit of men of Norway, whiche, saylenge from Denmarke, opteynede and inhabite that grownde, callenge hit Normandy, the chiefe cite of whom is callede Rothomagus, nye to the floode callede Sequana, where hit fallethe in to the ocean, hauenge on the sowthe to hit the lesse Breteyne, at the weste the ocean of Fraunce, at the sowthe weste to hit the northe parte of Englonde. The lesse Briteyne toke the name of

¹ as *Amyens*, Cx.² *Attrebat*] om. Cx., who adds *and many other after Tournay*.³ Eleven words wanting in MS.⁴ *that one*, Cx.⁵ *and eyther*, Cx.⁶ *inneþ*, a.⁷ *grettre*, a.⁸ *haue gretter speche*, Cx.; *specheþ*, MS.⁹ *heet*, Cx. (who usually substitutes *is named*.)¹⁰ *and hath*, Cx. (typ. error.)¹¹ *sail*, Cx.¹² *ryuer Seyne*, a.¹³ The words in brackets added from Cx.; partly also from a.¹⁴ So a.; *Britons*, Cx.; *Brutus*, MS.

eam ¹ occupantibus ; primo, per Brennum fratrem Belini regis ; secundo, tempore Vortigerni regis Britonum, per Britones a Saxonibus infestatos, sicut in historia Britonum continetur. Hæc provincia habet ad orientem Andegaviam, ad aquilonem Normanniam, ad austrum Aquitaniam,² ad occasum oceanum Aquitanicum. *Giraldus in Topographia*. In hac Britannia est fons, cujus aquis in cornu bubali haustis si petram fonti proximam perfuderis tempore quantumlibet sereno, pluvias statim non evades.³ In Francorum etiam regno est fons juxta castrum Pascense masculorum usibus valde congruens, sed fœminis nequaquam ; cujus aquæ nullo igne nulla ⁴ arte possunt calefieri.⁵

De Pictavia.

Pictavia Galliæ Narbonensis est provincia, quam Picti, Angli, Scoti navigio impetentes⁶ inhabitaverunt, et nomen urbi Pictavis⁷ et regioni Pictaviæ indiderunt, sicut

¹ *eam bis*, B.

² *ad . . . Aquitaniam*] om. B.

³ *evadet*, A.B., in error. The paragraph appears thus in C.D.: *In Britannia minori est fons, cujus aquis in cornu bubali (bibali, D.) haustis, si petram ei proximam forte profuderis tempore quantumlibet sereno in continenti, pluvias non evades.*

⁴ *nullave*, B.

⁵ Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

⁶ *impertientes*, A.

⁷ So B. ; *Pictavi*, A.E. Both *Pictavium* and *Pictavæ* occur as the nominative. See Lloyd's *Dict. Hist.* and Hofmann's *Lexic. Univ.*

pat twyes occupied¹ pat lond. Fyrst by Brennus² pat was kyng Bellynus his broper,³ and eftre sones by Britons pat were pursued and greued by pe Saxons in Fortigerns⁴ tyme kyng of Britons, as it is i-write and conteyned in pe storie of Britouns. Dis prouince hap in pe est side Andegauia, pat is Angeoye,⁵ in pe north Normandy, in pe soup Guyan, in pe west ocean Aquitanicus, pat is pe see pat is by Gyan is side.⁶ *Giraldus in Topographia.*⁷ In pis Britayne is a welle; 3if pe water of pat welle is i-take in bugle⁸ horn and i-helte⁹ vppon a stoon pat is¹⁰ next to pe welle, by¹¹ pe wedir¹² neuer so faire anon it schal rayne. Also in pe Frensche men lond¹³ is a welle faste by pe castel Pascence, pe water of pat welle is swipe good¹⁴ for men and nouzt for wommen. No man can hete water¹⁵ of pat welle noþer wip fuyre ne wip craft pat any man can deuyse.¹⁶ Pictaia, pat is Peytowe, is a prouince of Gallia Narbonensis. Englischmen, Scottes, and Pyctes¹⁷ seilled and wonede pere and cleped pe contray Pictaia, and pe chief citee Pictaus, pat is Peiters, so seip Herodotus.¹⁸

TREvisa.

Briteynes occupieng hit twyes. Firste by Brennius, brother to kyng Belin. In the secunde tyme of Vortigernus, as hit is conteynede more plenerly in the story of Briteynes. That prouince hathe on the este to hit Gascuyn, at the northe Normandy, at the sowthe Gyon, at the weste the ocean of Gyon. There is a welle in that Briteyne, the water of whom ydrawen up in the horne of a bugle or of an ox, and caste on the nexte ston to hit, thauzhe the weder be neuer soe feire, hit schalle reyne anon. Also in the realme of Fraunce is a welle nye to the castelle Pascence, congruente to the vse of men, but not of women. The water of whiche welle can not be made hoote with eny fire. Pictauea is a province of Fraunce Narbonense, whom Pictes, Scottes, and Englischemen did inhabite, callenge the name off the cite Picta, and the name of the prouince Pictauea,

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ So a. and Cx.; *occupieþ*, MS.² *Birremus*, MS.; *Brenius*, Cx.³ *Bellinus* broder, Cx.⁴ *Vortegerns*, a.; *Vortigers*, Cx.⁵ *Andegoy*, Cx.⁶ *by the side of Guyan*, Cx.⁷ *toppiciis*, (sic) Cx. Reference omitted in MS.⁸ *in a bugles*, Cx.⁹ *poured*, Cx.¹⁰ *pat is*] om. Cx.¹¹ So MS., but probably by a clerical error for *be*, which a. and Cx. read.¹² *be pe welle*, a.¹³ *And in Fraunce*, Cx.¹⁴ *the water therof is right good*, Cx.¹⁵ *that water*, Cx.¹⁶ So a. and Cx.; *can do deuyse*, MS.¹⁷ So Cx.; *Puteis*, MS.; *Putees*, a.¹⁸ *Erodotus*, MSS. and Cx., as usual.

dicit Herodotus. Hæc itaque provincia per longum oceani projecta habet ab oriente Turoniam¹ quam flumen Ligeris præterfluit, ab austro Hispanias,² ab aquilone Britanniam minorem et sinum Aquitanicum, ab occasu oceanum. Gens ejus a Gallis, quibus sæpe immixta est, et etiam a climate, cui subjacet, mores attraxit;³ ut jam sit robusta corpore, venusta facie, animo audax, ingenio callida; quia,⁴ secundum Isidorum, Etymologiarum libro nono, secundum diversitatem cœli facies hominum, colores corporum, qualitates animorum existunt.

De Aquitania.

Aquitania ab aquis obliquis Ligeris fluminis dicta est, quod plurima ex parte terminus ejus est; cujus nomine plures particulares provinciæ comprehenduntur secundum Plinium. A septentrione et oriente habet Galliam Lugdunensem, ab euro et austro contingit provinciam Narbonensem.

De Andegavia.

Andegavia provincia Galliæ media est quodammodo inter Aquitaniam et Britanniam minorem.

¹ *Thuroniam*, A.

² *Hispaniam*, B.

³ *contraxit*, A.B.

⁴ *eo quod*, B.

Dis prouince strecchep longe wey vppon þe ocean, and hap TREVISA.
 in þe est side Turonia, þerby passēþ þe ryuer of Leyre, in
 þe soup side Spayne, in þe norþ þe lasse Bretaine and
 þe see of Gyan, in þe west þe see of ocean. Þe¹ men
 of þat lond drawēþ after þe maneres of² Frensche men,
 bycause þat þey beēþ i-meddled³ wip hem, and also by
 cause of þe contray þat þey wonēþ ynne;⁴ so þat þey
 beēþ now stronge of body, faire of face, bold of herte,
 and fel of witte. For Ysidre, Eth., libro nono, seiþ þat
 dyuersite of contrayes vnder heuene is dyuersite of face in
 man in strengþe, in colour, and in witt.⁵

De Aquitania.

Capitulum vicesimum octavum.

Aquitania, þat is Gyan, and hap þe name Aquitania of
aquis, þat ben *wateres*; for þe water of þe ryuere of Leire
 goop aboute a greet deel of þat lond. Many particuler
 prouinces⁶ is comprehendid vnder þe name of þat lond.
 Plinius seiþ þat he hap in þe north and in þe est Gallia
 Lugdunensis, in þe soup and est he strecchep to þe pro-
 uince of Narbon. Andegauia, þat is Angeoy, a prouince
 of Gallia, and is as it were in þe myddel bytwene Gyan

as Herodotus seythe. This prouince, proiecte by the longi- MS. HARL. 2261.
 tude of the ocean, hathe on the este to hit Turonea, whom
 the floode callede Ligeris flowethe abowte, in the sowthe
 parte of hit Spayne, on the northe the lesse Briteyne, on
 the weste to hit the ocean. The peple of hit kepe the
 maneres and consuetudes of Frenche men, to whom thei
 were immixte, and after the cuntre to whom thei be sub-
 iecte. For after Isidorus, Eth., libro nono, that the faces
 and coloures of men bene chaungede after the diuersite of
 heyn. Aquitanny is namede of the oblyke waters of that
 floode callede Ligeris, in whiche name mony other particuler
 prouinces be comprehendede, after Plinius, hauenge on the
 northe and of the este to hit Fraunce Lugdunense, towch-
 enge on the sowthe the prouince Narbonense. Audegauia
 is a province of Fraunce Lugdunense, as a meane betwene

¹ So a. and Cx.; þat, MS.

² ben of the conditions of, Cx.

i-melled, a.; by cause they medle,
Cx.

⁴ and of the countrey that is so
neyghe to them, Cx.

⁵ The last sentence is omitted in
Cx.

⁶ many a particuler prouince, Cx.

De Vas-
conia.

Vasconia est provincia sub Aquitania olim contenta, habens ab oriente¹ Pyrenæos montes, ad occasum² oceanum occidentalem, ad eorum planitiem³ provinciæ Tholosanæ. In alio latere propinquat genti Pictavorum, cujus terra satis est nemorosa et montuosa,⁴ vinearum⁵ ferax; quam Garonna fluvius a Tholosana⁶ parte separat, et juxta Burdegalam,⁷ quæ terræ illius metropolis est, oceanum intrat. Cujus⁸ terræ viri dicuntur Vascones, quasi Wacones,⁹ quos Pompeius Magnus, edomita Hispania deposuit de monte Pyrenæo et in¹⁰ unum oppidum congregavit, sicut tradit Herodotus¹¹ historiographus. Viri quoque loci illius modo Bausclenses¹² vocantur, corpore quidem agiles, animo audaces, pilis et arcubalistis utentes, ad latrocinia et depredationes proni, vilibus et fassis vestibus induti.

De Bur-
gundia.

Burgundia pars est Galliæ Senonensis usque ad Alpes¹³ Pyrenæos pene extensa, et dicta est a burgis eo quod Austrogóthi¹⁴ Italiam vastaturi ibi fecerunt

¹ *ortu*, B.

² *ad occasum*] om. B.

³ *planitiam*, B.

⁴ *montuosu et nemorosa*, B.

⁵ *et vinearum*, A.

⁶ *Tholozana*, E.

⁷ *Burdegalia*, B.

⁸ *Hujus*, A.B.

⁹ *quasi Wacones*] om. B.

¹⁰ *in*] om. B.

¹¹ *Erodotos*, MSS., as usual. Some other author is, of course, intended.

¹² *Basclenses*, A.; *Blasclenses*, B.

¹³ *Alpes Alpenninos* (sic) *Pirencos*, A.B.

¹⁴ *Austro*] om. B.

and litel Bretaine. Vasconia, pat is Gasguyne,¹ and was TREVISA.
 somtyme conteyned vnder Gyan, and hap in pe est side pe
 hilles Pyrenei, in pe west the west ocean, in pe soup est
 pe pleyn of pe prouince of Tholous, and in pe² oper side
 hit neighep to Peytow. In pat lond beep meny woodes,
 hilles, and vynes;³ and pe ryuer Garonna departe bytwene
 pat lond and pe prouince of Tholous, and entrep into pe
 see of ocean faste by Burdeux; pat is pe chief citee⁴
 of pat lond. Pe men of pat lond beep i-cleped Vascones,
 as it were Wacones. Pe Grete Pompeius⁵ put hem doun
 of mount Pyreneus, and gadered hem alle in to oon⁶
 towne, whanne Spayne was ouercome, so seip Herodotus,
 pe writer of stories.⁷ Pe men of pat lond hatte now
 Vasclensis,⁸ and beep swift and hardy, and vsep balles
 and alblastres⁹ and gladliche wolep robbe¹⁰ and reue¹¹;
 and so pey beep stronge peues. Pey beep cloped in slitte¹²
 clopis and foule. Burgundia is a party of Gallia Seno-
 nensis¹³ and strecchev anon to Alpes Pyrenei, and hap pat
 name Burgundia of borw¹⁴ townes pat Austrogothi bulde¹⁵
 per inne, whan pey keste¹⁶ for to destroye Italia. Dis lond

the lesse Briteyne and Aquitanye. Vasconia is a province MS. HARL.
 somme tyme conteynede vnder Aquitanny, hauenge on the 2261.
 este to hit the hilles Pirene, at the weste the ocean;
 whiche londe hathe woodes ynowe, and fulle off hilles,
 plentuous of vynes; whom the floode callede Garona de-
 partethe hit in parte from Tholosan, entrenge in to the
 ocean nye to Burdewes, the chiefe cite of that prouince.
 Men of that cuntre be callede Vascones, whom Grete Pom-
 peius makenge tame gedrede theyme in to oon lytelle
 cuntre, as Herodotus, the wryter of storyes, rehersethe.
 But nowe the peple of that cuntre be callede Basclenses,
 swifte of body, bolde in herte, vsenge dartes and crosse
 bowes or staffe slynges, prompte to thefte and robbenge, in-
 duede with fowle clothege. Burguyn is a parte of Fraunce
 Cenonense to Alpes Pirene extente allemoste, callede soe
 of townes and cites whom Astrogothes, wyllenge to waste

¹ Gascoyn, Cx.² that, Cx.³ wynes, a.⁴ whiche is chyef cyte, Cx.⁵ Pompeus, MS., a., and Cx.⁶ o, a.⁷ historyes, Cx., as usual.⁸ Basclensis, a.; Basclenses, Cx.⁹ arblastres, Cx.¹⁰ do robbe, Cx.¹¹ reeve, a.¹² slight, Cx.¹³ Senosensis, MS., a., and Cx.¹⁴ borough, Cx.¹⁵ bylded, Cx.¹⁶ purposed, Cx.

burgos, id est oppida. Hæc terra versus Alpes est frigida, ubi incolæ ex frequenti inundatione aquarum nivalium efficiuntur¹ sub mento turgidi et strumosi.²

CAP. XXIX.

De Hispania.

Trogus, libro ultimo, et Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.

Refert Trogus³ quod trigona sit Hispania universa,⁴ quam a septentrione Pyrenæi montes conjungunt⁵ Galliæ Narbonensi;⁶ ex omni reliqua parte circumfusione oceani et Tyrrheni pelagi pene insula efficitur. Duplex tamen est Hispania; citerior quidem⁷ incipiens a Pyrenæis saltibus per Cantabros apud Carthaginem Spartariam⁸ terminatur. Ulterior vero Hispania⁹ continet partem occidentalem usque ad fretum Gaditanum, ubi Herculis columnæ montem Atlanticum prospectant.¹⁰

¹ *officiuntur*, B.

² The preceding paragraph is slightly abbreviated and varied in C.D.

³ *Trogus trigonas quod*, E.

⁴ *Hispania trigona est universa*, C.D.

⁵ *contingunt*, B.

⁶ *Narbonensi*] om. C.D.; *Galliæ Narbonensi*, om. B.

⁷ *quidem*] om. C.D.

⁸ *Spartariam*] om. C.D.; *Spartariam*, MSS., and similarly below.

⁹ *Hispania*] om. D., which in other respects agrees with the text.

¹⁰ Transposed in C.

is ful colde toward Alpes Pyrenei; men pat woneþ toward TREVISA.
 pat side of Burgoyne¹ haueþ bocches vnder þe chyn i-swolle
 and i-bolled,² as þey he³ were double chynned, pat is
 bycause of greet colde of wateres of snow, pat melteþ
 among hem al day.

*De Hispania.*⁴

Capitulum vicesimum nonum.

Trogus, libro ultimo, et Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.

Trogus seip pat Trigonía⁵ is Spayne al hool, and þe
 hilles Pireney ioynep Spayne in⁶ þe norþ side to Gallia
 Narbonensis, and is i-closed in þe oper sides al aboute
 wip þe see of ocean and wip þe se Tyrrhenus. And so
 Spayne is wel nyȝ al an ylond, for he⁷ is byclipped wip þe
 see wel nyȝ al aboute. But⁸ pere beep tweye⁹ Spaynes;
 þe hyder bygynnep from þe pleynes and valeys of Pireneies,
 and streccheþ by Cantabria, and endep at Carthago Spartaria.
 Þe ȝonder Spayne conteynep þe west partye anoon to þe
 see Gaditanus; pere Hercules his pileres stondeþ¹⁰ by sides

Ytaly, made there. That londe towarde Alpes is colde, MS. HARL. 2261.
 where the inhabitatores haue swellenges vnder the chynne
 for the grete habundaunce of waters of suawe beenge there.

*Of Speyne. Trogus, libro ultimo, et Isidorus, libro quinto
 decimo. Capitulum vicesimum nonum.*

Trogus rehersethe that Speyne is iij. cornerde, or hau-
 enge iij. corners, whom the hilles Pirene conioynethe of
 the northe parte to Fraunce Narbonense, made on euery
 other parte as an yle thro the compassenge of the
 ocean and of the see Tirene. Neuerthesse there be ij. f. 47.
 Speynes. The nyer Speyne to theis costes begynneth
 from the hilles Pirene, and is endede at Carthago Spartaria.
 The forther Spayne conteynethe the weste parte to the
 see Gaditan, where the pillers of Hercules haue prospecte

¹ *Burgun*, a.

² *yswollen and bagged*, Cx.

³ *as though they*, Cx.

⁴ The Latin proper names in the
 three following chapters are more
 or less corrupt; they have been
 mostly corrected without noticing
 the readings of the MSS.

⁵ So a. and Cx.; *Trigania*, MS.

⁶ *in*] so a. and Cx.; and, MS.

⁷ *it*, Cx.

⁸ *Boote*, a.

⁹ *two*, Cx.

¹⁰ *where as Hercules sette his pylers*,
 Cx.

Hæc itaque¹ Hispania terra est plana castellis, equis, melle,² et metallis copiosa. Quondam vocabatur³ Hesperia ab Hespera⁴ stella vespertina, Græcos illuc⁵ dirigente. Demum dicta⁶ Hiberia ab Hiberno flumine. Tandem dicta est Hispania ab Hispalo flumine. Hispania octo⁷ habet provincias, scilicet, Tarraconensem, Carthaginensem, Lusitaniam, Galliciam, Beticam, Tingitanam, Asturiam, Arragoniam.⁸ *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.*⁹ Ista Carthago Hispanica dicta est Spartaria ad differentiam alterius magnæ Carthaginis quæ est in Africa, quam Scipio consul Romanus delevit. Sed ista Carthago Spartaria condita fuit ab Afris sub duce Hanibale,¹⁰ et cito post capta a Romanis; sed denuo totaliter subversa a Gothis, qui Hispaniam diu possederunt, potissime sub temporibus Honorii imperatoris. Hos tandem Sarraceni erumpentes ab Africa post tempora Heraclii imperatoris devicerunt. Sed et illi Sarraceni postmodum a

¹ *itaque*] om. C.D.

² *melle*] om. C.D.

³ *dicebatur*, C.D.

⁴ *ab Hespera*] om. C. (not D.)
The text should be *ab Hespero*, but the error is probably due to Higden himself.

⁵ *illuc navigantes*, C.D.

⁶ *dicta*] om. C.D.; B. adds *est*.

⁷ So B.; *sex*, A.D.

⁸ This sentence is slightly transposed in C.D. The names are somewhat barbarised in the MSS.

⁹ *tertio capitulo primo*, C.; *li. 1. ca. 1.*, D.; *cap. primo*, B. The true reference is to lib. xv. c. 1. § 30, and § 67. See Isid. *Hisp. Op.* vol. 4, pp. 200, 207. (Ed. Arev.)

¹⁰ *Hanibale*] Space left for word in B.

pe hille¹ mout Atlas. Dis Spayne is a playn lond and hap grete copy and² plente of castell,³ of hors, of metal, and of hony, and heet somtyme Hesperia of Hespera,⁴ pe eue sterre, pat ladde pe Grees pider and was her lode⁵ sterre. Afterward he heet Hiberia of pe ryuer Hiberus; but at pe laste he hatte Hispania of pe ryuer Hispalus. In⁶ Hispania beep sixe prouinces pat beep Tarraconensis, Lusitania, Gallicia, Betica, Tingitana, Asturia, Arragonia. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.* Dis Carthago of Spayne is i-cleped Spartaria, for to haue difference bytwene pis Carthago [and pe grete Carthago]⁷ of Affrica, pat Scipio consul of Rome destroyed. Afri, men of Affrica, made pis Carthago Spartaria in duke Hanybal his tyme: but sone aftirward pe Romayns took pis Carthago Spartaria,⁸ and at pe laste Gothi destroyed it al out,⁹ for Gothi were lordes of Spayne long tyme, and specialliche in Honorius pe emperours¹⁰ tyme. But afterward pe Sarecenes brak¹¹ out of Affrica and put Gothi out of Spayne after Heraclius pe emperoures¹² tyme.¹³ But pe Saracenyys were aftir-

TREVISA.

towarde the mownte Atlantike. That Spayne is a pleyne londe, plentuous of castelles, horses, of hony, and of metalle; somme tyme callede Hesperia, of the sterre Hesperia directenge the Grekes to hit. After that hit was callede Hiberia, of the floode callede Hiberus. But at the laste hit was callede Hispania, after the floode callede Hispalus. Spayne hathe vj. prouinces, that is to say Terraconense Lucitany, Gallicia, Bethlike, Tingitine, Astury, and Arragany. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.* This Carthago of Spayne was callede Spartaria vn to the difference of Grete Carthago, whiche is in Affrike, whom Scipio the consul of Rome destroyed, but this Cartago Spartaria was made of men of Affrike under Duke Hanibal, but after that hit was destroyed of the Gothes, whiche hade possession longe in Speyne, and specially in the tymes of Honorius themperoure. The Saracenes brekenge furthe from Affrike after the tymes of Heraclius themperoure ouercome the Gothes. Whiche Saracenes were de-

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ hille] om. Cx.² copy and] om. Cx.³ castelles, a., Cx.⁴ Espera, MS.⁵ lood, a.⁶ Hispalus. In] om. MS. After Hispalus Cx. adds, or of Hispanus, that Hercules ordeyned gouernour and kyng there.⁷ Words in brackets added from a. and Cx.⁸ Cx. omits the fourteen words preceding.⁹ al out] om. Cx.¹⁰ emperour his, a.¹¹ breck, a.¹² emperour his, a.¹³ The preceding sentence omitted in Cx.

Carolo Magno devicti occiduas partes Hispaniæ, quæ sunt Gallicia, Lusitania, amiserunt, orientales partes Hispaniæ solummodo retinentes.¹

CAP. XXX.

*De Insulis Maris Magni.*²

Gades
Insula.

APTE prima inter insulas magni maris Gades³ ponitur, quæ in occiduo fine Hispaniæ in fauce occidentalis oceani situatur, ubi oceanus magnus in terras erumpit, dividens Africam ab Europa; quam Tyrii⁴ de mari Rubro profecti occupantes lingua sua Gades vocaverunt, quod sonat *septam*, pro eo quod mari undique⁵ cingatur, centum et decem passibus a⁶ terra separata; ubi et Hercules posuit columnas mirabiles et memorabiles, tanquam in orbis extremo, quæ de nomine illius insulæ dictæ sunt Gades.⁷ *Hugutio*,⁸ *capitulo Gades*. Et

¹ The preceding paragraph from Isidore appears thus in C.D.: *Ista Carthago Hispanica dicta est Spa[r]taria, ab Afriis sub Hanibale condita, a Romanis cito post capta, sed postea a Gothis est subversa. Alia est Carthago Africa, quam Scipio delevit, C.D.*

² The sections are transposed in C.D., and much abbreviated. It is, therefore, impossible to collate them

minutely. The paragraph on Corsica is omitted entirely.

³ *Apte . . . Gades*] Apud insulas maris prima, B.

⁴ *Tirii* or *Tiri*, MSS.

⁵ *sepiatur sive*, B.

⁶ *a terra . . . Gades*] om B.

⁷ Abbreviated in C.D., and placed at end of the chapter; the paragraph from Hugutio being omitted

⁸ *Hugo*, B.

ward ouercome of Charles þe Grete, and lost þe west landes of Spayne, Gallicia,¹ and Lusitania; and hilde onlice þe este londes and contrayes of Spayne. — TREVISA.

De Insulis Maris Magni.

Capitulum tricesimum.

GADES is couenableliche first i-sette among þe ylondes of þe greet see, and stondeþ in þe west ende of Spayne in a mouþe of the west ocean. Þere þe grete ocean brekeþ in to þe ynner londes, and departeþ atwynne² Affrica and Europa. Tiries come, seilled³ out of þe Rede see, and occupied þat lond⁴ and cleped it Gades in hir langage, and Gades is to mene⁵ *byclipped*, for it⁶ is byclipped [al]⁷ aboute wip þe see, and is from þe lond an hondred paas and ten. Þere⁸ Hercules sette his pileres, þat beep wel⁹ wonderful, as it were in þe vttermeste¹⁰ ende of all þe erþe;¹¹ and þe same pileres beep i-cleped after þe name of þe ilond Gades also. *Hugutio, capitulo Gades.*¹² And þerof it come

viete of Grete Charles, and losenge the weste partes of Spayne, whiche be callede Gallicia Lucitania, receyuede only to theyme the este partes of Speyne. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the Yles of the Grete See. Capitulum tricesimum.

THAT yle callede Gades is put firste amonge the yles of the grete see, whiche is sette in the weste ende of Speyne, as in the mowthe of the weste ocean, where the grete ocean brekenge vp diuidethe Affrike from Europe; whom men of Türe occupyenge callede hit Gades, whiche is in there langage, *compassede abowte*, in so moche that hit is compassede abowte with the see, departede from the londe c. and x. passes; where Hercules putte mervellous pyllors as a memorialle in the extremite of the worlde, whiche be callede Gades, after the name of that yle. *Hug. capitulo*

¹ So Cx.; *Gallacia*, MS. Gallæcia is the ancient classical name; but Higden probably intended to use the later form Gallicia.

² a sonder, Cx.

³ seyling, Cx., which is better.

⁴ ilond, a.

⁵ saye, Cx.

⁶ he, a.

⁷ al] Added from a. and Cx.

⁸ There as, Cx.

⁹ right, Cx.

¹⁰ otmeste, a.

¹¹ of the world, Cx.

¹² Cx. gives the first sentence thus: —And to gyue knowleche that there is no place ne lond ferther westward that stronge man Hercules sette the pylers there by Gades; thenne estward from these pylers, &c.

inde inolevit, ut ¹ columnæ positæ a viris fortibus ² in illis locis, quæ supergredi ³ non possent, Gades vocarentur. Post has versus orientem Baleares insulæ, Majorica et Minorica situantur.

De Sardinia.

Deinde Sardinia insula ad austrum habet Africam, ad septentrionem Siciliam; quæ nec serpentes habet nec lupos nec venenum, sed herbam quam apium vocant, quæ homines ridere facit et ridendo interire.⁴ Hæc regio fontes habet calidos et salubres, quarum aqua latronibus cæcitatem affert,⁵ si sacramento præstito oculos jurantis attigerit.⁶

De Corsica Insula.

Corsica⁷ insula multis promuntoriis angulosa, gignens lætissima⁸ pascua et lapidem aconitem, habet ab oriente Tyrrhenum mare, ab austro Sardiniam ad triginta milliaria, ab occasu Baleares, a septentrione Ligusticum sinum et Liguriam Italiæ provinciam. Et tenet in longum⁹ centum sexaginta millia passuum, in latum¹⁰ vero viginti sex. Est autem insula illa dicta Corsica¹¹ a quadam muliere Corsa, quæ cum

¹ quod, A.

² fortissimis, B.

³ quæ transgredi, B.E.; quos . . . non possunt, A.

⁴ interimit, D.

⁵ confert, C.D.

⁶ tetigerit, C.D. The whole passage about Sardinia slightly altered in C.D.

⁷ Cortica, B.

⁸ latissima, A.

⁹ longitudine, B.

¹⁰ latitudine, A.B.

¹¹ Crosica, A., (which has *Crosa* below); *Corcica*, B.

pat¹ þe pilers, pat þe orped men and stalworpe setteþ in place pere þey mowe no furpere passe, beþ i-cleped Gades; þan aftirward² from pese pileres and from þe ilond Gades by³ þe ilondes Balears, pat hatte Maiorica and Minorica. þan is þe⁴ ilond Sardinia, and hap in þe soup side Affrica, and in þe norþ Sicilia, and hap noþer addres noþer venym, but þey haue⁵ an herbe pat hatte apium, pat⁶ makeþ men laughe hem selue to dep. Þis lond⁷ hap hoot welles and heleful⁸ pat makeþ⁹ þeues blynde, and þey forswere hemself and touche hir eizen wip þe water of pilke welles.¹⁰ Þe ilond Corsica is cornered wip many forlondes schetyng¹¹ in to the see; þerynne is noble lese and pasture for bestes; þereynne is a stone pat hatte aconites.¹² Corsica hap in þe est side þe see Tyrrenus, in þe soup þe ylond Sardinia pritty mile pennes, in þe west þe ylondes Balears, and in þe norþ þe see Ligusticus and Liguria a prouince of Italia, and is eizte score myle in lenþe and sixe and twenty in brede, and hap pat name Corsica of a womman pat heet¹³ Cors. Þis

TREVISA.

Gades. Where of a consuetude was taken, that pyllers sette of myȝhty men in those places whiche myȝhte not be paste were calledde Gades. After these the yles callede Balears, Maiorica and Minorica, be sette towards the este. After theyme the yle callede Sardinia, hauenge on the sowthe to hit Affrike, at the northe Sicille; in whiche yle be noo serpentis, neither venom, but an herbe whiche thei calle apium, causenge a man to laȝhe, and in laȝhenge to dye. That region hathe hoot welles and whollesom, the water of whom causethe blyndenesse to theves, after the sacramente recevede, if his eies be towchede with water there of. Corsica is an yle gendrenge nowble pastures, and a ston callede aconites; hauenge on the este to hit the see Tirene, and of the weste the yles callede Balears, at the sowthe Liguria, a prouince of Italy; hauenge in longitude a c. lx. m. passes, and in latitude xxvi. m. passes. That yle, callede Corsica, toke the name of hit of a woman

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ þat] Added from a.
² estward, read by Cx., is probably right.

³ þen, Cx. (in the same sense.)

⁴ is there the, Cx.

⁵ þei hap, a.; ther growth, Cx.

⁶ whiche, Cx.

⁷ ylond, a. and Cx.

⁸ holsom, Cx.

⁹ which water maketh, Cx.

¹⁰ theys and men that forswere hem self blynde, yf theyr eyen touche the water of thylike welles, Cx.

¹¹ stretchyng, Cx.

¹² aconites, MS.

¹³ heȝht, Cx., and highte below, contrary to his custom.

videret taurum suum a reliquo armento frequenter discedere ac mari¹ transito melius refectum redire, navicula ascensa taurum usque ad insulam illam subsecuta² est, cujus fertilitate agnita Ligures³ illuc primo⁴ adduxit.

De Arado
insula.

Aradia sive Aradium⁵ est insula, quæ tota est civitas, non longe ab urbe Tyro,⁶ viros habet nauticos in pugna⁷ validissimos.

De insulis
Cycladi-
bus.

Cyclades insulæ, numero⁸ quinquaginta tres,⁹ sic vocantur a *cyclon*¹⁰ Græce, quod est *circulus* Latine, quia quasi in orbem, id est circulum, circa Delon insulam sitæ sunt.¹¹ Aliqui dicunt eas¹² sic vocari propter scopulos qui in circuitu earum sunt. Harum prima ad orientem¹³ est Rhodus, et finiuntur versus septentrionem in littore Asiæ minoris; habent quoque ab austro in boream millia quinquaginta, ab ortu vero ad occasum millia¹⁴ ducenta.¹⁵ Media autem illarum est Delos,¹⁶ quod sonat *manifestum*, eo quod post diluvium ante alias terras fuerit¹⁷ a sole illuminata. Ipsa etiam

¹ et mare, B.

² secuta, B.

³ Ligureos, B.

⁴ post, B.

⁵ Gradia sive Gradium, B. The only correct form is *Aradus*, which is, therefore, adopted in the marginal summary, where the MSS. have *Aradia*.

⁶ a Tyro, C.

⁷ bellis navalibus, C.D.

⁸ in numero, A.

⁹ numero quinquaginta tres] om. B.

¹⁰ siclon, A.; ciclon, E. Higden should have written *cyclos*. The derivation is omitted in D.

¹¹ statuuntur, D.

¹² Aliqui tamen volunt eas, A.B.

¹³ ab austro, D.

¹⁴ So B.; milliaria, E.

¹⁵ 220 D., which omits the remainder of the paragraph.

¹⁶ Delon, MSS., and so below.

¹⁷ fuerat, A.

Corsa hadde a bole pat ofte lefte companye of oper bestes, and swam in to pat ilond and com home in wel¹ better poynt pan he zede² oute. Corsa say³ pat, and wayted hir tyme, and took a boot, and folwed⁴ pe bole in to pat ilond, and sey⁵ pat pere was good⁶ lond for to bere corne and gras, and brouzt pider first men pat were i-cleped Ligures. Aradia, pat hap⁷ Aradium also, is an ilonde pat is al oon citee nouzt fer from pe citee Tyrus, and hap many schip men pat beep ful stronge in fiztinge. Cyclades beep many ilondes to gedres, pre and fifty, and beep⁸ so i-cleped of pat Grew word ciclon pat⁹ is a cercle in¹⁰ Englishe. For pey beep i-sette all rounde as it were a cercle aboute pe ilond pat hatte Delon. Nopeles som men seip pat pei beep so i-cleped by cause of hiȝe rokkes pat beep al aboute hem. Pe firste of hem is Rode¹¹ toward pe est; and pese¹² ilondes endeȝ toward pe north in pe clyue¹³ of pe lasse Asia, and haueȝ out of pe soup in to pe north fifty myle, and out of pe¹⁴ est in to pe west two hundred myle. The myddel ilond of hem hatte¹⁵ Delon, pat is to menyng*e* *i-schewed*; for he was by schewed¹⁶ to fore oper londes after Noes

TREVISA.

called e Corsa, whiche seenge a bulle departenge ofte from other bestes, and to comme ageyne better fedde then other, meruaylede, and, takege a schippe, folowede the bulle in to that yle. The plentuosenes of hit knowen, sche brouzhte men from the prouince of Liguria to inhabite hit. Aradia or Aradium is an yle whiche is alle a cite, not ferre from the cite of Tyrus, hauenge schippe men, worthy men in batelle. There be liij. other yles, callede Cyclades, of this word, ciclon, in Grewe, that is, a cercle, in Latyn, sette abowte the yle callede Delon. Somme men wylle they be soe namede for stoness beenge in theyme. The firste yle of theyme toward the este is the yle of Roodes, and thei be finischede in the northe in the brynkes of the lesse Asia, whiche haue from the sowthe in to the northe a m. and lii myles, from the este to the weste iij. myles. The myddel yle of theyme is callede Delon, whiche sowndethe *open*, in that hit was illuminate of the son a fore other londes after

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ moche, Cx.² wente, Cx.³ sey, a.; sawe, Cx.⁴ folowed after, Cx.⁵ seie, a.; sawe, Cx.⁶ good] om. Cx.⁷ So MS.; is called, Cx.⁸ ar, Cx.⁹ of cyclon in Grewe whiche, Cx.¹⁰ and, a.¹¹ Rodes, Cx.¹² So a. and Cx.; pe see, MS.¹³ clyf, Cx.; and hath, below.¹⁴ pe] om. MS. Added from a. and Cx.¹⁵ is named, Cx., as usual.¹⁶ beschyned, a.; it was somtyme byschyne with the sonne, Cx.

Delos dicta est Ortygia, quia ortygiae, id est coturnices, ibi abundant.¹ Ibi quoque Latona² peperit Apollinem Delphicum.

De Samo
insula.

Samos vel Samia est insula ubi nati sunt Pythagoras philosophus,³ Juno, et Sibylla. Hæc terra albam et rubeam prodit argillam, unde fiunt vasa fictilia peroptima.⁴

De Cypro
insula.

Cyprus insula, quæ et Paphos⁵ sive Cethim, ab austro cingitur Phœnicis pelago, ab occidente mari Pamphylico, a circio Ciliciam habet, continet centum octoginta millia in longum,⁶ sed centum viginti quinque in latum.⁷ Ibi æs et æris usus primo fuerunt reperta,⁸ cujus terræ vinum est fortissimum.⁹

De Creta
insula.

Creta insula a quodam Creto indigena denominata est, quæ etiam Centapolis dicta est, eo quod¹⁰ centum urbibus quondam insignis fuerit.¹¹ Terra quidem Saturni et Jovis, quæ¹² de antiquo jure ad Græciam

¹ So B. ; *abundant ibi*, A.E.

² *Locani*, B.

³ *Pitagai philosophi*, B. ; *Pythagoras*, E.

⁴ *optima*, B. ; paragraph abbreviated in C.D.

⁵ *Phason*, B. ; *Paphon*, A.E.

⁶ *longitudine*, B.

⁷ *latitudine*, B.

⁸ *inventæ*, A.B.

⁹ The paragraph abbreviated in C.D.

¹⁰ *quondam* before *centum* in B.

¹¹ *fuerit insignis*, A. (but interlineated).

¹² *et*, B.

schippe. Þe same¹ Delon hatte Ortygia; for ortigie, (þat beep² coturnicies, curlewes,) beep perynne³ greet plente. Also pere⁴ Latona bore Appolyn Delphicus. Samos, þat hatte Samia also,⁵ is an ilond. pere ynne⁶ Pythagoras⁷ þe filosofre and Iuno and Sibylla were i-bore. In þat lond is whyte cley and rede cley;⁸ of þe⁹ whiche cley men¹⁰ makeþ erpene vessel good wip þe beste.¹¹ Cyprus þat ilond¹² hatte Paphon and Cithim¹³ also, and is byclipped in þe soup side wip þe see of Phenicia, in þe west wip þe see Pamphylicus, and in þe north west with Sicilia,¹⁴ and is eiȝte score myle in lengþe and six score and fyue in brede. Pere¹⁵ bras and craft of bras was firste i-founde. Þe wyn¹⁶ of þat lond is strengest of alle wynes. Creta þat ylond¹⁷ hap þat name of oon Cretus, þat wonede perynne. Þat ilond hatte Centapolis also, þat is a lond þat hap an hundred citees. For pere were perynne an hondred citees somtyme, and pere¹⁸ was somtyme Iupiteres¹⁹ and Saturnus

TREVISA.

Noe floode. That yle was callede other wise Ortygia, for MS. HARL. 2261. curlewes be there habundante, where Latona childe Apollo Delphicus. Samos or Samias ys an yle, where Pythagoras⁷ the philosophre and also Sibille the prophetisse were borne. That londe bryngethe furthe white clay and redde, of whom pottes or godardes be made. Cyprus is an yle, whiche²⁰ otherwise callede Paphon or Cethim, cincte on the sowthe parte to hit with the see of Phenicia,²¹ on the weste with the see Pamphilike, conteynge in longitude c. and lxxx. myles, and in latitude c. xx¹¹ and v. myles. There brasse and the use of hit were ffounde fyrste. The wyne of whiche f. 47. b. londe is moste stronge and myȝhty. The yle callede Creta toke the name of hit of a man inhabitenge hit, whose name was Cretus; whiche was callede somme tyme Centapolis, in that hit hade a c. nowble cites in hit. The londe of Saturne and Iupiter, whiche longede to Grece in

¹ same] Added from a. and Cx.

² ben called, Cx.

³ whiche ben there, Cx.

⁴ in that place, Cx.

⁵ otherwyse called Samia, Cx.

⁶ in whiche, Cx.

⁷ Pittagoras, MSS.; Pythagoras, Cx., omitting þe philosophre.

⁸ cley] om. a. and Cx.

⁹ þe] om. Cx.

¹⁰ me, a.

¹¹ vessel at beste, Cx.

¹² lond, Cx.

¹³ Cichym, Cx.

¹⁴ So MSS. and Cx. for Cilicia.

¹⁵ In that yle, Cx.

¹⁶ wynes, Cx.; who, however, has is below.

¹⁷ þat ylond] om. Cx.

¹⁸ þere] Added from Cx.

¹⁹ Iubiteres, MS. (not a.)

²⁰ Either whiche should be cancelled, or is inserted.

²¹ Fenicea, Harl. MS.

pertinet. Habet ad austrum mare Libycum, ad septentrionem¹ Græciæ æstibus allambitur, ab ortu in occasum porrigitur. Remis,² armis, sagittis prima claudit, litteris³ jura⁴ dedit, equestres turmas docuit, studium musicum ab Idæis⁵ dactylis repertum mundo tradidit et ampliavit. Oves et capras habet multas, sed⁶ cervos et capreas paucas.⁷ Noxia animalium genera, ut vulpes, lupos, serpentes nocuas nusquam gignit; quin etiam venenosa illuc allata moriuntur. At⁸ cum majoribus venenis careat, gignit tamen araneas⁹ venenosas quas spalangias¹⁰ vocant. *Orosius*. Continet in longum hæc insula millia passuum centum octoginta septem; in latum vero millia quatuor.¹¹ *Ranulphus*. In hac insula est una de quatuor labyrinthis, sicut infra dicitur.¹²

¹ *a septentrione*, B.

² *Remis*] plena, B.

³ *litteras*, A.

⁴ *jura*] om. B.

⁵ *ab Idæis*] Alcideis dali, B.

⁶ *et*, B.

⁷ *paucas et panteres*, B.

⁸ *Sed*, B.

⁹ *arenas*, B.

¹⁰ Higden should have written *phalangas*.

¹¹ *vi.*, A.B.

¹² The whole paragraph much abbreviated in C.D.; the latter half being omitted entirely. The Harleian version, on the contrary, contains the latter part, while it omits much of the earlier.

lond, and it¹ longeþ to Grecia riȝtfulliche² of olde tyme, TREVISIA.
 and hap in þe south side þe see Libycus, and in þe norþ
 side it is bygoo wiþ þe see of Gres,³ and streccheþ out of
 þe est in to⁴ þe west, and was þe firste lond þat was parfite
 and noble in craft of ores and of armes and of arwes,⁵
 and ȝaf lawe i-write in lettres and tauȝte horse men to
 ryde in rotes;⁶ and [þer was] musyk and craft of syngynge⁷
 of Ideis dactalis i-founde. Men⁸ of Creta made it more,
 and communede it in to⁹ oper londes aboute. In þat
 londe¹⁰ beþ many scheep and geet and fewe roos and
 hertes; þerynne is¹¹ no foxes noþer wolfes noþer addres
 noþer non suche¹² venemous bestes. And þat lond hateþ
 so venym, þat ȝif me bryngeth pider¹³ eny venemous bestes
 oper wormes out¹⁴ of oper londes he deieþ¹⁵ anon; but þeyȝ
 þere be no grete bestes of venym, ȝit þere beþ venemous
 attercoppes¹⁶ þat beþ i-cleped spalangia¹⁷ in þat ilond. Þis¹⁸
 ilond is eiȝte score myle and seuene in lengþe and an
 hundred myle in brede. In þis ilond is oon of the foure
 laborintus, as it schal be ynner more declared.¹⁹ *Treuisa.*
 For to brynge here hertes out of pouȝt þat hereþ speke of
 laborintus, here I telle what laborinthus is to menyngre.

olde tyme, hauenge on the sowthe to hit the see of Libya; MS. HARL. 2261.
 in whiche yle be mony schepe and gaytes or gootes, but
 there be fewe hertes and hyndes; gendrenge not foxes,
 wulfes, or nyous serpentes. And also bestes replete with
 venom dye anoon after thei be brouȝhte pider. Neuerthe-
 lesse that cuntre gendrethe gravelle with venom, whom they
 calle Spalingeas. *Orosius.* That yle conteynethe in longi-
 tude c. lxxx. and vij. m. passes, and in latitude a m.
 and vj. In that yle is also oon of the iiij. mases, as hit

¹ it] Added from Cx.

² Cx. reads thus: *For therin were somtyme an C cytees somtyme (sic), and there was Saturnus and Jupiter born, and were first kynges there, and of right it longeth to Grecia of old tyme, and hath, &c.*

³ and in the north the see of Grecia, Cx.

⁴ oute in to the eest, and in to, Cx.

⁵ crafte of rowyng with oores, armes, and shotyng with arowes, Cx.

⁶ routes, a.

⁷ lawe wreton, and taughte men ride on horsbak; and ther was the craft of musike and syngynge, Cx.

⁸ They, Cx.

⁹ ȝaf it in knowleche to, Cx., who adds: *That lond is now called Candia, after aboute.*

¹⁰ ylund, Cx.; and so elsewhere in the chapter, and conversely.

¹¹ be, Cx.

¹² ne such, Cx.

¹³ pider] om. Cx.

¹⁴ out] om. Cx.

¹⁵ they deyen, Cx.

¹⁶ and though ther be no grete venemous beestes in that lond, yet ben ther attercops, Cx.

¹⁷ So MSS. and Cx.

¹⁸ *Orosius seith that this, Cx.*

¹⁹ be sayd afterward, Cx.

De Sicilia. Sicilia insula aliquando¹ vocabatur Trinacria quasi triquadra, a tribus montibus in ea prominentibus sic dicta, qui vocantur² Pelorum, Pachynum, Lilybæum.⁷ Deinde dicta est Sicilia a Siculo Itali fratre. Aliquando etiam vocabatur Sicania a Sicano rege. Habet quoque ab aquilone partem Italiæ, Apuliam, marino brachio nunc discretam;⁴ sed olim, secundum Salustium, Sicilia fuit Italiæ conjuncta, sed postmodum aut aquarum alluvione aut terræ motu ab invicem scissa;⁵ ita quidem⁶ quod fretum illud strictum, quod trium millium⁷ spatio Siciliam⁸ hodie distinguit ab Italia,⁹ Rhegium vocatur, quod Græce sonat ab-

¹ *aliquando*] aliter, B.

² *quia*, E.; *quæ vocabatur*, B.

³ *Libeum* or *Libium*, MSS. and versions.

⁴ So A.B.; *discretam nunc*, E.

⁵ *Habet scissa*] De Sicilia refert Salustius, quod olim fuerit Italiæ conjuncta; post hæc aut aquarum alluvione aut angustia

scissa est ab ea, D., where it occurs about the middle of the paragraph. The remainder down to *comædia* is scarcely at all altered.

⁶ *quidem*] om. B.

⁷ *miliarium*, B.

⁸ *Siciliam*] om. B.

⁹ *quoque*, B.

Laborintus is an hous wonderliche i-buld wip halkes and hernes,¹ wip tornynges and wendynges and wonderful weyes so dyuersliche and so wrynkyngliche i-wrozt, pat who pat is wip ynne pat hous and wil out wende, [pey he wende] wel faste oo wey and oper, hiderward and piderward, estward and² westwarde, norpward and³ soupward, whider euere pey drawe, [and] of [alle] pe weies chese pe faireste; pey he trauaile neuere so sore, al is for nouzt. For out goop he neuere, but he haue a craft pat nedep perfore.⁴ R. Sicilia pat ilond was somtyme i-cleped Trinacria, as it were pre square, bycause of pre hiȝe hilles pat beep perynne. Pe hilles hatte Pelorum, Pachynum, Lilybeum, and afterward was i-cleped Sicilia of Siculus pat was Italus his broper, and pat londe heet somtyme Sicania of Sicanus pe king; and hap in the norp side Apulia, a party of Italy, and is departed bytwene wip an arm⁵ of pe see and ioynede somtyme to Italy, and⁶ afterward was i-cloue and i-parted pere fram wip grete wateres oper wip erpe schakyng, so seip Salustius; and pe see pat is now bytwene Sicilia and Italy is pre myle brood, and hatte Rhegium, pat is to menyng, i-broke of.

TREVISA.

schalle be expressede afterwarde. That yle Sicilia⁷ was MS. HARL. 2261.
 callede somme tyme Trinacria, of thre hilles schewenge in hit, whiche be namede Pelorum, Pachynum,⁷ and Lilybeum. After that hit was callede Sicilia,⁸ of Siculus broper to Italus. Also hit was callede Sicania, of Sicanus kyng, hauenge on the northe to hit Apulia, a parte of Ytaly, now diuידede by an arme of the see. But after Salustius, Scicille was coniuncte somme tyme to Ytaly, but afterwarde hit was diuידede auȝer thro invndation of water, other thro the movenge of erthes, in so moche that a see diuידethe now Ytaly from Scicille by the space of iij. myles. That

¹ *hirnes, a.*² *and*] om. *a.*³ *and*] om. *a.*

⁴ In the preceding extract from Trevisa the words in brackets are added from *a.* Caxton's text has been very much altered thus: "For to late men haue knowleche what laborintus is, it is an hous wonderly buylded and wrought with halkes and huyrenes, tornynges, and windynges so diuersly by wonderful wayes and wrynclis, that who, that gooth in to that hows and wold come out agayn, though

" he retorne hytherward and thyderward eeste, west, north, or southward, whyther euere he drawe and for alle the wayes he can chese, though he trauaylle neuer so sore, he shal be so mased that out can he not goo, but yf he haue the craft that serueth therfore."

⁵ *departed fro that part with grete waters of an arme of the see or clouen by erthshakyng, Cx., who has slight variations in the words following.*

⁶ *and*] Added from *a.*⁷ *Pachynum*, Harl. MS.⁸ *Scicilia*, Harl. MS. (twice.)

ruptum. Habet quoque illud fretum duo famosa et fabulosa monstra, Scyllam et Charybdim. Scyllam accolæ saxum inari imminens¹ appellant, humanæ formæ similem capitibus caninis² succinctam fingunt, quia³ collisi ibi fluctus videntur latratus exprimere. Charybdis autem est mare vorticosum⁴ et naufragosum, ter in die fluctus evomens et ter absorbens.⁵ *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo*. Hæc insula primo omnium terrarum pro committendis seminibus fertur aratro fuisse proscissa,⁶ ibique primum inventa fuit comœdia. *Beda de Naturis*. Tellus Siciliæ cavernosa, sulphure ac bitumine strata, ventis pene tota et ignibus patet; spiritu quoque introrsus cum igne concertante, multis sæpe locis fumum, vaporem, seu flammam eructat;⁷ vel etiam, vento acrius incumbente, arenarum lapidumve moles egerit, indeque montis Ætnæ tam diuturnum est incendium. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo, capitulo septimo*. Ætna mons versus eurum et Africum⁸ habet spe-

Ætna
mons.

¹ *iminen* (sic), A.E.; *minans*, B.
Probably *eminens* is the true reading.
² *caninam*, A.E.; *succinctum*, B.
³ *qui*, B.E.
⁴ *vorticosum*, MSS.

⁵ *absorbens ter*, B.

⁶ *precisa*, B.

⁷ *emittit*, B.

⁸ So A.B.; *Affricam*, E.

In pat see beep tweie greet periles and ¹ wonderful and wel TREVISA.
wyde i-knowe; pat oon is Scylla, pat opir is Charybdis. —
Men of pat lond clepeþ Scyllam a greet stoon, pat is pere
i-seie aboue þe water, i-schape as a man, byclipped aboute
wip hondes,² and feyneþ and seieþ pat it semeþ pat þe wawes
berkeþ,³ pat betep pere vppon. Charybdis is a perilous
whirlynge see pat castep vp water and wawes, and swolowep
hem yn pries a day.⁴ *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* In
pis ilond me ⁵ erede firste wip plow³ for to sawe ⁶ in corn
and oper sedes, and pere was commedy a song of gastes
firste i-founde. *Beda de Naturis.* Þe lond of Sicilia is holow
and ful of dennes, and hap moche⁷ brymstone and glewe, so
pat the eier and feire⁸ hap wey i-now perto, and fuyre
i-closed in þe dennes and chenes⁹ wip ynne þe erpe stryueþ
wip þe ¹⁰ ayer and wip ¹¹ oper þinges pat beep contrarye to
þe fuyre and makeþ ofte and in meny places breke out a ¹²
smoke and brennyng leie.¹³ And somtyme the strengþe of
þe wynd pat is wip inne makeþ breke vp ¹⁴ hepes of graucl
and of stones; for suche doynge it is pat þe brennyng of
pat hil ¹⁵ mont Etna¹⁶ dureþ so longe. *Isidorus, libro quarto
decimo.* Pat hille mount Etna toward þe soup est hap
many chenes and holow¹⁷ dennes ¹⁸ wip inne þe erpe ful of

see hathe ij. famous wondres and fulle of fables, that be MS. HARL.
Scylla and Charybdis. This Scylla, as men dwellenge there 2261.
expresse, seyen that hit is a ston apperenge in the see
lyke to the forme of man with hedes lyke to dogges.
Wherefore thei seyne that thynges as to berke for the
collision of waters metenge there. Charybdis is callede
properly a turnenge water, and perellous for destroyenge of
schippes, evometenge waters thryes in the day, and de-
vourenge theyme. *Isidorus, Eth., libro quarto decimo.*
That londe occupiede tyllenge of the londe with a plowe
firste of alle other londes. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo,
capitulo septimo.* In this Scicille is the mownte callede
Etna,¹⁶ hauenge in hit towarde the sowthe weste pyttes of

¹ and] om a., Cx.

² hondes heedes, Cx.

³ So a. and Cx.; brekep, MS.

⁴ in agayn thryes in a day, Cx.

⁵ men, Cx., as usual.

⁶ sowe, a., Cx.

⁷ caues and moche sulphur or brymstone, Cx.

⁸ fire, a.

⁹ in the caues and in the chinnes, Cx.

¹⁰ þe] om. a.

¹¹ wip] om. Cx.

¹² greet, a.

¹³ to fyre, and that causeth ofte smoke and brennyng leyte to breke out in many places, Cx.

¹⁴ to breke oute, Cx.

¹⁵ hille that is called the mount, Cx.

¹⁶ Ethna, MSS. and Cx.

¹⁷ holw, MS.

¹⁸ chynnes and holowe dennes or caues, Cx.

luncas sulphure plenas, quæ ventum recipientes ignem gignunt fumosum. *Ranulphus*. In quo loco apparent figuræ et audiuntur voces gemebundæ, unde creditur a plerisque ibi fore¹ loca pœnalia animarum, quemadmodum Beatus Gregorius in suo dialogo videtur facere mentionem.² *Giraldus in Topographia*.³ Est in Sicilia⁴ fons, ad quem si quis rubro indutus vestimento accesserit,⁵ statim ad accedentis staturam prosiliens in altum aqua⁶ ebullit, ad alios prorsus colores immota.⁷ Sunt et in ea cicadæ alatæ arterias apertas sub gutture habentes, quæ melius⁸ (ut fertur) decapitatæ quam⁹ integræ dulciusque¹⁰ mortuæ quam vivæ canunt.¹¹ Unde et pastores terræ, ut dulciorem cantum ab eis¹² extorqueant, eas decapitare solent.¹³ In hac quoque terra urbs est Palerma,¹⁴ quæ plus certi¹⁵ redditus reddit annuatim regi terræ quam tota Anglia reddit de certo¹⁶ regi suo. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo*. Sunt in Sicilia fontes duo, quorum unus sterilem fecundat, alter vero fecundam¹⁷ sterilem reddit.

¹ *quædam loca*, B.

² The three foregoing citations, and part of the opening words of this paragraph, are thus abridged in C.D.
 "Sicilia habet ab aquilone Italiam,
 "marino brachio a terra Calabriae
 "separatam; quondam dicta est
 "Trinacria, quasi triquadra, a tribus
 "montibus. Demum Sicilia a Siculo Itali fratre, aliquando etiam
 "dicta est Sicania a Sicano rege.
 "Terra cavernosa et sulphurea;
 "in qua est mons Ætna (Ethna)
 "jugiter ardens. Sunt in ea sales
 "argentini (agergentini, D.) ad ignem solubilis in aquam (aqua, D.)
 "crepitanter."

³ *topicis*, A.

⁴ *ea*, C.D.

⁵ Transposed in C.D.; *cum indutus vestimento rubeo accesserit*, B.

⁶ *fons*, C.D.

⁷ *immutus*, C.D.

⁸ *in olivis*, B.

⁹ *vel*, B.

¹⁰ *dulcius*, B.

¹¹ *canunt* before *mortuæ*, B.

¹² *ab eis*] om. C.D.

¹³ *Isidorus Ethimologia libro 13* added in C., wrongly.

¹⁴ So C.; *Palerna*, A.D.E.

¹⁵ *certi*] om. C.D.

¹⁶ *de certo*] om. C.D.

¹⁷ *fecundam* after *reddit* in A. This sentence, and all that follow, except the first, are omitted in D.

brymston, þat fongep¹ moche wynde and gendrep fuyre TREVISIA.
 and smoke. R. In þat place beep i-seie dyuers figures
 and schappes and i-herd reweful² voys and gronynge.
 Perfore some men wenep þat soules beep pere in peyne,
 as it semep þat Seint Gregorie makeþ mynde in his dia-
 logo.³ *Giraldus in Topographia*. Pere is a welle in Sicilia,
 3if a man comeþ perto i-cloped in reed, anoon þe water of
 þat welle springep vp as hiþe as þat manis hede; and for
 oper colour and⁴ hewe þe water meueþ nouzt. Pere beep
 also cicade bryddes þat syngeþ at þe⁵ beste, and haueþ a
 pipe open vnder þe prote, and syngeþ better whan þe hede
 is offe þan while⁶ it is onne, and better whan þey beep
 dede þan while þey bep on lyue.⁷ Perfore herdes of þat
 lond byhedep hem forto haue þe swetter song. Also⁸ in
 þat lond is a citee þat hatte Palarna,⁹ and¹⁰ zeldep euery
 3ere more of certeyn rente to þe kyng of þat lond¹¹ þan
 þe kyng of Engeland hap of certeyne¹² rente of Engeland.¹³
Isidorus, libro tertio decimo. In Sicilia beep tweie welles,
 þat oon of hem makeþ a bareyn womman bere¹⁴ children,

sulphur,¹⁵ whiche receyvenge wynde gendre a fumose fyre. MS. HARL.
2261.
 R. In whiche place figures do appere and lamentable
 voices be herde ofte tymes; where fore mony men suppose
 that þer be places of peynes for sawles, as Seynte Gregory
 semethe to afferme in his dialogges. *Gir. in Top.* Also
 in Scicille is a welle to whom a man commenge in redde
 clothege anoon that water movethe vp, not movenge to
 other coloures. Also in hit be gresseshoppers, hauenge
 streyte veynes vnder the throte; whiche, hauenge their
 hedes kytte of, synge more swetely, as hit is seyde, then
 when thei haue their hedes, and dedde better then on
 lyve. Wherefore the schepardes, wyllenge to make theyme
 to synge swetely, kytte of their hedes. In hit is a cite
 callede Palarna, whiche yeldethe more rente yerely to the
 kyng per of, more then alle Englonde yeldethe to the
 kyng of certenty. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo*. Also in
 Scicille be ij. welles, oon of theyme makethe plentuous a
 bareyne thyng; that other welle makeythe bareyne a

¹ *ressemeth*, Cx., as usual; and
engendryth below.

² *rusol*, a.

³ *dyaloge*, Cx.

⁴ *and*] or, Cx.

⁵ *wel in the best wyse*, Cx.

⁶ *whan*, Cx.

⁷ *a lyue*, Cx.

⁸ *And*, Cx.

⁹ So MSS. and Cx.

¹⁰ *that*, Cx.

¹¹ *to þe kyng of þat lond*] om. Cx.

¹² *siker*, Cx.

¹³ *of al Engeland*, a.

¹⁴ *to bere*, Cx.

¹⁵ Perhaps *sulphure* is the reading
 of Harl. MS.

De insulis
Æoliis. Sunt et¹ in Sicilia sales Agrigentini, contra morem
alterius salis in² igne solubiles et in³ aqua crepi-
tantes. Item juxta Siciliam est insula Æola, sic dicta
ab Æolo, quem poetæ finxerunt deum venti, pro eo
quod ipse existens rector Æoliarum⁴ insularum, nu-
mero novem, ex fumosis et nebulosis vaporibus ascen-
dentibus prædicebat ventos affuturos, ac per hoc putatus
est ab imperitis ventos habere in potestate. *Ranul-*
phus. Hæ eædem novem insulæ dictæ sunt⁵ Vul-
caniæ,⁶ eo quod ignis in eis⁷ jugiter ardeat. Sunt et
aliæ insulæ in mari Euxino, quod magna⁸ pars est
Colchos. maris magni, inter quas famosæ sunt Colchos, ubi
Jason quæsit vellus aureum, sicut infra tangitur⁹
Patmos. circa bellum Trojanum; et Patmos,¹⁰ ubi¹¹ Johannes
relegabatur.¹²

¹ et] om. A.; etiam ibidem, B.

² in] om. B.

³ in] om. B.

⁴ Æolarum, MSS.

⁵ dictæ sunt] om. B.

⁶ vulcanæ, MSS.

⁷ in eis ignis, B.

⁸ magna] om. B.

⁹ tangetur, B.

¹⁰ Pathmos, MSS., as usual.

¹¹ sanctus, added in B.

¹² relegabat, B.E.

and þe oper makeþ a childyng womman barayn. In Sicilia is salt Agrigentinus,¹ wonderful and contrarie to oper salt. For þey² melteþ in fuyre, and lepeþ and sprankeleþ³ in water. Byside Sicilia is an ilond þat hatte Eola, and hap þe name of Eolus. Poetes feynede and cleped⁴ [þat]⁵ Eolus god⁶ of wyndes; for while he was rulere of⁷ nyne ilondes, euerich of hem heet Eola; by risynge of moisture of myst and of smoke he wolde telle whan it schulde reyne; and perfore men, þat koupe but litel good, wende þat⁸ he hadde þe wynde in his power and myȝt. Þe same nyne ilondes hatte volcane,⁹ that is *fuyre*,¹⁰ for fire brenneþ pere all wey. Pere beþ oper ilondes in þe see Euxinus.¹¹ Þat see Euxinus is a grete partie of þe grete see of myddel erpe; among þe whiche ilondes þe ilond Colchos is famous. Pere Iason¹² fette þe golden flees, as it is¹³ declared wip ynne¹⁴ aboute þe batayle of Troye. And Patmos¹⁵ is an ilond in þe same see; pere Seynt¹⁶ Iohan þe Euangeliste was, whan he was outlawed¹⁷ oute of oper londes.

TREVISA.

thynges plentuous. Also in Scicille is white salte, contrary to the nature of other salte, whiche, beenge soluble in the fyre, brestethe and brekethe in the water. Also there is an yle nye to Scicille callede Eola, takenge the name of hit of a man callede Eolus, whom poetes feynede to be god of wynde, in so moche that he, beenge gouerner of the seide ix. yles, seyde ofte tymes when wyndes scholde folowe by fumose vapores ascendenge. Where fore indiscrete men supposede hym to haue the wynde in his gouernaile and powere. These ix. yles be namede and callede Walcane, in that fire brenneth in theyme continually. Also there be other yles in the see Eusyne, whiche is a grete parte of the grete see, amonge whom the yle callede Colchos, where Iason did seche the fleese of golde, as hit schalle be towchede abowte þe batelle of Troye, ys moste of fame; and Patmos,¹⁵ where Seynte Iohan was in exile.

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ So a. and Cx.; *arigentinus*, MS.

² *it*, Cx.

³ *sprancleth*, a.; *sperclyth*, Cx.

⁴ *feynen and saye*, Cx.

⁵ [þat] Added from a. and Cx.

⁶ *is god*, Cx.

⁷ *of the*, Cx.

⁸ *therfore symple men supposed that*, Cx.

⁹ So Cx.; *vleane*, MS., a.

¹⁰ *fyry*, Cx.

¹¹ *Eusinus*, MSS. and Cx., as usual.

¹² *as Iason*, Cx.

¹³ *shal be*, Cx.

¹⁴ *after*, Cx.

¹⁵ *Pathmos*, MSS. and Cx.

¹⁶ *as seynt*, Cx.

¹⁷ *exyled*, Cx.

CAP. XXXI.

De insulis oceani.

De insulis
Fortunatis.

Plinius et Isidorus. Temperatæ sunt insulæ Fortunatæ in occidentali oceano positæ, quæ putatæ sunt a Gentilibus esse Paradisum propter soli fecunditatem et aeris temperiem. Ibi enim fortuitis vitibus juga collium vestiuntur et herbarum more messis et olus vulgo ¹ est. ² Proinde ob uberem proventum Fortunatæ dicuntur quasi felices, nam ibi sunt arbores usque ad centum quadraginta pedes porrectæ in altum. Ibi etiam est ³ insula Capraria, a multitudine caprarum et arietum sic dicta. ⁴ Et etiam insula Canaria, a multitudine canum sic dicta. ⁵

De Dacia
insula.

Dacia est insula boreali parti Germaniæ contigua, cujus gens quondam ferox et bellicosa, ⁶ propter quod Britannicas oras et Gallicas aliquando occuparunt. ⁷ Et dicuntur Daci quasi Dagi, ⁸ quia de Gothorum genere procreati. ⁹ Gens ejus copiosa, elegantis staturæ, et de-

¹ *vulgus*, B.

² The whole much abbreviated in C.D., in which the remainder of the paragraph does not occur.

³ *est etiam*, B.

⁴ *est*, added in A.B.

⁵ *sic dicta*] fortium nuncupata, A.B.

⁶ *gens pulchra et pia*, D.

⁷ *occupaverunt*, A.

⁸ *Dage*, B.

⁹ *de stirpe Gothorum descendens*, D.

De insulis Oceani.

TREVISA.

Capitulum tricesimum primum.

Isidorus, libro quinto. Insule Fortunate, (pat beep þe gracious ilondes, and beep of good temprure of wynde and of weder i-sette in þe west ocean and of som men i-holde paradys by cause of goodnesse of þe lond and of temprure of weder,¹) pere by² gracious tymes; þe hulles beep i-heled, and corne³ and herbes growep as it were gras. Perfore by cause of plente of corne and of fruyt þey beep i-cleped Fortunat, pat is, gracious: for pere beep trees of seuen score foot of heithe.⁴ Pere is þe ilond Capr[ar]ia, pat is þe ilond of Geet; for pere beep meny geet and wetheris also. Pere is þe ilond Canaria, pat is þe ilond of Houndes, [for þerynne beep ful meny strong houndes].⁵ Dacia, pat is Denmark, is an ilond pat ioynep to þe north side of Germania. Men of⁶ Denmark were somtyme ful sturne and goode men of armes; perfore þey occupied somtyme greet contrayes in Brytayne⁷ and in Fraunce, and hatte Daci as it were Dagi, for þey come of [þe]⁸ Gothes. Pere beep many men in Dacia, and beep faire

Off the Yles of the Ocean. Capitulum tricesimum primum. MS. HARL. 2261.
*Plinius, et Isidorus libro quinto decimo.*⁹

THE Yles Fortunate be temperate, putte in the weste ocean, supposede of mony men to be paradise for the temperaunce of the aier and fecundite or plentuosenes of the soyle; the hilles of those yles be clothe as by fortunable enchaunce with herbes and other commodites, for whiche cause men inhabitenge theyme calle them the f. 48. b. yles fortunate or happy. Where trees be extente in altitude by a c. and xliⁱⁱ foote. Where is an yle callede Capraria, namede soe of the multitude of stronge dogges. Dacia, that is callede Denmarke, is an yle contiguate or adnecte to the northe parte of Germaine, the peple of whom was cruelle somme tyme and bellicose, in so moche that thei entrede þe prouinces or costes of Fraunce and of Englonde; callede Daci, as Dagi, for thei come of the kynde of Gothes. The peple of hit is copious, of semely stature,

¹ of temperate weder, Cx.² So MS. and a.; ben, Cx., which is equivalent.³ covered with corne, Cx.⁴ hize, a., Cx.⁵ The words in brackets added from a. (not Cx.)⁶ of that, Cx.⁷ So Cx.; Brutayne, MS.⁸ þe] Added from a. and Cx.⁹ Both versions are wrong; the true reference is to lib. xiv. c. 6, § 8.

centis faciei et comæ, et quamvis contra hostes sæva, tamen erga innocentes pia; de uno notatur,¹ quod excessum potandi Angliæ² adduxit.³

De Wyntlandia insula.

Wyntlandia⁴ insula, ad occasum Daciæ, terra sterilis est,⁵ gens barbara et idolatra, quæ navigantibus ad eorum portum⁶ ventum vendere solent, quasi sub nodis fili⁷ inclusum;⁸ quorum enodatione ventus augebitur, ut voluerint.

De Islandia.

Islandia⁹ insula¹⁰ habet ab austro Norguegiam, ab aquilone mare congelatum; gentem habet brevilquam, veridicam, ferinis pellibus tectam, quæ piscationi indulget; eundem habet regem quem et¹¹ sacerdotem. Ibi sunt gyrofalcons et¹² accipitres generosi, ursi albi aquam gelatam rumpentes ut¹³ pisces extrahant.¹⁴ Hæc terra propter nimium¹⁵ frigus oves non nutrit nec

¹ notatur, B.

² Angliæ potandi, B.

³ The preceding paragraph abbreviated in C.D., the last sentence being entirely omitted.

⁴ Haulandia, C. (not D.)

⁵ est] et, A.

⁶ ad eorum portum] de prope, C.D.

⁷ sub globo fili nodosi inclusum,

C.D., omitting the remainder of the sentence.

⁸ interclusum, B.

⁹ Flandria, C. (not D.)

¹⁰ insula] om. C.D.

¹¹ et] om. C.D.

¹² et] om. A.

¹³ et, C.D.

¹⁴ extrahentes, C.D.

¹⁵ nimium] om. C.D.

of stature and semeliche of face and of here. And pouȝ¹ TREVISA.
 pey be sterne aȝenst here enemyes, pey beep to gode²
 men and trewe bope esy and mylde:³ but pat⁴ may not
 be forȝete, pat⁵ pey brouȝte grete drynkyng into Enge-
 lond. Wyntlandya, pat ilond, is by west Denmark, and
 is a barayne lond and⁶ of men mysbyleued;⁷ pei⁸ wor-
 schippep mawmetrie, and sellep wynd to schipmen, pat
 seillep to hire hauenes,⁹ as it were i-closed vnder knottis
 of prede; and as pe knottes beep vnknette,¹⁰ pe wynde
 wexep at her owne wille.¹¹ Islond, pat ilond, hap in pe
 east side Norþwey,¹² in pe north pe froren¹³ see, [that is,]¹⁴
 mare congelatum. Pe men of pat ilond beep schort of
 speche, trewe¹⁵ of hir wordes, and i-cloped in wyld bestes
 skynnes, and beep fissheres, and hauep al¹⁶ oon man kyng
 and preost.¹⁷ Pere beep girefaucouns and gentil haukes,
 and pere beep pe¹⁸ whyte beres, pat brekep pe yse for to
 drawe out fische. Pere beep no schepe in pat lond, and

beatuos of face; thauȝhe that peple be cruelle ageyne MS. HARL.
 theire enmyes, neuerthelesse hit is meke ageynes innocentes. 2261.
 Also oon thyng is attendede specially of the Danes, that
 thei brouȝte firste in to Englonde the excesse and surfette
 in drynkenge. Wytlandia is an yle at the weste parte of
 Denmarke, a bareyn grownde, inhabite with peple of barbre
 worschippenge ydoles; whiche be wonte to selle wynde to
 men commenge to theire portes as includede vnder knottes
 of threde, causenge the wynde to be encreasede after theire
 pleasure thro that threde. Islandia is an yle, hauenge on
 the sowthe to hit Norweye, on the northe the see conge-
 lede; hauenge also peple of schorte langage, couered with
 the skynnes of wilde bestes, ȝiffenge theire labour to fisch-
 enge, hauenge to theire kyng whom thei have to theire
 priste. There be grete fawkunnes and gentylle gossehawkes,
 white beres brekenge the water congelede to drawe owte
 fysches. That londe noryschethe not schepe for habundance

¹ peiȝ, a.² to god bope gode, MS.³ they ben esy and mylde to good men and trewe, Cx.⁴ pat þey, MS., a.⁵ but it may not be forgotten, that, Cx.⁶ and] Added from Cx.⁷ oute of byleue, Cx.⁸ þei] Added from Cx.⁹ that come to theyr portes, Cx.¹⁰ vnknytte, Cx.¹¹ theyr wille, Cx.¹² Norweye, Cx.¹³ frozen, a. 'not Cx.)¹⁴ Added from Cx.¹⁵ and trewe, a, Cx.¹⁶ al] om. Cx.¹⁷ preest, Cx.¹⁸ þe] om. a. and Cx., which is perhaps better.

De Thule
insula.

segetes, excepta avena. Et¹ distat hæc insula ab Hibernia sive a Britannia trium dierum velificatione.²

Solinus de mirabilibus.³ Tile⁴ ultima oceani insula inter septentrionem⁵ et occidentalem plagam post Britanniam ultima⁶ est, et⁷ ⁸ vix paucis nota habetur. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo*. A sole nomen habet, quia ab æquinoctio vernali usque ad⁹ æquinoctium autumnale sol semper ibidem præsens est, et nox nulla; et iterum¹⁰ ab æquinoctio autumnali usque ad æquinoctium vernale¹¹ sol semper abest, et dies nulla; quamobrem inhabitabilis est in æstate propter continuum solem, et¹² in hieme propter continuum frigus;¹³ quamobrem¹⁴ annona ibi¹⁵ crescere non potest. Ibi quoque¹⁶ mare est congelatum et concretum, quod nos stromum¹⁷ appellamus.¹⁸ Inter eam insulam¹⁹ et Britanniam sunt insulæ Scandia,²⁰ Lingos, Vergion.²¹ Ipsa tamen Tile²² sex dierum velificatione²³ distat a Britannia. *Giraldus in Topographia*. At²⁴ cum Augustinus, vicesimo primo de Civitate Dei, dicat Tilen²⁵ esse insulam Indiæ²⁶ cujus arbores folia

¹ Et] om. B.

² Transposed in C.D.

³ de mirabilibus] om. C.D.

⁴ So A.D.E.; Tyle, B.; Tila, C. Similarly the versions. Thule is, of course, intended, yet the correction can hardly have place in the text; (see below). In the marginal summary the MS. reading has been corrected.

⁵ septentrionalem, C.D.

⁶ ultima, B.

⁷ et] ut, A.; om. C.D.

⁸ C.D. here bring in Orosius, and then the reference to Pliny.

⁹ ad] om. C. (not D.)

¹⁰ et iterum] item, C.D.

¹¹ vernale] om. C.; ad aliud æquinoctium, D.

¹² et] om. C.D.

¹³ nihil ibi crescere potest, added after frigus continuum in C.D.

¹⁴ ideo, B.

¹⁵ ibidem, B.

¹⁶ quoque] om. C.D.

¹⁷ So A.C.D.E.; stremum, B.

¹⁸ vocamus, B.C.D.

¹⁹ insulam] om. C.D.

²⁰ Naudia, B.

²¹ Verigon, C.; Virigon, D.

²² Ipsa tamen Tile] Tyle, B.; et sex, C.D.

²³ navigatione, D.

²⁴ At] om. C.

²⁵ Tilen, B.

²⁶ Slightly transposed in C.D.

pat is for greet colde,¹ noþer corn but otes. Þat ilond is from Irlond and from Bretayne pre dayes seillynge. *Solinus de mirabilibus*. Tile² is þe vttermost³ ylond of ocean, by twene þe norþ and þe west cost by 3onde Bretayne, and wel⁴ fewe men knoweþ þat ilond. *Plinius, libro secundo*.⁵ Tile haþ þat name of þe sonne, for from springyng tyme whan þe day and þe nyȝt beþ euene anon⁶ to heruest tyme, whan þe day and þe nyȝt be euene eft sones, it is all wey beschyne wiþ þe sonne; and eft from þat tyme anon to þe⁷ springyng tyme aȝen, whan þe day and þe nyȝt beþ euene, it⁸ haþ no liȝt of þe sonne, but all wey derk nyȝt and no day. And perfore þe lond is nouȝt couenable for men to wonye ynne in somer for hete and in wynter for colde and derk;⁹ and bycause perof pere may no corn growe. Also pere the see is hard i-frore. By twene þat ylond and Bretayne beþ þe ilondes þat hatte Scandia, Lingos, and Vergion. Nopeles Tyle is sixe dayes seillynge oute of Bretayne. *Ranulphus, Giraldu in Topographia*.¹⁰ For Seint Austyn, vicesimo primo de Civitate Dei, spekeþ of Tyle, and seiþ þat it is an ylond of Inde, and seiþ þat þe treen¹¹ of Tyle leseþ neuere hire leues: but

TREVISA.

of colde, neither cornes, otes excepte. Whiche yle is from Breteyne by the sayleng off iij. daies. *Solinus de mirabilibus mundi*. Tyle is the laste yle of the ocean after Briteyne, betwene the northe plage and the weste, the knowlege of whiche yle is hade vnnethe of men. *Plinius, libro secundo*. That yle takethe the name of hit of the son, for from the equinocciale of Ver on to the equinocciale of herueste the son is allewey presente there, and neuer nyȝhte, and the son is absente also alleweyes from the equinocciale of herueste to the equinoccial of Ver. Wherefore hit is inhabitable in the somer, for the continualle presence of the son beyng there, and also in wynter, for contynualle coldenes beenge there, and for the absence of the son. Wherefore corne may not growe there. Betwene whom and the yle of Briteyne be oper yles, callede Scandia, Lingo, and Virgion. That Tyle is from Breteyne by the sayleng of vj. dayes. *Giraldus in Top.* Seynte Austyn, xxj^o. libro, de Civitate Dei, seythe that Tylis is an yle of Ynde, the trees of whom suffre not their leues

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ The six preceding words follow otes in Cx.

² Tile or Tyle, MSS. and Cx., and so below.

³ otmeſte, a.

⁴ wel] om. Cx.

⁵ Reference omitted in MS. (not Cx.)

⁶ at oon, MS.; unto, Cx.

⁷ þe] om. a.

⁸ about September, it, &c., Cx.

⁹ derknesse, a.; Cx.

¹⁰ So MS., a., and Cx.; but *Ranulphus* should be cancelled, or et added.

¹¹ trees, Cx.

non deponunt, æquivocatio nominum¹ non decipiat te lectorem,² quæ³ in recto reperietur non in obliquo. Illa enim quæ Indiæ est dicitur Tilis in nominativo, sed quæ occidentis est dicitur Tile in recto,⁴ teste Isidoro, Etymologiarum libro quinto decimo.

De Nor-
guegia.

Norguegia⁵ ab euro Daciæ et Gothiæ contermina ab austro⁶ habet Scotiam, ab aquilone Islandiam; insula quidem⁷ lata, mari undique cincta, regio aspera,⁸ frigida, montuosa, silvestris. Ibi⁹ rara annona, feri¹⁰ multi,¹¹ ursi albi, fibri, et castores. Cujus terræ incolæ plus piscatione et venatione vivunt quam pane. In cujus aquilonali¹² parte sol æstivo solstitio non occumbit¹³ per dies plures, et itidem in solstitio hiemali non videtur oriri; quo in¹⁴ tempore oportet incolas quod necessarium est¹⁵ operari cum candelis. In qua¹⁶ terra est fons, quo¹⁷ lignea seu¹⁸ lanea¹⁹ imposita per annum²⁰ in lapidem congelantur. Gens illa scrutatrix

¹ *nominum*] om. C.D.

² *non . . . lectorem*] Space left for the words in B.; *lectorem* om. C.D.

³ *quia*, C. (not D.)

⁴ *in nominativo*, C.D., ending the sentence there.

⁵ *Norvegia*, A.; *Norwegia*, B.D.

⁶ *euro*, E. only.

⁷ *quidem*] om. C.D.

⁸ *aspera*] om. C. (not D.)

⁹ *Ibi*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *fera*, A.B.C.D.

¹¹ *multa*, D. (not A., whose text

seems to be *annona fere*; *multi ursi*, &c.)

¹² So A.E.; *aquilonari*, B.C.D.

¹³ *videtur occumbere*, C.

¹⁴ *in*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *fuert*, B.

¹⁶ *hac*, C.D.

¹⁷ *in quo*, C.D.

¹⁸ *vel*, B.D.

¹⁹ *vel linea*, added in C.D. (the latter has *seu*.)

²⁰ *pro parte vel pro toto durissimum*, added in C.D.

be war þat pou be nouȝt begiled by liknes of names: for TREVISA.
 þat ylond of Ynde hatte Tilis in þe nomenatyf caas;
 and þe¹ ilond of ocean hatte Tyle in þe nominatyf
 caas, and beep liche in oper, as ȝif pou canst declyne
 pilke tweye names, and speke Latyn; so seiþ Isidre,
 Ethym., libro quinto decimo. Norway streccheþ somdel est
 toward Denmark and Gothia, and hap in þe soup side
 Scotland and in þe northside Islond. Þe ilond is brood,
 byclipped aboute wiþ þe see, and is ful scharpe and colde,
 and hap many hilles and woodes and² wyldre bestes, white
 beres, bausons, and brokkes, and scarsite of corne. Men³
 of þat lond leueþ more by fisshynge and huntinge þan by
 brede and corn. In þe norþ side of þat lond meny nyȝtes
 in þe somer tyme aboute þe styntyng of þe sonne, þe
 sonne goþ nouȝt down but schyneþ al nyȝt; and eft as
 many dayes in þe wynter aboute þe styntyng of þe
 sonne, the sonne ariseþ nouȝt for to ȝeue hem lyȝt; þer-
 fore al þat tyme þey moot do by candel⁴ what work þat
 hem nedep. In þat londe is a welle þat torneþ tree and
 leper in to stoon, and it be perynne from þe bygynnyng
 of a ȝere⁵ to þe ȝeres ende.⁶ Þe men of þat lond beep

to falle. Therefore, who so euer dothe rede this processe, MS. HARL.
2261.
 y wylle he aduertise that there be yles, the oon of theyme
 is callede Tilis, and that other is callede Tile, leste equi-
 uocation of the names deceyve hym. That yle in Ynde is
 callede Tilis, and that yle in the weste is callede Tile in
 the nominatiue case, Isidorus wittenesse, Eth., xx^o. Nor-
 guegia, that is callede Norway, is nye to Dacia and Gothia,
 hauenge on the sowthe to hit Scotlande, of the northe
 Island; a grete yle, and compassede abowte with the see, a
 colde londe, a bareyne cuntre, and fulle of hilles. There
 is litelle corne, mony beeres and brockes. The peple þer
 of lyve more by fyschenge then by huntenge, eitenge but
 lytelle brede. In the northe parte of that cuntre the son
 goethe not down in the solstice of somer by mony daies,
 and is not seen to aryse ageyn in the solstice of wynter
 by mony dayes. In whiche tyme hit behouethe men labor-
 enge to worche by lyȝhte of candeles. In that londe is a
 welle in whom woodde putte or wolle by a yere be con-
 gelede in to a ston. The peple of hit, serchenge the

¹ So Cx.; and in þe, MS.

² and] om. Cx.

³ In þe norþ side men, MS. (not a.
or Cx.)

⁴ they muste werke by candel light,
Cx.

⁵ aȝere, MS. conjunctim. Similar
instances occur elsewhere, and are
not always noticed.

⁶ and it abyde therinne a yere hool,
Cx.

oceanī vitam piraticam exercet; quorum expeditio navali fit certamine.¹

CAP. XXXII.²*De Hibernia.*

Quæ de
Hibernia
digna me-
moratu.

Erat Hibernia ab olim Britanniae jure domini³ incorporata, quam, duce Giraldo in sua Topographia eam⁴ ad unguem plenius describente, profusioribus laudibus congruit illustrare.⁵ Ad cujus notitiam liquidius consequendam viam aperiunt⁶ tituli subsequentes. Dicetur ergo:

De situ terræ locali: De ejus quanto et quali: In quibus terra sufficit: In quibus rebus deficit: De incolis prioribus: De incolarum moribus:⁷ De locorum prodigiis: De sanctorum præconiis.

De situ
terræ
locali.

Hibernia omnium insularum occidentalium novissima sic dicta est⁸ ab Hiberno Hispanico, fratre scilicet⁹ Hermonii, qui duo simul juncti¹⁰ eam conquisierunt;

¹ So A.B.; *cujus expeditio navali certamine est*, C.D.; last clause omitted in E.

² This and all the following chapters of the first book are contained in Gale's Hist. Brit. Scriptores xv., vol. i. pp. 179–212, Oxon. 1691. His readings, and occasionally those of his MS. (G.) are noted below.

³ So A.B.D.; *domini*, C.; om. E.
⁴ *eam* before *in*, B.

⁵ *illustrari*, B. The sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.

⁶ *aperient*, Gale (not G.)

⁷ *majoribus*, C. (not D.)

⁸ *est*] Added from A.D. and Gale.

⁹ *scilicet*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *simul juncti*] om. C.D.

schipmen and peues of þe see. *Treuisu.* For to knowe TREVISU.
 what þe styntyng of þe sonne is to menyng, take hede
 þat þe sonne styntep twyes a ȝere; ones a somer, whan
 he goþ no heiȝer; and eftsones a¹ wynter, whanne he
 goop² no lower; and so in eiper³ tyme is þe styntyng
 of þe sonne.

De Hibernia. Capitulum tricesimum secundum.

HIBERNIA, þat is Irlond, and was of olde tyme incorporat
 in to þe lordschippe of Bretayne, so seiþ Giraldu in sua
 Topographia. Pere⁴ he descryueþ it⁵ at þe fulle, ȝit it is
 worpy and semelich to preise þat lond wip large⁶ preysinge.
 For to come to cleer and ful knowleche of þat lond, pese
 tyteles þat folweþ oponeþ þe way: perfore first me schall⁷
 telle of [þe]⁸ place and stede of þat lond, how greet
 and what manere lond it is; where of þat lond hap plente;
 and where of he hap defaute; of men þat woned pere
 first; of maneres of men of þat londe; [of the wondres
 of þat lond;]⁹ of worpynesse of halewes [and] of seyntes.¹⁰

De situ Hiberniæ locali. Irlond is þe laste of alle þe
 west ilondes, and hat¹¹ Hibernia of oon Hiberus of Spayne,
 þat was Hermonius his broþer. For pese tweie breperen

ocecan, exercise the lyfe of schippemen; þe victory and MS. HARL.
2261.
 spede of them is by niȝhte in schippes on the see.

Of Irlonde. Capitulum tricesimum secundum.

IRLONDE was somme tyme to Briteyne concorporate by
 ryȝhte of dominacion, whom Giraldu describenge in his
 Topographye extollethe hit with mony laudes. The titles
 here folowenge expresse and schewe the way. Therefore,
 hit schalle be seyde of the site and place of that londe, of
 the quantite and qualite of hit, and the defawtes of that
 londe, of the firste dwellers of hit, and of the maneres of
 the inhabitatores of hit.

Of the localle site of Irlonde. Irlonde, the laste of
 all the weste yles, toke the name of hit of Hiberus
 brother of Hermonius, whiche coniuncte to gedre gate that

¹ a] at, Cx.

² no heiȝer . . . goop] Added from
 a. and Cx.

³ So Cx.; neiþer, MS. absurdly.

⁴ where, Cx.

⁵ it] Added from Cx.

⁶ larger, a.; Cx.

⁷ I shal, Cx.

⁸ Added from a. and Cx.

⁹ Added from a. and Cx.

¹⁰ of halowes and saintes of that
 lond, Cx.; and so a., omitting of that
 lond.

¹¹ height, Cx.

vel dicta est ab Hiberno flumine Hispaniæ occidentali.¹ Dicta est etiam aliquando Scotia a Scotis eam inhabitantibus, priusquam ad aliam Scotiam² Britannicam³ devenirent.⁴ Unde in Martyrologio⁵ legitur: "Tali die " apud Scotiam Sanctæ Brigidæ;" quod est, apud Hiberniam. Hæc terra ab euro-austro⁶ habet Hispaniam trium dierum⁷ navigatione collateralem; ab oriente habet Britanniam majorem,⁸ unius⁹ diei velificatione distantem; ab occasu habet oceanum infinitum; a septentrione Islandiam, trium dierum velifico cursu distantem. *Solinus*. Sed et mare quod inter hanc et Britanniam interluit undosum et inquietum est toto anno, et nisi paucis diebus vix enavigabile, in¹⁰ centum viginti millia passuum latitudinis expansum.

De ejus
quanto et
quali.

Hibernia insula post Britanniam maxima ab austro in boream¹¹ extensa,¹² a Brendanicis scilicet montibus usque ad Columbinam insulam, continet octo dierum diætas, quarum quælibet quadraginta milliarium existit; et a Dublinia¹³ usque ad Patricii colles¹⁴ Connacticumque mare in latum quatuor dierum excursus tenet; quæ in sui medio strictior est quam circa capita, sed¹⁵ econtra est de¹⁶ Britannia; et sicut Hibernia brevior

¹ sive ab Hebero flumine Hispaniæ, D.

² Scotiam] om. B.

³ Britannicam] om. C.D.

⁴ devenerunt, B.

⁵ So A.; Martilogio, D.E.

⁶ euro] om. C.D.

⁷ naturalium, added in C.D.

⁸ majorem] om. C.D.

⁹ noctis et unius, B.

¹⁰ in] om. C.D.

¹¹ in boream] om. B.

¹² expansa, C. (not D.)

¹³ Dublinia, B.D.

¹⁴ colles Patricii, B.

¹⁵ sed] om. C.D.

¹⁶ de] om. G. and Gale.

gat and whan¹ pis lond by conquest. Oper it hatte Hibernia TREVISA.
 of pat ryuer Hiberus, pat is in pe west ende of Spayne.
 And pat londe hatte Scotland also, for Scottes woned pere
 somtyme, or pey come into pe² oper Scotland, pat longede
 to Bretayne. Perfore it is i-write in pe martiloge: "Suche
 "a day in Scotland Seint Bryde was i-bore;" and pat
 was in Irlond. Pis lond hap in pe soup est side Spayne
 pre dayes seillynge pennes aside half, and hap in pe est
 side pe more³ Bretayne, pennes a dayes seillynge; in
 pe west side he hap pe endeles ocean, and in pe norp
 side Iselond pre dayes seillynge pennes. *Solinus*. But
 pe see pat is bytwene Bretayne and Irlond is al pe zere
 ful of greet wawes and vnesy, so pat me may seelde siker-
 liche seille bytwene. Pat see is six score myle brood.

De ejus quanto et quali. Irland is an iland grettest
 after Bretayne, and strecchep norþward from Brendans
 hilles anon to pe ylond Columbyna, and conteyneþ eiȝte
 dayes iorneis, euerich iorney of fourty myle. And from
 Deuelyn to Patrykes hilles and to pe see in pat side in
 brede is⁴ foore iorneyes. And Irlond is narwer in pe myd-
 del pan in pe endes, al operwise pan Bretayne is i-schape.

londe. Or elles hit was namede of a weste floode of MS. HARL.
2261.
 Speyne callede Hiberus. And hit was callede also Sco-
 tia, of Scottes inhabitenge hit or that thei come to that
 other Scotlande. Wherefore hit is redde in the marti-
 logge: "Suche a day at Scotlande Seynte Brigida,"
 whiche was at Irlonde. That londe hathe on the southe
 este to hit Spayne by the sailenge of thre dayes from hit
 as colaterally, and on the este to hit the more Briteyne
 beenge from hit by the sayleng of oon day, and on the
 weste to hit the ocean infinite, of the north Islelande from
 hit by the sayleng of iij. dayes. *Solinus*. The see that
 departethe hit from Briteyne is perellous and fulle of water,
 and inquiete of alle the yere, and vnnethe able to be passede
 with schippes in eny tyme; extente in latitude cxx^d m.
 passes.

Of the quantite and qualite of hit. The yle of Irlonde,
 after Briteyne moste extendede in to the northe, conteyn-
 ethe from Brendan hille to the yle callede Columbina
 xvi^{xx}. myles, and from Dublyn to the hilles of Seynte
 Patrikke viij^{xx}. myles, whiche londe is more streyte in
 the myddes then at the endes, but hyt is in contrary

¹ wan, a., Cx.

² that, Cx.

³ So a. and Cx.; more half, MS.

⁴ is] Added from Cx.; ben would
 be more correct. Several minute
 variations below are unnoticed.

est ad boream quam Britannia, ita productior est ad austrum. Terra quidem inæqualis,¹ montuosa, pluviosa,² ventosa, mollis,³ et silvestris; per latera maritima valde demissa; introrsus⁴ montana et sabulosa. *Solinus*. Alias ita pabulosa ut pecora ibidem, nisi⁵ a pascuis interdum⁶ arceantur, ad periculum agat satietas.⁷ *Giraldus*.⁸ Indigenarum sanitas continua, advenarum quoque propter humiditatem⁹ nutrimentorum fluxus ventris periculosus¹⁰ est.¹¹ Carnes ibi¹² vaccinae salubres, porcinae nocentes. Incolae nulla febris specie vexantur, excepta acuta, et hoc perraro. Omnes igitur orientales pompas in lignis, herbis, gemmis, vestibis, hujus terræ salubritas et veneni carentia compensant; et videtur hæc salubritas causari

¹ *æqualis*, B.

² *pluviosa*] om. C.D.

³ *mellis*, E. (clerical error.)

⁴ *interius*, C.

⁵ *ibidem nisi*] *ibidem nisi interdum*, B.; *nisi interdum*, C.D.

⁶ *interdum*] om. B.C.

⁷ *satietas*] om. B.

⁸ *in topographia*, added in C.D., Gale.

⁹ So A.B.C.D., Gale; *nuditatem*, E.

¹⁰ *periculosa*, B.

¹¹ *est*] om. B.C. (not D.)

¹² *ibi*] om. B.; *hic*, D.

As Irlond is schorter norþward þan¹ Bretayne, so is he lenger souþward. Þe lond is not playne; but ful of mountaynes and of hilles, of wodes, of mareys, and of mores: þe lond is nesche,² reyny, and wyndy, and lowe by þe see syde, and wip ynne hilly and sondy. *Solinus*.³ Þere is grete plente of noble pasture and of lese; perfore bestes moot⁴ ofte be dreue out of hir lese, leste þey fede hem self to ful and schende hemself, and þey moste ete at hir owne wille.⁵ *Giraldus*. Men of þat lond haueþ here hele alwey,⁶ and straunge men⁷ haueþ ofte a perilous fluxe⁸ by cause of moysture of mete; þere cowes flesche⁹ is holsom and swynes flesch vnholsum. Men of þat lond haueþ no feure, but onliche þe feure agu, and þat wel silde whanne.¹⁰ Perfore þe holsomnesse [and helpe]¹¹ of þat lond and þe clenness wipoute¹² venyme is worþ al þe boost and richesse of treen, of herbes, of spicerie, of [riche]¹³ clopes, and precious stones of þe est londes. Hit semep þat þe helpe

TREVISA.

wyse of Briteyne; and lyke as Irlonde is more schorte to the northe then Briteyne, in lyke wise hit is more large at the sowthe. A londe inegalle fulle of hilles and water. *Solinus*. That londe is so plentuous in pastures to bestes that the fattenes of theyme scholde cause perelle, with oute the bestes were removede from hit oper while. *Giraldus*. The flesche of that cuntre inducethe sanite to men of that londe, and causethe strongeours to haue the flux for the moisture of the noryschenge of theyme. The flesche of a kowe is wholsom there; but swyne flesche be nyenge moche: the dwellers of hit be not vexede with the axes excepte the scharpe axes, and that is but selde. Men of that londe thenke that the wholsomnes of that londe and wontenge of venom excelle and compense alle the prides of the este, as in wode, herbes, gemmes, and oper clothes. The holsomnes of that cuntre semethe

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ þat, MS. (not Cx.)² soft, Cx.³ Added from Cx.⁴ must, Cx.⁵ dryue oute of theyr pasture, leste they ete ouermuche, for they shold shende hem self, yf they myght ete at theyr wyll, Cx.⁶ haue comunely theyr helth, Cx.⁷ straungers, Cx.⁸ fluxe, a.⁹ flesh of hyen, Cx. (with other slight variations.)¹⁰ that right selde, Cx.¹¹ Added from a. and Cx.¹² wipoute] oute of, Cx.¹³ Added from a. and Cx.

ex eo quod modicus est ibi excessus in frigore aut calore.¹

In quibus
rebus suf-
ficit.

Terra hæc magis vaccis quam bobus, pascuis quam frugibus, gramine quam grano fecunda. Abundat tamen² salmonibus, murænis,³ anguillis,⁴ et cæteris marinis⁵ piscibus; aquilis quoque, gruibus, pavonibus, coturnicibus, niso, falcone et accipitre generoso.⁶ Lupos quoque⁷ habet,⁸ mures nocentissimos; sed et araneas, sanguisugas, et lacertas habet⁹ innocuas. Mustelas quoque parvi corporis sed valde¹⁰ animosas possidet. Habet et¹¹ aves quas bernaces¹² vocant, quas aucis¹³ silvestribus similes de lignis abietinis quasi contra naturam natura producit, quibus viri religiosi tempore jejuniorum vescuntur, eo quod de coitu vel de carne minime procreantur.¹⁴ Sed huic repugnare videtur,¹⁵ quod si quis de femore primi parentis comedisset, carnem utique comedisset, quamvis de carne minime propagatam; et sicut illa caro ex limo, ita ista caro¹⁶ ex

¹ The clause abbreviated in C.D.

² *tamen*] hæc terra, C.D.

³ *et*, added in C.D.

⁴ *anguillis*] om. B.

⁵ *maris*, B.

⁶ *geso*, Gale, and so G.

⁷ *etiam*, C.D.

⁸ *vulpes et*, added in C.D.

⁹ *habet*] om. B.

¹⁰ *valde tamen*, B.

¹¹ *etiam*, C.D.; *et habet*, A.

¹² *bernahes*, B.

¹³ *aves*, A.

¹⁴ *creantur*, C.D.

¹⁵ *repugnat*, C.D.

¹⁶ *caro*] om. C.D.

of¹ pat lond is bycause pat pere is noȝt gret passynge TREVIS.
and exces in hele² noȝer in hete.

In quibus rebus sufficit. In pis lond beep mo kyn³ pan oxen, more pasture pan corne, more gras pan seed. Pere is grete plente of samon, of lampreys, of eles, and of oper see fisch; of egles, of⁴ cranes, of⁵ pekokes, of corlewes, of sperhaukes, of goshaukes, and of gentil faucouns, and of wolfes, and of wel schrewed mys. Pere bep attercoppes, blood soukers, and enettes⁶ [pat doop noon harm].⁷ Pere beep veyres⁸ litel of body and ful hardy and strong. Pere beep bernakes⁹ foules liche to wylde gees; kynde bryngep hem forp wonderliche out of¹⁰ trees, as it were kynde worchyng aȝenst kynde.¹¹ Men of religioun etep bernakes in¹² fasting dayes, for pey comep nouȝt of flesche noȝer beep i-gete flescheliche bytwene fader and moder: but pey beep ful lewedliche i-meued, for resoun is contrarie to pat doynge.¹³ For ȝif a man hadde i-ete¹⁴ of Adams pigh,¹⁵ he had i-ete flesch; and ȝit Adam com nouȝt¹⁶ of flesch,

to be causede in that there is but lytelle excesse in MS. HARL.
2261.
coldenesse or in heete.

Of what thynges that londe is suffisiaunte. That londe is more habundaunte in kye then in oxen, in pasture then in corne. Neuerthelesse, hit habundethe in salmons, eles, lawmpreis, and in other fysche of the see; in egles, cranes, pokokkes, curlewes, sparrehowke, ffawken, and gentille gossehawke; hauenge wulphes and moste nyous myse, and weselles lytelle in body, but bolde in herte. Also there he bryddes whiche thei calle bernacles, lyke to wylde gese, whom nature producethe ageyne nature from firre trees, whom religious men do eite in fastenge daies, in that thei be not bredde and geten thro the acte off venery. But an obieccion may be made ageyne that cause; for and if a man scholde haue eiten of the flesche of Adam he scholde have eiten flesche with

¹ Thus in Cx: *The cause of the helthe and holsomnes of that londe is the temperat hete and colde that is therein.*

² chele, a.

³ keen, a.

⁴ and, a. (not Cx.)

⁵ So a., Cx.; and pekokes, MS.

⁶ eeftes, Cx.

⁷ Added from a. and Cx.

⁸ feyres, Cx.

⁹ bernacles, Cx.

¹⁰ whiche growen wonderly vpon, Cx.

¹¹ nature wrought agayn kynde, Cx.

¹² on, Cx.

¹³ Cx. thus: *by cause they ben not engendryd of flesshe, wherein, as me thynketh, they erre; for reson is ayenst that.*

¹⁴ eten, Cx.

¹⁵ legge, Cx.

¹⁶ was not engendred, Cx., with other slight variations, and some omissions.

ligno æque mirabilis. Abundat etiam¹ hæc terra lacte, melle, vinis, non vineis. Et quamvis Beda dicat illam terram² vinearum non expertem,³ et Solinus ac Isidorus apibus eam carere asserant, circumspectius tamen e diverso scripsissent,⁴ si eam vineis carere et apum⁵ expertem non fuisse⁶ dixissent; item Beda dicit caprorum⁷ venatu insulam fore insignem, cum tamen constet eam semper capreis caruisse.⁸ Nec mirum; cum Beda nihil de hac insula oculata fide cognoverit, sed per relatores⁹ audierit. Ibi¹⁰ quoque gignitur lapis¹¹ sexagonus, scilicet Iris, qui soli appositus format¹² in aere celestem arcum. Ibi quoque invenitur¹³ lapis gagates et margarita candida.

In quibus
rebus de-
ficit.

Tritici grana sunt hic¹⁴ minuta,¹⁵ vix manu purgabilia, et omnium animantium¹⁶ corpora hic¹⁷ quam alibi minora exceptis hominibus reperiuntur. Desunt hic¹⁸ pene¹⁹ omnes pisces, qui²⁰ ex aquis dulcibus non

¹ *etiam*] om. C.D.

² *illam terram*] eam, C.

³ So C.D.; *vineis non expertem*, B., Gale; *vineis expertem*, A.E.

⁴ *circumspectius scripsissent e diverso*, B.

⁵ *apium*, C.D.

⁶ *esse*, C.D.

⁷ *capreorum*, B.C.D.

⁸ See Solinus, *Pol.* c. 22, § 6. Isid., *Etym.* lib. xiv. c. 6, § 6. Bede's words (*Hist. Eccl.* lib. i. c. i.) are: Dives lactis ac mellis insula, nec vinearum experta, pisciumque volucrumque, sed et cervorum caprearumque venatu insignis.

⁹ *latorem*, C. (not D.)

¹⁰ *Ibi . . . candida*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *lapis*] om. B.

¹² A space left for *format* after *arcum* in B.

¹³ *Inveniturque ibidem*, B.

¹⁴ *ibi*, C. (not D.)

¹⁵ Slightly transposed in C. (not D.)

¹⁶ *omnia animalium*, B.

¹⁷ *ibi*, C. (not D.)

¹⁸ *ibi*, C. (not D.)

¹⁹ *fere*, C.D.

²⁰ *quæ*, all MSS. collated for this edition; *qui*, G. and Gale, correctly; but perhaps Higden used the feminine.

noper was i-gete flescheliche bytwene fader and moder. TREVISA.
 But pat flesch com wonderliche of þe erpe, so þis flesche¹
 comeþ wonderliche of þe tree. In þis lond is plente of
 hony and² of mylk and of wyn, and nouȝt of vyneȝerdes.
 [Solinus and Isidorus wryten that Irlond hath no bees;
 netheles it were better wryten that Irlond hath bees and
 no vyneyerdes.]³ Also Beda seiþ pat pere is grete hunt-
 ynge of⁴ roobukkes, and it is i-knowe þat roobukkes beep
 noon pere.⁵ It is no wonder of Beda; for Beda knew⁶
 neuere pat ilond wiþ his eyȝe; bot som tale tellere tolde⁷
 hym suche tales. Also pere groweþ pat stoon Saxagonus,⁸
 and is i-cleped Iris also, as it were þe reynebowe; ȝif pat
 stoon is i-holde aȝenst þe sonne, it⁹ schal schape a reyn-
 bowe. Pere is i-founde a stoon pat hatte gagates,¹⁰ and
 white margery perlis.

In quibus rebus deficit. Whete cornes beep¹¹ pere ful
 smal, vnnep̄e i-clansed¹² wiþ manis hond; out take men,¹³
 alle bestes beep smallere pere þan in oper londes. Pere
 lackeþ wel nyh al manere of¹⁴ fresche water fische, pat is

owte dowte thauȝhe hit come not of flesche; for like as MS. HARL.
2261.
 the flesche of Adam was made of the erthe, so those
 bryddes comme of a tre, as a thyng to be hade in mer-
 uayle. Also that londe is habundante in mylke, hony, in
 wynes, but [not] in vynes. And also thauȝhe that grete
 clerke Bede seye that londe not to be experte of vynes, and
 Solinus and Isidorus¹⁵ seye hit to wonte bees, neuertheles
 thei scholde haue writen more circumspectely, if they hade
 seide that londe to wonte vynes, and to haue be habun-
 dante in bees. Also Bede seythe that yle to habunde in
 dere, sythe hit is provede by experience that londe to
 have wontede suche bestes, and no meruayle, sythe Bede
 provede not the trawthe of the commodites of that yle by
 his awne person, but by the relacioun of other men. A ston
 is gendrede there whiche is callede Iris, whiche putte to
 the sonne causethe a reynebawe to appere in the aier. Also
 a ston callede gagates, and a white margarite be founde there.

In what thynges that londe is defectiue. The cornes
 off whete be scarce there and lytelle. Also that londe

¹ So a.; *fesche*, MS.

² and] om. a.

³ This sentence added from Cx.

⁴ to, a.

⁵ that ther ben none, Cx.

⁶ he sawe neuer, Cx.

⁷ somme men had told, Cx.

⁸ sezagonus, Cx.

⁹ anon it, Cx.

¹⁰ So Cx.; *gogathes*, MS. and a.

¹¹ bee, a.

¹² i-clensed, a.

¹³ reserued men, Cx.

¹⁴ of] om. Cx. (a frequent varia-
 tion); *alle manere fische of fresche
 water*, a.

¹⁵ Ysodorus, Harl. MS.

marinis sementinam trahunt originem; desunt hic¹ degeneres falcones, quos lanianos² vocant, desunt et gyrofalcones,³ perdices, phasiani,⁴ picæ et⁵ philomelæ.⁶ Caret quoque capreis et damis, hericiis,⁷ putaciis, et⁸ talpis et cæteris⁹ venenosis. Unde fingunt aliqui satis favorabiliter Sanctum Patricium cunctis pestiferis animantibus¹⁰ insulam purgasse; sed probabilius¹¹ ¹²est insulam ab initio hujusmodi nocivis caruisse. Quinetiam¹³ venenosa aliunde allata statim moriuntur ibidem, et toxicum aliunde advectum ultra medios fluctus versus Hiberniam vim suæ malignitatis amittit; ac etiam¹⁴ pulvis terræ illius aliunde aspersus venenosos vermes fugat, adeo ut corium hujus terræ vermi circumdatum¹⁵ aut ipsum occidit aut terram penetrare cogit. In hac terra galli cantant in ipso noctis crepusculo, et quantum alibi a tertia,¹⁶ tantum hic¹⁷ a prima galli voce dies distare dignoscitur.¹⁸

¹ *ibi*, C. (not D.)

² *lanerios*, Gale (not G.)

³ *jerofalcones*, B.; *gyrofalcones*, A.D.E.

⁴ *fasiani*, A.D.; *foliani*, C.; *faci-ani*, B.E.

⁵ *et*] om. B., Gale.

⁶ *philomenæ*, MSS. and Gale.

⁷ *putaciis* before *hericiis* in D.

⁸ *putaciis et*] om. B.

⁹ *et cæteris*] om. C.D., which have *etiam caret* after *venenosis*.

¹⁰ *animantibus*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *probabile*, B.; in D. some erased word has been altered to *probabilius*.

¹² *puto ab initio hujus (hujusmodi, D.) nocivis fuisse destituta*, C.D.

¹³ *Sed etiam*, C.D.; *Quin et*, Gale.

¹⁴ *ac etiam*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *circumdata*, MSS. and G., not Gale. Probably *corium* should be changed into *torva*. See Trevisa.

¹⁶ *a tertia*] om. B.

¹⁷ *ibi*, C. (not D.)

¹⁸ *dinoscitur*, MSS. and Gale.

nouȝt gendred in þe see; þere lakkeþ vnkynde faukouns, girefaukouns, partriche,¹ fesauntes, nyȝtingales, and pies. Þere lakkeþ also roo and bukke and ilspi[les],² wontes, and opere venemous bestes; þerfore som men feyneþ and fauorabliche seiþ³ þat Seynt Patryk clenſed þat lond of wormes and of venemous bestes. Þerfore som men feyneþ þat it is⁴ more probable and more skilful, þat þis lond was from þe bygynnyng alwey wip oute suche wormes. For venemous bestes and wormes deyþ þere anon, and me⁵ brynge hem pider out of oper londes; and also venym and poysoun, i-brouȝt piderward out of oper londes, leseþ his⁶ malys anon as he passeþ þe myddel of þe see. Also powder of⁷ erpe of þat lond i-sowe⁸ in oper londes vseþ⁹ awey wormes so fer forþ, þat a torf of þat lond i-doo aboute¹⁰ a worme sleep hym oper makeþ hym prulle þoruȝ¹¹ þe erpe for to scape a way. In þat lond cokkes croweþ wel¹² litel to fore day; so þat þe firste cokkes crowe in þat lond and þe þridde in oper londes beþ i-liche¹³ fer to fore day.

TREVISA.

wontethe fisches whiche haue theire originale naturale in fresche waters. Also that cuntre hathe not a kynde of hawkes that be callede lauerettes and grete-fawkones, partricche and fesaunte, pyes, nyȝtegaies, bucke and doo, wontes and other bestes of venom. Wherefore somme men feyne fauorably, seynge Seynte Patrike to haue purged and made clene that yle thro his preyers from nyous bestes. But hit is more probable to say that yle to haue wontede suche bestes from the begynnege of hit. Also other bestes fulle of venom brouȝhte from other places to hit dye anon. Also if poison be brouȝhte to that londe, hit losethe the strenȝhte of hit or that hit comme in þe myddes of the water nye to that londe. Also the erthe of that londe caste abroad in other cuntres or londes dothe expelle venomous bestes, in so moche that parte of that erthe putte to worme auther sleethe hit other elles constreynethe hit to entre in to the erthe. Cokkes in that cuntre begynne to cawe in the begynnege of the nyȝhte; neuerthelesse day is supposede to drawe nye at the firste crawenge of the cocke.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ partrichis, Cx.² ilspiles, a.; glespiles, Cx.³ and that fauorably, Cx.⁴ But it is, Cx.⁵ if men, Cx. (as usual).⁶ theyr, Cx., who has not very consistently replaced he by it just afterwards.⁷ and, a., Cx.⁸ caste and sowen, Cx.⁹ vseþ, a.; driuen, Cx.¹⁰ be putte aboute (with other slight variations), Cx.¹¹ þoruȝ,] om. a.; thrille the erthe, Cx.¹² but, Cx.¹³ like, Cx.

CAP. XXXIII.

De incolis prioribus.

REFERT Giraldus quod hæc insula inhabitata¹ sit primo² a Casera³ nepte⁴ Noe diluvium timente, et ad hanc insulam cum tribus viris et quinquaginta mulieribus proximo ante diluvium anno⁵ applicante. Secundo a Bartholano⁶ Sere⁷ filio cum tribus filiis de stirpe Japhet filii Noe descendentibus, ccc^o.⁸ post diluvium anno, casu vel industria hic⁹ applicantibus, qui usque ad novem millia virorum excrescentes ex corruptione cadaverum gigantum¹⁰ quos oppresserant omnes mortui sunt, excepto solo Ruano, qui per mille quingentos annos usque ad tempora Sancti Patricii perdurans¹¹ cuncta gesta illius gentis sancto viro replicabat. Tertio Nimeth sive Nimesus cum quatuor filiis suis¹² de Scythia¹³ veniens per ducentos sedecim annos terram incoluit; et¹⁴ tandem, ejus sobole per varia infortunia bellorum et mortalitatum detrita,¹⁵ ducentis

¹ *primo inhabitata*, B.; *sit*, om. A.

² Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

³ So A. E.; *Cesera*, C.; *Cesarea*, D.; *Sera*, B.

⁴ *nepote*, E. only.

⁵ *anno*] om. C. (not D.)

⁶ *Bartolano*, C. (not D.); *ab Ar-cholano*, B.

⁷ *Cesere*, C. (not D.)

⁸ So A.C.D., Gale (in figures); *tricesimo*, E. (at length).

⁹ *ibi*, C. (not D.)

¹⁰ So C.; *gigantorum*, A.D.E.; *gigantium*, Gale.

¹¹ *perdurans*] om. B.

¹² *suis*] om. C.D.

¹³ Various barbarized in MSS.

¹⁴ *et*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *decreta*, C. (not D.)

De incolis prioribus.

TREVISA.

Capitulum tricesimum tertium.

GIRALDUS seip pat Casera, Noes nece,¹ dradde pe flood, and fli² wip pre men and fifty wommen into pat ilond, and wonede per ynne first pe laste zere to fore Noes flood. But afterward Bartholanus, Seres³ sone, pat com of⁴ Iapheth, Noes sone, come pider wip his pre sones by hap oper by craft pre hundred zere after Noes flood, and woned pere, and encresede to pe noumbre of nyne powsand men; and afterward, for stenche of kareyns of geantes pat pey hadde i-kyld, pey deiden alle saue oon, Ruanus, pat durede⁵ a powsand zere and fyue hundred anon to Seynt Patrikes tyme, and enformed pe holy man of pe forsaide men⁶ and of alle hir doynge and dedes. Pan pe pridde tyme come pider Neme⁷ out of Scythia⁸ with his foure sones, and woned pere and encresed to pe noumbre of⁹ two hondred zere and sixtene; and at pe laste al his ofspringe by dyuers myshappes of werres and of moreyn was clenliche¹⁰ destroyed, and pe lond lefte voyde two hundred zere aftir-

Of the firste Inhabitatores of that Londe. Capitulum tri- MS. HARL.
cesimum tertium. 2261.

GIRALDUS rehersethe and seithe that londe was inhabitate f. 52. ends. firste of Casera, son of the douzhter of Noe, [which] dredenge the grete floode, come to that yle in the yere a fore that floode, with iij. men and lth women. In the secunde tyme hit was inhabite of Bartholarius with iij. childer, of the stocke of Iaphethe son of Noe, in the iij^c. yere after that grete floode; which encreasenge vn to the nowmbre of ix. m. alle diede thro the corrupcion of carion of the bodies of giauntes whom thei had oppressede, Ruan excepte, whiche lyvede by m. yere and a halfe, vnto the tymes of Seynte Patrike, tellenge to that holy man the gestes of that peple. In the thrydde time Nimeth or Nimesus, with his iiij. childer, cummenge from Scythia,⁷ inhabite that londe by ij^c. and xvi. yere; and at the laste that stokke and kynnerede destroyede by diverse infortuny of batelles and of oper mortalite, that londe was vacante from inhabitatores by ij^c. yere

¹ niece, a.² fledde, Cx.³ So Cx.; Seth his, MS.⁴ So Cx.; to, MS.⁵ lyued, Cx.⁶ So Cx.; man, MS. (clerical error.)⁷ Nymeth, a. and Cx.⁸ Schitia, or Scitia, MS.⁹ and encresede to pe noumbre of] om. a. and Cx., probably rightly.¹⁰ they were clene, Cx.

itidem annis terra vacua mansit. Quarto vero¹ quinque duces, germani fratres, Gandius,² Genandius, Segandius,³ Rutheragus,⁴ et Slanius,⁵ de posteris Nimedi prædicti,⁶ de Græcia venientes terram occupaverunt, et eam⁷ in quinque partes diviserunt, quarum quælibet pars continebat triginta duo cantredos; (est autem⁸ cantredus portio centum villarum;) posueruntque⁹ lapidem in media terra quasi in medio¹⁰ umbilico, velut quinque¹¹ regnorum principium. Tandem Slanius¹² factus est¹³ monarcha terræ totius. Quinto debilitata multum per triginta¹⁴ annos natione ista, advenerunt de Hispaniæ partibus, in sexaginta¹⁵ navium classe, quatuor nobiles Millesii regis filii, cum pluribus aliis, de quibus duo nominatissimi fratres Hiberus¹⁶ et Hermon regnum inter se diviserunt. Sed procedente tempore, rupto fœdere fraterno, Heberoque occiso, Hermoni cessit monarchia, a cujus tempore usque adventum¹⁷ Patricii primi¹⁸ cxxxi. reges de eadem gente fuerunt. Et sic ab adventu Hiberniensium usque ad obitum¹⁹ Patricii

¹ vero] om. C.D.

² Glandius, C. (not D.)

³ Sagandius, A.B.; om. C.D.

⁴ Ruteragus, A.; Natheragus, C. (not D.)

⁵ Slanius] So A.C.D., Gale; Clamius, B.; Salnius, E. (but Slanius below.)

⁶ prædicti] om. C.D.

⁷ eam] om. C. (not D.)

⁸ et est, B.

⁹ [que om. A.

¹⁰ terræ, C.; terra, D. (clerical error.)

¹¹ velut quinque] tanquam, C.D.

¹² Sclanius, C.; Psalmus, B.

¹³ primus added in C.D.

¹⁴ 20, C.; 200, D.

¹⁵ So A.D.E., Gale; 20, C.; xl., B.

¹⁶ Heberus, A.D., Gale.

¹⁷ Sancti] added in C.D.

¹⁸ primi] om. C.D.

¹⁹ Sancti added in C.D.

ward.¹ Þe fourþe² tyme fyue dukes,³ Gandius, Genandius,⁴ Sagandius, Rutheragus, Salinus,⁵ of þe forseide Nymep his successours come out of Grece, and occupied þat lond and deled it in fyue parties. And⁶ eueriche party conteynede two and pritty candredes; (a candrede is a contray þat conteyneþ an hondred townes;) and þey sette a stoon in þe mydel of þe lond as it were in þe nauel and bygynnyng of fyue⁷ kyngdoms. At þe laste Salynus⁸ was i-made kyng of al þe lond. Þe fifte tyme, whan þis nacioun was pritty ʒere to gidres, þey woxe swype⁹ feble, foure noble men, þat were Millesius¹⁰ þe kynges sones, come out of Spayne wip many oþer in a nauewe of þre score schippes and tweie: þe¹¹ worpiest of þese foure breperen, þat heet Heberus and Hermon, deled þe lond bytwene hem tweyne; but afterward couenaunt was to broke by twene þese tweyne breperen, and¹² Heberus¹³ was i-slayne.¹⁴ Þan Hermon was kyng of al þat lond, and from his tyme to þe firste Patrik his tyme were kynges of þat nacioun sex score and enleuene. And so from þe comynge of¹⁵ Hiberniensis anon to þe deth of

TREVISA.

foloenge. In the iiijth tyme v. dukes and breper german, MS. HARL. Gandius, Sanandius, Segandius, Rutheragus, and Sclanius, 2261. commenge by succession of the stocke of Nimesus, commenge from Grece, occupiede þat londe, diuidenge hit in to v. partes. Euery parte in that diuision did conteyne xxxij. tancredes. And a tancrede is a porcion of c. townes, whiche putte a ston in the myddes, as in the navelle, as the begynnege of v. realmes. After that Sclanius was made the holle lorde of alle that londe. In the vth tyme, that londe made feble by mony yere, iiij. sonnes of kynge Millesius comme to hit with iiij^{xx}. sayles from Speyne, with mony other, of whom Heberus and Hermon were gouernoures, diuidede that realme amonge theyme, but by succession of tyme the bonde of luffe was broken betwene theyme. And so, Heberus sleyn, the holle monarchy succedede to Hermon, from the tyme of whom were cxxxj^d kynges of that peple to the tyme of the firste Patrikke. And so from the commenge of theyme vn to the dethe of Seynte Patrikke

¹ after, Cx.² ferþe, a.³ dukes that were bretheren, Cx.⁴ Genandus, a.; Genundus, Cx.⁵ Selanius, Cx.⁶ So a. and Cx.; in, MS.⁷ fyue] Added from a. and Cx.⁸ Slanius, a., Cx. (rightly.)⁹ swype] om. Cx.¹⁰ Myllesius, Cx.¹¹ of the, Cx. (without sense.)¹² hem both and, Cx.¹³ Hebreus, MS.; Hiberus, Cx.¹⁴ slawe, a.¹⁵ of the Hybermensis (sic) unto the fyrst Patrik, Cx.

primi¹ sunt anni mille octingenti. Ab isto Hiberno dicti sunt Hibernici, vel secundum alios ab Hiberno Hispaniæ fluvio. Dicti sunt etiam Gaytheli² et Scoti³ a quodam Gaythelo, Phenii nepote, qui post linguarum confusionem⁴ apud Nemproticam turrin in variis linguis peritus duxit Scotam filiam Pharaonis;⁵ ex quibus ducibus⁶ Hibernienses descenderunt. Iste etiam Gaythelus, ut aiunt,⁷ Hibernicam linguam composuit, quæ et Gaythelaf⁸ dicitur, quasi ex omnibus linguis collecta. Tandem Gurguntius,⁹ Belini regis Britannici filius, de Dacia rediens apud Orcades insulas quosdam Basclenses de Hispaniæ partibus advectos invenit, quos locum habitationis petentes rex ad¹⁰ Hiberniam tunc vacuam transmisit,¹¹ quibus duces aliquos ex suis designavit. Ex quo videtur¹² quod de jure antiquo Hibernia debeat ad Britanniam pertinere.¹³ Ab adventu autem¹⁴ Sancti¹⁵

¹ *primi*] om. C.D.

² *Gaiteli*, B.C. Gale; *Gaitili*, A. Similar variations below.

³ *Scotti*, E.

⁴ *confusionem linguarum*, A.B.

⁵ *Phōnis*, MSS. and G.; *Pharonis*, Gale.

⁶ *duobus*, C.D., which seems right.

⁷ *annuit*, A.

⁸ *Gaitelak*, C.D.; *Gaitelaf*, A.B., Gale.

⁹ *Burguntius*, A.B.

¹⁰ *ad*] om. A.B.

¹¹ *atque quosdam ex suis præfecit eis duces*, C.D.

¹² *patet*, C.D.

¹³ Slightly transposed and altered in C.D.

¹⁴ *autem*] om. B.

¹⁵ *Sancti*] om. C.D.

pe first Patrik his tyme were a powsand zere and eiȝte hundred. Þey hadde þat name Hiberniensis and Hibernici of þe forsaide Hiberus; oper, as som men wolde wene, of¹ Hiberus a ryuer of Spayne; þei were i-cleped also Gaitels and Scottes of oon Gaithleus,² þat was Phenius his neuw. After þat men speked³ many langages at Nemprot his tour,⁴ þis Gaythelus koupe speke many langages and tonges; and wedded o Scotas⁵ Pharoo⁶ his douȝter. Of þese dukes come þe Hiberniensis. Me seith þat þese⁷ Gathleus made þe Irische langage and cleped hit Gathelaf,⁸ as it were a langage i-gadered of alle langages and tonges. At the laste Belinus, kyng of Bretaine,⁹ hadde a sone þat heet Gurguntius. As þis Gurguntius come out of Denmark at þe ilondes¹⁰ Orcades, he fonde men þat were i-cleped Basclenses and were i-come pider out of Spayne. Þese men prayed and bysouȝte for to haue a place for to wone inne; and þe kyng sent hem to Irlond þat was poo voyde and wast, and ordeyned and sent wip hem¹¹ dukes and lederes¹² of his owne. [And]¹³ so hit semeþ þat Irlond schulde longe¹⁴ to Britayne by lawe¹⁵ of olde tyme. From¹⁶

TREVISA.

the firste were mⁱ yere and ccc. Men of Irlonde toke the name of theym of this Heberus, other elles after somme men of a floode of Speyne callede Heberus. Also thei were callede Gaiteles and Scottes after a man callede Gaitelus newewe to Phenius, whiche, after the confusion of langages at the towre of Nemproth, wyse in diuerse langages did wedde Scotas, the douȝhter of kynge Pharas, of whiche dukes men off Irlonde haue descended. This Gaitelus, as hit is seide, made the langage of that cuntre, whiche is callede Gathelaf, as a langage collecte of alle langages. At the laste Gurguntius, the sonne of Belyn kynge of Briteyne, turnenge from Denmarke to the yles callede Orcades, founde a certeyne peple of the cuntre of Speyne callede Basclenses, whiche desirenge to haue inhabitation, the kynge sende theyme in to Irlonde to inhabite hit, that tyme voide of inhabitatores. Whiche made a certeyn gouernoure especialle amonge theyme. Wherefore hit semethe that Irlonde longethe or perteyneth to Briteyne by olde lawe and

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ or *ellys* of, Cx.
² *Gaithelus*, a.; *Gaytelus*, Cx.
 Similar variations below.
³ *speke*, a.
⁴ After . . . tour] om. Cx.
⁵ oo *Scotas*, a.; one *Scota*, Cx.
⁶ *Pharoes*, Cx.
⁷ *þese*, a.; *these*, Cx. The true reading must be *þis*.

⁸ *Gaithelaf*, a.; *Gaytelef*, Cx.
⁹ *Brytayne*, a.; *Bretayn*, Cx.
¹⁰ *atte Irlonden*, Cx. (typ. error.)
¹¹ So Cx.; *hym*, MS.
¹² *capitayns*, Cx., and so below.
¹³ Added from a. and Cx.
¹⁴ *longe*] Added from Cx.
¹⁵ *right*, Cx.
¹⁶ So Cx.; *For*, MS. and a.

Patricii primi¹ usque ad Fedlimidii regis tempora, triginta tres reges per quadringentos² annos in Hibernia regnaverunt. In hujus autem³ Fedlimidii⁴ diebus Norguagenses,⁵ duce Turgesio, terram hanc occupaverunt; factisque quam pluribus⁶ per loca fossatis profundis castella simplicia, duplicia, triplicia, pluraque⁷ murata adhuc integra, vacua tamen, erexerunt. Sed Hibernicus populus castella non curat, nam silvis pro castris, paludibus⁸ utitur pro fossatis. Tandem Turgesius dolo puellarum delusus, interiit. Et quia Anglorum populus clamat Gurmundum subjugasse Hiberniam et illa fossata fecisse, de Turgesio nihil memorans;⁹ Hibernienses vero Turgesium prædicant, Gurmundum vero¹⁰ prorsus ignorant;—ideo sentiendum¹¹ est Gurmundum in Britanniae regno quod sibi subjugaverat extitisse, et a Britannia Turgesium istum cum electa

¹ *primi*] om. C.D.

² 300, C.D.; 406, B., apparently.

³ *autem*] om. C.

⁴ *regis* added in B.C.D. (D. twice has *Fedlinidii*. See Harl. MS.)

⁵ *Norvagenses*, A.; *Norwagenses*, B.D.

⁶ *quamplurimis*, B.

⁷ So A.B. (corrected); *pleraque*, D.E., Gale.

⁸ *et paludibus*, C. (not D.)

⁹ *est reminiscens*, C.; and so D. omitting *est*.

¹⁰ *autem*, C.D.; om. B.

¹¹ *sciendum*, C.D.; *censendum*, B.

þe firste Seynt Patryk anon to Fedlimidius¹ þe kynges TREVISA.
 tyme, foure hondred þere, þre and þretty kynges euerich
 after opir regned² in Irlond. In³ þis Fedlimidius his tyme
 Turgesius, duke and ledere of Norweyes, brouȝt pider Nor-
 wayes,⁴ and occupied þat lond, and made in wel⁵ many
 places many⁶ depe diches and castelles sengle, double,
 and [treble, and]⁷ many wardes strongliche i-walled; and
 many þerof stondeþ ȝit al hool. But Irische men reccheþ
 nouȝt of castelles; for þey taken⁸ wodes for castelles, and
 mareys and mores for castel diches. But at þe laste Tur-
 gesius deide by gile ful wyles and⁹ wrenches. And for
 Englische men seiþ þat¹⁰ Gurmundus wan Irlond, and made
 pilke diches, and of Turgesius makeþ no mynde;¹¹ and
 Irische¹² men spekeþ of Turgesius, and knoweþ not of
 Gurmundus:—þerfore it is [to] wetynge¹³ þat Gurmundus
 hadde i-wonne Bretayne, and woned þerynne, and sente
 Turgesius wiþ grete strengþe of Bretouns¹⁴ in to Irlond

ryȝhte, where xxx^{iiij}. kynges reigned from the tyme and MS. HARL.
 commenge of the firste Patrikke to the tyme of kynge Fed- 2261.
 linidius in that londe by iiij^c. yere. In the tyme of kynge
 Fedlinidius men of Norway commenge with a duke called
 Turgesius occupiede that londe, makenge grete diches, cas-
 telles symple, dowble and threfolde as in veyne; for the
 men of Irlonde attende not to castelles, for thei vse wodes
 for castelles and marras. At the laste this duke Turgesius
 was perischede and extincte thro the disseyte of maydenes.
 And for cause the peple off Englonde sayethe and cryethe
 Gurmunde to haue subiugate Irlonde and to haue made
 those dyches, hauenge not Turgesius in vre or in remem-
 braunce; but men of Irlonde remembre that duke Tur-
 gesius, hauenge noo remembraunce of Gurmunde;—there-
 fore hit it to vnderstonde Gurmunde to haue bene in the
 realme of Britayne, whiche he subduede to hym, and to
 haue sende Turgesius with a multitude of peple to Irlonde

¹ *Fedlinudius*, Cx., and so below.

² Placed after *yere* in Cx.

³ in to, MS. (not a, or Cx.)

⁴ *men of Norweye*, Cx.

⁵ *wel*] om. Cx.

⁶ *many*] om. Cx.

⁷ Added from a. and Cx.

⁸ *takip* a.; *take*, Cx. These variations are frequent.

⁹ *of*, a.; *of wymmen*, Cx. The

text of MS. makes excellent sense, but the true reading is, doubtless, of *wenches* (*puellarum*).

¹⁰ So a., Cx.; *at*, MS.

¹¹ *mencon*, Cx. (who transposes some words.)

¹² *Erisshe*, a.

¹³ *to witynge*, a.; *to wete*, Cx.

¹⁴ *of Bretouns*] out of Bretayne, a., the words are omitted in Cx.

juventute ad Hiberniam expugnandam transmisisse ; qui quidem Turgesius, quia hujus expeditionis tribunus et rector extiterat, idcirco illum ¹ gens Hiberniæ ² quem vidit et novit famose prædicat. ³ Gurmundo tandem in ⁴ Galliarum partibus interfecto, Turgesius in Hibernia filiam regis Medensis adamavit, quam pater suus cum quindecim puellis transmittere Turgesio promisit, quibus apud ⁵ stagnum Lacherinum cum totidem nobilioribus gentis suæ Turgesius occurrere spopondit. Quod dum faceret, a quindecim juvenibus imberbibus sub habitu puellari sicas ferentibus dolose occiditur, postquam triginta annis in insula imperaverat. Non multo post de Norguegiæ ⁶ partibus, quasi sub pacis obtentu et mercationis exercendæ prætextu, tres fratres Amelanus, ⁷ Siracus, et Ivorus ⁸ cum sua sequela ad hanc insulam venerunt ; et de consensu Hiberniensium otio deditorum maritima loca occupantes tres civitates ⁹

¹ *eum*, C.D.

² *ista*, C.D.

³ *celebrat*, C.D., Gale ; *prædicat et celebrat*, A.

⁴ *in*] om. B. ; *in Gallorum*, A.

⁵ *ad*, B.

⁶ B. has *Norwagiæ*, and uses the

same form throughout ; A., here and commonly, *Norvegiæ* ; D. here has *Norvagesiæ*.

⁷ *Aurelanus*, B. and Harl. MS.

⁸ *Iviorus*, B.D. (apparently.)

⁹ *tres civitates*] om. C.D.

forto wyinne þat lond. And so for¹ Turgesius was gyour TREVISA.
 and ledere² of þat viage and of þat iornay,³ and so i-seie
 in Irlond and wel⁴ i-knowe⁵ among Irische men,—þefore
 Irische men spekeþ moche of hym as of a noble man þat
 was i-seie in Irlond and wel i-knowe in þat lond. At þe
 laste whan Gurmundus was i-slawe in Fraunce, Turgesius
 loued þe kynges douȝter of Meth of Irlond; and hir fader
 behiȝt Turgesius, þat he wolde sende hir hym to þe Lowe
 Lacheryn wip fiftene maydenes; and Turgesius behiȝt for
 to mete him⁶ pere wip fiftene þe⁷ noblest men þat he
 hadde. He hyld⁸ couenant and þouȝt of⁹ no gile, but
 pere come fiftene ȝong berdles men i-cloped as wommen,¹⁰
 wip schorte swerdes vndir her clopes, and fil on Turgesius,
 and slowe hym riȝt pere. And so Turgesius was traytour-
 liche¹¹ i-slawe, after þat he hadde reigned pritty ȝere in
 þat lond. Nouȝt longe afterward þe¹² breperen, Amela-
 nus, Siracus, and Iuoris, come in to Irlond wip hir men
 out of Norway, as it were¹³ for loue of pees and¹⁴ of
 marchaundise, and woned by þe see sides by assent of
 Irische men þat were alwey idel as Poules¹⁵ knyȝtes. And

to expugne hit. And for cause that Turgesius was as the MS. HARL.
2261.
 gouernoure in that labor, þefore þe peple of Irlonde
 namethe hym whom thay¹⁶ see. Gurmunde dedde at the
 laste in Fraunce, Turgesius luffede moche þe doȝter of
 kyng Medense, whiche mayde here fader promisede to
 sende to Turgesius with xv. other maidens, whom Turgesius
 made promyse to mete at a water callede Lacheryne, with so
 mony nowble men of his peple. Whiche Turgesius was
 sleyne by disseyte of those xv. yonge men in the habite
 and clothege of women hauenge weppen vnder theire
 clothes, after that he hade reignede in that yle xxx¹⁴ yere.
 After that thre breper come to that yle from the partes
 of Norway, as in signe of pease, Aurelanus, Siracus, and
 Iuorus, with other people, whiche, thro the consente of men
 of Irlonde, ȝiffen to ydellenes, occupieng the places and f. 51. b.

¹ And by cause, Cx.

² capytayn and leder, Cx.

³ and iourney, Cx.

⁴ wel] om. a., Cx.

⁵ i-knowe in þat lond, MS.; om. a. and Cx. The latter has other omissions.

⁶ So a. and Cx.; him, MS.

⁷ of þe, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)

⁸ and helde, Cx.

⁹ of] om. Cx.

¹⁰ like wymmen, Cx.

¹¹ traytoursliche, a.; traitorously, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)

¹² So a. and Cx.; þis, MS.

¹³ had been, Cx.

¹⁴ and] Added from Cx.

¹⁵ Paules, Cx.

¹⁶ So Harl. MS.

Dublinniam,¹ Waterfordiam, et Limiricum² construxerunt, qui tandem numero³ sucrescentes contra indigenas frequenter⁴ rebellaverunt,⁵ et usum⁶ ⁷securium, qui⁸ Anglice⁹ *sparth*¹⁰ dicitur,¹¹ ad terram Hiberniæ¹² comportarunt. Igitur a tempore Turgesii usque ad ultimum monarcham Rothericum Connactiæ regem, septendecim reges in Hibernia fuerunt.¹³ Et sic in universo a primo Hermone usque ad ultimum¹⁴ Rothericum, quem subjugavit rex Angliæ Henricus secundus anno ætatis suæ¹⁵ quadragesimo, regni¹⁶ sui septimo decimo,¹⁷ ab incarnatione Domini millesimo centesimo septuagesimo secundo, rexerunt Hiberniam centum octoginta unus¹⁸ reges non coronati, non inuncti, non hæreditarii, sed vi et armis succedentes.

CAP. XXXIV.

De incolarum moribus.

REFERT Solinus quod¹⁹ gens hujus terræ sit²⁰ barbara, inhospita, bellicosa, fasque²¹ nefasque pro eodem ducens.²²

¹ *Dubliniam*, D.

² *Limicium*, B.

³ *in numero*, A.

⁴ *frequenter*] om. B.

⁵ *rebellarent*, A.; *debellarunt*, B.; *rebellarunt*, D.

⁶ *husum*, B.

⁷ *et* added in B.

⁸ *qui*] om. C. (not D.)

⁹ *Anglice*] om. A.B.

¹⁰ *sparthus*, C. (not D.)

¹¹ *dicitur*] om. C. (not D.)

¹² *Hiberniæ*] om. C.; *istam*, D.

¹³ E. has some clerical omissions.

¹⁴ *ultimum*] om. B.

¹⁵ *suæ*] Added from B.C., Gale.

¹⁶ *vero* added in B.

¹⁷ 7°, C. (not D.)

¹⁸ *unum annum*, E. (without sense.)

¹⁹ *Refert Solinus quod*] om. C.D.

²⁰ *sit*] om. C.D.

²¹ *fas que nefas*, A.

²² *ducunt*, C.D.; om. E.

pese Norwayes bilde p[r]e¹ citees, Deuelyng, Waterford, and Limyriche; and encreased faste afterward, and wax² rebel aȝenst men of þe lond, and brouȝt first sparthes in to Irlond. So fro³ Turgesius tyme anon to Roperyk his tyme, kyng of⁴ Connoccia, þat was þe laste þat was kyng of al þe lond, were seuentene kynges, [in Irlond. And so þe kynges]⁵ þat reigned in Irlond, from þe firste Hermon his tyme anon to þe laste Rotheryk his tyme, were in al an hondred kynges foure score and oon, þat were nouȝt i-crowned noþer anynt, noþer by lawe of heritage, bot by myȝt and maistrie and strenȝþe⁶ of armes. Þe secounde Henry⁷ kyng of Engeland made þis Rotherik sugette þe ȝere of kyng Henries tyme of age fourty, and of his kyngdom seuentene, þe ȝere of oure Lord elleuen hundred þre score and twelue.

TREVISA.

De incolarum moribus.

Capitulum tricesimum quartum.

SOLINUS seiþ þat men of þis lond beep straunge⁸ of nacioun, housles, and grete fiȝteres, and acounteþ riȝt and

costes of that cuntre nye to the see, made Dublyn, Waterforde, and Lymyrike, thre cites. Whiche encreasege in nowmbre, made mony batelles ageyne the inhabitatores of that cuntre. Therefore from the tyme of Turgesius vn to the laste Rotherike, whom kyng Henry the secunde made subiecte to hym in the xlth yere of his age, and in the xvijth yere off his reigne, in the yere of oure Lorde God m. c. lxxvij., a c. lxxxj. kynges gouernede Yrlonde, not crownede neither anyntede, neither occupienge hit by ryȝtfulle inheritaunce, but obteynenge the predomy by strenȝhte and armes.

MS. HARL.
2261.

Of the Disposicion of the Inhabitatours of that Londe.

Capitulum tricesimum quartum.

SOLINUS, the grete clerke, rehersethe that the peple of that londe be like to the peple of Barbre, bellicose, accom-

¹ thre, Cx.; þe, MS. and a.

² encreased and after weze, Cx.

³ from, a.

⁴ of] added from Cx., who has Cannacia.

⁵ Added from a. and Cx. The

latter has a few very slight variations in the sentence following.

⁶ by strengȝe, a.

⁷ Harry, Cx., and so below.

⁸ So a. and Cx.; strong, MS.

Gens habitu singularis et inculta, victu parca, animo sæva, affatu aspera, sanguine interemptorum prius hausto¹ vultus² suos oblinivit.³ Carnibus et fructibus pro esu, lacte pro potu contenta.⁴ Gens quidem ludis, otio, et venationi plus dedita quam labori. *Giraldus in Topographia Hiberniæ*.⁵ Gens ista post ortum suum⁶ dure nutritur, moribus et vestibus inculta. Laneis tam braccis quam caligis, capuciis quoque strictis trans humeros deorsum cubito tenus protensis,⁷ et vice palliorum phalangis⁸ nigris utitur;⁹ item non sellis, non¹⁰ ocreis, non calcaribus equitando utuntur. Virgam in superiori parte cameratam ad concitandos¹¹ equos manu ferunt;¹² frænis¹³ cami vice fungentibus et pabula nequaquam¹⁴ impredientibus utuntur. Inermes corpore, pugnant at-tamen¹⁵ jaculis binis, lanceis, et securibus amplis. Una tantum manu configunt; lapides pugillares, cum alia defecerint, in promptu habent. Gens itaque¹⁶ agriculturam spernens, pascuis tantum utens, barbis et comis

¹ *hausta*, E.² *multos*, B.³ *ablinunt*, A.; *obliniunt*, B.C.D., Gale; probably rightly. Solinus (c. 22) has *oblinunt*.⁴ *est contenta*, A.B.C.D.⁵ C.D. omit reference; A.B. omits *Hiberniæ*.⁶ *suum*] om. C.D., Gale.⁷ *protensis*, Gale (not G.)⁸ So A.C.; *phalngis*, D.; *falangis*, B.E., Gale.⁹ *utuntur*, B.¹⁰ *nec*, B.¹¹ *concitandum*, A.D.¹² *ferunt*] om. E.¹³ *frenis circa capita equorum non in ore fugantur*, (for *utuntur*,) *pabula nequaquam impredientibus*, C. (not D., which agrees with the text.)¹⁴ *non*, B.¹⁵ *tantum*, Gale (but cancelled in G.)¹⁶ *Gens ista silvestris*, C.; *gens itaque silvestris*, D.

wrong al for oon,¹ and beep sengle of clopyng, scarce of mete, cruel of herte, and angry of speche, and drinkep firste blood of dede men pat beep i-slawe, and þan wasshep here face² þerwip; and holdeþ hem apayde³ wip flesshe and fruit instede of mete, and wip mylk instede of drynke, and vseþ moche playes⁴ and hydelnesse and huntynge, and trauailleþ ful litel.⁵ In hir child hode þey beep harde i-norished and hard i-fed, and þey beep vnsemeliche of maneres and of clopyng, and haueþ breche and hosen al oon⁶ of wolles, and strait⁷ hodes pat streccheþ a cubite ouer þe schuldres by hynde, and blak faldynges⁸ instede of mantels and of clokes. Also sadeles, bootes, [and]⁹ spores þey vseþ none, whan þey rideþ; but þey dryueþ hir hors wip a chambre 3erde¹⁰ in þe ouer ende instede of barnacles¹¹ and of britels of reest; and vseþ bridels¹² pat letteþ nouȝt here hors of here¹³ mete. Þey fiȝteþ¹⁴ vnarmed, naked in body; neuerpeles wip tweie dartes and speres and wip brode sparthes.¹⁵ Þey fiȝteþ wip oon hond;¹⁶ and whan oper wepene failleþ, þey haueþ good publestones redy at hond. Þese men forsakeþ tilienge of lond and kepeþ pasture for beestes: þey vseþ longe berdes and longe lokkes

TREVISA.

ptenge ryȝhte and wronge as for oon thyng, a peple symple in habite, scarce and litelle in fyndenge, cruelle in herte, scharpe in speche, vsenge frutes for flesche, mylke for drynke, a peple that ȝiffethe more attendaunce to ydelnesse and to disportes then to labour. The peple of that cuntre is norischede hardely after thei comme in to this worlde, whiche vse no sadelles in rydenge, neither spurres, neither bootes. Neuerthelesse thei haue a wonde, other a rodde, clenede in the hier parte of it to cause the horses to move and labour in theire honde; which fiȝhte with oute armoure, neuerthelesse thei vse dartes and speres, and thei fiȝhte also with oon honde and with brode axes, vsenge moche stones in theire fiȝhtenge when thei wonte other weppen. This peple despisethe tyllenge of londe, vsenge pastures, and suffrege the hynder partes of theire hedes to groe in to a

MS. HARL.
2261¹ one thyng, Cx.² theyr vysages, Cx.³ paid, Cx.⁴ pleyng, Cx.⁵ lyte, a.⁶ hon, a.⁷ strait, a.; strait, Cx.⁸ and faldynges, Cx.⁹ Added from a.¹⁰ chambred yerd, Cx., who transposes some previous words.¹¹ barnacles] byttes with trenches, Cx., who has brydles for britels.¹² briderls, a.¹³ to ete theyr, Cx.¹⁴ fiȝteþ, a.¹⁵ So a. and Cx.; sparthus, MS.¹⁶ Cx. omits to at hond.

¹ a posteriori parte capitis² luxurians,³ non lino, non lanificio, non aliquo mercationis genere, nec ulla mechanicarum artium specie⁴ vitam producunt; sed otio dediti, delicias reputant⁵ labore carere, divitias deputant libertate gaudere. Et cum Scotia hujus terræ filia utatur lyra,⁶ tympano, et⁷ choro, ac Wallia cithara, tibiis,⁸ et choro; Hibernici tamen⁹ in duobus musici generis instrumentis, (cithara scilicet¹⁰ et tympano æreis¹¹ chordis armato,) præ cæteris sunt periti; quibus instrumentis quamvis¹² precipitem et velocem,¹³ suavem tamen et jocundam crispatis modulis et intricatis notulis¹⁴ efficiunt harmoniam. A B molli incipiunt et sub obtuso¹⁵ grossioris chordæ sonitu latenter ludentes in idem redeunt, ut pars artis maxima¹⁶ videatur artem velare, tanquam,

Si lateat, prosit; ferat ars deprensa¹⁷ pudorem.

Gens etiam ista spurcissima, nondum decimas solvunt, nondum matrimonia rite contrahunt, non incestus¹⁸

¹ *præcipue* added in C.D.

² *capitis*] om. B.C.D.

³ *intricans*, B.

⁴ *spem*, A.D.

⁵ *deputant*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *libia*, C. (not D.)

⁷ *et etiam*, A.

⁸ *tibia*, C. (not D.)

⁹ *tantum*, C. (not D.)

¹⁰ *scilicet*] om. A.

¹¹ *æneis*, C.D.; *æris*, B.

¹² *quam*, E.

¹³ *quamvis præcipitem et velocem*] licet præcipue, C.D.

¹⁴ *et intricatis notulis*] om. D.

¹⁵ *optuoso*, A.

¹⁶ *maximam*, B.

¹⁷ *deprehensa*, MSS. and Gale.

¹⁸ *incestus non*, B.

hongynge doun by hynde hir nolle.¹ Pey vse² no craft of flex and³ wolle, of metal, noper of marchaundise; but zeuep hem alle⁴ to idelnesse and to sleupe,⁵ and countep⁶ reste for likyng and fredom for richesse. And pey Scotland pe douzter of Irlond vse harpe, tymbre, and tabour, [and Wales usep harpe and pipe and tabour],⁷ neuerpeles Irische men beep connyng in tweie manere instrumentis⁸ of musyk, in harpe and tymbre pat is i-armed wip wire and wip strenges of bras. In pe whiche⁹ instrumentis,⁸ pey [pei]¹⁰ pleye hastiliche and swiftliche, pey makep wel¹¹ mery armonye¹² and melody wip wel picke¹³ tunes, werbeles, and nootes; and bygynnep from bemol, and pleiep priueliche vnder deepe¹⁴ soun of pe grete strenges and tornep azen in to pe same, so pat pe grettest partie of pe craft hidep pe craft; [as hit wolde seme as pei pe craft]¹⁵ so i-hidde schulde be aschamed, and it were i-take. Pese men beep of yuel maneres and of leuyng; pey paiep none tepinges,¹⁶ pei weddep lawefulliche none wyfes, pey sparep not her alies, bot pe broper weddep his broper¹⁷ wyf. Pey beep

TREVISA.

grete lengthte: not vsenge theire lyfe in makenge of clothe of wolle, other elles of lyne or flex, neither in eny kynde of marchandise, neither in eny honde crafte; but ziffen to ydelnesse, accompte to be with owte labor delites, and a pleasure to ioye in liberte. Also Scotlande, the dozter of hit, as in ydelnesse vsethe an harpe, a tympan, and a crowde. And Wales vsethe trumpettes, an harpe, and a crowde. Neuerthelesse men of Irlonde be experte specially in ij. kyndes of musike, that is to say, an harpe, and a tympan stryngede and armede with cordes off brasse. But thauzhe thei make a swyfte melody ther with and a swete, thei begynne with a softe noyce and tune, and pleyenge priuely vnder a dulle sounde of a more grosse corde returne to the same. The peple of this cuntre is vile of condicion; vn to this tyme presente they pay not theire tythes, thei make not lawefulle contractes in matrimony, thay avoide not incese, but breper wedde the wyfes of theire brether, vsenge gretely

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *hede*, Cx.² *vse*, a.³ *of*, a., Cx.⁴ *alle* om. Cx.⁵ *slouthe*, Cx.⁶ *rehene*, Cx.⁷ Added from a. (not in Cx.)⁸ So a.; *instrumentz*, MS. (twice.)⁹ in *whiche*, Cx., with other slight variations.¹⁰ *though they*, Cx.¹¹ *right*, Cx.¹² So Cx.; *armenye*, MS.¹³ *with thyck*, Cx.¹⁴ *secretely vnder dymme*, Cx.¹⁵ Added from a. and Cx. The latter slightly varies a few words in the previous sentence.¹⁶ *tythes*, Cx.; *no tepinges*, a.¹⁷ *the broders*, Cx.

vitant; sed fratres fratrum uxores ducunt, proditiōibus insistunt, securim, id est sparth,¹ in manu quasi pro baculo bajulant,² qua³ sibi confidentes præoccupant. Gens ista versipellis et inconstans, varia et⁴ versuta, cujus⁵ magis timenda⁶ ars quam Mars,⁷ pax quam fax, mel quam fel,⁸ malitia quam militia; cujus mores sunt,⁹ quod nec in bello fortes, nec in pace fideles inveniuntur.¹⁰ Cum illo quem dolose opprimere volunt, primo¹¹ compaternitatis et consecratæ fraternitatis fœdera jungunt; in qua alter alterius sanguinem sponte¹² fusum bibunt. Alumnos et collactaneos aliquantulum diligunt, fratres et cognatos persequuntur, vivos decipiunt, mortuos ulciscuntur. Inter quos adeo in naturam converti prævaluit pravæ consuetudinis longus abusus, adeo a convictu¹³ mores formantur, ut etiam¹⁴ hoc vitio proditi-

¹ *id est sparth*] om. C.D.

² *gestant*, C. (not D.)

³ *quas*, B.

⁴ *et*] om. C.D. (twice.)

⁵ So C.D., Gale; *cui*, A.E.

⁶ *timenda*] om. E.

⁷ So Gale; *Mars quam ars*, MSS. and G. (contrary to the meaning.)

⁸ *mel . . . fel*] om. B.

⁹ *sunt*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *inveniuntur*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *puro*, E.

¹² *sponte sanguinem*, B.

¹³ *adeoque convictu*, A.

¹⁴ *in*, B.

beay forto betraye hire neiȝbores and opere. Pey beren TREVISA.
sparthes in here hond instede of staues, and fiȝteþ per-
wip¹ aȝenst hem þat tristeþ² to hem beste; þe³ men
beep variable and vnstedefast, trecherous and gileful. Who
þat deleþ wip hem nedep more to be war more of gile þan
of craft, of pees þan of brennyng brondes, of hony þau
of galle, of malice þan of knyȝthode. Pey haueþ suche
maneres þat þei beep not stronge in werre and bataille,
noþer trewe in pees. Pey bycomeþ [gossibs to hem]⁴ þat
þey wollep fulseliche betraye in⁵ gosibrede and holy kynrede;
cueriche drinkeþ operes blood, whan it is i-sched. He⁶
louep somdel her norice and here pleieng⁷ feres whiche
þat⁸ soukeþ þe same melk þat þey soukeþ, while they beep⁹
children. And þey purseweþ here breþeren, hire cosyns,
and here oper kyn: and despiseþ hir kyn, while þey beep
on lyue,¹⁰ and awrekeþ¹¹ her deep, and¹² þey beep i-slawe.
Among hem longe vsage and euel custume hap so longe
i-dured,¹³ þat it hap i-made¹⁴ þe maistrie, and torneþ among
himselþ¹⁵ traisoun in to kynde so fer forthe, þat as¹⁶ þei
be traytours by kynde,¹⁷ so aliens and men of straunge
londes þat woneþ longe among hem draweþ aftir þe manere¹⁸
of hir companye, and skapeþ wel vnneþe¹⁹ but þey be

treason, berenge in theire honde an instrumente callede a MS. HARL. 2261.
sparth as for a staffe with the whiche they perische ofte-
tymes men trustenge in theyme. This peple is frowarde
and inconstante, diuerse or variable, and wyly, amouge
whom batelle is more to be dredde then arte, peace more
then armor, hony more then galle, malice more then cheual-
lery; the propertes and condicions of whom be, thei be
neither stronge in battelle neither tru in pease; whiche
ioyne to theyme men whom thei intende to sle by the bonde
of compaternite and of consecrate fraternite, by whiche oon
of theyme drynkethe the bloode of that other wyllfully.
Which luffe theire childer in a maner, and breþer; whiche
prosecute their cosynnes; deceyvenge men in lyfe, and tak-

¹ þerwip] om. Cx.

² truste moost, Cx.

³ þese, a., Cx;

⁴ Added from Cx. (not in a.)

⁵ in þe, a.

⁶ So MS. and a.; they, Cx. (in the same sense.)

⁷ pley feres, a., Cx.

⁸ So also a., and Cx.

⁹ were, Cx.

¹⁰ alyue, a.; they lyue, Cx.

¹¹ auenge, Cx.

¹² whan, Cx. (so often).

¹³ Slightly varied in Cx.

¹⁴ goten, Cx. adding ouer them.

¹⁵ among hemselþ] om. Cx.

¹⁶ as and so, below, om. Cx.

¹⁷ nature, Cx.

¹⁸ maneres, a.

¹⁹ folowen their maners that vnnethe, Cx.

tionis¹ alienigenæ huc advecti fere inevitabiliter involvantur. In hac gente quamplures viri sedendo, mulieres stando urinam emittunt. Multi sunt in hac terra deformes, naturæ beneficio in² membris destituti; ita ut sicut³ qui hic⁴ bene formantur nusquam melius, ita⁵ qui male nusquam pejus; et recte quidem, ut de gente incesta⁶ nequiter copulata,⁷ natura nequiter deformante, natura⁸ læsa contra legem naturæ⁹ producat. In hac terra et in Wallia vetulas quasdam in leporinam formam se transmutare¹⁰ ubera vaccina¹¹ sugendo, alienum lac surripere,¹² leporariosque magnatum¹³ cursu fatigare vetus quidem et adhuc frequens querela est. Quidam etiam magicis artibus pingues porcos (sed ru-beos duntaxat) ex aliqua præjacente materia produ-centes in nundinis vendunt; sed hi statim, ut aliquam

¹ *perditionis*, B.² *in*] om. B.³ *sicut*] om. C.D.⁴ *hic qui*, B.⁵ *ibi*, C. (not D.)⁶ *incestu*, C. (not D.)⁷ *nequiter deformata vel natura læsa*, C. (not D.)⁸ *talis natura*, A. (second hand) B.D.⁹ C. (not D.) adds, *ne proles deformis producat*.¹⁰ *transformare uncta ubera*, A.; *mutuo transformare*, B.¹¹ *vaccinea*, C.D.¹² *suscipere*, C. (not D.)¹³ *magno*, C.D.

i-smotted¹ wip þe schrewednesse and bycomeþ traytours² TREVISA.
 also. Among hem many men pisseþ sittynge and wommen
 stondynge. Þere beþ meny men in þis³ lond wonder⁴
 foule and yuel i-schape yn lymes and in body.⁵ For in
 hir lymes lakkeþ⁶ þe benefice of kynde, so þat nowher
 beþ no⁷ better i-schape, þan þey þat beþ þere wel i-
 schape; and nowher non worse i-schape þan þey þat beþ
 þere euel i-schape. And skilfulliche kynde, i-hurt and de-
 fouled by wykkednesse of lyuynge, bryngeþ forþ suche foule
 gromes and euel i-schape of hem þat wip vnlaweful wed-
 dyng⁸ wip foule maneres and euel lyuynge so wickedliche
 defouleþ⁹ kynde.¹⁰ In þis lond and in Wales olde wyfes and
 wymmen were i-woned, and beþ 3it (as me pleyneþ)¹¹
 ofte forto schape hem self in liknes of hares for to melke
 here nei3hebores keen,¹² and so¹³ stele hire melk, and ofte
 grehoundes¹⁴ renneþ after hem and purseweþ hem, and
 wenep þat þey be hares. Also som by craft of nygramauncie
 makeþ fat swyne [þat beþ reed of colour,]¹⁵ and noon oper,
 and selleþ hem in chepinge¹⁶ and in feires; but anon as pese¹⁷

enge vengeance for dedde men. Mony men of that cuntre MS. HARL.
 vse to make water and to sende furthe their vryne syt- 2261.
 tenge, and women stondenge. Also there is moche peple of
 that londe destitute in their membres thro the deformite
 of nature; for lyke as men amonge theyme welle formede
 by nature be semely men, so men deformed by nature
 amonge þeim be moste vile and hade in contempte; and by
 ry3hte, for hit is not to be hade in meruayle, thau3he nature
 hurte brynge furthe peple as ageyne the lawe of nature,
 amonge peple vsenge inceste and takenge women ageyne the
 lawe of God. Also hit is seide amonge commune peple,
 olde women of that londe, and of Wales, to chaunge theyme
 in to the forme of an hare and to sowke bestes, and to
 take awaye the mylke of other men, and to make feynthe
 the grehowndes of grete men thro cowsenge and rennenge.
 And somme of theim causenge redde swyne thro wycche-
 crafte, after thei were made fatte and solde at feires, when

¹ smytted, a.

² ther is none but he is besmitted
 with their treson also, Cx.

³ that, Cx.

⁴ om. Cx.

⁵ Slightly varied in Cx.

⁶ they lacke. Cx.

⁷ non, a.

⁸ delyng, Cx.

⁹ So Cx.; and defouleþ, MS. and
 a. (without sense.)

¹⁰ kynde and nature, Cx.

¹¹ So also a.; as men sayne, Cx.

¹² kyne, Cx.

¹³ so] om. C.

¹⁴ gerhoundes, Cx.

¹⁵ Altered from Cx., who has for
 to be reed, &c. Absent from a.

¹⁶ markettis, Cx.

¹⁷ the, Cx.

aquam transeunt, in propriam naturam redeunt. Sed et hi quacunquē¹ industria servantur ultra triduum non perdurant.² Inter hæc et hujusmodi³ advertendum est, quod⁴ mundi extremitates⁵ novis semper quibusdam prodigiis pollent;⁶ ac si natura licentius ludat in privato et remoto, quam in propatulo⁷ et propinquo. Unde et in hac insula plurima sunt miranda et stupenda.⁸

CAP. XXXV.

De locorum prodigiis.

AFFIRMATUM est a multis⁹ quod in boreali parte Hi-berniæ sit insula viventium,¹⁰ in qua nemo mori potest; sed, cum diutino¹¹ detenti fuerint languore, ad proximam deportantur insulam. Est et alia ibi¹² insula, in qua mulieres parere non possunt, tamen concipere¹³

¹ *Sed et hi quacunquē] sed quantacumque, C.D. ; at quantacumque, B.*

² *durant, C.D.*

³ *So B., Gale ; hujus, A.E.*

⁴ *Inter . . . quod] om. C.D.*

⁵ *extremitas, G. and Gale.*

⁶ *prodigiis quibusdam pollet, G., Gale.*

⁷ *patulo, B.*

⁸ *et stupenda] om. C.D.*

⁹ *a multis] om. A. (which has erasures) B.*

¹⁰ *Slightly abbreviated in C.D.*

¹¹ *diuturno, B.*

¹² *Et est ibi alia, A.*

¹³ *concipere tamen, D.*

swyne passeþ ony water þey torneþ aȝen in to hir owne kynde, where¹ it be straw, hey, gras, oper torues.² But pese swyn mowe not be i-kept by no manere³ craft forto dure in liknesse of swyn⁴ ouer þre dayes. Among pese wondres and opere take hede þat in þe vttermeste⁵ endes of þe world falleþ ofte newe meruailles and wondres,⁶ as þei kynde pleyde wiþ larger⁷ leue priueliche and fer in þe endes þan openliche and uyz in⁸ þe myddel. Þerfore in pis ilond beþ meny grisliche meruayles and wondres.

TREVISA.

*De locorum prodigiis.**Capitulum tricesimum quintum.*

*Giraldus, capitulo nono.*⁹ Meny men telleþ þat in þe norþ side of Irland is þe ilond of lyf; in þat ilond is¹⁰ no man þat¹¹ may deie;¹² but whan þey beþ i-holde wiþ hard¹³ siknesse þey beþ i-bore out to þe next ilond,¹⁴ and deie þere. Þere is anoþer ilond in Irland; þere no womman may bere a childe, but ȝit sche¹⁵ may conceyue. Also þere

thei come to eny water to returne in to an other kynde, causenge that body soe to endure by wycchecraft by the space of thre dayes. Amonge whiche thynges hit is to be aduertede that the extremities of the worlde schyne in newe wondres and meruailles, as if that naturo scholde schyne and play more in priuate places and remouede then in open places and also nye.

MS. HARL.
2261.
f. 50. b.*Of the Wondres and Meruayles of hit.**Capitulum tricesimum quintum.*

Giraldus. Mony men afferme and say that ther is an yle in the northe parte of Yrlonde whiche is callede the yle of men lyvenge, in whiche yle a man may not dye, but after that thei be detente with longe infirmite thei be brouȝhte to another yle nye to hit. Also there is an other yle, in whom a woman may not be delyuerede; neuerthelesse thei may conceyve in

¹ *weþer*, a., Cx.² *tuues*, Cx.³ *manere*] om. Cx.⁴ Four previous words om. in Cx.⁵ *otmeste*, a.⁶ Slightly varied in Cx.⁷ So Cx., who has *loue* (typ. error?); *large*, MS. and a.⁸ *in*] om. Cx.⁹ Reference added from a.¹⁰ *is*] om. a.¹¹ *þat*] om. a.¹² *noman may deie*, Cx.¹³ *old and be vexed with grete*, Cx.¹⁴ *londe*, Cx.¹⁵ *he*, a. (probably meaning *they*. See pp. 357, 383.)

Purga-
torium
Patricii.

possunt. Est et alia insula¹ in qua mortuorum corpora putrescere non possunt.² Est lacus in Ultonia insulam continens bipartitam, cujus³ una pars visitationibus angelorum⁴ assueta, altera dæmonum incursibus exposita, in qua est purgatorium Patricii; quod⁵ precibus⁶ obtinere meruit ad confirmationem dicti sui, dum populo incredulo de pœnis reproborum ac⁷ gaudiis sanctorum prædicaret. Cujus⁸ loci, ut asserunt, si quis tormenta⁹ ex injuncta pœnitentia sustinuerit, infernales pœnas (nisi¹⁰ finaliter fuerit¹¹ impœnitens) non subibit,¹² sicut in fine hujus capituli plenius exemplabitur.¹³ Est

¹ *insula*] om. C.D.

² *poterunt*, C.D.

³ *cujus*] om. C.D.

⁴ *visitationibus Anglorum*, Gale, absurdly, and against G.; where, however, *Angolorum* is deceitfully abbreviated.

⁵ C.D. add *quidem*.

⁶ *suis* added in B.

⁷ *pœnis reproborum ac*] om. C. (not D., which has *de gaudiisque*.)

⁸ *Hujus*, C.D. (with slight transpositions.)

⁹ *tormenta* is in the place of *pœnitentia* in B.

¹⁰ *ubi*, Gale, misreading the contraction in G.

¹¹ *fuerit finaliter*, B.

¹² *subiat*, B.

¹³ *sicut . . . exemplabitur*] om. C.D.

is an ilond, pere¹ no dede body may roty.² In Vltonia TREVISA.
 is an ilond in³ a lake departed wonderliche atweyne; in
 pe⁴ oon partie is ofte grete destourbaunce and discomfort
 of fendes, and in pe oþer partie greet likynge and coumfort
 of aungelles.⁵ Pere is also Patrick his purgatorie, pat was
 i-schewed at his prayere⁶ to conferme his prechyng and
 his lore, whan he preched to mysbileued men of sorwe and
 peyne pat euel men schal pole⁷ for hire wicked wordes,⁸
 and of ioie and of blisse pat good men schal fonge for
 here holy dedes.⁹ He telleþ [pat]¹⁰ who pat suffreþ pe
 peynes of þat purgatorie, ȝif it be enioyned hym for pe-
 naunce, he schal neuere suffre pe peynes of helle, but he
 dye fynalliche wip oute repentaunce of synne, as pe en-
 sample is i-sette more ful at this chapitres ende. *Trevisa.*
 Þei þis sawe myȝt be sooth, it is but a iape. For¹¹ no
 man pat doop dedely synne schal be i-saued, but he be
 verrey repentaunt,¹² [what sommeuer penaunce he doo; and
 euery man that is verray repentaunt] at his lifes ende of
 al his mysdedes, he schal be sikerliche i-saued and haue pe
 blisse of heuene, þey he neuere hire speke¹³ of Patrik his
 purgatorie.¹⁴ R. Pere is an ilond in Conacte¹⁵ Salo,¹⁶ pat

hit. Also there is an other yle in whom the bodies of MS. HARL.
2261.
 dedde men may not be putrefiede. Also there is a place
 in Vltonia, that is callede Vlster, conteynge an yle par-
 tede in tweyne. That oon of theyme is wonte to be vside
 with the visitacion of angelles. That other is expownede to
 the incursion of deuelles, in whiche parte the purgatory of
 Seynte Patrikke is, whiche he deseruede to obteyne by
 hys preiers to the confirmacion of his seyenge, when he
 prechede to reprobable peple of the ioies of heuyn and
 of the peynes of helle. For, as hit is seide, if eny man sus-
 teyne the tormentes of that place by penaunce injoynede to
 hym, he schalle not suffre the peynes of helle with owte that
 he were inpenitente finally, as hit schalle be schewede more
 pleyneley in the ende of this chapitre. Also there is an

¹ in whiche, Cx.

² rootye, a.; roten, Cx.

³ So a., Cx.; and, MS.

⁴ that, Cx.

⁵ Slightly transposed and varied in Cx.

⁶ prayers, Cx.

⁷ poole, a.; suffer, Cx.

⁸ So also a.; werkes, Cx., which is better.

⁹ Very slight variations in the above sentence in Cx.

¹⁰ Added from a. and Cx.

¹¹ But, Cx.

¹² he be verrey repentaunt] Added from a. and Cx.

¹³ So a.; neuere speke, MS.; here, Cx.

¹⁴ In the preceding extract, Cx. omits the first sentence, and, besides slight variations, adds the words in brackets, which are absent from MS. and a.

¹⁵ Connacte, a.; Cannacte, Cx.

¹⁶ So Cx.; Salao, MS.; Saloo, a.

Fons
Pluviae.

Salices.

et insula in Connacte salo a sancto¹ Brendano consecrata, muribus carens, ubi humana corpora nec² humanantur nec³ putrescunt, sed sub divo servantur incorrupta. Est fons in Momonia,³ cujus aquis si quis abluitur, pro toto seu pro parte canus efficitur. E contra est alius⁴ fons in Ultonia quo intinctus non canescit ulterius.⁵ Est et fons in Momonia,⁶ qui si tactus fuerit ab homine, statim tota provincia pluviis inundat,⁷ quæ non⁸ cessabunt donec sacerdos virgo a nativitate,⁹ missa in vicina capella celebrata, aquæ benedictione et lactis¹⁰ vaccæ unius coloris aspersione, barbaro satis ritu, fontem reconciliaverit. Apud Glyndelacan circa oratorium Sancti Keywyni¹¹ salices more pomerii¹² poma proferunt magis salubria quam sapida, quæ sanctus ille ad salutem pueri sui¹³ precibus

¹ dicto, A.

² non, C.D.

³ Nemonia, B.

⁴ alius] om. C.D., and the words slightly transposed.

⁵ amplius, C.D. This and the previous sentence omitted in A., which consistently omits the *etiam* following. They occur lower down.

⁶ E. . . . Momonia] om. B.

⁷ inundatur, A.; inundavit, B.

⁸ quæ non] et non, D.

⁹ virgo after nativitate in B.

¹⁰ lacte, C.D. (with other slight variations.)

¹¹ Kewyni, B.; Keilwin, C.; Kcui-nii, D. (apparently.)

¹² pomarii, A.C.D.

¹³ sui] om. C. (not D.)

is, in þe see of Conactia, i-halowed of Seynt Brendoun,¹ and hap no myse; þere dede bodyes beep nouȝt i-buried, but beep i-kept e þere oute [of therthe]² and rotieþ nouȝt. In Mamonia is a welle; who þat wascheþ³ hym wip þe water of þat welle, for som oþer for alle⁴ he schal worpe hoor.⁵ Þere is anoper welle in Vltonia,⁶ who þat⁷ is i-wasche þerynne, he schal neuere wexe hoor afterward. Þere is anoper⁸ welle in Mamonia;⁹ ȝif any man toucheþ þat welle, anon schalle falle a¹⁰ greet reyn in to¹¹ alle the prouince; and þat reyn schal neuere cese, or¹² a preost þat is clene¹³ mayde singe a masse in a chapel þat is faste by, and blisse¹⁴ þe water, and with mylk of a cowe þat is of oon here byspringe þe welle, and so reconsile þe welle in a¹⁵ straunge manere. At Glyndalkan¹⁶ aboute þe oratorie of Seint Keynewyn wilewys¹⁷ bereþ apples as it were appel treen, and beep more holsom þan sauory; þat holy¹⁸ seynt brouȝt forþ pilke apples by prayeres for to hele his childe.¹⁹

TREVISA.

yle in that cuntre, whiche was consecrate of Seynte Brendan, wontenge myce, where the bodies of men neither rote neither be beriedde, but lye with owte incorrupte. Also there is a welle in Manonia that and if a man wasche alle his body with that water, other elles parte, he schalle be made hoore. Also there is a welle in Vlster, where in a man waschenge hym schalle not wexe hoore afterwarde. Also there is a welle in Manonia whiche towchede of a man schalle cause alle the prouince to habunde in reyn, whiche schalle not sene vntille a preste beenge a virgyn from his natuiute syngenge masse in a chapelle nye to hit, makenge holy water, schalle reconsile that welle after the ryte of men of Barbre, castenge holy water abowte that welle with the mylke of a kowe that is of oon coloure. Also at a water callete Glynde, nye to the chyrche of Seynte Kexwyne, welotrees bere apples more hollesom then thei appere to the savoure, whom that seynte causede to be brouȝte furthe thro his preiers for the sawle healethe of his childe. Also

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ Brendan, a.² Added from Cx.; not in a.³ So a. and Cx.; *wastep*, MS.⁴ *for som . . . alle*] om. Cx.⁵ Cx. adds *on his hede*.⁶ So Cx.; *Mamonia*, MS., a.⁷ *who someuer*, Cx.⁸ a, a, Cx.⁹ *Mownatere* or *Momonia*, Cx.¹⁰ a] om. Cx.¹¹ *to*] om. Cx.¹² *til*, Cx.¹³ a *clene*, Cx.¹⁴ *blesse*, Cx.¹⁵ *in this*, Cx.¹⁶ *Glydalkan*, a.¹⁷ *withges*, Cx.¹⁸ So Cx.; *þat þe holy*, MS., a.¹⁹ Cx. adds *that was seek*.

Lacus in
Ultonia.

produxit. Est lacus in Ultonia piscosa satis, triginta millia passuum in longum¹ et quindecim in latum² habens, ex quo fluvius Banna usque in³ oceanum borealem se diffundit;⁴ cui⁵ lacui⁶ talis, ut asserunt, casus initium dedit. Celebre fuit aliquando⁷ apud loci illius⁸ incolas, vitio coeundi cum bestiis consuetissimos,⁹ quod, quam cito fons quidam terræ illius ex prisca reverentia semper tectus¹⁰ relinqueretur discoopertus, tanta statim fons inundatione exuberaret, quod totam provinciam submergeret.¹¹ Unde¹² contigit mulierem quandam¹³ hauriendi causa ad fontem accessisse, qua necdum fonte signato ad parvulum vagientem properante, fons ita ebullivit, ut et¹⁴ mulierem cum parvulo mergeret, et totam provinciam stagnum faceret. Hujus rei argumentum est, quod piscatores aquæ illius turres ecclesiasticas more¹⁵ patriæ illius¹⁶ altas et rotundas sub undis sereno tempore adhuc conspiciunt. Apud

¹ *longitudinem*, B.C. (not. D.)

² *latitudine*, C. (not D.)

³ *ad*, A.B.D.

⁴ *transfundit*, D. (with other slight variations.)

⁵ *huic*, C.D.

⁶ *cujus lacus*, B.

⁷ *quondam*, C.D.

⁸ *illius*] om. C.D.

⁹ *consuetos*, B.; *vitiosissimos*, C.D.

¹⁰ *semper tectus*] coopertus, C.D.

¹¹ *dilueret*, C.D.

¹² *Dudum*, B.

¹³ *quondam*, A.

¹⁴ *et*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *secundum modum*, B.

¹⁶ *illius*] om. C.D.

Pere is a lake in Vltonia¹ and fisshe inow² perynne, and is pritty myle on³ lengpe and fiftene in brede; pe ryuer Ban⁴ rennep in to pe norp ocean out of pat lake; and me seith pat [pat]⁵ lake bygan in pis manere: pere were men in pat contre pat were of yuel leuyng, cocuntes cum brutis, and pere was a welle in pat lond in grete reuerence in⁶ olde tyme and alle wey i-heled; ⁷ and 3if it were vnheled, pe welle wexe⁸ and adrenche⁹ al pe lond. And so it happed pat a womman wente to pat welle for to fecche water, and hi3ed¹⁰ wel¹¹ faste to hir childe pat wepte¹² in his¹³ cradell, and lefte pe welle vnheled; pan pe welle sprong so faste, pat it dreynt¹⁴ pe woman and hir child, and made al pe contray a grete¹⁵ lake and a fische pond. For to preue pat pis is soop, it is a grete argument pat whanne pe wedir is clere fischeres of pat water seen¹⁶ in pe grounde vnder pe water rounde toures, [and]¹⁷ hi3e, i-schape as cherches of pe¹⁸ lond. In pe norp side of Irlond in the

TREVISA.

there is a water in Vlster ful of fisches, hauenge xxx^d m. MS. HARL. passes in longitude and xv. m. in latitude, from whom 2261. the water, callede Banne, goethe furthe vn to the northe ocean, to whiche place and water a meruellous chaunce happede, as hit is seide. For that abhominable vice of sendenge furthe of sede was vsede amonge men of that cuntre with brute bestes, where a welle vsede to be couerede for olde reuerence, laste at a tyme vncoverede that welle so habundaunte in water drowned alle that prouince. Where of hit happede a woman to haue goen to that welle for cause to drawe water, and leuenge hit vncoverede, makenge haste to here childe cryenge, the water was so habundaunte that hit pereschede pe woman with here childe, and makenge alle the prouince a water: an argumente and a probacion of this thyng dothe appere in that the fischer, vsenge to fische in that water, may see in the bry3hte daies of somer vnder the waters hye towres and rownde of chirches, after the vse of that cuntre. Also at the sowthe parte of Irlonde, in

¹ Vlster, Cx.² moche fyssh, Cx.³ in, a.⁴ So Cx.; Ban pat, MS. and a.⁵ Added from a.; that this, Cx.; the pat of MS. is probably transposed; see preceding note.⁶ of, a., Cx.⁷ couered, and vncovered below, Cx.⁸ wexe] wold ryse, Cx.⁹ droune, Cx.¹⁰ hied, a., Cx.¹¹ wel] om. Cx.¹² weep, a.¹³ the, Cx.¹⁴ drowned, Cx.¹⁵ grete] om. Cx.¹⁶ see, Cx.¹⁷ Added from a. and Cx.¹⁸ that, Cx. (not a.)

australem Hiberniam in regione Ossiriensi¹ quolibet septennio, per imprecationem cujusdam sancti abbatis,² duo conjuges mas et fœmina a finibus illis et a formis propriis exulare coguntur. Nam formam lupinam induentes completo septennio, si forte superstites fuerint, aliis duobus loco eorum³ simili conditione subrogatis, ad pristinam redeunt tam patriam quam naturam.

Lacus
mirabiles.

Est lacus in hac terra, quo si per aliquod spatium palus ligneus infigatur, pars solo inhærens fit ferrea, quæ in aqua est fit lapidea, sed quæ supra aquam est lignea manet.⁴ Est etiam ibidem⁵ lacus, in quem si virgam de corylo injeceris,⁶ convertitur in fraxinum, et e contra. Item in Hibernia sunt tres salmonum saltus, quibus ad summa ab imis contra rupem ad altitudinem unius hastæ⁷ salmones se⁸ transferunt. Item in Lagenia⁹ est unum stagnum ubi¹⁰ sunt aves

¹ *Assiriensi*, C. ; *Hossiriensi*, D. ; *Affriensi*, B.

² *sancti abbatis*] E contra est alius fons in Ultonia quo intinctus non canescit ulterius. Est et fons qui . . . (blank in MS.), B., and so A. nearly.

³ *illorum*, C.D.

⁴ Slightly varied in C.D.

⁵ *ibi*, C.D.

⁶ *projeceris virgam coruli*, C.D. ; *corulo*, B.

⁷ *unius hastæ altitudinem*, B.

⁸ *salmones se*] om. C.D.

⁹ *Laegenia*, B.

¹⁰ *in quo*, B

contray of Ossiriens¹ eueriche seuene zere, at þe prayere of oon pat was an² holy abbot, tweyne pat beep i-wedded a man and a womman schal³ nedes be outlawed⁴ out of pat contray and out of here owne schap. For pilke seuene zere þey schul be riȝt as wolues i-schape; and, ȝif þey lyueþ so longe, þey schulle turne aȝen in to hir owne lond and in to hir schap at þe seuen zeres ende. Panne schullen oþer tweyne in her stede be in þe same manere outlawed and i-schape for oþer seuen zere.⁵ Pere is a lake in þis lond, ȝif a pole is i-piȝt⁶ perynne, pat partie of þe pole⁷ pat is in þe erthe schal turne in to iren; al pat is⁸ in þe water schal torne in to stoon; and al pat is aboue þe water schal be tree and in his owne kynde. Also pere is a lake pat torneþ hasel into asche and asche into hasel, if it is i-doo⁹ perynne. Also in Irlond beep pre samoun lepes; pere¹⁰ samoun¹¹ lepeþ aȝenst a roche a longe speres lengþe. Also in Lagenia is a ponde; pere is Seynt Colman¹²

TREVISA.

the region off Ossirience, a man and a woman be constreynede to indue an other forme in the ende of vii. yere from that costes,¹³ thro the preier of an holy abbote, whiche induede with the forme of a wulfe the space of vii. yere complete, if they be in lyve thei returne in to theire propre nature, other tweyne subrogate in to the places of theyme in lyke wyse. Also there is a water in that cuntre, in to whom if a staffe or a thyng of a tree be put by a certeyne tyme, the parte of that tre beenge in the erthe is yrne, that parte in the water is as the substaunce of a ston, that parte above the¹⁴ water dothe remayne in that forme as when it was putte ynne. Also there is a lake in that cuntre, in to whom if thou putte a rodde of ah haselle tre hit is turnede in to an asche, and in contrary wyse. Also there be in Yrlonde iij. weres, whiche be in latitude of the hiȝhte of a spere, ageyne a hille ouer whom salmones wylle passe pro a spretenge. Also there is a water in Legennia, where [be] the bryddes of Seynte

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ So a., Cx.; *Assiriens*, MS.² of an, Cx.³ must, Cx.⁴ exyled and forshappen in to lykenes of wolues, and abyde oute seuen yere, Cx.⁵ The sentence is thus recast by Cx.: *And at thende of seuen yere, ȝif they lyue, they come home agayn and take agayn theyr owne shappe; and then shal other tweyne goo forth in theyr stede, and so [be?] forshapen for other seuen yere.*⁶ pight, a., Cx., who adds *and stycked*.⁷ shaft or pool, Cx.⁸ and that part that abydeþ, Cx., who has other slight variations.⁹ it be don, Cx.¹⁰ there as, Cx.¹¹ samouns, a.¹² Coloman, a.¹³ So Harl. MS., but the sentence is more or less corrupt.¹⁴ that, MS.

De Purga-
torio S.
Patricii.

Sancti Colemanni,¹ scilicet cercellæ² manibus hominum assuetæ; quibus, si injuria fiat, aves non redeunt, et aquæ ibidem amarescunt, et foetent; et injuriator non evadet³ vindictam, nisi condigne⁴ satisfaciatur.⁵ *Ranulphus.*⁶ Circa purgatorium Patricii est notandum, quod Sanctus Patricius secundus, qui fuit⁷ abbas et non episcopus, dum in Hibernia prædicaret, studuit animos hominum illorum⁸ bestiales terrore tormentorum infernalium a malo revocare, et gaudiorum Paradisi promissione ad bonum confirmare. Illi autem dixerunt se nolle converti, nisi aliquis eorum⁹ tormenta illa et gaudia posset¹⁰ aliququaliter in hac vita experiri. Quamobrem Patricio super hoc oranti apparuit Jesus Christus dans textum evangelii

¹ *Colomanni*, A.B.

² *cercellæ*] om. C.D.

³ *evadit*, C.D.

⁴ *digne*, B.

⁵ *condigna satisfactio subsequatur*, C.

⁶ *Ran. . . . intendit* (end of chapter)] om. C.D.

⁷ *fuit*] om. E.

⁸ *illorum hominum*, B.

⁹ *illorum*, B.

¹⁰ *possit*, B.

his briddes; [pe briddes]¹ beep i-cleped cercelles, and comeþ homeliche to manis honde; but 3if me doop hem harme,² pey goop away and comeþ nouȝt aȝen, but³ the water pere schal wexe bitter and stynke; and he pat dede pe wrong schal nouȝt aſterte wiþ oute wreche and meschief, but pei doo ful⁴ amendes. R.⁵ Touchynge⁶ Patrik his purgatorie take hede pat⁷ pe secounde Seynt Patrik, pat was abbot and nouȝt biſshop, whyle he preched in Irlond studied wel faſte beſily⁸ for to torne pilke wicked men, pat leuede as beſtes, out of here yuel lyf for drede of pe peynes of helle, and for to conferme hem in good lyf by hope of pe grete bliſſe of heuene; and pey ſeide pat pey wolde nouȝt torne, but ſome of hem myȝte knowe ſomwhat of pe grete peynes and pe bliſſe, pat he ſpak of, whyle pey were here on lyue.⁹ Þanne Seynt Patrik preied to God alle. myȝty perfore; and oure Lord Ieſus Criſt apperede to Patrik, and took hym a ſtaf,¹⁰ and pe text of

TREVIſA.

Colomanne, whiche be callede cercelle, wonte to the hondes of men: if iniury be doen to thoſe bryddes, they comme not ageyne; and alſo the waters per wexe bytter and make an ylle ſavour; and the doer of the iniury ſchalle not eſcape vengeance, vn tille that he haue doen dewe ſatisfaccion. Alſo hit is to be attendede abowte the purgatory of Seynte Patrik, that Seynte Patrik the ſecunde, whiche was an abbot and not a byſchoppe, when he prechede in Yrlonde, ſtudiede to calle ageyne and brynge to the weye of ſawle healethe the ſawles of the beſtialle peple in that cuntre from the peyne of helle, and to confirme the myndes of theyme in goodeneſſe thro the promiſſion of the ioyes of paradise. The men of that cuntre ſeide they wolde not be conuertede, but if ſomme of theym myȝhte haue experience in this lyfe in a parte of the ioyes of paradise and of the peynes of helle: wherefore Seynte Patrike makege his prayers for that cauſe, oure Lorde Ieſus Criſte apperede to hym, 3iffenge to hym a texte of the goſpelle

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ Added from a. and Cx. (the latter has *the birdes*.)

² *yf men do hem wrong or harme*, Cx.

³ *and*, Cx.

⁴ *ful* om. Cx.

⁵ Reference omitted in a.

⁶ *As touching*, Cx.

⁷ *ye ſhal vnderſtande that*, Cx.

⁸ *beſy*, a.; *labored and ſtudied for to torne*, Cx.

⁹ Cx. has ſome omissions (and ſlight variations) in the previous ſentence.

¹⁰ The remainder of the ſentence omitted in Cx., who has *ſtaf and ladde*.

et baculum unum, quæ adhuc manent in patria¹ apud summum archiepiscopum. Eduxit ergo² Dominus Patricium in desertum locum, ubi fossam unam³ rotundam intrinsecus obscuram ei ostendit dicens: Quod si veraciter quis poenitens⁴ per diem et noctem in illa fossa manserit, et fide constans per illam transierit, videbit tormenta malorum et gaudia beatorum.⁵ Ad hæc Christo disparente, Patricius construxit ibidem ecclesiam, canonicos regulares instituens;⁶ fossam autem⁷ illam, quæ modo⁸ in cœmeterio⁹ est ad orientalem ecclesiæ frontem, muro circumcinxit; januam obseravit, ne quis temere sine licentia episcopi et loci prioris ingrederetur. Multi quippe tempore illius Patricii ingressi sunt et regressi, narrantes poenas et gaudia quæ viderant, quæ et¹⁰ literis ibidem demandantur.¹¹ Qua occasione multi tunc ad fidem convertebantur. Multi quoque intraverunt, qui nusquam redierunt. Sed et¹² diebus Stephani regis An-

¹ patria illa, A.

² igitur, A.

³ unam] om. B.

⁴ poenitens aliquis, B.

⁵ bonorum, Gale.

⁶ constituens, B.

⁷ fossamque, omitting autem, B.

⁸ modo] om. B.

⁹ cimiterio, MSS.

¹⁰ et quæ in, A.

¹¹ literis . . . demandantur] Space left for the words in B.

¹² et] om. B. ; in, Gale.

pe gospel pat beep in pe contray in pe erchebisshops ward.¹ Panne oure Lorde ladde Patrik in to a wilde place, and schewed hym pere a round pitte pat was derke wip ynne, and seide: ȝif a man were verray repentaunt and stable of byleue, and went in to pis pitte, and waked² pere inne a day and a nyȝt, he schulde see pe sorwes and pe peynes of euel men and pe ioie and pe blisse of goode men; pan Crist vanysched out of Patrik his siȝt.³ And Patrik rered pere a chirche, and dede pere⁴ chanouns regular, and closed pe pitte aboute wip a wal; and⁵ is now in the chirche ȝerde⁶ riȝt at pe est ende of pe chirche, and is fast i-loke⁷ wip a strong ȝate.⁸ For no man schulde niseliche wende yn⁹ wip oute leue of pe bisshop and¹⁰ of pe priour of pe place. Meny men went yn pere and come¹¹ out aȝen in Patrik his tyme, and tolde of peynes and ioie pat pey hadde i-seie, and meruayles pat pey sey beep ȝit pere i-wrete.¹² And by cause perof meny men torned and were conuerted to riȝt byleue. Also meny men wente yn, and come neuer aȝen. In kyng Steuene his tyme, kyng of

TREVISA.

and a staffe, whiche remayne ȝitte in the cuntre with the archibischope. After that oure Lorde ledde furthe Seynte Patrike in to a deserte place, where he schewed to hym a lytulle rownde dyche, obscure and derke with ynne, seyenge that if a man, beenge trully penitente, abyde in hit by a day and a nyȝhte, he schalle see the tormentes of ylle men and also the ioies of blessedde men. Then Criste euaneschede away, and Seynte Patrike made a chirche there, ordeynenge in hit chanones regular, compassenge abowte that dyche with a walle, whiche is now in the chirche yerde at the cste parte of the chirche, and kepenge hit with grete diligence vnder a locke, leste eny man scholde entre in to hit in foly, withowte licence of the byschoppe and of the prior of that place. Mony men entrede in to pat place in the tyme of Seynte Patrik, whiche commenge ageyne telled of the peynes and of the ioies that thei hade seen; pro whiche thyng meny men were conuertede to the feithe of Criste: and meny men entrence in to that place come neuer ageyne. But in the daies of Steven kyng of Englonde,

MS. HARL. 2261.

Of pe purgatory of Seynte Patryk was a chanon.

¹ So a.; name, MS.² walked, a. and Cx.³ Cx. has a few trivial variations in the previous sentence, and also in the following.⁴ and put therein, Cx.⁵ The syntax requires *whiche*, or the addition of a nominative.⁶ hiȝe, a.⁷ shyttre, Cx.⁸ dore, Cx.⁹ goo in nycely, Cx.¹⁰ or, Cx.¹¹ cam, Cx., and so below.¹² sawe ben there yet wretton, Cx.

glie quidam miles, nomine Owynus, intravit, et rediens mansit in negotiis monasterii Ludensis ordinis Cisterciensis quoad vixit,¹ narrans quæ viderat. Locus autem vocatur purgatorium Patricii, ecclesia vocatur² Reglis.³ Nulli imponitur ut locum intret, sed potius in principio⁴ sibi dissuadetur ingressus; quod si omnino intrare voluerit, accedet primo ad episcopum loci, qui primus⁵ ingressum dissuadet, sed perseveranti in tali proposito literas tradit ut loci priorem adeat, qui similiter ingressum dissuadet, hortando ut aliam poenitentiam assumat. Quod si perseverat, introducit eum in ecclesiam, ut quindecim diebus jejuniis et orationibus indulgeat, post quos hominem communione munitum perducit cum processione et letania⁶ usque ad ostium purgatorii, ubi etiam iterum⁷ dissuadet

¹ *quoad vixit*] om. B.; *quo adduxit*, A. (without sense); *quo advixit*, E.

² *vocatur*] om. A.B.

³ *regularis*, Gale.

⁴ *primo*, Gale.

⁵ *primo*, A.

⁶ *latania*, B. The form *letania* (for *litania*) is admitted by Du Cange, and so has been allowed to stand.

⁷ *iterum*] om. B.

Engelond, a knyzt pat heet Owen went into Patryk his purgatorie, and come aȝen, and dwelled al his lyf tyme afterward in pe nedes of pe abbay of Ludensis pat is of pe ordre of Cisterciens,¹ and tolde meny men of wondres pat he hadde i-seie in Patrykes purgatorie.² And the chirche hatte Reglis. No man is enioyned forto wende³ in to pat purgatorie, bote i-counseilled wel faste pat pey⁴ schulde not come pere; but ȝif he wil nedes entre, he schal first be i-sent to pe bisshop of pe place, and he schalle counsaile hym for to leue; and ȝif pe man is stable, and wil nede take pe wey, pe bisshop schal sende hym wip lettres to pe priour of pe place; and pe priour schal counseille hym to leue. And he wil⁵ take pat wey, he schal be i-brouzt into pe chirche, and pere he schal be in prayers and in fastyng fiftene dayes.⁶ [And after fiftene dayes]⁷ he schal be housled and i-lad to pe dore of purgatorie wip processoun and letanye; and pere⁸ he schal

TREVISA.

a knyghte, Owyne by name, entrede in to hit, whiche returnenge ageyne was made a monke of the orde Cisterciens, in the monastery of Ludense, whiche taryede per after alle the tyme of his lyfe, tellenge thynges that he hade seene: that place is callede the purgatory of Seynte Patrikke. Truly eny man is not movede to entre in to that place, but he hathe counselle in the begynnenge that he scholde not entre in to hit. But and if a man wille entre into hit, in eny wyse he schalle goe firste to the bischoppe of that place, whiche ȝiffethe counselle to hym that he scholde not entre in to hit; but and if he remayne in that purpose, he takethe to hym a letter to goe to the prior of that place, whiche counsellethe hym also that he schalle not entre in to hit, movege hym to take other penaunce. And if the man be perseuerante in his purpose, and wylle to entre in to that place, the prior bryngethe hym in to the chirche that he may applye hym selfe in fastenges and preiers by xv. daies. After that the prior, causenge the man to receyve the blessed sacramente, bryngethe hym furthe with procession, the conuente syngenge the letany, vn to the durre of the purgatory, where the prior of that

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ So *a.*; *Cistirensis*, MS.; *Ciste*, Cx.

² Cx. has a few very slight variations.

³ *goo*, Cx.

⁴ *he*, Cx., which is better.

⁵ *he wil*] om. *a.*

⁶ The two previous sentences are almost entirely recast in Cx.

⁷ Added from *a.* and Cx.

⁸ *yet*, Cx., who has also slight variations elsewhere in the remainder of the chapter.

ingressum. Sed si perseverat, ostium ei¹ cum benedictione aperit, et post ingressum ostium consignat usque in diem alterum mane. Quo adveniente, prior,² si hominem regressum repererit, cum processione in ecclesiam deducit,³ ubi aliis quindecim diebus jejuniis et orationibus intendit.

CAP. XXXVI.

*De Sanctorum Præconiis.*⁴

NOTAT hic Giraldus, quod⁵ sicut istius nationis homines hac in vita⁶ sunt præ aliis gentibus impatientes et præcipientes ad vindictam, sic sancti hujus terræ⁷ præ cæteris regionibus vindicis⁸ animi esse noscuntur. Clerus hujus terræ castitate pollet, orationi vacat, sed et⁹ abstinentiæ per diem artificialem¹⁰ indulget, noctem tamen¹¹ assidua potatione polluit. Ita ut pro miraculo

¹ ei] om. B.² prior] om. B.³ reducit, A.⁴ Title wanting in A.⁵ Notat . . . quod] om. C.D.⁶ in hac vita, B.⁷ terræ istius, C.D.⁸ vindicis] Space originally blank in B., filled in by a later hand.⁹ et] om. A.¹⁰ naturalem, C. (not D.)¹¹ autem, B.

be counseilled to leue þat weye. Ðan yf he is stedfast TREvisa.
and stable, þe dore schal be i-opened, and he schal be
i-blessed, ¹and he schal blesse hymself also, and goo yu
a Goddes half, ²and holde forþ his wey. Ðan þe dore schal
be faste i-loke ³for to anoper day. ⁴Whan þe day is
come, þe priour comeþ to þe dore erliche and by tyme,
and openeþ the dore; and 3if þe man is i-come, he ledeþ
hym in to þe chyrche wip processioun; and þere he schal
be fiftene dayes in prayers and in fastinge.

De Præconiis Sanctorum.

Capitulum tricesimum sextum.

Here Girald makeþ mencion, ⁵þat as men of þis nacioun
beep more angry þan oper men and more hasty for to take
wreche, while þey beep on lyue; ⁶so seyntes and halowes
of þis lond beep more wrecheful þan seyntes of oper londes.
Clerkes of þis lond beep chast, and biddeþ meny bedes, ⁷and
doop greet abstinence a day, and drynkeþ al nyȝt; so þat

place movethe hym ageyne that he scholde not enter in MS. HARL.
2261.
to hit. But and if the man be perseuerante in that purpose,
he openethe the durre with a benediccion, makege the durre
sure after hym, goethe ageyne in to the place, vn tylle the
morowe followenge, whiche commenge to that place with the
couente, and fyndenge the man comen ageyne, bryngethe
hym in to the chyrche with procession, where he taryethe
afterwarde by xv. dayes in fastenges and preiers.

*Of the Preconyes of Holy Men and Seyntes of that
Londe. Capitulum tricesimum sextum.*

Giraldus rehersethe and seythe that like as men of that
nacion be more impaciente afore other folke in this lyfe,
and prompte to take vengeaunce, soe in like wise the
seyntes of that cuntre be knowen to be of a moore
vengeaunce then seyntes of other regiones. The clergy of
that londe schynethe in chastite, 3iffenge attendaunce to
preier and to abstinence by the day artificialle, spendenge
the nyȝtes in surfettes and in ryette. Soe that hit may

¹ The clause following omitted in
Cx.

² on Goddes name, Cx.

³ shette, Cx.

⁴ til the next day, Cx.

⁵ mynde, Cx.

⁶ alyue, a. A frequent variation.

⁷ sayen many prayers, Cx.

ducatur;¹ quod² ubi vina dominantur, Venus non regnet.³ Et sicut inter eos mali sunt pessimi, ita boni (quamvis pauci) sunt optimi. Prælati locorum in corripiendis⁴ excessibus desides, contemplationi et otio, non prædicationi vacantes. Unde fit ut omnes sancti terræ istius⁵ confessores sint,⁶ et nullus martyr. Nec mirum, cum omnes pene hujus terræ prælati de monasteriis in clerum electi, quæ monachi sunt complent; quæ⁷ clerici sunt vel prælati, negligunt. Unde, cum semel Cassiliensi episcopo objectum fuisset,⁸ quomodo tot sancti possent esse in illa⁹ terra ubi nullus martyr, ex quo tam feroces sunt subditi et desides prælati,¹⁰ respondit ille¹¹ satis oblique: "Verum est," inquit, "quod gens nostra satis ferox¹² est, sed ad " seipsam; nunquam tamen in Dei ministros manum

¹ *dicatur*, A. (apparently) C.D.

² *ut*, B.

³ *regnat*, B.

⁴ *corrigendis*, C.D.

⁵ *illius*, B.; *hujus*, C.D.

⁶ *sunt*, B.D.

⁷ *vero* added in C.D.

⁸ *esset objectum*, B.

⁹ *illa*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *ex . . . prælati*] et tam torpentes prælati circa curam subditorum fuissent, C.D.

¹¹ *ille*] om. C.D.

¹² *fera*, C.D.

it is accounted for a myracle pat leccherie reigneþ nouȝt pere, as wyn reigneþ. And as moche schrewes among hem beþ of alle schrewes worste,¹ so good men among hem, (peiȝ pere beþ² but fewe,) beþ goode at þe best. Prelates of þat contray beþ wel³ slowe in correccioun of trespas, and besy in contemplacioun, and nowt⁴ of⁵ prechyng of Goddes word. Perfore it is pat alle þe seyntes of þat lond beþ confessoures, and non martir among hem; and no wonder, for wel nyh⁶ alle þe prelates of þat contrey beþ i-chose out of abbayes in to þe clergie, and doop as monkes schulde. What clerkes and prelates schulde doo is to hem vnknowe; perfore whan it was⁷ i-putte aȝenst þe bisshop of Casille, how it myȝte be pat so meny seyntes beþ in Ir-lond and neuere a martir among ham,⁸ sippe⁹ pat þe men beþ so schrewed and so angry, and þe prelates so recheles and so slowh¹⁰ in correcciouns of trespas, þe bisshop answerde frowardliche¹¹ i-now, and seide: "Oure men beþ "schrewed and angry inow to¹² hem self, but in Goddes ser-

TREVISA.

be seide as a myracle lecchery not to reigne in those places where wynes be moche vsede. And lyke as ylle men amonge theyme be moste wickede, soe in lyke wyse goode men amonge theyme be moste holy, thawȝhe per be but fewe goode men. The prelates of places in that cuntre be slawthefulle to do correccion for excesses, ȝiffenge attendaunce to ydlenesse, and not to predicaciones. Where of hit is caused that alle the seyntes of that cuntre be confessoures, and noo martir. But meruayle defendethe lytelle per of; for allemoste alle men exaltede in to grete dignites there be taken from monasteryes, whiche fullefilte raper the office of a clerke then the office of a prelate. Wherefore an obieccion was made in a tyme to the bischoppe Cassielense, how so meny seyntes myȝhte be in that londe, and alle confessoures and noo martir, sythe the subiectes of that londe be so cruelle, and prelates there be soe slawe in correccion. That byschoppe answerede and seide, "Trawthc "is that the peple of that cuntre be cruelle amonge theyme "selfe, but not to the seruauantes of God, sythe thei

MS. HARL.
2261.

f. 54. b.

¹ And they that ben euyl of them ben worst of all other, so, &c., Cx.

² be, a., Cx. (the latter has other slight variations.)

³ ful, Cx.

⁴ nouȝt, a.

⁵ in, a.

⁶ wel nyh] om. Cx.

⁷ was] So a. and Cx.; is, MS.

⁸ MS. and a. (not Cx.) badly add and no wonder.

⁹ sep, a.

¹⁰ slowe, a.

¹¹ So a. and Cx. (frowardly); liche, MS.

¹² So Cx.; and to, MS. and a.

“ mittere voluit,¹ cum eos summe colat;² verum³
 “ modo⁴ venit in hanc terram gens Angligena,⁵ quæ
 “ martyres facere et⁶ novit et consuevit.” *Ranulphus*.
 Hoc autem dixerat episcopus ille, quia tunc temporis
 venerat Rex Henricus Secundus ad terram illam re-
 center post martyrizacionem Beati Thomæ Cantua-
 riensis. *Giraldus*.⁷ In hac etiam terra, sicut⁸ in
 Wallia et in Scotia, sunt campanæ,⁹ baculi recurvi,¹⁰
 et alia hujusmodi pro reliquiis in magna veneratione¹¹
 habita, ita ut sacramenta super hæc longe magis quam
 super evangelia præstare vereantur,¹² inter quæ præ-
 cipuus videtur baculus Jesu¹³ apud Dublinniam; per
 quem, ut aiunt, ¹⁴ Patricius¹⁵ primus¹⁶ vermes ejecit.¹⁷
*Augustinus*¹⁸ *de Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, ca-*
pitulo septimo. Si quærat, quomodo varia genera
 animalium, quæ ex commixtione procreantur, etiam post
 diluvium in insulis esse potuerunt, creditur,¹⁹ aut
 ad insulas transisse natando, sed tunc ad proximas;²⁰

¹ voluerunt, C.D.

² So B.; coluit, A.; colant, E.
Transposed in C.D.

³ sed, B.

⁴ nunc in hoc regnum venit, C.D.

⁵ Anglicana, A.B., Gale.

⁶ et] om. B.

⁷ *Ranulphus*. . . *Giraldus*] om.
C.D.

⁸ et added in C.D.

⁹ et added in C.D.

¹⁰ libri, B.

¹¹ in magna veneratione] om. C.D.

¹² reverentur, Gale.

¹³ habitus, B.

¹⁴ Sanctus added in C.D.

¹⁵ Patricius] om. B.

¹⁶ primus] om. C.D.

¹⁷ expulit, B.; de terra venenosos,
added in G.D.

¹⁸ *Augustinus* viventem (end
of cap.)] om. C.D.

¹⁹ credere, B.

²⁰ sed . . . proximas] om. B.

"uauntes pey leye¹ neuere no² hond, but pey doop hem greet
 "reuerence and worschippe; but Engliche men comeþ in to
 "pis lond, þat konneþ make martires and were i-woned to vse
 "þat craft."³ Þe bisshop seide so, bycause þat kyng Henry⁴
 þe secounde was þoo⁵ i-come in to Irlond freschliche after
 þe martirdom of Seint Thomas of Caunturbury. *Giraldus*.
 In pis lond, in Wales, and in Scotlond, bee billes⁶ and staues
 wip croked hedes, and opere such þinges for relikes, in
 grete reuerence and worschippe; so þat men of pis lond
 dredeþ more forto swere⁷ vpon eny of pilke belles and
 gold battes⁸ þan vpon þe gospel. Þe chief of alle suche
 relikes is i-holde⁹ Iesus his staf [þat is at Develyng; wip
 þe whiche staf]¹⁰ pey seiþ þat þe first Patrik droof þe
 wormes out of Irlond. *Augustinus de Ciuitate Dei, libro*
sexto decimo, capitulo septimo. Ȝif me axeþ, how it may
 be þat dyuerse manere bestes and of dyuerse kynde, þat
 beþ kyndeliche i-gete by twene male and female, come and
 beþ in ilondes after Noes flood, me troweþ¹¹ þat suche
 bestes swam in to ilondes aboute, and firste to þe nexte,

TREVISA.

"worschippe and luffe theyme moste: but now the peple of
 "Englonde is comen in to oure cuntre, whiche haue hade
 "knowledge and exercise to make martires." *R.* That
 byshoppe seyde in that wyse, for kyng Henry the secunde
 was comen that tyme in to the costes of Yrlonde newly
 after the martirizacion of Seynte Thomas of Canterbury.
Giraldus. Belles and crokede staves, and suche other
 thynges, be hade in that londe in grete veneracion, as thei
 vse in Wales and in Scotlande, in so moche that thei
 drede more to swere by theym then to swere on the
 masse booke. Amonge whom the staffe of Ihesus is as a
 thyng principalle, beenge at Dublynne, by whom thei say
 Seynte Paterike the firste to haue expelledde serpentes and
 wormes owte from that londe with that staffe. *Aug. de Civ.*,
libro 16, ca. 7. And if hit be inquirede how diuerse kyndes
 of bestes whiche be procreate of commixtion myȝhte be
 in yles after the grete floode of Noe, hit is to be ȝiffen
 to credence that auther thei come thider by swymenge,

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *leieþ*, a.² *no*] om. a. and Cx.³ A few trifling variations in Cx.⁴ *Harry*, Cx.⁵ *þoyȝ* i-come, a.; *tho neuce comen*,
Cx.⁶ *beþ bellis*, a.⁷ *swerie*, a.⁸ *staues*, Cx.⁹ *in hold*, MS.; *y holde*, Cx.¹⁰ Words in brackets added from
a. and Cx.¹¹ So MS. and a.; *men supposen*,
Cx.

aut per homines navigantes studio venandi adductas;
aut Dei jussu et opere angelorum allata; aut ex terra
exorta secundum primam originem, quando Deus dix-
erat: Producat terra animam viventem.

CAP. XXXVII.

De Albania sive¹ Scotia.²

VULGATUM est quod³ Scotia, prout hodie nuncu-
patur, promunctorium et⁴ borealis pars Britanniae
majoris, ⁵marinis brachiis ab ea separata versus aus-
trum;⁶ in reliquis lateribus⁷ undique cincta⁸ mari.
Hæc⁹ quondam vocabatur Albania ab Albanacto, re-
gis¹⁰ Bruti filio, eam primum¹¹ inhabitante; sive ab
Albania provincia, quæ est pars Scythiæ, vicina
Amazonibus; unde et Scoti quasi Sciti a Scythia,¹²

¹ *Albania sive*] om. A.C.D.

² *De Insula Scotia*, B.

³ *Vulgatum est quod*] om. C.D.

⁴ *quod . . . et*] Space left in B.

⁵ *aqua*] added in C.D.

⁶ *in australi parte separatur*, C.D.

⁷ *partibus*, C.D.

⁸ *clausa*, C.D.

⁹ *Hæc*] om. C.D.; *Hoc*, E.

¹⁰ *Regis*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *primo*, B.C.D.

¹² *Scicia*, AB.; *Sithia*, C.D.;
Shicia, E. Similar barbarisms in
the MSS. of the versions.

and so forþ in to opere ; opere¹ men seillinge into opere
londes² brouzte wip hem suche bestes for loue of huntinge ;
oper aungelles at God Almyzties heste³ brouzte suche
bestes in to ilondes aboute ; oper þe erpe brouzt hem forþ
ferst, and fulfilled þoo Goddes heste, þat heet⁴ þe erpe
brynge⁵ forþ gras and quyk bestes.

TREVISA.

*De Scotia.**Capitulum tricesimum septimum.*

Hit is comoun⁶ sawe þat [þe]⁷ contray þat now hatte
Scotlond is an out strecching, and is þe⁸ norþ partie of þe
more Bretayne, and is departed in þe south side from
Bretayne wip armes of þe see, and in þe oper sides al aboute
byclipped wip þe see. Þis lond heet somtyme Albania, and
had⁹ þat name of Albanactus, þat was kyng Brutis¹⁰ sone,
(for Albanactus woned first perynne,) or of¹¹ þe prouince
Albania, þat is a contray of Scythia and nyȝ to Amazonia ;
perfore Scottes beþ i-cleped as it were Seites, for he¹²

other thei were brouȝhte thyder for cause of disporte by MS. HARI.
men saylunge in schippes, other by the precepte of Alle- 2261.
myȝhty God, other elles by the helpe of angelles, or elles
thei come of the erthe after the firste originalle, when
God seyde commandenge the erthe to brynge furthe euery
thyng hauenge the spirite of lyfe.

*Of that Londe callede Scottelande. Capitulum tricesimum
septimum.*

Hit is made commune that the londe whiche is callede
nowe Scotlande is the northe parte of the moore Briteyne,
departede from hit by armes of the see towarde the
sowthe, in other partes compassede with the see. That
londe was callede somme tyme Albania, of Albanactus,
the son of Brute, the kyng inhabitege hit firste ; other
elles of Albannia, whiche is a parte of a londe callede
Scythia, nye to þe Amazonas. Wherefore Scoti, that be
callede Scottes, be seide to take their begynnenge of

¹ or els, Cx.
² in to ylondes, Cx.
³ comaundement, Cx., and so be-
low.
⁴ commaunded, Cx.
⁵ to brynge, Cx.
⁶ a comyn, Cx.
⁷ Added from a. and Cx.

⁸ and is þe] of the, Cx. (his own
alteration.)
⁹ hath, Cx.
¹⁰ Brutus, Cx.
¹¹ So Cx. ; þerof, MS. and a.
¹² So MS. and a. ; they, Cx. (in the
same sense.)

originem duxerunt.¹ Postmodum dicta est Pictavia a² Pictis ibidem regnantibus per spatium mille septuaginta annorum, vel secundum quosdam³ per⁴ mille trecentos sexaginta annos; et⁵ tandem dicta est Hibernia. *Giraldus in Topographia*.⁶ Tum propter affinitatem contractam cum Hiberniensibus, de quibus uxores acceperant,⁷ quod tam cultu quam lingua, tam⁸ armis quam moribus patenter ostenditur,⁹ tum propter habitationem¹⁰ Hiberniensium. *Beda, libro primo*. Qui Hibernienses,¹¹ duce Reuda¹² de Hibernia, quæ proprie Scotorum patria est, progressi,¹³ ferro vel amicitia juxta Pictos¹⁴ sedes sibi¹⁵ ad septentrionalem partem¹⁶ statuerunt.¹⁷ *Giraldus*. Nunc autem corrupte vocatur Scotia a Scotis de Hibernia venientibus et in ea regnantibus per spatium trecentorum quindecim annorum, usque scilicet¹⁸ ad regnum Willelmi¹⁹ Rufi fratris Malcolmi.²⁰ *Ranulphus*. Quod autem hæc Scotia sæpius vocetur Hibernia patet per Bedam, libro secundo,²¹ capitulo quarto,²² ubi dicit²³ sic:²⁴ Laurentius archi-

¹ traxerunt, A.

² Picto sive a, added in C. (not D.)

³ mille . . . quosdam] om. B.

⁴ per added from C.D.

⁵ et] om. C.D.

⁶ in *Topographia*] om. B.

⁷ acceperunt, C.D.

⁸ quam, A.

⁹ So C.D.; ostendit, A.E., Gale.

¹⁰ in habitationem, B.C.D.

¹¹ Hibernienses] om. C.D.

¹² Reuda] Space in B.; Rheuda, D.

¹³ progressus, C. (not D.)

¹⁴ juxta Pictos] om. E.

¹⁵ quas added in C.D.

¹⁶ Pictorum hactenus habent, C.D.

¹⁷ B. Sicut infra ultimo capitulo de Britannia plenius dicitur, added in C.D.

¹⁸ scilicet] om. C.D.

¹⁹ Wilts or Willi, MSS.; Wilhelmi, Gale. His coins have, in general, Willelmus, (mostly written Pillelmus); his great seal has Wilielmus. (Ruding, i. 162. Third ed.) Higden, however, should have written Leonis for Rufi.

²⁰ Malcolini, B., Gale.

²¹ j., B.C.D., wrongly.

²² 4, C.D., correctly; x., A.B.E.

²³ ait, C.D.

²⁴ sic] om. C.D.

com out of Scythia. Afterward þat lond heet¹ Pictauiā; for þe Pictes reignede perynne a þousand þere, pre score, and ten; oper, as som men telleþ, a þowsand þere, pre hundred, and sixty; and at þe laste heet¹ Hibernia, as Irlond heet.² *Giraldus in Topographia.*³ For meny skiles oon skile is for affinite and alye, þat was by twene hem and Irische men; for þey toke wyfes of Irlond, and þat is opounliche i-sene in her byleue, in clopinges, in langage, in⁴ speche, in wepene, and in maneres. A noper skile is for Irische men woned þere somtyme. *Beda, libro primo.* Out of Irlond, þat is þe propre contray of Scottes, come Irische men with here duk þat heet Reuda,⁵ and wip loue oper wip strengþe made hem cheef cees and citees besides þe Pictes in þe norþside. *Giraldus.* Now þe lond is schortliche i-cleped Scotlond of Scottes, þat come out of Irlond and reignede þere inne pre hondred þere and fiftene anon to Reed⁶ William his tyme, þat was Malcolms⁷ broþer. R. Meny euidentis we haueþ þat þis Scotlond is ofte i-cleped and hatte Hibernia, riȝt as Irlond hatte. Perfore⁸ *Beda, libro secundo, capitulo decimo,* seiþ þat Laurence,

TREVISA.

Scythia. That londe was callede afterwarde Pictauiā, of Pictes reignenge there by the space of a m. lx. and x. yere, and after somme men a m. iijc. yere and iij^{xx}, whiche was clepede Hibernia, and Yrlonde afterwarde. *Gir. in top.* Whiche thyng is schewede amonge theyme as welle in armes as in maneres, and also by there langage, and what for the affinite contracte betwene men of Yrlonde and theyme, of whom the Scottes toke there wyfes, and also for the inhabitation of men of Yrlonde dwellenge in hit. *Beda, libro primo.* Whiche men of Yrlonde goenge furthe with Reuda the gouernoure of theyme, from partes nye to Scotlande, takenge to theyme a place nye to the Pictes, taryede in the northe partes to theyme. *Giraldus.* That londe is callede now Scotlande, of Scottes commenge from Yrlonde, reignenge in hit by iijc. and xv. yere vn to the reigne of William Rufus,⁹ brother to Macolmus. R. That theke¹⁰ Scotlande be spoken of ofte tymes in the name of Yrlonde, hit is schewede by Bede in his secunde boke, the xthe chapitre, when he seiþe that the arche-

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *het*, a. (twice.)² *hatte*, a.³ So a. and Cx.; *Beda*, MS.⁴ *and*, a.⁵ *Reuda*, Cx. The MSS. both of the text and versions equally resemble this reading; but *Reuda* is

doubtless correct. See Bede, lib. 1.

c. 1. and Smith's note.

⁶ *the rede*, Cx.⁷ *Malcolms*, MS.⁸ Sentence varied in Cx.⁹ *Ruphus*, Harl. MS.¹⁰ So Harl. MS.

episcopus Dorobernensis¹ Scotorum populis, qui Hiberniam² insulam Britanniae proximam incolunt, pastorem curam impendebat. Item Beda, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo septimo: Clades mortalitatis Hiberniam insulam pari clade premebat.³ Item, libro tertio, capitulo secundo: Porro gens Scotorum, quae⁴ in australibus Hiberniae partibus morabantur. Item⁵ libro quarto, capitulo tertio: Ubi dicunt⁶ Ceddum adolescentem didicisse normam monasticam⁷ in Hibernia. Item libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo secundo: Rex Northumbrorum Egfredus⁸ vastavit Hiberniam.⁹ Item libro quinto, capitulo quintodecimo: Plurima pars Scotorum in Hibernia. Et ibi in¹⁰ eodem capitulo vocat Hiberniam proprie dictam illam¹¹ insulam in occidente,¹² quae centum milliaribus ab omni Britannia¹³ per mare separatur, et Scotiam vocat illam partem quae nunc Scotia dicitur, ubi dicit¹⁴ quod Adamnan,¹⁵ abbas insulae Hii,¹⁶ navigavit Hiberniam,¹⁷ ut doceret¹⁸ Hibernicos legitimum pascha, ac tandem Scotiam rediit. Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.¹⁹ Hujus Scotiae incolae dicuntur Scoti propria lingua, seu Picti²⁰ a picto corpore, quasi scissi,²¹ eo quod aculeis ferreis cum atramento variarum figurarum stigmate antiquitus notabantur.²² Herodotus.²³ Scoti sunt animo²⁴ leves, barbari satis et silvestres,

¹ *Dorobernia*, Gale; *Dorobernensis archiepiscopus*, B.

² *Hibernia*, B., Gale.

³ *Item . . . premebat*] om. B.

⁴ *qui*, B.

⁵ *Idem*, D.

⁶ *dicunt*, B.

⁷ *monasticam*, B., Gale.

⁸ *Egfridus*, A.; *Elfridus*, D.

⁹ *morabantur . . . Hiberniam*] om. F.

¹⁰ *ibi in*] *itidem*, C.; *ibidem*, D.

¹¹ *illam scilicet*, D.

¹² *in occidente*] om. C.D.

¹³ *Britanniae latere*, C. (not D.)

¹⁴ *dicitur*, D.

¹⁵ *Aminanus*, B.; *Aidaman*, D.

¹⁶ *insule Hii*] So E.D.G. (first

hand); huc, C.; hujus, A.B.G. (second hand), Gale, and the versions.

¹⁷ *Hiberniam*] om. C.D.; *ibidem*, B.; *navigaret in Hiberniam*, A.

¹⁸ *ubi docuit*, C.D.

¹⁹ 9, C.D., correctly. See lib. ix. c. 2, § 103. Reference transposed in A.B. to *quasi*, badly.

²⁰ *seu Picti*] om. C.D.

²¹ *scisi*, D.; *cisi*, A.E.; *Schyti*, Gale; *Schiti*, G.

²² *antiquitus* (interlineated) *vocabantur*, A.

²³ *Erodocius*, B. The rest *Erodotos*, and so the versions.

²⁴ *Scoti sunt animo*] *Animo quidem*, C.D.

archebisshop of Donbarre,¹ was archebisshop of Scottes, TREVISIA.
 pat woned in an ilond pat hatte Hibernia and is next to
 Bretayne. Also Beda, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo sep-
 timo, seip : Pestilens of moreyn bare doun Hibernia ; also,
 libro tertio, capitulo secundo, seip pat pe Scottes, pat wonede
 in pe soup side of Hibernia. Also, libro quarto, capitulo
 tertio, he seip pat Chadde was a 3ongelyng, and lerned the
 rule of monkes in Hibernia. Also, libro quarto, capitulo
 vicesimo secundo, Egifridus,² kyng of Northumberland, de-
 stroyed Hibernia ; also, libro quinto, capitulo quintodecimo:
 pe moste deel of Scottes in Hibernia. And in pe same
 chapitre he clepeþ Hibernia propurliche i-nempned, pat west
 ilond pat is an hundred myle from euery Britayne, and
 departed wip pe see bitwene ; and clepeþ Hibernia pat con-
 tre, pat now hatte Scotlond. Pere he telleþ, pat Adamnan,
 abbot of pis ilond, seilled to Hibernia for to teche Irische
 men pe laweful Esterday, and at pe laste com hoom³ aȝen in
 to Scotlond. *Isidorus, Ethym., libro quartodecimo.* Men of
 pis Scotlond hatte Scottes in hir owne langage, and Pictes
 also ; for somtyme here body was i-peynt in pis manere.
 Pey wolde somtyme wip scharpe egged tool picche⁴ and
 kerue here owne bodies, and make peron dyuers figures and
 schappes, and peynte hym⁵ wip ynke oþer wip opir peynture
 and⁶ colour. And for⁷ pey were so i-peynt, pey were i-
 cleped Picti, pat is i-peynt. *Herodotus.*⁸ Scottes beep lyȝt
 of herte, strange and wylde⁹ i-now, but by mellynge¹⁰ of

bisshoppe Dorobernense ȝafe cure pastoralle to the peple MS. HARL. 2261.
 of Scottes, inhabitenge an yle nye to Briteyne, callede
 Yrlonde. Also in the thrydde booke, the secunde chapitre,
 the peple of Scottes, whiche inhabite and dwelle in the
 sowthe partes of Yrlonde. Also hit is seide in the v^{the}
 booke, the xv^{the} chapitre, that a grete parte of Scottes
 was in Irlonde, callenge in the same chapitre Yrlonde
 proprely that yle in the weste whiche is separate from alle
 Bryteyne by the see by a c. myles, and Scottelande, that
 parte whiche is callede now Scottelande, where he seithe
 that Amna an abbote of that yle sailed to Yrlonde
 that he myȝhte teche men of that cuntre to knowe the
 lawefulle tyme of Ester, after that returnenge at the f. 55. h.
 laste to Scottelande. *Herodotus.* Scottes be liȝhte in sawle,
 cruelle and wylde ; but now thei be amendede thro

¹ *Dunbar*, Cx. Trevisa should have written *Canterbury*.

² *Egfridus*, Cx.

³ *hoom*] om. Cx., with a few other trivial variations.

⁴ *prycke*, Cx.

⁵ or, Cx.

⁶ *hem*, a.

⁷ *for*] by cause, Cx.

⁸ *Giraldus*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

⁹ So Cx. ; *mylde*, MS., a.

¹⁰ *medlynge*, Cx.

sed admixtione cum Anglis¹ in parte emendantur. In hostes sævi,² servitutem summe³ detestantur. In lecto mori reputant⁴ ægnitiem,⁵ in campo interfici arbitrantur gloriam. Parci victu, diutius famem sustinent. Raro ante solis⁶ occasum comedunt; carnibus, lacticiiniis,⁷ piscibus, et fructibus magis quam pane vescuntur. Et⁸ cum sint elegantis formæ satis tamen ex proprio habitu deformantur. Paternos ritus commendant, alienos aspernantur. Terra eorum satis fertilis in pascuis, hortis, et agris. *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo octavodecimo.*⁹ Scotorum principes, sicut Hispaniæ reges,¹⁰ nec coronari solent¹¹ nec inungi.¹² In hac terra Scotiæ memoria beati Andreæ apostoli quamplurimum celebratur; nam¹³ Beatus Andreas,¹⁴ qui sorte prædicationis¹⁵ aquilonales¹⁶ mundi partes, Scythas¹⁷ scilicet et Pictavos, suscepit convertendos, tandem apud Patras civitatem Achaïæ¹⁸ in Græcia occubuit, ubi custodita¹⁹ sunt ossa ejus usque

¹ *Agnis*, C. (not D.)

² *sed* added in B.; *sed cum*, A.

³ *summe*] om. C.D.

⁴ *deputant*, D.

⁵ *vilissimum*, B.

⁶ *solis*] om. B.

⁷ *et* added in A.C.

⁸ *Et . . . octavo decimo*] om. C.D.

⁹ *xiiij.*, E.

¹⁰ *sicut Hispaniæ principes dicuntur reges*, D.

¹¹ *consueverunt*, C.D.

¹² *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo 18º*, added in C. Reference omitted in D.

¹³ *nam*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *Apostolus* added in C.D.

¹⁵ *prædicandi*, C.D.

¹⁶ *aquilonares*, B.D.

¹⁷ *Scitas*, A.B.; *Scithas*, C.; *Sithas*, D.; *Shites*, E.

¹⁸ *Achaïæ*] om. C.D.

¹⁹ *condita*, B.

Englisch men þey beep moche amended; þey beep cruel vppon TREVISA.
 hir enemyes, and hateþ bondage most of eny þing, and
 holdeþ a foule slewþe,¹ ȝif a man deieþ in his bed; and
 grete worschepe, ȝif he deie² in þe feeld. Þey beep litel
 of mete, and mowe faste longe, and eteþ wel seelde while³
 þe sonne is vppe, and eteþ flesche, fysshe,⁴ mylk, and
 fruyt more þan brede. And þey [he] be⁵ faire of schap,
 þey beep defouled and i-made vnsemelich i-now wip here
 owne cloþinge. Þey⁶ preiseþ faste þe vsage of þeyre⁷ owne
 forme fadres⁸ and despiseþ oþer mens⁹ doyng. Here lond
 is fruytful i-now in pasture, gardynes, and feeldes. *Gir-*
aldus, dist. prima,¹⁰ capitulo octavodecimo. Þe princes
 of Scottes, as þe kynges of Spayne, beep nouȝt i-woned
 to be annoynt noþer¹¹ i-crowned. In þis Scotlond is so-
 lempne and grete mynde of Seynt Andrew þe apostel; for
 Seint Andrew hadde þe norþ contrayes of þe worlde,
 Scites and Pictes, to his lot, for to preche and conuerte
 þe peple to Cristes byleue; and was at þe laste i-martired
 in Achaie¹² in Grecia in a citee þat hatte Patras, and his
 bones were i-kept two hondred ȝere, þre skore, and twelue

the admixtion of Engliche men. Thei be cruelle ageyne MS. HARL.
 theire enmyes, hatenge gretely seruitute, accomptenge a 2261.
 slawe man that wolde dye in bedde, thenkenge hit a glory
 to dye in batelle. Skarse peple in meite and drynke,
 suffrengre hungre a longe tyme. Thei eite selde vn til
 after the goenge downe of the son; fedde more with flesche,
 fisches, white meite, and with frutes, then with brede. And
 sythe thei be semely in person, thai be deformede ynowe
 in theire propre habite, commendenge the consuetudes of
 that cuntre, and of theire predecessores, despisenge the
 rytes of other peple. That londe is plentuous ynowe in
 pastures, in gardynes, and in feldes. *Giraldus, dist. prima,¹⁰*
capitulo octavodecimo. The princes of Scottes be not
 vrede to be anoynted, lyke to the kynges of Speyne. In
 that londe the memory of Seynte Andrewe thapostole
 is haloede gretely, and hade in veneracion; for blessed
 Andrew thapostole, whiche was sende by chance to
 preche to the men of the northe partes of the worlde, as
 to men of Scythia and to Pictes, diede at a citee callede
 Patras in the londe of Grece, where his boones rested vn

¹ slewþe, a.; slouthe, Cx.

² deieþ, a.

³ whan, Cx.

⁴ fysshe] Added from Cx.

⁵ beiz, he be, a.; though they, Cx.
 þey be, MS.

⁶ þe, a.

⁷ here, a.

⁸ for faders, Cx. (as usual.)

⁹ So a.; men, MS.; menues, Cx.

¹⁰ De p^o, MS.; de p., Cx.; Harl.
 MS.

¹¹ enioynted (sic) nother, Cx.

¹² Achaia, a., Cx.

ad tempora Constantini Magni spatio ducentorum septuaginta duorum annorum; et tunc¹ translata sunt Constantinopolim, et² recondita usque ad tempora³ Theodosii⁴ spatio centum decem⁵ annorum. Tunc rex Pictorum in Scotia Ungust⁶ magnam partem Britanniae devastans,⁷ cum apud campum Merc⁸ a numero⁹ exercitu Britonum circumdaretur, audivit subito Beatum Andream sic eum alloquentem: "Ungus, "Ungus,¹⁰ audi me apostolum Christi auxilium tibi pro-
"mittentem; cum hostes tuos, me juvante,¹¹ deviceris,
"dabis tertiam¹² partem hæreditatis tuæ Deo in elee-
"mosynam et in honorem Beati Andreae." Et sic ter-
tia die. signo crucis exercitum ejus præcedente, victor effectus est. Sic quoque patriam¹³ reversus hæreditatem suam¹⁴ divisit. Et cum incertum haberet quam urbem beato Andreae assignaret,¹⁵ per triduum cum

¹ *et tunc*] inde, C.D.

² *et*, placed before *Constantinopolim* in C.D.

³ *tempus*, C.D.

⁴ *imperatoris* added in A.B.C.D., Gale.

⁵ 100, C.D.

⁶ *Ungus*, B.

⁷ *vastans*, Gale.

⁸ *Cassumert*, B.

⁹ *numeroso*] *universo*, B.

¹⁰ *Unguste*, *Unguste*, C.D.

¹¹ *me juvante*] om. C.D.

¹² *decimam*, C.D. This reading seems to be correct. See below.

¹³ *Sic quoque patriam*] *patriam-que*, C.; *est effectus. Patriam*, D.

¹⁴ *suam*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *eo* added in C.D.

anon to þe Grete Constantinus tyme¹ and þan þey were translated in to Constantinople,² and i-kepte [there]³ an hundred þere and ten anon to Theodosius þe emperours tyme. Þanne Vngust, kyng of Pictes, in Scotlond, destroyed a greet partie of Britayne, and was⁴ bysette wip a grete oost of Bretouns in a felde þat hatte Merk, and herde Seynt Andrew speke to hym in þis manere: "Vngus, "Vngus, here þou me Cristes apostle, I behote⁵ þe help "and socour; whan þou hast ouercome þyn enemyes by "myn help, þow schalt ȝeue þe þridde dele of þyn heritage "in⁶ almes to God Almyȝhty and in worschippe of Seint "Andrew." And þe signe of þe crosse⁷ wente to fore his oost, and þe þridde day he hadde þe victorie, and so torned home aȝen and deled his heritage as he was i-hote.⁸ And, for he was vncerteyn what citee he schulde dele for Seynt Andrewe; he fasted þre dayes boþe he and al⁹ his

TREVISA.

to the tyme of Grete Constantine, by the space of iȝc. lx. MS. HARL. and vii. yere. The boones of the apostle Seynte Andrew 2261. were translate that tyme vn to the cite off Constantinople, restenge there vn to the tyme of Theodosius emperoure by the space of a c. and x. yere. Then Vnguste, the kyng of Pictes in Scottelande, wastenge a grete parte of Briteyne, was compassede abowte with a innumerable hoste of Briteynes at a felde callede Merc. Herenge also a voice seyenge to hym, "Vngus, Vngus, here me "thapostole of Criste promisenge helpe to the; for thou "schalle haue the victory ageyne thyne enemyes by my "helpe, if thou wille ȝiffe the thrydde parte of thy "lyvelode to God in to almes and in the worschippe of "blessede Andrewe his apostole." And in the thrydde day folowenge, Vngus, the kyng of the Pictes, hade victory of the Briteynes, enemyes to hym, the signe of the crosse goenge before his hoste. This kyng Vngus returnenge to his cuntre after that victory, diuidede his lyvelode in to thre partes, beyng not in certitude to what cite he scholde assigne that lyvelode in to the worschippe of Seynte Andrewe thapostle. Wherefore Vngus, that kyng, with alle his peple, faste by the space of thre daies,

¹ unto Constantinus theperours tyme, Cx.

² Constantyne noble, MS., a.; Constantinoble, Cx.

³ Added from Cx.

⁴ west, a.

⁵ promise, Cx.

⁶ So a. and Cx.; I, MS.

⁷ croys, a.

⁸ boden, Cx., who has also some slight variations.

⁹ al] om. a.

populo suo¹ jejunavit,² orans Beatum Andream ut super hoc certificaretur.³ Et ecce unus de custodiens corpus Beati⁴ Andreæ apud Constantinopolim admonitus est⁵ in somnis, ut exiret de terra illa, et locum adiret quo angelus⁶ eum duceret; qui tali ducatu venit⁷ in Scotiam ad verticem montis Rigmund⁸ cum septem comitibus suis. Eademque⁹ hora lux cœlica circumfulsit regem Pictorum venientem cum exercitu ad locum qui dicitur Carcenan, ubi statim plurimi sanabantur infirmi. Ibique¹⁰ occurrebat regi Regulus monachus¹¹ Constantinopolitanus cum reliquiis Beati¹² Andreæ. In cujus honore fundata est¹³ ibi ecclesia,¹⁴ quæ caput est omnium ecclesiarum in terra Pictorum. Hunc locum frequentant peregrini omnium¹⁵ terrarum, in quo loco¹⁶ Regulus monachus factus est¹⁷ primus abbas, qui¹⁸ monachos ibidem¹⁹ congregavit, ac totam

¹ suo] om. C.D.

² jejunante, C.D.

³ The last clause omitted in C.D.

⁴ Sancti, B.

⁵ est] om. E.

⁶ præmiis added in D.

⁷ qui venit prospere, D.

⁸ Rigmund, A.; Rigmundi, D.

⁹ Eudem quoque, B.

¹⁰ Ibi quoque, A.

¹¹ monachus] om. E.

¹² Sancti, B., Gale.

¹³ fundavit, B.

¹⁴ ecclesiam, B.

¹⁵ cunctarum, D.

¹⁶ in quo loco] ibi primus, C.D.

¹⁷ fuit, C.D.

¹⁸ et, C.D.

¹⁹ ibidem] om. C.D.

meyny,¹ and prayed² Andrewe pat he wolde schewe what place he wolde chese. And, loo,³ oon of pe wardeynes pat kepte pe body of Seint Andrewe in Constantinople⁴ was i-warned in his sweuene,⁵ pat he schulde wende out of pat lond in to a stede whider an aungel hym wolde lede, and by suche ledynge⁶ he com in to Scotlond wip seuene felawes to pe cop⁷ of pe hille pat hat Ragmund.⁸ Pe same oure list of heuene byschon and byclipped pe kyng of Pictes, pat was comyng wip his oost to a place pat hatte Carcenan. Pere were anon i-heled meny seke men; pere mette wip the kyng Regulus pe monk of Constantinople wip pe relikes of Seynt Andrewe. [There is founded a chirche in worship of Seynt Andrew,]⁹ pat is hede of alle chirches in pe lond of Pictes, pat is Scotlond. To pis chirche comeþ pilgrymes oute of alle londes; pere was Regulus first abbot, and gadered monkes. And so al pe

TREVISA.

preyenge to the holy apostole of Godde that thei myȝhte be certifiede in that thyng. And anoon oon of the keepers of the blessedde body of Seynte Andrewe was moneschede in his slepe that he scholde goe furthe from that londe vn to the place wheder an angelle scholde lede hym, whiche come thro the ledenge of an angelle in to Scotlonde, vn to the toppe of an hille callede Ragmunde with his vij. felawes. And in that howre a heuynly lyȝhte compassede abowt Vngus, the kynge of Pictes, commenge with an hoste to that place whiche is callede Carcenan, where mony seke men were healede anoon. And Regulus, a monke off Constantinople, mette that kynge per with the relikes of Seynte Andrewe, in to the worschippe of whom a chirche was edifiede, whiche is the principalle chirche of alle the chirches in the londe of the Pictes. Whiche place pilgremes of alle londes visitte. In whiche place Regulus the monke of Constantinople was made the firste abbotte, whiche gedrede monkes there, distributenge thro the monastery the holle tythe and grownde whom the kynge

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ meyny] om. a.; he and his men, Cx.

² Seynt added in a.

³ loo] om. Cx.

⁴ Constantyn noble, MS. and a.; Constantynoble, Cx., and similarly below.

⁵ sweuene, a.

⁶ that he shold go in to a place whider an angle (sic) wolde lede him,

and so he cam, &c., Cx. A fair specimen of his free handling of the text, which makes a minute collation almost impossible.

⁷ So MS., apparently; but c and t can hardly be distinguished. toppe, Cx. Both forms are good.

⁸ So a. and Cx.; Ragmud, MS.

⁹ Added from Cx. Absent also from a.

decimam terram, quam rex sibi assignaverat, per monasteria locorum¹ distribuerat.²

CAP. XXXVIII.

De Cambria sive³ Wallia.

Libri finis⁴ nunc Cambrian
 Prius tangit quam Angliam;⁵
 Sic⁶ propero ad Walliam,
 Ad Priami prosapiam;
 Ad magni⁷ Jovis sanguinem,
 Ad Dardani progeniem.
 Sub titulis his quatuor
 Terræ statum exordior:
 Primo de causa nominis;
 Secundo de præconiis;
 Tandem de gentis ritibus;
 Quarto de mirabilibus.

¹ locorum] om. C.D.

² distribuebat, C.D. The readings of C.D. seem preferable throughout.

³ Cambria sive] om. A.B.C.D.

⁴ cursus, G. Gale.

⁵ Priusquam tangam Angliam, quæ vastam vult materiam, C.D. The

alteration, not for the better, has doubtless been made for the sake of a different initial letter (L), so as to form the acrostick. See the Introduction.

⁶ Jam, C.D.

⁷ Et magni, A.

tepe¹ londe, pat þe kyng hadde assigned him,² he departed TREVISIA.
in dyuers places among abbayes.

De Wallia.

Capitulum tricesimum octavum.

How³ þe book takeþ in⁴ honde
Wales to fore Englonde;
So I take my tales
And wende forþ⁵ in to Wales,
To that noble brood
Of Priamus his⁶ blood,
Knoweleche for to wynne
Of greet Iupiter his⁷ kynne,
For to haue in mynde
Dardanus⁸ his kynde.
In þis⁹ foure titles I fonde
To telle þe state¹⁰ of pat londe.
Cause of þe name I schal telle,
And þan preise þe lond I¹¹ welle.
Than I schal write wip my pen
Alle þe maneres of þe men.
Than I schal fonde
To telle mervailles of þe londe.

hadde ȝiffen in to the worschippe of God and of Seynte MS. HARL.
Andrewe. 2261.

Of Wales, and of the Maneres and Consuetudes of hit.

Capitulum tricesimum octavum.

THE auctor of this presente Cronicle towchethe in his
progresse other processe rather Wales then Englonde,
makege haste to Wales to the kynrede of Priamus, to
the bloode of grete Iupiter, and to the kynrede of Dar-
danus. Begynne the state of that londe vnder these iiij.
titles. Fyrste of the cause of the name; in the seconde of
the preconyes; in the thridde of the rites of the peple in
hit; and in the iiijth of the mervayles of hit. *Of the
reason of the name of hit.* That londe whiche is callede

¹ *tienthe*, Cx.

² So a.; *hem*, MS.

³ *Now*, a.; *now this*, Cx.

⁴ *om.*, a.

⁵ *forþ*] *om.* Cx.

⁶ *his*] *om.* Cx.

⁷ *Jupiters*, Cx.

⁸ So a. and Cx.; *Bardanus*, MS.

⁹ *thyse*, Cx.

¹⁰ *mervayll*, a.

¹¹ *I*] *om.* a.; *and welle*, Cx.

De ratione
nominis.

Hæc terra, quæ nunc Wallia,
Quondam est ¹ dicta Cambria,
A Cambro Bruti filio,
Qui ² rexit hanc dominio :
Sed post ³ est dicta Wallia,
A Gwalaes ⁴ reginula,
Regis Ebranci filia,
Ad hæc nupta confinia ;
Seu a Gualone ⁵ procere,
Rupto soni caractere, ⁶
Reperies ad litteram
Denominatam Walliam.
Cujus circumferentia,
Quamvis sit minor ⁷ Anglia,
Par tamen ⁸ glebæ gloria,
In matre et in filia.
Terra fecunda fructibus,
Et carnibus, et piscibus ;
Domesticis, silvestribus,
Bobus, equis, et ovibus ;
Apta cunctis seminibus,
Culmis, spicis, ⁹ graminibus ;

De patriæ
præconiis.

¹ est quondam, B.

² Nam hanc rexit, C.D.

³ prius, G. and Gale, absurdly ;
post hæc (hæ), A.

⁴ Walles, B.

⁵ Gwalone, D.

⁶ carcere, B.

⁷ minor sit, D.

⁸ est, B.

⁹ spericis, E. (clerical error.)

Wales hatte now² Wallia,
 And somtyme hiȝte³ Cambria,
 For Camber, Brutes sone,
 Was kyng,⁴ and pere dede woue ;
 þan Wallia was to mene,
 For Gwalaes the quene,
 Kyng Ebrank his childe,
 Was wedded pider mylde.
 And of þat lord *Gwaloun*
 Wiþdraweþ lettres of þe sonn.
 And putte to L, I, and A,
 And þow schalt fynde *Wallia*.
 And þey þat this⁵ londe
 Be wel⁶ lasse þan Engelonde,
 As good glebe is oon as other,
 In þe douȝter and⁷ in⁸ þe moder.
 They þat londe be luyte,
 Hit is ful of corne and fruyte ;⁹
 And hap grete plente i-wys¹⁰
 Boþe of flesche, and of¹¹ fische ;
 Of bestes, tame and wylde,
 Of hors, schepe, and oxen mylde ;
 Good lond for alle sedes
 For corn, herbes, and gras þat¹² spredes.

TREVISA.

Of the
 name, how
 it is named
 Wales.¹

Of the
 commo-
 dytees of
 the lond
 of Wales.

now Wallia, other Wales in Englishe, was callede somme MS. HARL.
 tyme Cambria, of Camber the son of Brute, whiche was 2261.
 lorde of hyt. Afterwarde hit was callede Wales, other
 wise Wallia, of Gwalaes the qwene, the doȝhter of Kynge
 Ebrancus wedede vn to those costes. Other elles hit was
 callede Wallia of Gualo a gentilman. Thauȝhe the cir-
 cumference of hit be lesse then the grownde of Englonde,
 neuerthelesse hit is egalle to hit in fertilite what in the
 moder and in the doȝhter. *Of the preconyes of that cuntre.*
 That londe is plentuous in frutes, flesche, fische, horses,
 oxen, and schepe bothe wylde and tame. That londe is
 apte also to alle seedes, gresse, cornes, medoes, feldes, and

¹ Marginal summaries added everywhere from Cx.

² now hatte, a.; now is called, Cx.

³ heet, a. ; it heet, Cx.

⁴ prynce, a., Cx.

⁵ though this, Cx.

⁶ moche, Cx.

⁷ and] as, Cx.

⁸ in] om. a. (not Cx.)

⁹ of fruyte, a.

¹⁰ ywys, Cx. (conjunctim.)

¹¹ Of fleshe and eke of, Cx.

¹² Here and elsewhere in these verses, Caxton has printed the word thus: þt; but perhaps in every other instance he replaces þ by th.

Arvis, pratis, nemoribus,
 Herbis gaudet, et floribus ;
 Fluminibus et fontibus,
 Convallibus et montibus ;
 Convalles pastum proferunt,
 Montes metalla conferunt ;
 Carbo sub terræ cortice,
 Crescit viror in vertice ;
 Calcem per artis regulas
 Præbet ad tecta ¹ tegulas.
 Epularum materia
 Mel, lac, et lacticina ;
 Mulsum, ² medo, cervisia
 Abundat ³ in hac patria ;
 Et quicquid vitæ congruit
 Ubertim terra tribuit.
 Sed ut de tantis dotibus
 Multa claudam sub brevibus,
 Stat hæc in orbis angulo,
 Ac si Deus a sæculo
 Hanc ⁴ daret promptuarium
 Cunctorum salutarium.
 Hæc ⁵ Wallia dividitur
 Amne qui Tiwy ⁶ dicitur,

¹ *tecti*, B.

² *Musum*, E. (clerical error.)

³ *abundant*, A.D., Gale.

⁴ *Ac*, A. (without sense.)

⁵ *Hæc*] om. A.

⁶ *Tiwi*, A.D.; *Twy*, C. Originally a space in B. filled in by a later hand, *Wy*. Certainly the Wye suits the description better (or rather, less badly) than anything else.

TREVISA.

There beep wodes and medes,
 Herbes and floures pere spreades ;
 There beep ryuers and welles,
 Valeies and also helles ;
 Valeys bryngeþ forþ food,
 And hilles metal riȝt good,¹
 Col² groweþ vnder lond,
 And gras aboue at þe hond ;³
 There lyme is copious,
 And sclattes also for hous.
 Hony, mylk, and whyte⁴
 There is deynteis,⁵ and not lyte.
 Of braget,⁶ meth,⁷ and ale
 Is grete plente in þat vale.⁸
 And al þat nedep to þe lyue
 Þat lond bryngeþ forþ ful ryue.
 But of greet riches forto⁹ drawe
 Meny in a schort¹⁰ sawe,
 Hit is in a corner smal ;
 And¹¹ as þei God first of al
 Made þat lond so feele¹²
 To be celer¹³ of al heele.
 Walys is deled by
 A water þat hatte Twy.¹⁴

woodes, with herbes and floures, floodes and welles, vales and MS. HARL.
 hilles. The vales in hit brynge furthe foode, and the hilles 2261.
 metalles. And the matere and substaunce amonge theyme is
 hony, mylke, and whitemeite. Meth and bragotte be there,
 as ale habundantely in that cuntre ; whiche londe bryngethe
 furthe plentuously what so euer thyng that is necessary
 to the lyfe. Entendenge to conclude mony thynges of those
 dowerys in fewe wordes, that yle stondethe in an angle
 of the worlde as God dothe from hit, ȝiffenge that londe
 as a promptuary of alle hollesomme thynges. That londe
 is diuidede by a water whiche is callede Tywy, whiche

¹ metals good, Cx.² So a ; Cool, Cx. ; Gold, MS.³ atte honde, Cx. (a frequent variation.)⁴ Hony and mylke whyte, Cx. (wrongly ; see text.)⁵ deynte, Cx.⁶ braket, Cx.⁷ mede, a.⁸ So a, and Cx. ; and þat in vale, MS.⁹ forto] to be, Cx.¹⁰ And close many in short, Cx., probably rightly.¹¹ And] om. Cx.¹² So a ; fele, Cx. ; frele, MS.¹³ celere, Cx.¹⁴ So also Cx. ; Tiwy, a.

North-Wallos¹ ab Australibus
 Scindit certis limitibus;
 Austrina² pars Demetia,³
 Secunda Venedotia;
 Prima sagittis prævalet,
 Hastis secunda præminet.
 In hoc procinctu Walliæ
 Tres olim erant curiæ,
 Ad Kaermarthyn⁴ primaria,
 In Anglesey⁵ sed⁶ alia,
 Tertia in Powysia,⁷
 Pengwern, quæ nunc Salopia.
 Septem quondam pontifices,
 Nunc quatuor sunt præsules;
 Quondam suis principibus
 Parebant, nunc⁸ Saxonibus.
 Convictus hujus patriæ
 Differt a ritu¹⁰ Angliæ,
 In vestibus, in victibus,
 In cæteris quampluribus.
 His vestium insignia
 Sunt chlamys¹¹ et camisia,
 Et crispa femoralia,
 Sub ventis et sub pluvia.

De incolarum moribus.⁹

¹ So A.; *Nortwales*, B.; *Nortwallos*, D.; *Northwalles*, E.; *Nortwallos*, Gale.

² *Austerna*, B.

³ *Demicia*, B.

⁴ *Kaemerthyn*, B.; *Chaermerthin*, D.

⁵ *Anglezie*, D.

⁶ So E. and Gale; *est*, A.B.C.D.

⁷ *Powisia*, A.

⁸ *ut*, B.

⁹ *ritibus*, A.B., Gale.

¹⁰ *a ritu differt*, B.

¹¹ *clamis*, A.B.E.

Norp Wales from þe south
 Twy¹ deleþ in place ful coup.²
 The south hatte Demesia,
 And þe oper Venedocia;
 The firste schetep and arwes³ beres,
 And þe oper⁴ deleþ alle wip speres.
 I⁵ Wales how it be
 Were somtyme contrees pre;
 At Karmarthyn was pat oon,
 And pat oper was in Moon;⁶
 The pridde was in Powisy
 In Pengwern, pat now is Schroyisbury.⁷
 There were bisshopes seuene,
 And now beþ foure euene,
 Vnder Saxons al at honde;
 Somtyme vnder princes of pat lond.
 The manere leuyng of pat lond
 Is wel dyuers from Engeland,
 In mete and drynk and clopinge,
 And many oper doying.
 They beþ cloped wonder wel
 In a scherte and in⁸ a mantel;
 A crisp breche wel fayn
 Boþe in wynd and in rayn.

TREVISA.

Of maner
 and rites of
 the Walss-
 men.

diuidethe northe Wales from the southe parte of hit by MS. HARL. 2261.
 certeyne merkes. The sowthe parte of Wales is callede Demecia. That other parte is callede Venedocia. Men of Demecia use bawes to schote, and men of Venedocia use speres. In whiche procincte were wonte to be thre courtes. The firste was at Caermerthyn, the secunde was in Anglesey, the thrydde was in Powiselonde at Pengwerne, whiche is now callede Schrewisbery. Somme tyme þer were vij. bisshopes in hit, and now þer be liij., whiche were obediante somme tyme to the princes of that cuntre, but now thei be obediante to the Saxones. *Of the rytes of the inhabitatores of hit.* The vse of that cuntre differrethe from the rite of Englonde in clothege, in fyndenge, and in mony other thynges. A mantelle and a schurte be the nowble thynges of vesture amonge theyme, whiche vse to bere fewe clothes in wynter,

¹ *Twy*, a.² *fu houth*, a.³ *arwes*, Cx.⁴ *That other*, Cx.⁵ *In*, a., Cx.⁶ *Mone*, Cx. (who prints one above.)⁷ *Schroyisbury*, Cx.⁸ *in*] om. a. (not Cx.)

Plura non ferunt tegmina,
 Quamvis brumescat borea.
 Sub istis apparatibus,
 Spretis linteaminibus,¹
 Stant, sedent, cubant, dormiunt,
 Pergunt, pugnant, prosiliunt.
 Hi sine supertunicis
 Collobiis et tunicis,
 Capis, tenis, capuciis,
 Nudatis semper tibiis,²
 Vix aliter incederent,
 Regi licet occurrerent.
 Hastis, sagittis brevibus
 Concertant in conflictibus,³
 Validiores pedites
 Ad pugnam sunt quam equites.
 His silvæ sunt pro turribus,
 Paludes pro⁴ aggeribus,
 Fugam ut pugnam capiunt,
 Cum opportunum sentiunt.
 Hos dicit Gildas⁵ fragiles,
 Et nec⁶ in pace stabiles;
 Cujus si causa quæritur,
 Mirum nequaquam cernitur,

¹ *linthiaminibus*, MSS.

² *tubiis*, B.

³ *Pugnant in certaminibus*, C.D.

⁴ *cum*, A.

⁵ *Non Britanni sunt in bello fortes, nec in pace fideles*. Gild. Hist. c. 4.

⁶ *nunc*, A.

TREVISA.
—

In þis clopynge þey heep bolde,
 Þey³ þe weder be riȝt colde;
 Wip oute schetes alway
 Euermore in þis array
 They goop, fiȝteþ, pleieþ, hoppeþ, and ¹ lepeþ,
 Stondeþ, sitteþ, liggeþ,² and slepeþ,
 Wip oute sorcote, gowne, coote,³ kirtelle;
 Wip gipoun,⁴ tabard, cloke, and ⁵ belle;
 Wip oute lace and chapelet, þat hire lappes,
 Wip oute hodes, hatte, or cappes.
 Thus arraied goop þe geggis,⁶
 And alle⁷ wip bare legges;
 He⁸ kepeþ non oper goyng,⁹
 Þey he⁸ mete wip þe kyng.
 Wip arwes and schort speres
 Þey fiȝteþ wip hym¹⁰ þat hem deres.
 They fiȝteþ better, ȝif hit nedeþ,¹¹
 Whan þey goop þan whan þei rideþ.¹²
 Instede of castel and toure
 They taken mareys and wodes¹³ for socour,
 Whan þey seep þat hit is to do,¹⁴
 In fiȝtinge þey wil be a goo.
 Gildas seiþ þey be variable
 In pees, and no þing stable.
 Ȝif me axeþ why hit be,
 Hit is no¹⁵ wonder forto se,

thauȝhe wynde blawe ryȝhte coldely; whiche sytte, stonde, MS. HARL. 2261.
 and slepe despisenge schetes; with owte huddes, cootes, or
 tabardes, bare on the legges; whiche vse vnnethe to go eny
 other way, thauȝhe thei scholde mete a kyng; fiȝhtenge
 with shorte speres in conflictes, amonge whom the men in
 foote be more stronge then the horse men. Woodes be to
 theym as for towres, and marras for places of defence; whiche
 take fleenge as fiȝhte, when¹ they thenke tyme and opor-
 tunite. Gildas rehersethe Wallche men to be frayle, not
 stable in pease. And if the cause be inquirede, hit is not

¹ hoppeþ and] om. Cx.
² lye, Cx.
³ koot, a.
⁴ iopen, Cx.
⁵ or, Cx.
⁶ So a.; segges, Cx. (quid?); gigges,
 MS.
⁷ alway, a.

⁸ They, Cx. (twice.)
⁹ So Cx.; þing, MS.
¹⁰ hem, a.; them, Cx.
¹¹ they nedeþ, Cx.
¹² The metre requires redeþ.
¹³ wode and marys, a.
¹⁴ So a. and Cx.; I doo, MS.
¹⁵ no] om. Cx.

Si gens expulsa satagat,
Ut expulsores abigat.
Sed frustra his temporibus,
Succosis jam nemoribus,
Cum sint circa maritima
Firmata castra plurima.
Gens diu famem sustinens,
Communem victum diligens,
Coquorum artificia
Non quærit ad edulia;
Nam panem hordeaceum¹
Edit et avenaceum,
Latum, rotundum, tenuem,
Ut decet tantum² sanguinem.
Raro frumento vescitur,
Vix furni flammis utitur;
His pulres ad legumina
Pro epulis³ acrimina,
Butyrum, lac, et caseus
Oblongus⁴ et tetragonus;
Hæc sunt eorum fercula,
Quæ provocant ad pocula
Medonis et cervisiæ,
Quibus instant quotidie.
Vinum putant præcipuum,
Quanto sit magis rubeum.

¹ *ordeacium*, B.² *priscum*, C.D.³ *Pepulis acrimonia*, B.⁴ *Prolongus*, C.D.

TREVISA.

They men i-putt out of londe
 To putte out opere wolde fonde.
 But al for nouȝt at pis stounde,
 For¹ meny wodes beep at grounde;
 And vppon þe see among
 Beep castellis² i-buld ful strong.
 The men may dure longe vnede,
 And louep wel comune mete;
 They conne ete and be³ mury⁴
 Wip oute grete kewery.⁵
 They eteth brede, colde and hote,
 Of barliche and of oote;
 Brood cakes, round and pynne,
 As wel semep so grete kynne.
 Seelde þey etep brede of whete,
 And seelde þey doop oues ete.
 They haueþ growel⁶ to potage,
 And a leke is skyn⁷ to compernage;⁸
 Also butter, melk, and chese⁹
 I-schape euelong and cornered wise.¹⁰
 Swiche¹¹ messes þey etep snel;
 And þat makeþ hem drynk wel.
 Mede¹² and ale, þat hap myȝt,
 Ther ynne¹³ þey spendep day and nyȝt.
 Euere þe redder is þe wyn,
 Þey holdeþ it þe more fyn;

to be hade in meruayle if a peple expulsede be abowte to MS. HARL.
 expelle the expulsores of hit. But now in this tyme, the 2261.
 woodes kytte, mony castelles be made after the costes in
 the see. The peple of that cuntre wille suffre hungre
 longe, luffenge the commune foode, inquirenge not the
 artificialle operacion of cookes at the dyners of theyme,
 eitenge brede made of otes and of barly, brode, rownde, and
 thynne, as hit besemethe suche bloode. That peple dothe
 eite selde whete that is baken in an oue; the meites of
 whom be buttyr, mylke, and chese; which prouoke a man
 to drynke methre and ale, whiche thei do vse daily. Thei
 accompte that wyne moste principalle whiche is moste
 redde, whiche peple vsenge to drynke seasethe not from

¹ For al, Cx.² So a.; castell, MS.; castels, Cx.,
who omits ful.³ ben, Cx.⁴ So also Cx.; merye, a.⁵ cury, Cx.⁶ grewel, a.; gruel, Cx.⁷ a leke his kyn, a.; And lekes
kynde, Cx.⁸ companage, Cx.⁹ chyse, a.¹⁰ corner wese, Cx.¹¹ suche, a., Cx.¹² Methe, Cx.¹³ Theron, Cx.

Potando gens hæc garrula
Vix cessat fari ¹ frivola.
Ad mensam et post prandium
Sal porri sunt solatium.
Sed et paterfamilias
Hoc ² reputat delicias,
Caldarium cum pultibus
Dare circumsedentibus,
Taxando portiunculas,
Servans sibi reliquias.
Hos eis nocet nimium
Ad carnis infortunium,
Quod contra jussum physicum
Edunt salmonem calidum.
Domos demissas incolunt
Ex virgulis quas construunt,
Distantibus limitibus,
Non prope, ut in urbibus.
Cum devastarunt ³ propria,
Vicina quæerunt atria;
Edentes ⁴ quod inveniunt,
Post hæc ⁵ ad sua redeunt;

¹ loqui, B.

² Hæc, B.

³ devastarint, B.

⁴ Edendo, C.D.

⁵ hæc] om. B.

TREVISA.

Whan pey drynkep at pe¹ ale,
 They tellep meny a lewed tale.
 For whan drynk is in handelyng
 Pey beep ful al² of iangelynge.
 At pe mete, and after eke,
 Hir solace is salt and leke.
 The housbonde in his wise
 Tellep pat a grete prise,
 To zeue a caudron³ wip grewel
 To hym pat sittep at⁴ his mel,
 He delep his mete at pe mel,
 And zeuep eueriche manis del,⁵
 And alle the ouer pluse
 He kepep to his owne vse.⁶
 Therfore pey hauep woo
 And myshappes also,
 They etep hote samoun alway,
 They⁷ phisik seie nay.
 Here hous⁸ bep lowe wip alle,
 I-made⁹ of zerdes smalle;
 Nouzt, as in citees, nygh,
 But fer atwynne, and not to hiȝe.¹⁰
 Whan al is i-ete¹¹ at home,
 Panne to her neighebores wil pey rome;
 And ete what pey may fynde and sec,
 And panne torne home aȝe.

communicacion and talkenge of ydelele thynges. Salt and lekes be to theyme solace at meyte, and after; acomptenge that a grete solace to ȝiffe a caldron with potages to men syttenge abowte and to diuide to euery man his porcion, kepenge to hym the remanente. But the infortuny of flesche nyouthen theim moche eitenge salmon hoothe ageyue the precepte of phisike. Whiche inhabite howses, whom thei make of litelle rodde; not nye to gedre, as thei vse to make edificacions in cites. This peple vsethe to deuoure the goodes of other men after that thei haue deuoured theire awne goodes, eitenge that thei fynde, retournenge after that to theire awne places, spendenge theire

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ at þe] atte, Cx., and so commonly.² al ful, a.³ gadron, a.⁴ hem that sitten on, Cx.⁵ The lines are transposed in MS. (not a.)⁶ house, a.⁷ All though, Cx.⁸ howses, Cx.⁹ And made, Cx.¹⁰ So a.; nygh, MS.¹¹ eten, Cx.

Vitam ducentes otio,
Sopori, et incendio.
Mos cunctis est Wallensibus
Aquam dare hospitibus;
Si primo pedes laverint,
Pendunt quod bene venerint.
Ita quieti¹ victitant
Quod raro bursam bajulant.
His pecten et pecunia
Pendent² ad femoralia;
At³ cum abhorrent nimium
Ani pudendum sonitum,
Mirum quod ante ostium
Habent latrinas sordium.
Choro, lyra, et tibiis
Utuntur in conviviis,
Sed elatis funeribus
Clangunt caprinis cornibus.
Extollunt Trojæ sanguinem,
De quo ducunt originem.
Propinquos satis reputant,
Quos centum gradus separant.
Sic præferunt se cæteris,
Parent⁴ tamen presbyteris,

¹ *quiete*, B.
² *pendunt*, A.

³ *Et*, D.
⁴ *Favent*, B.

TREVISA.

The lyf is idel, þat þei ledes,
 In brennyng and ¹ slepyng and such dedes.
 Walsche men vseþ wip hir myȝt
 To wasche here gestes feet at nyȝt; ²
 Ȝif he wasche here feet, al and some,
 Þanne þey knoweþ þey beþ welcome.
 They leueþ so esiliche in arowte, ³
 Þat seelde þey bereþ purse aboute.
 At here breche out and at home
 They hengeþ ⁴ boþe money and come. ⁵
 Hit is wonder þey beþ so hende,
 And hateþ a crak of þe neper ende,
 And with oute [ony] ⁶ core
 Makeþ her wardrope at þe dore.
 They haueþ in greet mangerie
 Harpe, tabor, and pype for mynstralcie.
 They bereþ forþ cors ⁷ wip sorwe grete;
 þey bloweþ ⁸ lowde hornes of geete.
 They preiseþ faste Troian blood,
 For þere of come al hir brood;
 Nigh ⁹ kyn þey wil ¹⁰ bee
 þey he ¹¹ passe an hondred gree. ¹²
 Aboute oþer men þey wil hem ¹³ diȝte;
 And worschipeþ preostes wip her myȝte;

life in ydelnesse and in slawthe. The consuetude is of MS. HARL. 2261.
 Walche men to ȝiffe water to theire gestes to drynke.
 And if thei wasche theire feete, thei thanke that thei be
 welle commen. That peple lyvethe in suche ease that
 vnnethe thei bere a purse, for thei vse to honge theire
 moneye at the hippes of theyme, mervaylunge moche, sythe
 that thei abhorre moche the sownde of the partes posterialle,
 that thei make seges of filthe afore the durres of theym.
 Men of that cuntre vse in theire festes a crowde, an harpe,
 and trumpes. But at the dethe of a man thei crye lyke to
 wyld bestes in exaltenge the bloode of Troy, of whom
 thei toke begynnenge. That peple thenkethe men nye to
 theyme by bloode whom a c. degrees do separate. Neuer-
 thelesse thei be obediente to pristes, worschippenge theyme

f. 57. b.

¹ and] om. Cx., perhaps rightly.

² anyȝt, a., Cx.

³ a rowte, Cx. (which is also good.)

⁴ hongeþ, a.

⁵ combe, Cx.

⁶ Added from Cx. (not in a.)

⁷ corps, Cx., who has also sorow.

⁸ And bloweþ, a.; And blowe, Cx.

⁹ Nyȝ, a.

¹⁰ wole, a.

¹¹ they, Cx. (not a.)

¹² degree, Cx.

¹³ So a.; hym, MS.

Et summi ¹ Dei famulos
 Venerantur ut angelos.
 Hos consuevit fallere
 Et ad bella impingere ²
 Merlini vaticinium,
 Et frequens sortilegium.
 Mores brutales Britonum
 Jam ex ³ convictu ⁴ Saxonum
 Commutantur in melius,
 Ut patet luce clarius.
 Hortos et agros excolunt,
 Ad oppida se conferunt,
 Et loricati equitant,
 Et calceati peditant,
 Urbane se ⁵ reficiunt,
 Et sub tapetis dormiunt ;
 Ut judicentur ⁶ Anglici,
 Nunc potius quam Wallici.
 Hinc si quærat⁷ ratio,
 Quietius jam ⁸ solito
 Cur illi vivant hodie,
 In causa ⁹ sunt divitiæ ;
 Quas cito ¹⁰ gens hæc perderet,
 Si passim nunc configeret.

¹ *summe*, A.

² *producere*, C.D.

³ *nam jam*, A.

⁴ *convicta*, C. (not D.)

⁵ *se*] om. C. (not D.)

⁶ *videntur*, B.

⁷ So A.C.D.; *quæretur*, E.

⁸ So A. ; *quam*, D.E., Gale.

⁹ *Revera*, B.

¹⁰ *cito*] om. A.

TREVISA.
—

As aungeles of heuene riȝt
 Pey worschippē seruantes of God almyȝte.
 Oft gyled¹ was this brood,
 And ȝerned batail al for wood,
 For Merlyns prophecie,
 And ofte for sortelegie.²
 Best in maneres of Bretouns,³
 For compaye of Saxouns,
 Beep i-torned to beter riȝt;
 Dat is knowe as clere as liȝt.
 Thei tiliep⁴ gardyns, feeld, and downes,
 And drawep hem to gode townes;
 They ridep i-armed, as wolde⁵ God,
 And goop i-hosed and i-schod;
 And sittep faire at hir mele,
 And slepē in beddes faire and wele.⁶
 So pey semēp now in mynde
 More Englishe men þan Walsche kynd;
 Ȝif me axep whi pey doop now soo,⁷
 More þan pey were woned⁸ to doo,
 They leuep in more pees,
 By cause of hir riches.
 For hir catel schulde slake,
 And⁹ pey vsep ofte wrake.
 Drede of losse of here good
 Makep hem now stille of mood;

as the angelles of God. The prophecy of Merlyne and MS. HARL.
 wycche crafte was wonte to begile theyme and to move 2261.
 them to batelles. But nowe thei chaunge their maneres
 gretely in to better exercise thro the communicacion of
 Saxones. Thei tylle felde and gardynes, and applye them to
 inhabite townes, usenge haburiones, and goenge with schoes,
 refreschenge them in meites after curtesy, slepenge in
 beddes after the consuetude of Englishe rather then after
 the maner of them vsede afore tyme. And if the cause
 be inquirede why thei lyve so now rather then in tymes
 afore, hyt may be ansuered and seide that rychesse be
 the cause per of, but now the drede of their goode with-
 drawethe them from the exercise of conflicts. For a man

¹ So a. and Cx.; *Of giles*, MS.² So a. and Cx.; *sortelogie*, MS.³ Cx. puts a full stop after *Bri-*
tons. It is almost certain that for
best in we should read *bestly*.⁴ *tillen*, Cx.⁵ *wol*, a.; *wole*, Cx. The text
 seems corrupt.⁶ *fele*, Cx.⁷ *now doo so*, Cx.⁸ *they woonte*, Cx.⁹ *If*, Cx.

De terræ
mirabili-
bus.

Timor damni hos retrahit,
Nam nil habes¹ nil metuit.
Et, ut dixit Satiricus,²
Cantat viator vacuus
Coram latrone, tutior
Quam phaleratus³ ditior.
Ad Brehnoch⁴ est vivarium
Satis abundans piscium,
Sæpe coloris varii
Comam gerens pomarii,⁵
Structuras ædificii
Sæpe videbis inibi.
Sub lacu cum sit gelidus,
Mirus auditur sonitus.
Si terræ princeps venerit,
Aves cantare jusserit,
Statim depromunt⁶ modulos,
Nil concinunt ad cæteros.
Juxta Caerlegion⁷ mœnia,
Ad duo milliaria,
Stat rupes⁸ fulva nimium
Contra solarem radium,
Quam Goldeclif⁹ gens nominat,
Ut aurum¹⁰ quia rutilat;
Nec frustra fit in rupibus
Flos talis sine fructibus,

¹ *habens*, B.

² *Juven. Sat.*, xii. 22.

³ *phalaratus*, B.

⁴ *Breghenoc*, D.

⁵ *pomij*, E.; *pomerii*, A.D., Gale.
Both forms occur, but *pomarîi* suits
the metre best.

⁶ *depromunt*, A.B.D.

⁷ *Caerleon*, A.; *Caerlion*, B.D., Gale.

⁸ *rupis*, C.D.

⁹ So A., Gale; *Goldcluf*, D. (apparently); *Goldclif*, E.

¹⁰ *aurumque*, C. (not D.)

Alle in oon hit is brouzt;
 Haue no ping and drede nouzt.
 The poete seip a sawe of preef,
 Þe foot man lereþ synge¹ to fore þe þeef,
 And is wel bolder on his² way
 Þan þe horsman³ riche and gay.
 There is a pole at Breigheynok,⁴
 There ynne of fische is many a flok;
 Ofte he chaungeþ his hewe on cop,
 And bereþ aboue a gardyn crop;
 Ofte tyme, how it be,
 Schap of hous þere þou schalt⁵ see.
 Whan þe pole is frore, hit is wonder
 Of þe noyse þat is þere vnder;
 Ȝif þe prince of þe lond hote,
 Briddes syngeþ wip mery⁶ note,
 As mery⁷ as þey kan,
 And syngeþ for noon oper man.¹
 Bysides Carlecoun,⁸
 Tweyne⁹ myle from þe toun,
 Is a roche wel briȝt of leme
 Riȝt aȝenst þe sonne beme;
 Gold clif þat roche hiȝte,
 For he¹⁰ schyneþ as gold ful briȝte;
 Suche a floure in stoon is nouzt
 Wip oute fruyt, and¹¹ hit were souzt;

TREVISA.

Of the
 marueylles
 and won-
 ders of
 Wales.

that hathe noȝhte to loose dredethe but lytelle; þerfore MS. HARL.
 Satiricus seith that a man hauenge but lytelle goode 2261.
 syngethe, and goethe in more suerte afore a thefe then a
 ryche man. *Of the meruayles of Wales.* At Brehenoc is
 a water habundante in fisches of diuerse coloures, where a
 man may see in clere tymes meruellous edifienges, where
 a meruellous noyce and sownde be herde. And if the
 prince of that londe come, the bryddes synge and make
 grete melody to him, schewenge not pleasure and comforte
 to any other man. Also there is a grete broken hille nye
 to the walles of Kaerlyon, schynenge moche ageyne the
 beames of the sonne, whom peple calle Goldecliffe, in that
 hit schynethe like to golde. Whiche floure apperethe not
 there with owte frute, if the interialle partes of that hille

¹ foteman singeth, Cx.² is bolder on the, Cx.³ horsmen, Cx.⁴ Brechnok, Cx.⁵ shal (sic) thou, Cx.⁶ singe wel mery, Cx.⁷ meryly, Cx.⁸ Carlion, Cx.⁹ Twa, Cx.¹⁰ it, Cx. (and so often.)¹¹ if, Cx. (and so often.)

Si foret ¹ qui penitima,²
 Terræ venas et viscera,
 Transpenetrare sedula
 Novisset arte prævia.
 Occulta latent plurima
 Naturæ beneficia;
 Quæ, hactenus incognita
 Humana pro incuria,
 Per posterorum ³ studia
 Patebunt sub notitia;
 Quod antiquis necessitas,
 Hoc nobis dat sedulitas.
 Itidem in ⁴ South-Wallia
 Apud Kardeff⁵ est insula,
 Juxta Sabrinum ⁶ pelagus,
 Barri⁷ dicta antiquitus;
 In cujus parte ⁸ proxima
 Apparet rima modica,
 Ad quam si aurem commodas,
 Sonum mirandum audies;

¹ *floret*, G. and Gale.

² *finitima*, A.B.

³ *posteriorum*, B.

⁴ *Sowth*, B.

⁵ *Caerdif*, B.; *Kerdif*, D.; *Kar-*
dif, A., Gale.

⁶ D. adds *est*.

⁷ *Barra*, A.

⁸ *terra*, B.

TREVISA.

Ȝif me koupe¹ by craft vndo
 þe veynes of þe erpe, and come perto.
 Many benefices² of kynde³
 Beep now i-hidde fro manis mynde,
 And beep vnknowe Ȝit,
 For defaute⁴ of manis wit.
 Grete tresour is hid in grounde,
 And after þis it schal be founde
 By greet studie and besynesse.
 Of hem þat comeþ after vs.
 þat olde men hadde by grete nede,
 We haueþ be⁵ besy dede.
*Trevisa.*⁶ In bookes Ȝe may rede,
 þat kynde failleþ not at nede;
 Whanne no man hadde craft in mynde,
 þan of craft halp God and kynde;
 Whan no techere was in londe,
 Men hadde craft by Goddes sonde;⁷
 þey þat hadde craft so penne
 Tawȝte forþ craft to opere menne;
 Som craft, þat Ȝit come nouȝt in place,
 Somme men schal haue by Goddis grace.
 R. An⁸ ilond is wip noyse and strif
 In West Wales at Cardif,⁹
 Faste by Seuerne¹⁰ stronde;
 Barry hiȝte þat ilonde.
 In þe hider¹¹ side in a chene¹²
 þow schalt here a wonder dene,
 And dyuerse noyse also,
 Ȝif þou putte þyn ere to.

were souȝhte; for many benefites of nature be priveye in MS. HARL.
 hit, whiche be vnkknown yitte for the ignoraunce of men, 2261.
 but thei schalle be known by the study and labores of
 men to comme afterwarde. Also in Sowthe Wales is an
 yle at Kaerdif, nye to the water of Seuerne, callede in
 olde tyme Barri, in a nye parte to whom is a place, and
 if thou putte thyne eiere to hit thou schalle here a mar-
 uellous sownde and noyce, otherwhile like to the blawenge

¹ *men coude*, Cx.

² *benefyce*, Cx.

³ *kynnde*, MS.

⁴ *deuoute*, a.

⁵ *by*, Cx.

⁶ This and the following reference added from a and Cx. (the former has only a space for R.)

⁷ *honde*, Cx.

⁸ *And*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

⁹ *and Kardys*, a.; *Kerdys*, Cx.

¹⁰ *Seuarn*, Cx.

¹¹ *hiȝ hider*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

¹² *chyne*, a.

Nunc quasi flatus follium,
 Nunc metallorum¹ sonitum,
 Cotis ferri fricamina,
 Fornacis nunc incendia.
 Sed hoc non est² difficile
 Ex fluctibus contingere
 Marinis subintranantibus,
 Hunc sonum procreantibus.
 Apud Penbroc³ est regio,
 Quam dæmonum illusio
 Vexat jactando sordida
 Et exprobrando vitia,
 Qui nullis valent⁴ artibus
 Fugari neque precibus;
 Quod, quando terram agitat
 Casum gentis⁵ pronosticat.
 Ad Crucmaur⁶ in West-Wallicis⁷
 Est tumulus mirabilis,
 Qui se conformem⁸ cuilibet
 Advenienti exhibet;
 Ubi si arma integra
 Relinquantur in vespera,
 Confracta proculdubio
 Reperies diluculo.
 Ad Nevyn in Norwallia⁹
 Est insula permodica,
 Quæ Bardeseya¹⁰ dicitur;
 A monachis incolitur.

¹ *martellorum*, B.D.

² *Hoc non erit*, C.D.

³ *Penbrok*, D.

⁴ *valz*, E.; *valet*, A.D.G., Gale
(without sense).

⁵ *gentis casum*, D.

⁶ So G. and Gale; *Crucinaur*,
A.D.F.; *Crucina*, B. The text

seems to be right. See Nennius, c. 87.
in Petrie's *Mon. Hist. Brit.* p. 80.

⁷ So C.D.; *West-Wallis*, A.B.E.
G., Gale.

⁸ *conformet*, E.

⁹ *Northwallia*, A.B.D.G., Gale.

¹⁰ *Bardiseya*, A.; *Pardiseya*, C.;
Berdesia, D.; *Bardiseia*, G.

Noyse of leues and of wynde,¹
 Noyse of metal pou schalt fynde;
 Frotinge of iren and whestones pou schalt hire,
 Hetynge ouenes² þan wip fire;
 Al þis may wel be
 By wawes of þe see,
 Þat brekep in þare
 Wip suche noyse and fare.
 At Penbrook in a stede
 Fendes doop ofte quede,
 And prowep foule þing ynne,
 And despiseþ also synne.
 Noper craft ne bedes may
 Do³ þennes þat sorwe away;
 Whan hit greueþ soo
 To þe men hit hodeþ woo.
 At Crucinar⁴ in West Wales
 Is a wonder buriales;
 Euerich man, þat comeþ hit to see,
 Semep it euene as moche as he;
 Hool wepoun þere a nyȝt
 Schal be i-broke er day lyȝt.
 At Nemyn⁵ in Norþ Wales
 A litel ilond þere is,
 Þat hatte Bardeseie;⁶
 Monkes woneþ þere alweie.

TREVISA.

of belose, and in an other season lyke to þe sownde of MS. HARL
 metalles, and otherwhile like the rubbenge of a qwetenge- 2261.
 ston, and otherwhile lyke to the noyce of a flame of f. 58. a.
 fire. But hit is noo meruayle these thynges to happe of
 the floenges off water causenge that sownde vnder the
 erthe. Also there is a region at Penbrok⁷ whiche is vexede
 moche by the illusion of deuelles, whiche can not be made
 clene thro eny crafte other preiers, whiche, movenge that
 londe, dothe prenosticate a grete falle of the peple of that
 cuntre. Also there is a maruellous berielle at Curcinaur
 in Weste Wales, whiche is conformed to euery man com-
 menge to hit; if holle armor be lafte þer at nyȝhte, pou
 schalle fynde theim broken in the mornenge. Also in a
 place in Northe Wales callede Neuyn is an yle whiche is
 callede Pardesey, inhabite of monkes, where thei lyve soe

¹ This line is absent from MS.² of ouenes, a.³ So a. and Cx.; *De*, MS.⁴ So a. and Cx.; *Crucina*, MS.⁵ So MS. and a.⁶ *Bardysey*, Cx.⁷ So the MS., in extenso.

Ubi tam diu vivitur
 Quod senior præmoritur ;
 Ibi Merlinus conditur
 Silvestris, ut asseritur ;
 Duo fuerunt igitur
 Merlini, ut conjicitur,¹
 Unus dictus Ambrosius,
 Ex incubo² progenitus,
 Ad Kermerthyn³ Demetiæ
 Sub Vortigerni tempore ;
 Qui sua vaticinia
 Proflavit in Snawdonia⁴
 Ad ortum amnis Coneway⁵
 Ad clivum montis Eriry ;⁶
 Dynas-Embreis,⁷ ut comperi,
 Sonat collem Ambrosii ;
 Ad ripam quando regulus
 Vortiger sedit anxius.

¹ Slightly transposed in C. (not D.) ; *convicitur*, B.

² *incuba*, C.D.

³ *Carmerthyn*, A.

⁴ *Snowdonia*, B

⁵ *Conowey*, A. ; *Conwy*, B.

⁶ *Eryry*, A. ; *Erryri*, B. ; *Eriri*, C.

⁷ *Dinas Embreys*, A.G. ; *Duas Embrex*, B. ; *Dyneis Embreis*, D. ; *Duias Embreys*, Gale.

TREVISA.

Men lyueþ so longe in pat hurste,
 pat þe eldest deiþeþ furst.
 Me seiþ pat Merlyn i-buried pere is,
 pat hiþte also Siluestris.
 There were Merlyns tweyne
 And prophecied alle¹ beyne.
 Oon hiþte Ambrose and Merlyn,
 And wes i-gete of² gobolyn.
 In Demecia at Caermerthyn,
 Vnder kyng Fortigern,³
 He tolde oute his prophecie;
 Euene in Snawdonye.
 At þe heed of þe water of Conewy,⁴
 In þe side of mount Eryry,
 Dynays Embreys a⁵ Walsche,
 Ambrose his hille on⁶ Englisch,
 Kyng Fortigern⁷ sat on
 þe water side, and was wel ful of woon.
 þan Ambrose Merlyn prophecied so
 To fore hym pere riþt poo.⁸
 [Trevisa]⁹ What wight¹⁰ wolde wene
 þat a fend myþt now gete a¹¹ childe?
 Som men wolde mene,
 þat he may no werk soche wilde.¹²
 That fend pat goop a nyþt,
 Wommen wel¹³ ofte to begile,¹⁴
 Incubus hatte be ryþt;
 And gileþ men oþer while,
 Succubus is pat wight:
 God graunte vs non suche vile.
 Who þat in hir myþt¹⁵
 Comeþ wonder hap schal¹⁶ smyle.

that the elder man diethe euer a fore the yonger man. MS. HARL.
 Where Merlyn callede Silvestris is beryede, as hit is seide. 2261.
 Therefore there were ij. Merlynes; oon of them callede
 Ambrosius, geten of a spratte at Kaermerthyn in Sowthe
 Wales, whiche¹⁷ profeciede in Snawdonia in the tyme of
 Vortigernus. Also there was an other Merlyn in Albania,

¹ alle] om. a. and Cx.

² y-goten by, Cx.

³ Vortigerin, Cx.

⁴ Coneway, Cx.

⁵ a] in, Cx. (not a.)

⁶ on] in, Cx. (not a.)

⁷ Vortigere, Cx.

⁸ tho, Cx.

⁹ This and the following reference omitted in MSS. and Cx.

¹⁰ witte, Cx., who omits now below.

¹¹ Om. a.

¹² no such werk welde, Cx.

¹³ ful, a., Cx.

¹⁴ gile, Cx.

¹⁵ Who that cometh in hir gyle, Cx.

The text is very obscure, and perhaps corrupt.

¹⁶ Wonder happe shal he, Cx.

¹⁷ in the whiche, MS., originally.

Est¹ alter de Albania
 Merlinus, quæ et² Scotia;
 Repertus est binomius
 Silvestris Calidoni-³;
 A silva Calidonia,⁴
 Qua promsit⁵ vaticinia;
 Silvestris dictus ideo,
 Quod consistens in prælio
 Monstrum videns in aere
 Mente⁶ coepit excedere,⁷
 Ad silvam tendens⁸ propere,
 Arthuri⁹ regis tempore;

¹ Sc[†] A.B.C.D., Gale; *Et*, E.

² *est*, A.B.D.; *nunc*, G., Gale.

³ *Callidoni-*, A.

⁴ *Collidonia*, A.

⁵ *prosit*, B.

⁶ *mentem*, B.

⁷ *incendere*, B.

⁸ *tondens*, A.

⁹ *Cathuri*, C. (not D.)

TREVISA.

Wip wonder dede
 Bope men and wommen sede
 Fendes wyl kepe
 Wip craft, and brynge in on hepe.¹
 So fendes wilde
 May make wommen bere childe;
 Ȝit neuere in mynde
 Was childe of fendes kynde.
 For wip oute eye
 There myȝte childe non suche² deye.
 Clergie makeȝ mynde
 Deep sleep nouȝt³ fendes kynde;
 But deth slowe Merlyn,
 Merlyn was ergo no gobelyn.
 [B.] Anoper Merlyn of Albalonde,⁴
 ȝat now hatte Scottelonde,
 Hadde⁵ names two,
 Siluestris and Calidonus also,
 Of ȝat wode Calidonie,
 For pere⁶ he tolde his prophecie;
 And heet Siluestris as wel,
 For whan he was in [a]⁷ batel,
 And sigh⁸ aboue a grisliche kynde,
 And fil anon out of his mynde;
 And made no more bood,⁹
 But ran¹⁰ to ȝe wood.
*Trevisa.*¹¹ Siluestris is wood,
 Other wilde of mood;
 Other elles,
 ȝat at ȝe wode he dwelles.¹²
 B. Siluestris Merlyn
 Tolde prophecie wel and fyn,
 And prophecied ful sure¹³
 Vnder kyng Arthure,

callede now Scottelonde, whiche hade ij. names; oon name **MS. HARL.**
 was Siluestris, that other was Calidonus, of a woode callede **2261.**
 Calidonia, where he propheciede; callede Silvestris in that
 he beenge in batelle see in the aiere a meruellous thyng
 thro the whiche siȝhte he began to be distracte. Whiche
 goenge to a woode began to prophecy in the tyme of

¹ bringe an heepe, Cx.² no suche child, Cx.³ no, Cx.⁴ Albin lond, Cx.⁵ And he had, Cx.⁶ So Cx. (there); ȝat, MS., a.⁷ Added from a.⁸ sawe, Cx.⁹ abood, Cx.¹⁰ ran anon, Cx.¹¹ This and the following reference added from Cx.¹² welles, a.¹³ soure, a.

Prophetavit apertius
 Quam Merlinus Ambrosius.
 Sunt montes in Snawdonia
 Cum summitate nimia,
 Ab imis usque verticem
 Vix transmeatur per diem.
 Quos Cambri vocant Eriry,¹
 Quod sonat montes² nivei;
 Hi Walliæ pecoribus
 Sufficerent in pascuis;³
 In horum⁴ summo vertice
 Sunt duo lacus hodie,
 Quorum unus erraticam
 In se concludit⁵ insulam,
 Ventis hinc inde mobilem,
 Ripis approximabilem,⁶
 Ita⁷ ut armentarii
 Mirentur se clam provehi.
 Dat alter⁸ lacus perchios,
 Turtros⁹ omnes monoculos;
 Quod¹⁰ reperitur hodie
 In Mulwellis¹¹ Albaniae.
 Ruthelan in confinibus
 Tegengil¹² est fons modicus,

¹ *Eriri*, A.C.D.; *Erriri*, B.

² *mons*, E. (clerical error.)

³ So MSS. and Gale; but the metre suggests *pastibus*.

⁴ *quorum*, B.

⁵ *conclaudit*, D.

⁶ *approbriabilem*, C. (not D.)

⁷ So A.C.D.; *Item*, E.

⁸ *altera*, B.

⁹ *Turcos*, A., Gale. Possibly *turtas* should be read. See Ducange, s.v. *truta*.

¹⁰ *Hoc*, C.D.

¹¹ *Mulwelles*, B.; *Mulwelle*, C. (not D.)

¹² *Tegnigil*, A.; *Tetungil*, B.

TREVISA.
—

Openliche, nouzt¹ so cloos
 As Merlyn Ambros.
 There beep hilles in Snowdowye,
 þat beep wonderliche hiȝe,
 Wiþ heiȝte as grete way²
 As a man may goo a day;
 And hiȝte³ Eryry in Walische,⁴
 Snowy hilles on Engliche.
 In pese hilles pere is
 Leese i-now for al⁵ Walis;
 Þis hil in þe cop berys
 Tweye grete fische werys,
 Conteyned in þe oon⁶ pond;
 Meueþ wiþ the wynd an ilond,
 As peigh he dede swymme,
 And neiȝeth⁷ to þe brymme;
 So þat herdes haueþ greet wonder
 And wenep þat þe world meueþ vnder.
 In þe oper is perche and trouȝtis,⁸
 Euery fysshe one eyed is;⁹
 So fareþ as wel
 In Albania þe Milewel.¹⁰
 In Ruthlond by Tygentil¹¹
 There is a litel¹² welle,

Kynge Arthure. There be hilles in Snawdonia of a grete MS. HARL. 2261.
 altitude, in so moche that a man may vnnethe goo from
 the foote of hit to the hiȝhte of hit in a day. Whiche
 hilles men of that cuntre calle Eriri, that sowndethe in
 Engliche the hilles of snawe, whiche be sufficiante in
 pastures to alle the bestes in Wales; in the altitude of
 whom be ij. waters, oon of whom concludethe an yle
 movede to and fro with the wynde, in so moche that drovers
 of bestes meruaile theyme to be caryede from oon place to
 an other sodenly. That other water ȝiffethe fisches of di-
 uerse kyndes hauenge but oon eie, whiche thyng is founde
 also in the Mulwelle of Albania. Also there is a lytelle
 welle in the costes of Ruthlande, Tetengil by name, whiche

¹ and not, Cx.² a waye. Cx.³ hatte, a.; heete, Cx.⁴ on Walsshe, Cx.⁵ al beestes of, Cx.⁶ that one, Cx.⁷ neiȝheþ, a.⁸ trowȝtis, a.; and fysshe, Cx.⁹ So Cx., omitting fysshe; And
oper fische on euery side is, MS., a.¹⁰ Meluel, a.; Mylwel, Cx.¹¹ Tegentil, a.; Tetingel, Cx.¹² lite, a.

Qui non marinis moribus
Die bis undat fluctibus,
Sed undis crebro deficit,
Undis vicissim sufficit.
In Monia ¹ Norwalliæ,²
Quæ Anglesey est hodie,
Est lapis, sicut didici,
Concors humano femori ;
Qui, quantolibet spatio
Asportetur ab aliquo,³
Nocte per se revertitur.
Hoc comperit, ut legitur,
Hugo comes Salopiæ
Henrici primi⁴ tempore ;
Probandi causa lapidem
Ligavit ad consimilem
Magnis catenis ferreis,
Et projecit in fluctibus ;
Qui tamen sub diluculo⁵
Visus est loco pristino.
Hunc semel quidam⁶ rusticus
Ligavit suis cruribus ;
Statim femur computruit ;
Lapis ad locum rediit.

¹ *Menia*, B.

² *North Walliæ*, A.D., Gale.

³ *Aquilo*, G., and Gale, absurdly.

⁴ *primo*, B.

⁵ *diliculo*, B.

⁶ *quidem*, D.

TREVISA.

Dat flowep nouȝt alway,
 As þe see twies a day;
 But somtyme it is drye,
 And somtyme al ful vp to¹ þe yȝe.
 There is in North Wallia
 In Mon, þat hatte Angleseia,
 A stoon, acordynge ful² nyhe
 As hit were a manis pyghe;
 How fer eucere þat stoon
 Be i-bore of eny moon,
 A³ nyght he goop hoom his way.
 Þat he fonde by assay
 How,⁴ þe erle of Schroisbury,⁵
 In tyme of þe firste Henry;⁶
 For he wolde þe sop fynde,
 Þat stoon to anoþer he gan bynde⁷
 Wip grete cheynes of ire,
 And þrewe al in fyre⁸
 I-bounde at oon hepe
 In to a water depe.
 Ȝet a morwe þat stoon
 Was i-seie erliche in Moon.
 A cherl helde hymself ful sligh,⁹
 And bonde þat stoon to his pigh;
 His pigh was roted¹⁰ or day,
 And þe stoon went away.

dothe not floo and refloo in the maner of a sec, but other-
 while water habundet the there, and otherwhile hit wontethe
 water. Also there is a ston in Mononia in North Wales,
 whiche is callede Angleseye, as y haue lernede, accordenge
 to the hippe of man; whiche ston brouȝhte from that place
 by a certeyne space of eny man is returnede to his propre
 place ageyne in the nyȝhte, as hit hathe bene provede mony
 tymes. Hugo, therle of Schrewesbury, provenge the seide
 thyng in the tyme of kyng Henry the firste, bonde that
 ston to an other with grete cheynes of yrne, and caste hit
 in to the water, whiche ston was founde in the mornynge
 in his olde place. Whiche ston a churle bonde in a tyme
 to his theȝhe, and hit rotede anoon, and the ston wente to

MS. HARL.
 2261.
 fol. 58. b.

¹ to] by, a., Cx.

² wel, a.

³ On, Cx.

⁴ Hughe, Cx.

⁵ Sronysbury, a.; Shrewsbury, Cx.

⁶ Harry, Cx.

⁷ So a. and Cx.; another kynde, MS.

⁸ So a.; al in þe fyre, MS.; al y
feren, Cx.

⁹ slyȝ, a., which has both pigh and
þiȝ below.

¹⁰ roten, Cx.

Si opus fiat Veneris
 Juxta procinctum lapidis,
 Lapis sudorem faciet,
 Et proles non proveniet.
 Est¹ rupes audientium,
 Sic dicta² per contrarium;
 Ubi,³ si sonum feceris
 Cornu vel exclamaveris,
 Hac parte non percipitur
 Sonus, qui illac editur.
 Est alia et⁴ insula
 Huic loco contigua,
 Sed eremitas⁵ continet,
 Quorum si quisquam dissidet,
 Statim se mures congregant;
 Escas eorum devorant.
 Nec cessat hæc molestia,⁶
 Donec cesset discordia.
 Sicut hic et Hibernia⁷
 Gens extat melancholica,⁸
 Sic sancti hujus climatis
 Propositi sunt vindicis.
 In hac quoque provincia,
 Hibernia, et Scotia

¹ *Est*] Et, E.

² So C.; *dictus*, A.D.E., Gale
(though having *rupes* or *rupis*
above).

³ *Ibi*, A.

⁴ *Est et alia*, D.

⁵ *heremitas*, MSS.

⁶ *malitia*, A.

⁷ So D., Gale; *Hibernica*, A.E.

⁸ *malencolica*, A.D.; *malancia*, B.

TREVISA.
—

Ȝif me doop¹ leccherie
 Nigh pat stoon faste bie,²
 Swoot comeþ of þe stoon,
 But child comeþ pere noon.
 There is a roche wel³ wonderly,
 Þe roche of herynge be contrary,
 Theyȝ pere crie eny man i-born,
 And blowe also wiþ an⁴ horn,
 Noyse pat is pere i-made, þeiȝ þou abide,
 Þow schalt here non in þis side.
 Pere is anoper ilond
 Faste by Mon at þe hond,
 Heremytes pere beep ryue;
 Ȝif ony of hem doop stryue,
 Alle þe mys pat may be gete
 Comeþ and etep al hir mete;
 Þanne ceseþ neuere pat woo,
 Ar þe strif⁵ cese also.
 As men in þis lond
 Beep angry, as in Irlond,
 So seyntes of þis contray
 Beep also wrechefull alway.
 Also in þis lond,
 In Irlond, and in Scotlond

his propre place. And if the synne of lechery be fulle- MS. HARL. 2261.
 filledde with in the caste of ston to hit, that ston wille sende
 from hit as sweetenge, and also thei schalle not gette a
 childe. Also there is an hille of men herenge, callede so
 by name contrarious, that and if thou make a sownde, other
 elles blawe with an horne, the sownde is not perceyvede in
 that parte. Also there is an other yle contiguate to that
 place, conteynenge heremites; and if there be discorde
 amonge theyme, myce gedre anoon and deuoure the meites
 of theyme, whiche greuaunce dothe not cease tille that
 peace be reconsiledde amonge them. Also that peple of
 that cuntre be replete with the melancholy lyke to the peple
 of Yrlonde, so seyntes of that cuntre be prompte vn to
 vengeance; where belles and crokede staves be hade in
 grete veneration, as men vse in Yrlonde and in Scotte-

¹ men don, Cx. (as usual.)² that stone by, Cx.³ right, Cx.⁴ So Cx.; wiþoute, MS., a.⁵ So a. and Cx.; firste, MS.

Campanæ¹ sunt et baculi
 Ornatu sub² multiplici,
 Tam digni proculdubio
 In clero et in populo,
 Quod vereantur hodie
 Perjurium committere
 Tam super horum alterum,
 Quam super evangelium.
 Ad Basingwerk³ fons oritur,
 Qui sacer⁴ vulgo dicitur;
 Et⁵ tantis bullis scaturit,
 Quod mox injecta rejicit;
 Tam magnum flumen procreat,
 Ut Cambriæ sufficiat.
 Ægri, qui dant rogamina,
 Reportant medicamina.
 Rubro guttatos lapides
 In scatebris⁶ reperies;
 In signum sacri sanguinis,
 Quem Wenefredæ virginis
 Guttur truncatum fuderat.
 Qui scelus hoc patrauerat,
 Ac nati et nepotuli,
 Latrant, ut canum catuli;

¹ *Campani*, C.D.

² *sub*] om. A.

³ *Basingworth*, B.

⁴ *Qui sacer*] Fons sicut, C.
And so D. apparently (sic^o.)

⁵ *Qui*, D.

⁶ *scatebro*, B.

TREVISA.
—

Ben¹ belles and staues
 [That]² in worschippe men haues,
 And beep worschipped [so]³ panne
 [Of]⁴ clerkes and lewed menne,
 Pat dredep also
 To swere by⁵ ony of þo
 Staf oper belle,
 As hit were þe gospelle.
 At Basyngwere⁶ is a welle,
 Pat sacer hiȝt, as men doop telle.
 Hit springeþ so sore, as men may see,
 What is cast yn, it prowep aȝec.
 Þere of springeþ a grete stronde;
 Hit were i-now for al pat londe.
 Seke at pat place
 Haupeþ bope hele and grace.
 In þe welmes offer þan ones
 Is y-founde reed splekked⁷ stones;
 In tokene of [þe]⁸ blood reed,
 Pat þe mayde Wynefrede
 Schadde at pat putte,⁹
 Whan hire prote was i-kutte.
 He pat dede pat dede
 Hap sorwe on his sede;
 His children at alle stoundes
 Berkeþ as whelpes of houndes.

lande, whiche peple drede more to swere by theym then MS. HARL.
 on a masse booke. Also at Basyngwere spryngethe an holy 2261.
 welle, whiche is of so grete feruence that hit castethe owte
 thynges caste in to hit, whiche bredethe so grete a water
 that myȝhte suffice to alle Wales; whiche water ȝiffethe
 grete helpe to seke peple; where thou schalle fynde stones
 hauenge in theym as dropes of blood, in the signe of the
 holy bloode whiche floede owte from the throte of Seynte
 Wenefride. For whiche offence the doers of hit and alle
 theire childer and successores berke in the maner of dogges,

¹ So Cx.; *Bope*, MS., a.² Added from Cx.³ Added from a. and Cx.⁴ Added from Cx.⁵ on, Cx.⁶ *Basyngwerke*, Cx.⁷ *plekked*, a.; *sperclid*, Cx.⁸ Added from a. and Cx.⁹ *put*, a.; *pytte*, Cx., and *kytte*, below.

Donec sanctæ¹ suffragium
Poscant² ad hunc fonticulum,
Vel ad urbem Salopiæ,
Ubi quiescit hodie.

¹ *sanctum*, B.

| ² *poscunt*, B.

For py¹ pray þat mayde grace
 Riȝt at þat welle place,
 Oþir in Schroyisbury² strete;
 Þere þat mayde restep swete.

TREVISA.
—

vn til thei aske the suffrage and helpe of Seynte Wene- MS. HARL.
 fride at that welle, other elles at the cite of Schrewisbury, 2261.
 where sche restethe now, hade there in grete veneracion. —

¹ So MS. and *a.*; *For to they*, Cx. | ² *Shrowsbury*, Cx.

Bayerische
 Staatsbibliothek
 München

A P P E N D I X.

VOL. I.

E E

APPENDIX.

Description of Paradise in the Geographia Universalis.

MS. Arundel. Mus. Brit. 123. f. 14 b. vellum 4to. xiv. cent.

Paradisus est locus in partibus orientis constitutus, cujus vocabulum ex Græco in Latinum vertitur *hortus*. Porro in Hebraico *Eden* dicitur, quod apud nos *deliciæ* interpretatur, ut dicit Isidorus, libro xv., capitulo ij. Est enim hortus deliciarum, ut dicit idem, quia cum ex omni genere ligni et pomiferarum arborum est constitutus, habens in se lignum vitæ, non ibi frigus, non ibi æstus, sed perpetua aeris temperies, ex cujus medio fons prorumpens totum nemus² irrigat, dividiturque in quatuor nascentia flumina; cujus aditus post peccatum primi hominis humano generi interclusus fuit, quia undique flammea rumphea, id est muro igneo circumcinctus,³ ita ut ejus pene cum cælo incendium conjungatur; præsidiumque angelorum arcendis spiritibus malis super rumpheæ flammam est a Domino ordinatum, ut homines flammæ, angelos vero malos boni angeli submoveant, ne alicui spiritui vel carni peccatrici aditus pateat paradisi. Hucusque Isidorus, libro xv., capitulo iij., ubi tractat de regionibus. Secundum Magistrum autem in Historiis, capitulo ij. super Genesim, dicitur sic: Plantavit, inquit, Deus, id est, a principio creationis, herbis et arboribus, locum deliciarum aptavit, et hoc in mundi principio, scilicet in oriente; et ille locus est amœnissimus,

Ibi non
est frigus
nec æstus,
sed perpetua
aeris
temperies.¹
De muro
igneo circa
paradisum.

¹ The marginal notes are in another hand and ink.

² *venus*, MS.

³ *circumcincta*, MS.

longo terræ et maris contractu a nostro habitabili¹ segregatus, id est altus, ut usque ad lunarem globum attingat, ubi et propter situs altitudinem aquæ diluvii non pervenerunt, ut dicit idem. De paradiso autem dicit Johannes Damascenus: Quia vero ex visibili creatura conditurus erat Deus hominem ad imaginem suam et similitudinem, sicut quendam regem et principem omnis terræ et omnium quæ sunt in ipsa, construxit ante quasi quandam regionem, in qua conversatus beatam duceret vitam; et iste locus divinus est paradisi, Dei manibus in Eden,² id est, deliciis et voluptate, plantatus, in oriente quidem omni terra celsior, penitus temperato et tenuissimo aere circumfulgens, plantis semper floridis comatus et bono odore plenus, lumine repletus [et] pulchritudine universa, gaudii et exultationis promptuarium, creaturæ sensibilis excedens intelligentiam; divina regio et digna eo³ qui secundum imaginem erat, in quo nil irrationabilium habitabat, sed solus homo divinarum⁴ manuum plasma. Item Strabus et Beda dicunt quod paradisi locus in oriente positus, interjecto oceano et montibus oppositis, a regionibus quas incolunt homines secretus et remotissimus est, pertingensque altitudine usque ad circulum ipsius lunæ; fuit locus summe conveniens homini innocenti propter ejus summam temperiem, quare non frigus ibi est nec æstus, sed perpetua temperies, ut dicit Isidorus. Item propter omnium bonorum abundantiam; quia, ut dicit Augustinus de Civitate Dei xiiij., capitulo x., quid timere aut dolere poterant in tantorum tanta affluentia bonorum, ubi non aberat quicquam quod bona voluntas adipisceretur,⁵ nec inerat quod carnem [vel] animum hominis feliciter viventis offenderet vel in aliqua molestaret? Item propter summam amœnitatem; nam universæ pulchritudinis erat promptuarium, ut dicit

Aquæ diluvii non pervenerunt ad paradisi.

Paradisi est omni terra altior. De pulchritudine et gloria paradisi.

De altitudine situs paradisi. Continua temperies ibi est. Omnium bonorum abundantia.

Summa amœnitas.

¹ *habitali*, MS.

² *Edom*, MS.

³ *digno digna ei*, MS.

⁴ *divinorum*, MS.

⁵ *adipiscere*, MS.

Damascenus, quod attestatur tam arborum quam florum et frondium immarcessibilis pulchritudo; nam arbores comam non perdunt, flores non marcescunt. Item propter summam jocunditatem, quod attestatur fructuum dulcedo, quia ibi est omne lignum pulchrum visu et suavissimum ad vescendum, Genesis ij. Idem etiam attestatur lucis plenitudo, nam puritate aeris claritas lucis proportionatur, ut dicit Beda. Item propter soli fecunditatem, quod attestatur fontium irrigantium multitudo; dicitur autem, Genesis ij.: Fons ascendebat et irrigabat paradisum, qui in quatuor flumina est divisus, Genesis ij. Item propter loci securitatem, quod attestatur situationis ejus altitudo; nam lunarem tangit circulum, ut dicunt Beda et Isidorus, id est, pertingit usque ad aerem quietum post istum aerem turbulentum, ubi finis est et terminus exhalationum et vaporum humidorum quorum fluxus et progressus lunari corpori approximatur; sicut exponit Alexander, non secundum veritatem attingere ¹ in altitudine orbem lunæ, sed circulum lunarem attingere hyperbolice, ut ejus maxima altitudo et incomparabilis respectu terræ inferioris insinuaretur. Item propter ejus incorruptibilitatem, quod attestatur existentium ibi vitæ longitudo; nam ibi sunt Elyas et Enoch vivi usque hodie et incorrupti, [ut] dicit Magister in Historiis. Nihil enim potest ibi mori quod est vivum; nec hoc mirandum est de paradiso, cum in Hibernia scimus esse insulam in qua mortuorum corpora non putrescunt, et aliam in qua homines mori non possunt, sed oportet ut ultimo senio extra insulam deferantur; quære supra de Hibernia in littera J. De paradiso autem et ejus situ fuit opinio apud gentiles, ut refert Plinius, ubi loquitur de insulis Fortunatis; de quibus etiam loquitur Isidorus, libro xv., inter quas est una quæ omnia fere parturit bona, ubi humus sponte procreat omnes fructus, ubi in jugis collium arbores virore frondium et dulcore fructuum semper vestiuntur, ubi ad herbarum vicem

Pulchritudo paradisi.

Summa jocunditas.

Plenitudo lucis.
Fecunditas soli.

Securitas loci.

Incorruptibilitas loci.

Elyas et Ennok ibi sunt.

Nihil ibi moritur.

De loco in Hibernia in quo homines non moriuntur.

De insulis Fortunatis.

¹ nam . . . attingit, MS., against the sense; see below.

Propter
sonitum
aquarum
cadentium
fiunt homi-
nes surdi.

messis et olus crescit, unde et gentilium error et sæcularium carmina poetarum propter soli fecunditatem easdem insulas paradisum esse putaverunt; quod quidem ponere est erroneum, cum prædictæ insulæ Fortunatæ sint in occidente contra lævam Mauritaniae in oceano collocatæ, ut dicit Isidorus, libro xv. Paradisus autem in oriente, in altissimo monte, de cujus cacumine cadentes aquæ maximum faciunt lacum, et in suo casu tantum faciunt strepitum et fragorem, quod omnes incolæ juxta prædictum lacum nascuntur surdi ex immoderato sonitu seu fragore sensum auditus in parvulis corrumpente, ut dicit Basilius in Exameron; similiter et Ambrosius. Ex illo autem lacu, velut ex uno fonte, procedunt illa flumina quatuor, Phison qui et Ganges, Gyon qui et Nilus dicitur, et Tigris ac Euphrates de quibus in libro Geneseos fit mentio specialis.

The same, as it is given in the shorter form of the Polychronicon (C. D.)¹

Isid. li. [xiv.] c. 3. Paradisus locus est in Oriente, longo maris tractu a nostro habitabili segregatus, cujus vocabulum a Græco in Latinum versum dicitur *hortus*, Hebraice vero *Eden*, quod sonat *deliciæ*; quod utrumque junctum facit *hortum deliciarum*. Est enim locus omni genere arborum consitus, ubi est et lignum vitæ; cujus loci aditus post peccatum primi hominis interclusus est; septus est enim undique rumphea flammea, id est, muro igneo, ita ut ejus cum cælo pæne jungatur incendium. Supra vero rumpheam illam positi sunt cherubin, id est, angeli boni ad arcendum spiritus malos; rumphea etiam arcet homines. Habet etiam locus ille salubritatem; quia temperie gaudens nec frigus habet nec æstus; et quicquid ibi vivit, mori non potest. Cui rei attestatur quod Enoch et Helias

¹ The text is taken from D. Compare pp. 66–78 of this volume.

adhuc vivunt ibidem incorrupti. *Johannes Damascenus*. Habet etiam locus ille amoenitatem, nam universæ pulchritudinis erat promptuarium. Ubi cuncti generis arbores comam non perdunt; flores non marcescunt. Habet etiam jocunditatem; cui rei attestatur fructuum dulcedo. *Giraldus*, 3. Et omne lignum pulchrum visu et ad vescendum suave. Habet et securitatem, cui rei attestatur loci altitudo. *Beda*. Nam pertingit aerem quietum usque ad lunarem circulum. *Petrus*, c. 13. Idcirco aquæ diluvii illuc minime pervenerunt. R. Quod exponens Alexander,¹ dicit ita esse non secundum rei veritatem, sed secundum hyperbolicam locutionem, ut sit ejus incomparabilis altitudo respectu nostri habitabilis ostenderetur. *Basilius in Exameron*. Igitur de Paradisi altissimo monte cadentes aquæ magnum faciunt lacum; ex quo velut ex uno fonte quatuor nascuntur flumina. *Isidorus libro quarto*. De medio enim Paradisi fons prorumpens totum nemus irrigat, dividiturque in quatuor nascentia flumina. *Josephus libro primo*. Nam Phison educitur in Indiam; Euphrates et Tigris in mare Rubrum feruntur; Gion vero per Ægyptum fluens Nilum facit. *Isidorus libro tertiodecimo*. Salustius tamen auctor certissimus asserit quod de Cerauneis montibus Armeniæ ad pedem Caucasii montis oritur fons, qui caput est duorum fluminum, Tigris et Euphratis, quæ ambo post longum circuitum circa Mesopotamiam descendunt in mare Rubrum. Idcirco Hieronymus animadvertit de Paradisi fluminibus aliter fore sentiendum. *Petrus cap. quarto decimo*. Primus fluvius Phison circuit Indiam trahens aureas arenas, et dictus est Ganges a Gangoro rege Indiæ, et interpretatur *caterva*, eo quod decem flumina recipit. Secundus dictus est Gion, qui et Nilus, et circuit Æthiopiam et Ægyptum. Tertius Tigris, secun-

¹ " Quid quod deliciis ornatus " apex paradisi " Lunarem tangit vertice pene " globum ?"	Alex. Neckham, <i>De Laud. Div. Sap.</i>, p. 441 (in this series), where much in common with Higden may be read.
---	--

dum Josephum, dicitur Diglath, quod sonat *acutum*, eo quod velox sit, et vadit contra Assyrios. Quartus Euphrates, quod sonat frugifer, et vadit contra Chaldaeos. Hæc quatuor flumina ab eodem fonte manant et separantur; et iterum quædam eorum inter se commiscuntur, et separantur; sæpe etiam absorbentur a terra et locis iterum in pluribus emergunt. Inde est quod de ortu eorum varia leguntur; quia Ganges dicitur nasci in locis Caucasi montis; Nilus non procul ab Atlante monte; Tigris et Euphrates in Armenia.

Specimens of the Orthography of Tenison's MS. of Trevisa, and of Caxton's printed Text. (Compare p. 385.)

TENISON'S MS. OF TREVISA, our a.
(now MS. Addit. 24194, Mus.
Brit.)

Beda, li. p. Out of Irlond, þat is, þe ƿpre contray of scottes, come Irische men wiþ here duke þat het renda, and wiþ loue oþʳ wiþ strēgþʳ made hem cheef Cees and citees besides þe pittes in þe Norþside. Gir. Now þe lond is schortliche I cleped Scotlond of Scottes, þat come out of Irlond and reignede þerynne þre hundred ȝere and fiftene anon to reed williams tyme þat was Malcolins broþʳ. p. Meny euedencis we haueþ þat þis scotlond is ofte I cleped and hatte hībnia, riȝt as Irlond hatte. þʳfore beda, li. 2. c. 10., seiþ þat laurence, archebisshop of Donbar, was archebisshop of Scottes þat wonede in an ilond þat hatte hībnia and is next to britayne. ¶ also beda, li. 3. c. 27., seiþ pestilens of moreyn bar doun hībnia. also, li. 3. c. 2., seiþ þe Scottes þat wonede in þe souþ side of hībnia; also, li. 4. c. 3. he seiþ þat chadde was a ȝongelynge and lerned þe rule of monkes in hībnia. Also,

CAXTON'S PRINTED TEXT.

Beda, libro primo Out of yrlond that is the propre countraye of the scottes come yryashe men with her duke that was called renda. And with loue & with strengthe made hem chyef sees and cytees beside the pyctes in the northayde Gir. Now the londe is shortly called scotland of scottes that come out of yrlōd & regned thereinne. iij. C. xv. yere vnto the rede williams tyme that was malcolyns broder. ¶ many euydencis we haue of this scotland that it is ofte called and heyte hibernia, as yrlond doth, therfor beda, libro 2. c. p. seyth that laurence archibisshop of dunbar was archibisshop of scottes that dwellyd in an ylond that heet hibernia & is next to brytayne. Also beda, li. 3. c. 27. seyth Pestelence of moreyn bare doun hibernia, Also. libro tercio. capitulo secundo seyth that the scottes that dwellyd in the south side of hibernia, also libro 4. capitulo tercio, he sayth that chadde was a yonglyng and lerned the rewle of monkes in hibernia, Also libro quarto capitulo visesimo (sic)

li°. 4°. c°. 22°. Egfrid' kyng of Northūberland destroyed hibernia. Also, li°. 5°. c°. 15°. þe moste deel of Scottis in hibernia. ¶ And in þe same chapitre he clepeth hibernia þpurliche I nempned: þat West ylund. þat is an hundred myle fro ev'ry britayne and deþted wiþ þe see bytwene, and clepeth hibernia þat contre þat now hatte Scotland. þere he telleþ þat adamnan, abbot of þis Ilond, seilled to hibernia forto teche Irisshe men þe laweful Esterday, and at þe laste come hoom aȝen into scotland. *ysid eth li°. 14°.* Men of þ^o scotland hatte scottes in here owne langage and pittes also. For somtyme here body was I peynt in þis manere; þei wolde sōtyme wiþ scharpe egged tool pycche & kerue here owne bodyes and make þ^oon dyv's figures and schappes, and peynte hem wiþ Inke op^o wiþ op^o peynture and colo^r and for þey were so I peynt þei were I cleped picty, þat is, I peynt.

secundo, Egfridus kyng of northūberland (sic) destroyed hibernia. Also libro. 4. ca. 15. The moost dele of scottes in hibernia, And in the same chapytre he clepeth hibernia proprely named, That west ylonde is an honderd myle from eueryche brytayne and departed with the see bitwene, And called hibernia that countray that now is callid scotland, there he telleth that adanman (sic) abbote of this ylund seyled to hibernia for to teche yryshmen the lawful ester daye And atte laste cam agayne in to scotland. Ysi, ethli (sic) 14. Mē of this scotland, ben named scottes in their own lāgage & pycetes also for sōtyme her body was peynted in this man'. they wold sōtyme with a sharp egged tole prycke & kerue her own bodyes. & make theron dyūse figures & shappes, & peynte hem with Inke or with other peynture, or colour. And by cause they were so peynted they were called picti, that is to saye peynted.

END OF VOL. I.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[3724.—1000.—2/65.]

LIST OF WORKS

PUBLISHED

By the late Record and State Paper Commissioners,
or under the Direction of the Right Honourable
the Master of the Rolls, which may be pur-
chased of Messrs. Longman and Co., London;
Messrs. J. H. and J. Parker, Oxford and Lon-
don; Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Cambridge and
London; Messrs. A. and C. Black, Edinburgh;
and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

PUBLIC RECORDS AND STATE PAPERS.

- ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIA SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO.** Henry III.—Edward III. *Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price* 25s. boards, or 12s. 6d. each.
- CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM.** Henry III.—Richard III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs. Vols. 2, 3, and 4, folio (1806—1808; 1821—1828), boards: vols. 2 and 3, *price* 21s. each; vol. 4, *price* 24s.
- LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS.** Vol. 4. *Edited by* The Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. (1812), folio, boards. *Price* 18s.
- ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM,** Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* The Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES.** *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 3). *Price* 21s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS.** *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 4). *Price* 21s.

[POLYCHRON. I.]

G G

STATUTES OF THE REALM, large folio. Vols. 4 (in 2 parts), 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 vols. of Indices (1819—1828). *Edited by Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHEY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Price 31s. 6d. each; except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, price 30s. each.*

VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Henry VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1810, &c.), boards. Price 25s. each.*

* * The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price 2s. 6d.*

ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI. 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. 2 vols. folio (1814—1819), boards. Price 42s.*

“FÆDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ,” &c. ; or, Rymer’s Fœdera, New Edition, 1066—1377. Vol. 2, Part 2, and Vol. 3, Parts 1 and 2, folio (1821—1830). *Edited by JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. Price 21s. each Part.*

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary ; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), price 31s. 6d. ; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), price 21s.*

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH; to which are prefixed, Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the Originals in the Tower. *Edited by JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, price 21s. each.*

PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King’s High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. Edward I., II. *Edited by Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., price 21s. ; Vol. 2, Division 2, price 21s. ; Vol. 2, Division 3, price 42s.*

ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 vols. folio (1833—1844). The first volume, 1204—1224. The second volume, 1224—1227. *Edited by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. Price 81s., cloth ; or separately, Vol. 1, price 63s. ; Vol. 2, price 18s.*

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND, 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* Sir N. HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price* 98s.; or separately, 14s. each.

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, 1201—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31s. 6d.

. The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9s.

ROTULI CURIE REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28s.

ROTULI NORMANNIE IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12s. 6d.

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18s.

EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32s.; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 14s.; Vol. 2, *price* 18s.

FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIE IN CURIA DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John (1195—1214). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11s.; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8s. 6d.; Vol. 2, *price* 2s. 6d.

ANCIENT KALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42s.

DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland. and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price* 18s.

ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, 1199—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price* 30s.

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS. 1831 to 1837. 1 vol. folio, boards. *Price* 8s.

REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31s. 6d.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirht to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40s. Or, in 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30s.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Indices and Glossary. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44s. Or, in 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36s.

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6s.

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE FOR THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH YEARS OF THE REIGN OF KING HENRY THE SECOND, 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4s. 6d.

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE FOR THE FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN OF KING RICHARD THE FIRST, 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6s.

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45s. 6d.

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2s. 6d.

MONUMENTA HISTORICA BRITANNICA, or, Materials for the History of Britain from the earliest period. Vol. 1, extending to the Norman Conquest. Prepared, and illustrated with Notes, by the late HENRY PETRIE, Esq., F.S.A., Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, assisted by the Rev. JOHN SHARPE, Rector of Castle Eaton, Wilts. Finally completed for publication, and with an Introduction, by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Records. (Printed by command of Her Majesty.) Folio (1848). *Price 42s.*

REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REGUM SCOTORUM in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1814). *Price 15s.*

THE ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNER, Esqrs. *Price 42s.* Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11; *price 10s. 6d.* each.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS. 1466—1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price 10s. 6d.*

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES. 1478—1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price 10s. 6d.*

ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price 35s.* Or, in royal 8vo. cloth. *Price 25s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price 30s.* Or, in royal 8vo. cloth. *Price 21s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; Henry III.—Henry VI.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price 40s.* Or, in royal 8vo. cloth. *Price 30s.*

NOTES OF MATERIALS FOR THE HISTORY OF PUBLIC DEPARTMENTS. By F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. Demy folio (1846), cloth. *Price 10s.*

HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. By F. S. THOMAS, Esq. Royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price 12s.*

STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH. 11 vols.
4to., cloth, (1830—1852), with Indices of Persons and Places.
Price 5l. 15s. 6d. ; or separately, *price 10s. 6d.* each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.

Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.

Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.

Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND ; from the Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. *By F. S. THOMAS, Esq.* 3 vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. *Price 40s.*

In the Press.

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM ; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq.

CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS.

[IMPERIAL 8vo. *Price 15s. each Volume or Part.*]

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, and ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. 1856.

Vol. I.—1547–1580.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1857–1859.

Vol. I.—1603–1610.

Vol. II.—1611–1618.

Vol. III.—1619–1623.

Vol. IV.—1623–1625, with Addenda.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., V.P.S.A. 1858–1864.

Vol. I.—1625–1626.

Vol. II.—1627–1628.

Vol. III.—1628–1629.

Vol. IV.—1629–1631.

Vol. V.—1631–1633.

Vol. VI.—1633–1634.

Vol. VII.—1634–1635.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860–1864.

Vol. I.—1660–1661.

Vol. II.—1661–1662.

Vol. III.—1663–1664.

Vol. IV.—1664–1665.

Vol. V.—1665–1666.

Vol. VI.—1666–1667.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509–1589.

Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589–1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568–1587.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860.

Vol. I.—1509–1573.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860–1862.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574–1660.

Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513–1616.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862–1864.

Vol. I.—1509–1514.

Vol. II. (in Two Parts),—1515–1518.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863.

Vol. I.—1558–1559.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. 1862.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485–1509.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864.

Vol. I.—1202–1509.

In the Press.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. II.—1574–1585.

- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. 1580-1590.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. Vol. II.—1559-1560.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. VIII.—1635.
- CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. III.—1519, &c.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. VII.—1667-1668.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. Vol. II.
-

In Progress.

- CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. Vol. II.—Henry VIII.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOËL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan.
-

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[ROYAL 8VO. *Price* 10s. each Volume or Part.]

1. THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND, by JOHN CAPGRAVE. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.
2. CHRONICON MONASTERII DE ABINGDON. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.
3. LIVES OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR. I.—*La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei.* II.—*Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris.* III.—*Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit.* *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.
4. MONUMENTA FRANCISCANA ; scilicet, I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. II.—Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. III.—Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1858.
5. FASCICULI ZIZANIORUM MAGISTRI JOHANNIS WYCLIF CUM TRITICO. Ascribed to THOMAS NETTER, of WALDEN, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.
6. THE BUIK OF THE CRONICLIS OF SCOTLAND ; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece ; by WILLIAM STEWART. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.
7. JOHANNIS CAPGRAVE LIBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.
8. HISTORIA MONASTERII S. AUGUSTINI CANTUARIENSIS, by THOMAS OF ELMHAM, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* CHARLES HARDWICK, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

9. EULOGIUM (HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS): Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. HAYDON, Esq., B.A. 1858–1863.
10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH: Bernardi Andreae Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.
11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* C. A. COLE, Esq. 1858.
12. MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1860.
13. CRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.
14. A COLLECTION OF POLITICAL POEMS AND SONGS RELATING TO ENGLISH HISTORY, FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1859–1861.
15. The "OPUS TERTIUM," "OPUS MINUS," &c., of ROGER BACON. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.
16. BARTHOLOMÆI DE COTTON, MONACHI NORWICENSIS, HISTORIA ANGLICANA (A.D. 449—1298). *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.
17. BRUT Y TYWYSOGION; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. J. WILLIAMS AB ITHEL. 1860.
18. A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. Vol. I. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.
19. THE REPRESSOR OF OVER MUCH BLAMING OF THE CLERGY. By REGINALD PECOCK, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.
20. ANNALES CAMBRLE. *Edited by* the Rev. J. WILLIAMS AB ITHEL. 1860.

21. **THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS.** Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1861-1863.
22. **LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND.** Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861-1864.
23. **THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES.** Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.
24. **LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1861-1863.
25. **LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE,** illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.
26. **DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.** Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862.
27. **ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III.** From the Originals in the Public Record Office. Vol. I., 1216-1235. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1862.
28. **THE SAINT ALBAN'S CHRONICLES:—THE ENGLISH HISTORY OF THOMAS WALSINGHAM, MONK OF SAINT ALBAN'S.** Vol. I., 1272-1381. Vol. II., 1381-1422. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1864.
29. **CHRONICON ABBATIE EVESHAMENSIS, AUCTORIBUS DOMINICO PRIORE EVESHAMIE ET THOMA DE MARLEBERGE ABBATE, A FUNDATIONE AD ANNUM 1213, UNA CUM CONTINUATIONE AD ANNUM 1418.** *Edited by* the Rev. W. D. MACRAY, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.
30. **RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ.** Vol. I., 447-871. *Edited by* JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863.
31. **YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST.** Years 30-31, and 32-33. *Edited and translated by* ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1864.

32. NARRATIVES OF THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH FROM NORMANDY, 1449-1450.—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normandie, par Berry, Herault du Roy: Conferences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.* 1863.
33. HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRÆ. Vol. I. *Edited by W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A.; Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie.* 1863.
34. ALEXANDRI NECKAM DE NATURIS RERUM LIBRI DUO; with NECKAM'S POEM, DE LAUDIBUS DIVINÆ SAPIENTIÆ. *Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A.* 1863.
35. LEECHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I. and II. *Collected and edited by the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge.* 1864-1865.
36. ANNALES MONASTICI. Vol. I.:—Annales de Margan, 1066-1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066-1263; Annales de Burton, 1004-1263. *Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registry of the University, Cambridge.* 1864.
37. MAGNA VITA S. HUGONIS EPISCOPI LINCOLNIENSIS. From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire.* 1864.
38. CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST. Vol. I. ITINERARIUM PEREGRINORUM ET GESTA REGIS RICARDI. *Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian.* 1864.
39. RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. From Albina to 688. *Edited by WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.* 1864.
40. A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND, BY JOHN DE WAVRIN. From Albina to 688. (Translation of the preceding.) *Edited and translated by WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.* 1864.
41. POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDENI, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. I. *Edited by CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.* 1865.

In the Press.

- LE LIVRE DE REIS DE BRITANNIE.** *Edited by J. GLOVER, M.A.,*
Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight.
- THE WARS OF THE DANES IN IRELAND :** written in the Irish language.
Edited by the Rev. J. H. TODD, D.D., Librarian of the University
of Dublin.
- A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS** relating
to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British
Isles. *Edited by GEORGE W. DASENT, Esq., D.C.L. Oxon.*
- A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE**
REIGN OF HENRY IV. Vol. II. *Edited by the Rev. F. C.*
HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford.
- OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO**
HENRY VI., with other LETTERS and DOCUMENTS. *Edited*
by the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Senior Fellow of King's
College, Cambridge.
- ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN**
OF HENRY III. From the Originals in the Public Record Office.
Vol. II. *Selected and edited by the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D.,*
Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ
Church, Oxford.
- ORIGINAL DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL AND CLERICAL**
LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD BETWEEN THE REIGNS OF
HENRY III. AND HENRY VII. *Edited by the Rev. H. ANSTEY,*
M.A.
- ROLL OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF IRELAND, 16 RICHARD II.** *Edited*
by the Rev. JAMES GRAVES, A.B., Treasurer of St. Canice,
Ireland.
- RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM**
ANGLIÆ. Vol. II., 872-1066. *Edited by JOHN E. B. MAYOR,*
M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, and
Librarian of the University, Cambridge.
- THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vol. IV.** *Edited by*
J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's
College, London.
- HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRÆ.**
Vol. II. *Edited by W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A. ;* Membre cor-
respondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie.
- HISTORIA MINOR MATTHÆI PARIS.** *Edited by Sir FREDERICK*
MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts,
British Museum.

- ANNALES MONASTICI.** Vol. II. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrar of the University, Cambridge.
- CHRONICON RADULPHI ABBATIS COGGESHALENSIS MAJUS ; and, CHRONICON TERRÆ SANCTÆ ET DE CAPTIS A SALADINO HIERSOLYMIS.** *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.
- THE SAINT ALBAN'S CHRONICLES:—**Vol. III., THE CHRONICLES OF RISHANGER, 'TROKELOWE, BLANEFORD, AND OTHERS. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law.
- CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST.** Vol. II. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian.
- YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST.** 20th, 21st, and 22nd Years. *Edited and translated by* ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.
- RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE,** par JEHAN DE WAURIN (continued). *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.
- CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1400.** *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum.
- POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDENT,** with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.
- DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.** Vol. II. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

In Progress.

- DOCUMENTS RELATING TO ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND, FROM THE NORTHERN REGISTERS.** *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES RAINE, M.A., of Durham University.
- WILLIELMI MALMESBIRIENSIS DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM, LIBRI V.** *Edited by* N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.

February 1865.



